



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

ORIGINAL ARTICLES

1. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

2. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

3. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

4. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

5. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

6. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

7. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

8. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

9. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

10. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

11. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

12. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

13. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

14. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

15. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

16. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

17. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

18. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

19. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

20. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

21. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

22. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

23. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

24. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

25. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

26. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

27. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)


28. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

29. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

30. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

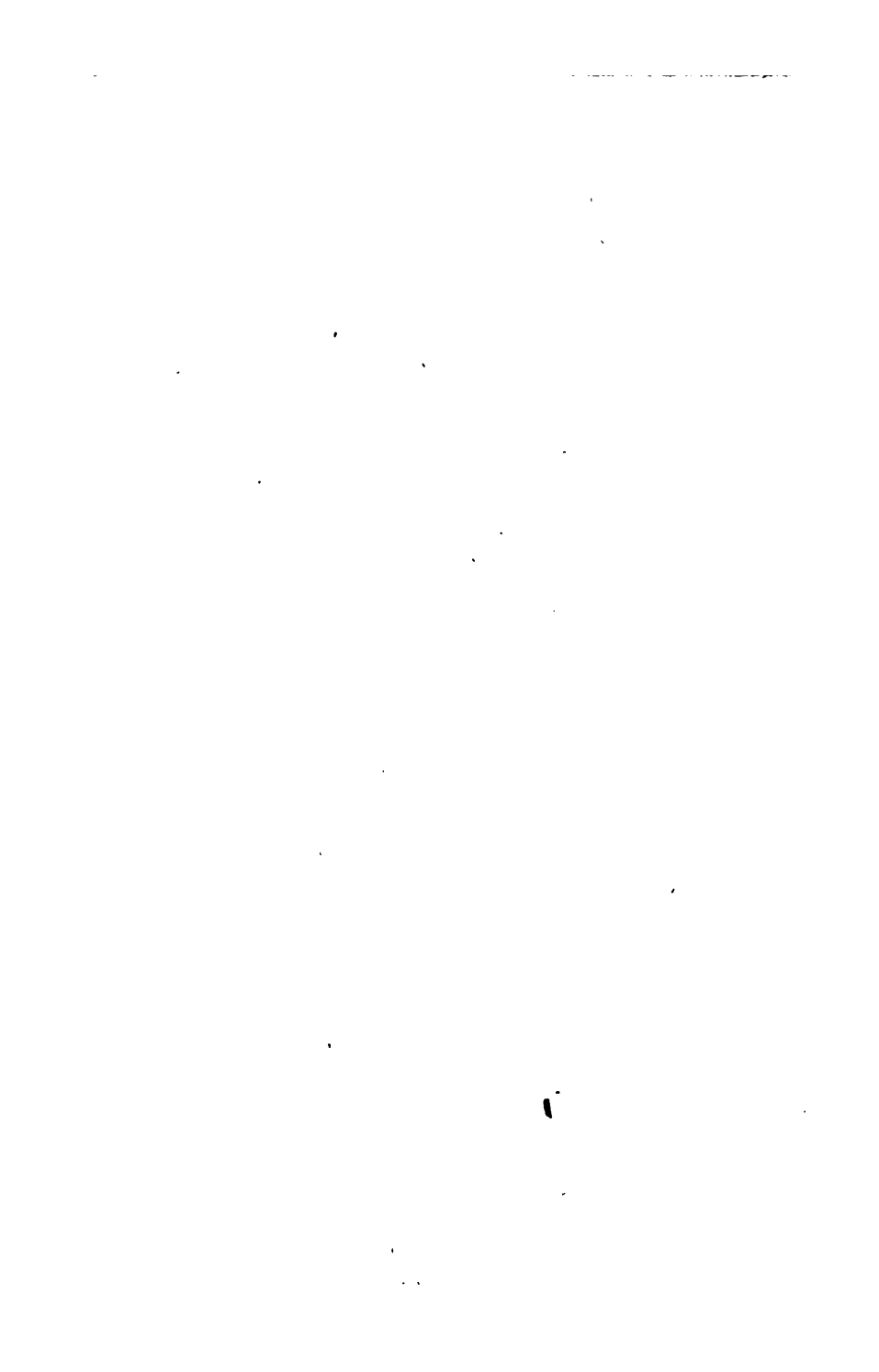
31. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)

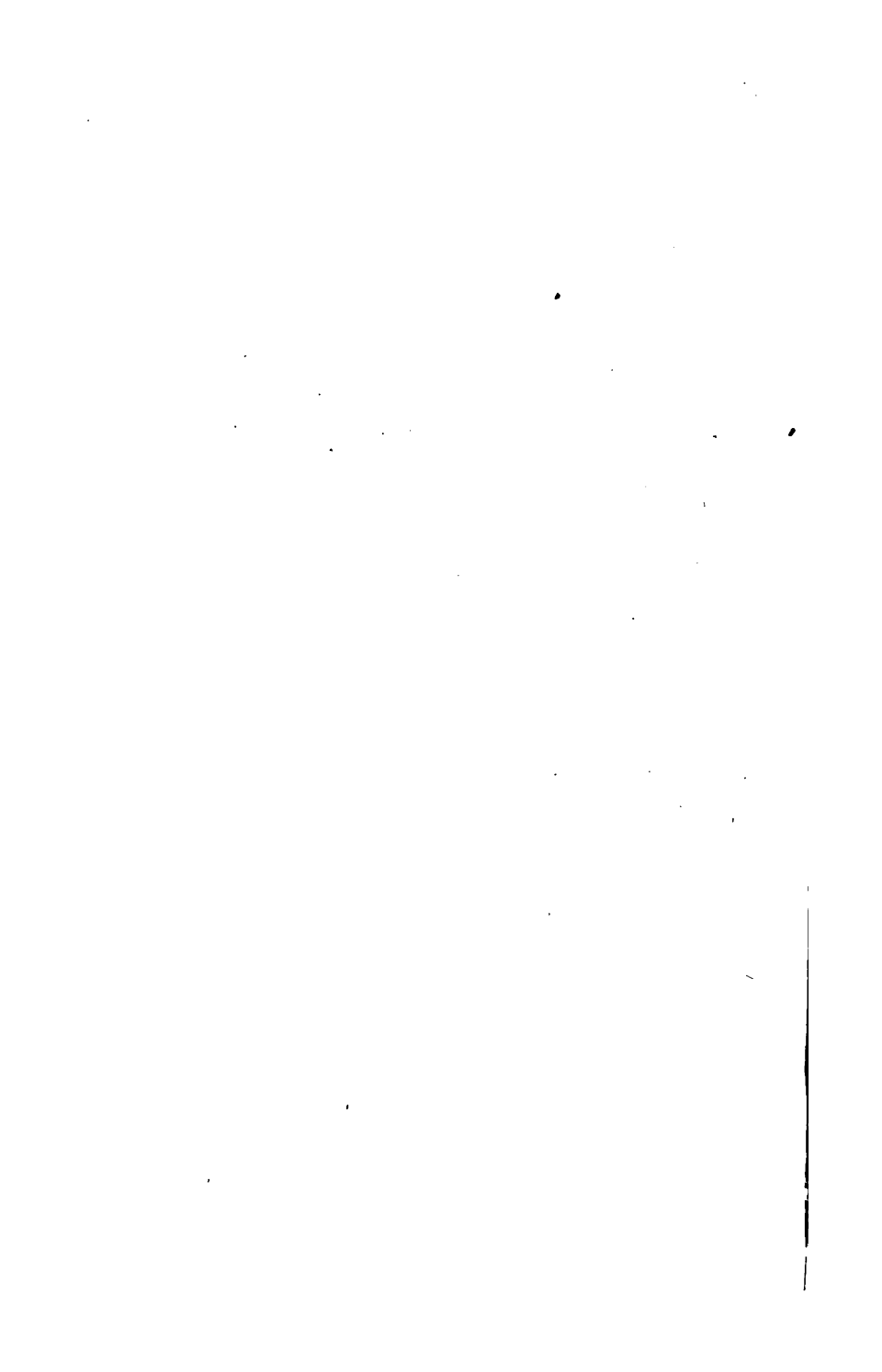
32. *Observations on the Pathology of the Heart in the Adult* (Continued from page 10)



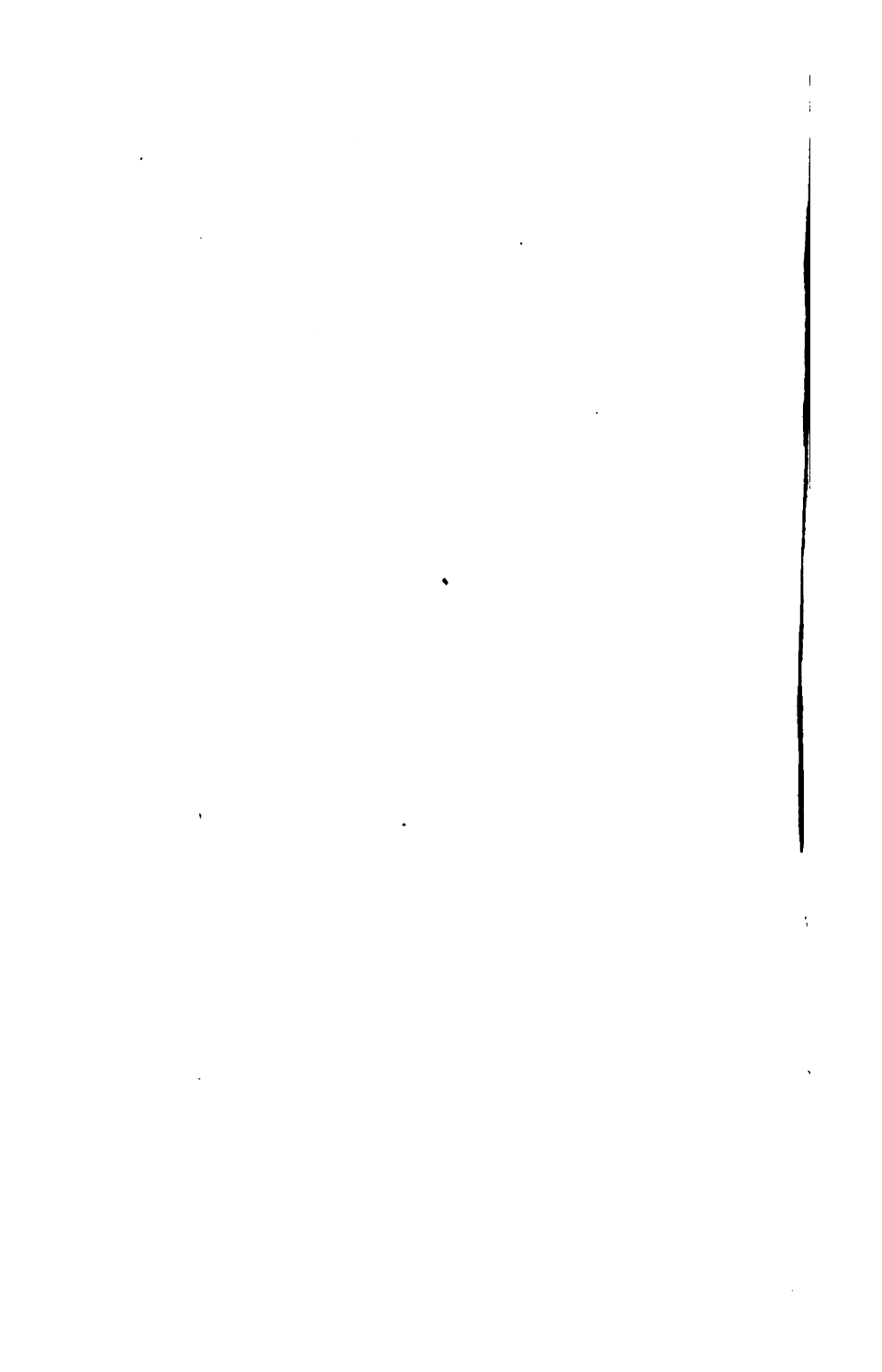
44. 555.







PROGRESSIVE LATIN GRAMMAR.



LATINÆ GRAMMATICÆ CURRICULUM :

OR

A PROGRESSIVE GRAMMAR

OF

THE LATIN LANGUAGE,

FOR THE

USE OF ALL CLASSES IN SCHOOLS.

See, p. 10.

"Antiquity deserveth that reverence, that men should make a stand thereupon, and discover what is the best way ; but when the discovery is well taken, then to make progression."—LORD BACON. ADVANCEMENT OF LEARNING. B. I.

LONDON :

LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS,

FATHERNOSTER-ROW.

1844.

PRINTED BY JOHN DAVIES, SHREWSBURY.



PREFACE.

THE Latin Grammar now submitted to the public agrees in its general principle and arrangement with that which is known by the name of the Eton Grammar. It agrees in general principle:—for it supposes its rules to be committed to memory by the learner, to be constantly applied, referred to, and repeated in his progressive lessons and exercises, and not to be laid aside until his mastery of the language is complete. It agrees in its general arrangement:—for it consists of the same parts following each other in the same order: viz.—

1. A concise Accidence.
2. An Outline of the First Rules of Construing and Parsing.
3. Memorial Latin Rules for the Gender of Nouns and Flexion of Verbs.
4. A compendious Syntax written in Latin.
5. A compendium of Prosody written in Latin.
6. Translations of the Latin Rules.

This general agreement of the two Grammars is nevertheless accompanied with many varieties of detail.

The Compiler of the Progressive Grammar must, however, be permitted to say, that he has in no case departed from the Eton Grammar without great consideration, nor without careful reference, both to his own experience as a Schoolmaster, and to the authority of the best Grammars of the Continent. Those Scholars, who may do him the favour to cast their eye over his work, will probably discern the reasons, which in each instance have influenced his judgment: at all events, he would rather encounter the risk of unfair criticism, than the manifold irksomeness of a prefatory defence.

On one point, indeed, a few words seem to be requisite. He has been engaged for five years in the compilation of this Grammar: and his labours were far advanced, when the work entitled by its Editor "King Edward the VIth's Latin Grammar," was published by Mr. Murray. It was the present Compiler's hope that this publication would render the continuance of his own labours

unnecessary. He regretted to find the case otherwise.—In all the additions and improvements which that Grammar contains, it was easy to trace the hand of a sound and accomplished scholar. But the alterations were thought to go too far in some respects, and not far enough in others. Many etymological references to the Greek language, and also many syntactical observations and examples, are embodied in the *Accidence*, which, however just in themselves, appear unsuited to the use of beginners, and for that very reason out of place: while the retention of the Hexametrical Rules, and of a defectively arranged* Syntax, enriched as this is with much new and valuable matter, make the Grammar in question, as a whole, very different from the idea which (correctly or otherwise) this Compiler had formed of a new School Grammar. He felt bound, therefore, to proceed with the laborious task which he had undertaken.

The Progressive Grammar is supposed to be used in Schools, as follows:—A class of beginners learn the *Accidence* by rote, to § 69, and are carried through it twice, omitting only § 17 and § 31, which are useful rather for reference than for memorial repetition. They then begin the First Rules of Construing, and at the same time those of Gender, &c., and are exercised in declining Substantives with Adjectives, and in conjugating Verbs from a Vocabulary or from the Master's dictation. Having twice or thrice gone through the Rules of Construing, Gender, &c., they commence the Latin Syntax, and at the same time begin to be exercised in construing and writing the simplest sentences. Having construed and learnt the Syntax once, they go through it again, at the same time beginning Prosody,† and construing and writing longer sentences, with applica-

* No blame is imputed to the Editor for not doing what he did not profess to do, viz.—to recast the old Syntax. But the Compiler must be permitted to consider the *arrangement* of any Syntax deficient, which does not follow the growth of the sentence from its simplest to its more complex forms: and which throws no light on the distinction between the simple and the compound sentence, or between the several kinds of compound sentences. In no other way than by an accurate comprehension of these distinctions can the doctrine of the Subjunctive Mood, so preeminently important in Latin, be thoroughly learnt. To hold a just mean between *the too much* and *the too little* in the rules and examples of an elementary Syntax, is a task of no slight difficulty, and one which can hardly be performed to everybody's satisfaction: how far the Compiler has in this respect satisfied competent and candid judges, he does not pretend to guess, but he will be very thankful to learn. Meanwhile he may observe that the number of his Latin Syntax Rules is nearly the same as that of "King Edward the VIth's Latin Grammar:" rather less than more: the number of his Examples is also less. He thinks it probable that the rules might be yet further curtailed without disadvantage: but this is one of the questions which he desires to refer to the judgment of others.

† Or Prosody might be learnt *pari passu* with the Latin Syntax.

tion and repetition of the Syntax Rules. Prosody being learnt once throughout, they go over it again, at the same time beginning to construe and scan (with continual reference to Prosody Rules) the *Metamorphoses* and *Elegiac Extracts* of Ovid. These too they will now repeat by rote: and also commence versification. As they advance in their course of reading, their foundation must be kept secure by reference to their Grammar Rules, and by one, if not two, weekly lessons in the Grammar itself. When they are high enough to study the elegancies of Latin style in Cicero and Livy, and to write Latin themes, their attention may be called, in the course of reading, to the Notes and Excursions which appear intermixed with the Translations (but in different type) in the last part of the Grammar. These may be made the subject of occasional catechetical lessons, always accompanied with examples, to be dictated by the Master in English, and translated by the pupils into Latin, on paper, or *viva voce*, or both.* Of course these Notes and Excursions will also be required, more or less, in the School Examinations of the two highest Forms. The Compiler is well aware that no system of rules can be sufficient to form a good Latin style without the inspiration which capable minds derive from the study of the great masters of ancient eloquence: nay, he admits that a very small apparatus of rules, if it be a good one and well learnt, may enable such minds to approach the pure fountains and experience their virtue:—yet he believes that even these will find a trustworthy Grammar valuable as a standard of reference: while to the great mass of students such a guide is all but indispensable in these times, whatever it may have been in days when Latin theses and disputations, Latin conversation and correspondence, largely contributed to form an Erasmus, a Politian, a Muretus, and the other great Latinists of the 15th and 16th centuries.

A list of the English and German works on Latin Grammar, used by the Compiler in the course of his labours, would fill several pages: enough to say, that he is aware of no important treatise on this subject, which he has failed to consult. His chief obligations, however, are due to Ramshorn, A. Grotefend, O. Schulz, Billroth, Habich, Zumpt, and Stallbaum's Edition of Ruddimann's *Institutiones*. Kühner's Latin Grammar came into his hands too late to be of much service: but he had already adopted, from this author's Greek

* The Translation of the Syntax is capable of being used as an Exercise-book; and the Examples in the Notes and Excursions as Construing Lessons. For this suggestion he is indebted to "Edward the VIth's Latin Grammar."

Grammar, the three-fold division of Compound Sentences. Krüger's enlarged edition of Grotefend's Grammar has but just reached him.

The Compiler has only to add that the first edition of this work consists of a small impression, and is principally designed for circulation among Masters of Schools and men of learning in general. He will receive with gratitude and respect any opinions or suggestions which may be communicated to him from such quarters. Like the Editor of "Edward the VIth's Latin Grammar," he wishes his work to be considered as a contribution towards an improved School Grammar: and with the same Editor, he earnestly desires to see the day, when, among other pressing educational improvements, the best elementary Grammars shall be appointed by authority to be used in all the Foundation Schools of England.*

* The Compiler cannot refrain from here expressing his sense of the services rendered to educational literature by the Greek Grammar of Mr. Wordsworth, and by several of the School-books of the Rev. T. K. Arnold, especially those on Greek and Latin Prose Composition.

Shrewsbury, March 1st, 1844.

THE
RUDIMENTS
OF
LATIN GRAMMAR.

THE RUDIMENTS OF LATIN ACCIDENCE.

§ 1. **GRAMMAR** is the art which teaches the rules of correct speech. Latin Grammar teaches the rules of the Latin speech, which was spoken by the ancient Romans.

§ 2. The Parts of Speech are words: and the Elements of Words are letters.

§ 3. The Latin **LETTERS** are twenty-five, the same as the English, without W.

Capitals: A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

Small: a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

§ 4. Six of the Letters are **VOCALS, Vowels** (self-sounding), a, e, i, o, u, y: the rest are **CONSONANTS**, which cannot be sounded without a vowel.

§ 5. **CONSONANTS** are divided into Liquids, Double Consonants, and Mutes: the Liquids, are l, m, n, r: the Double Consonants, j, x, z: the rest are Mutes.

§ 6. A SYLLABLE consists of one or more letters pronounced in one breath ; as i-lēx.

A DIPHTHONG is the sound of two vowels meeting in one syllable.

There are three usual diphthongs, ae, oe, au ; and three seldom used, ai, ei, eu.

§ 7. Every Syllable is considered SHORT (˘) or LONG (¯) in quantity, according as its vowel is short or long.

A Vowel may be	{	Short by nature	as āmōr.
		Long by nature	as ēsū.
		Short by position before another vowel, as	pīos.
		Long by position before two consonants or a double consonant	as pērñōx.

Obs. All diphthongs are long ; as, caudæ.

§ 8. PUNCTA, the Signs of Punctuation, or Stops, are the same in Latin as in English : Comma (,) ; Semicolon (;) ; Colon (:) ; Full Stop (.) ; Note of Interrogation (?) ; Note of Admiration (!).

PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. THE PARTS OF SPEECH, or Words, are of three kinds :

I. NOMINA, Nouns ; which are threefold :

- (1) NOMINA SUBSTANTIVA, Nouns Substantive, or names of persons and things : as, Cæsār, *Cæsar* ; ōvum, *an egg* ; vīrtūs, *virtue*.
- (2) NOMINA ADJECTIVA, Nouns Adjective ; which express the qualities of persons and things : as clārus, *illustrious* ; grāndis, *large* ; libēr, *free*.
- (3) PRONOMINA, Pronouns ; used to avoid the frequent repetition of Substantives : as, ěgō, *I* ; tū, *thou* ; illĕ, *he* ; quī, *who*.

Note. Names of persons and places are called Proper Names : other Substantives are called Common Nouns, or Appellatives.

II. VERBA, Verbs ; which express what persons and things do, suffer, or are : as, Cēsār vēnīt, *Cæsar comes* ; virtūs laudātūr, *virtue is praised* ; ovum ēst grāndē, *the egg is large*.

III. PARTICULÆ, Particles ; which are fourfold :

(1) ADVERBIA, Adverbs ; which express the qualities of verbs or adjectives : as, bēnē, *well* ; cēlērītēr, *quickly* ; nūnc, *now*.

(2) PRÆPOSITIONES, Prepositions ; which express the relations of nouns to each other : as, Cēsār īn Itālīam vēnīt, *Cæsar comes into Italy*.

(3) CONIUNCTIONES, Conjunctions ; which connect the other parts of speech : as, ēgō ēt Cēsār, *I and Cæsar* ; vēnīt ūt laudētūr, *he comes that he may be praised*.

(4) INTERIECTIONES, Interjections ; words of exclamation : as heū, ēheū, heī, vā, *alas* ! heūs, *ho* ! O, *oh* ! ēn, ēccē, *lo* !

§ 10. THEREFORE the PARTS of SPEECH are Eight ; viz.

1. <i>Substantive</i> ;	5. <i>Adverb</i> ;
2. <i>Adjective</i> ;	6. <i>Preposition</i> ;
3. <i>Pronoun</i> ;	7. <i>Conjunction</i> ;
4. <i>Verb</i> ;	8. <i>Interjection</i> ;
which are FLĒXIBĪLĀ, <i>Flexible</i> , or, <i>declined</i> .	which are INFĒXIBĪLĀ, <i>Inflexible</i> , or, <i>undeclined</i> .

Note. FLEXIO, Flexion, is the mode of changing the endings of words in order to show their relations to other words. The flexion of Nouns is called DĒCLINĀTIŌ, *Declension* ; the flexion of Verbs CŌNJŪGĀTIŌ, *Conjugation*.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 11. THE SUBSTANTIVE is declined by Number and Case.

NUMERI, the Numbers, are two :

- I. Singulāris, *Singular*, which speaks of one, as, Māgīstēr, *a master*.
- II. Plūrālis, *Plural*, which speaks of more than one, as, Māgīstrī, *masters*.

CASUS, the Cases, are six.

- I. Nōmīnātīvūs, the *Nominative* (or Subject) Case, goes before a Verb, and answers the question Who, or What? as, Māgīstēr dōcēt, *the master teaches*.
- II. Gēnītīvūs, the *Genitive* Case, has the sign *of*, and answers the question Whose, or Whereof? as, *Whose voice?* Māgīstrī vōx, *the master's voice*.
- III. Dātīvūs, the *Dative* Case, has the signs *to, for*, and answers the question, To or for Whom? To or for What? as, *To whom do I speak?* Lōquōr māgīstrō, *I speak to the master*.
- IV. Accūsātīvūs, the *Accusative* (or Object) Case, follows the Verb, and answers the question Whom or What? as, *Whom do I see?* Vidēō māgīstrum, *I see the master*.
- V. Vōcātīvūs, the *Vocative* Case, is known by calling or speaking to: as, O māgīstēr! *O master!*
- VI. Ablātīvūs, the *Ablative* Case, has the signs *by, with, from, in*, and others, and follows prepositions: as, *By whom am I taught?* Dōcēōr ā māgīstrō, *I am taught by the master*.

§ 12. There are Five DECLENSIONS of Latin Substantives, known by the endings of the Genitive Case Singular.

The Genitive Singular of the 1st Declension ends in *æ*.

”	”	2nd	”	”	<i>i.</i>
”	”	3rd	”	”	<i>is.</i>
”	”	4th	”	”	<i>us.</i>
”	”	5th	”	”	<i>ei.</i>

§ 13. GENERA, the Genders, of Nouns are three :

I. Mascūlinum, *Masculine*.

II. Fēmīnīnum, *Feminine*.

III. Neūtrum, *Neuter*.

Note. A substantive which can be either Masculine or Feminine, is called Cōmmūnē, *Common* : as *pārēns, a parent*.

FIRST DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 14. The Nominative of the First Declension ends in *a* : except Greek Proper Names, which end in *as, es, or e*.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	Mēns-ā, <i>a table</i>	Mēns-æ,	<i>tables</i>
Gen.	Mēns-æ, <i>of a table</i>	Mēns-arum,	<i>of tables</i>
Dat.	Mēns-æ, <i>to or for a table</i>	Mēns-is,	<i>to or for tables</i>
Acc.	Mēns-am, <i>a table</i>	Mēns-as,	<i>tables</i>
Voc.	Mēns-ā, <i>O table</i>	Mēns-æ,	<i>O tables</i>
Abl.	Mēns-ā, <i>by, with, or from a table.</i>	Mēns-is,	<i>by, with, or from tables.</i>

Obs. 1. Some Nouns take *um*, by Syncope for *arum*, in Genitive Plural : as, cēlicōlūm for cēlicōlārūm.

Obs. 2. Dēā, *a goddess*, has Dative and Ablative Plural dēābūs. So filiā, *a daughter*, filiābūs.

Note. Greek Proper Names in *as, es, e*, are thus declined :—

Nom. Ēnē-as,	Gen. æ,	Dat. æ,	Acc. ān or am,	Voc. ā	Abl. ā.
Nom. Anchīs-es,	Gen. æ,	Dat. æ,	Acc. ēn,	Voc. ē or ā,	Abl. ā or ē.
Nom. Cýbēl-ē,	Gen. ēs,	Dat. æ,	Acc. ēn	Voc. ē	Abl. ē.

SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 15. The Nominative of the Second Declension ends in *us* or *er*, of the Masculine gender : in *um* of the Neuter gender.

(a) Masculine Substantives.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Dömin-ūs, <i>a lord</i>	Dömin-I, <i>lords</i>
Gen.	Dömin-I, <i>of a lord</i>	Dömin-örum, <i>of lords</i>
Dat.	Dömin-ö, <i>to or for a lord</i>	Dömin-is, <i>to or for lords</i>
Acc.	Dömin-um, <i>a lord</i>	Dömin-ös, <i>lords</i>
Voc.	Dömin-ě, <i>O lord</i>	Dömin-I, <i>O lords</i>
Abl.	Dömin-ö, <i>by, with, or from a lord.</i>	Dömin-is, <i>by, with, or from lords.</i>

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Mägist-ēr, <i>a master</i>	Mägist-I, <i>masters</i>
Gen.	Mägist-I, <i>of a master</i>	Mägist-örum, <i>of masters</i>
Dat.	Mägist-ö, <i>to or for a master</i>	Mägist-is, <i>to or for masters</i>
Acc.	Mägist-um, <i>a master</i>	Mägist-ös, <i>masters</i>
Voc.	Mägist-ēr, <i>O master</i>	Mägist-I, <i>O masters</i>
Abl.	Mägist-ö, <i>by, with, or from a master.</i>	Mägist-is, <i>by, with, or from masters.</i>

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Pü-ēr, <i>a boy</i>	Püer-I, <i>boys</i>
Gen.	Püer-I, <i>of a boy</i>	Püer-örum, <i>of boys</i>
Dat.	Püer-ö, <i>to or for a boy</i>	Püer-is, <i>to or for boys</i>
Acc.	Püer-um, <i>a boy</i>	Püer-ös, <i>boys</i>
Voc.	Pü-ēr, <i>O boy</i>	Püer-I, <i>O boys</i>
Abl.	Püer-ö, <i>by, with, or from a boy.</i>	Püer-is, <i>by, with, or from boys.</i>

(b) Neuter.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Rēgn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms</i>
Gen.	Rēgn-I, <i>of a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-örum, <i>of kingdoms</i>
Dat.	Rēgn-ö, <i>to or for a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-is, <i>to or for kingdoms</i>
Acc.	Rēgn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms</i>
Voc.	Rēgn-um, <i>O kingdom</i>	Rēgn-ā, <i>O kingdoms</i>
Abl.	Rēgn-ö, <i>by, with, or from a kingdom.</i>	Rēgn-is, <i>by, with, or from kingdoms.</i>

Obs. 1. Most Substantives in *er* are declined like *mägistēr*, dropping *e*.
Those declined like *püer*, keeping *e*, are :
söcēr, gēnēr, armīgēr,
ädültēr, vespēr, signífēr.

Obs. 2. *Lībēr, a book, is declined like māgīstēr. Lībēr, Bacchus, and lībērt, children, like pūēr.*

Obs. 3. *Fīfīūs, a son, gēnīūs, and Roman Proper Names in ūs, make the Vocative in ī: as fīfī, O son, gēnī, O genius, Mērcūrī, O Mercurius, Cāī, O Caius, Pōmpēī, O Pompeius.*

Obs. 4. *Genitives in īi are frequently contracted into ī; as Ingēnīum, disposition, Ingēnī, Ingēnī.*

Obs. 5. *Some Nouns take also um by Syncope for orum, in Gen. Plur.: as nūmmūm for nūmmōrum.*

Note. 1. *Dēūs, God, is thus declined:—*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Dēūs, <i>God</i>	Dēī, Dīi, or Dī, <i>Gods</i>
Gen.	Dēī, <i>of God</i>	Dēōrum or Dēūm, <i>of Gods</i>
Dat.	Dēō, <i>to God</i>	Dēīs, Dīs, or Dīs, <i>to Gods</i>
Acc.	Dēum, <i>God</i>	Dēōs, <i>Gods</i>
Voc.	Dēūs, <i>O God</i>	Dēī, Dīi, or Dī, <i>O Gods</i>
Abl.	Dēō, <i>by, with, or from God.</i>	Dēīs, Dīs, or Dīs, <i>by, with, or from Gods.</i>

Note. 2. *Vīr, a man, is thus declined:—*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Vīr, <i>a man</i>	Vīrī, <i>men</i>
Gen.	Vīrī, <i>of a man</i>	Vīrōrum, <i>of men</i>
Dat.	Vīrō, <i>to a man</i>	Vīrīs, <i>to men</i>
Acc.	Vīrum, <i>a man</i>	Vīrōs, <i>men</i>
Voc.	Vīr, <i>O man</i>	Vīrī, <i>O men</i>
Abl.	Vīrō, <i>by, with, or from a man.</i>	Vīrīs, <i>by with, or from men.</i>

Note 3. *Greek words in ōs, ōn, are thus declined:—*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Nom.	Dēlōs	Cōlōn
Gen.	Dēlī	Cōlī
Dat.	Dēlō	Cōlō
Acc.	Dēlōn or Dēlum	Cōlōn
Voc.	Dēlē	Cōlōn
Abl.	Dēlō.	Cōlō.

THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 16. The Nominative of the Third Declension ends in *a, e, o, c, l, n, r, s, t, x*: the Genitive always ends in *is*, but is formed from the Nominative in many different ways.

§ 17. Formation of the Genitive.

Nom.	Termination.		Gender.
A	- -	Gen. adds <i>is</i> : as, pčemā, pčemā-tis. - -	N.
E	- -	Gen. <i>is</i> : as, mār-ē, mār-is. - -	N.
O	- -	Gen. adds <i>nīs</i> : as, lēō, lēō-nīs; nātīō, nātīō-nīs.	
		But cārō, cārnis. - -	M. F.
	DO, GO	Gen. <i>inīs</i> : as, ōrd-ō, ōrd-inīs; vīrg-ō, vīrg-inīs.	
		So hōmō, nēmō, tūrbō, Apōllō. But līgō,	
		līgōnīs, Mācēdō, Mācēdōnīs. - -	F. M.
C	- -	Gen. adds <i>is</i> : as, lāc, lāc-tis. - -	N.
L	- -	Gen. adds <i>is</i> : as, sōl, sōl-is. But mēl, mēllis;	
		fēl, fēllis. - -	N. M.
N	ĀN, ĒN, ŌN	Gen. adds <i>is</i> : as, Tītān, Tītān-is; rēn, rēn-is.	
		But sīndōn, sīndōn-is. Some Greek Proper	
		Names make <i>ontis</i> , as Xēnōphōn, Xēnōphōn-	
		tis. - -	M. F.
	ĒN	Gen. <i>inīs</i> : as, lūm-ēn, lūm-inīs. - -	N. M.
R	AR	Gen. <i>aris</i> : as, calcār, calcār-is; or <i>aris</i> , as,	
		jūbār, jūbār-is. But fār, farris. - -	N.
	ER	Gen. adds <i>is</i> : as, cārcēr, cārcēr-is; vēr,	
		vēr-is. - -	M. N.
	TER	Gen. casts out <i>e</i> and adds <i>is</i> : as, pātēr, patr-is.	
		So also Imbēr, Imbris; and names of months	
		in <i>er</i> ; as, Nōvēmbēr, Nōvēmbris. But	
		Jupitēr, Jōvis; itēr, itinēris; lātēr, lātēris.	M. N.
	OR	Gen. <i>oris</i> : as, hōnōr, hōnōr-is; but arbōr,	
		arbōr-is; cōr, cōrdis. - -	M. F. N.
	UR	Gen. adds <i>is</i> : as, fulgūr, fulgūr-is. - -	N. M.
		— <i>oris</i> : as, ēb-ūr, ēb-ōris. But jēōūr,	
		jēcīnōris and jēcōris. - -	N.
S	AS	Gen. <i>asis</i> : as, āt-as, āt-ātis. But vās, vās-is;	
		vās, vādīs; mās, mārīs; ās, āsis. Some	
		Greek masculine names in <i>as</i> make Gen.	
		<i>ānis</i> : feminine, Gen. <i>adis</i> . - -	F. M. N.
	ES	Parisyllables, Gen. <i>is</i> : as, nūb-ēs, nūb-is. - -	F. M.
		Imparisyllables, Gen. <i>itis</i> : as, mīl-ēs, mīl-itis.	M.
		— <i>ētis</i> : as, sēg-ēs, sēg-ētis. - -	M. F.
		— <i>ētis</i> : as, qui-ēs, qui-ētis. - -	F. M.
		— <i>idis</i> : only obēs, prāēs. - -	M.
		— <i>edis</i> : only pēs, pēdis,	
		with its compounds. - -	M.
		— <i>edis</i> : only mērcēs, hārēs. - -	F. M.

Nom.	Termination.		Gender.
	is	But Cérēs, Cérēris; æs, æris; præs, prædis. Parisyllables, Gen. <i>is</i> : as <i>avis</i> , <i>avis</i> ; <i>amnīs</i> , <i>amnīs</i> . - - - - - Imparisyllables, Gen. <i>idis</i> : as, <i>lāp-is</i> , <i>lāp-idis</i> . — <i>ēris</i> : only <i>cīnis</i> , <i>cīnēris</i> , and <i>pūlvīs</i> , <i>pūlvēris</i> . - - — <i>itis</i> : only <i>lis</i> , <i>Sāmnīs</i> , <i>Quīris</i> , <i>Dīs</i> . - - - But <i>sānguīs</i> , <i>sānguīnis</i> ; <i>glīs</i> , <i>glīris</i> . Gen. <i>ōis</i> : as, <i>dōs</i> , <i>dōtis</i> . - - - — <i>ōris</i> : as, <i>flōs</i> , <i>flōris</i> ; <i>ōs</i> , <i>ōris</i> . - - But <i>cūstōs</i> , <i>cūstōdis</i> ; <i>bōs</i> , <i>bōvis</i> ; <i>ōs</i> , <i>ōssīs</i> . Gen. <i>ūdis</i> : as, <i>vīrt-ūs</i> , <i>vīrt-ūdis</i> . - - - — <i>ūdis</i> : as, <i>pāl-ūs</i> , <i>pāl-ūdis</i> . But <i>pēc-ūs</i> , <i>pēc-ūdis</i> . - - - - — <i>ūris</i> : as, <i>tēll-ūs</i> , <i>tēll-ūris</i> ; and monosyl- lables; as, <i>rūs</i> , <i>mūs</i> . - - - But <i>grūs</i> , <i>grūis</i> ; <i>sūs</i> , <i>sūis</i> . Gen. <i>ēris</i> : as, <i>vūln-ūs</i> , <i>vūln-ēris</i> . - - - — <i>ōris</i> : as, <i>tēmp-ūs</i> , <i>tēmp-ōris</i> ; <i>pēc-ūs</i> , <i>pēc-ōris</i> . - - - - Gen. <i>ādis</i> : only <i>lāūs</i> , <i>lāudis</i> ; <i>fraūs</i> , <i>fraūdis</i> . Gen. <i>is</i> for <i>s</i> : as <i>frōns</i> , <i>frōntis</i> ; <i>pārs</i> , <i>pārtis</i> . But <i>frōns</i> , <i>frōndis</i> ; <i>glāns</i> , <i>glāndis</i> . - Gen. inserts <i>i</i> before <i>s</i> : as <i>trābs</i> , <i>trābis</i> ; <i>stīrpe</i> , <i>stīrpis</i> ; <i>hīēms</i> , <i>hīēmīs</i> . But <i>cālēba</i> , <i>cāl-</i> <i>libis</i> ; <i>prīncēps</i> , <i>prīncēpis</i> . - - - Gen. <i>itis</i> : only <i>cāp-ūt</i> , <i>cāp-ītis</i> , and its com- pounds. - - - - Gen. <i>ācis</i> : as, <i>pāx</i> , <i>pācis</i> . But <i>fax</i> , <i>fācis</i> . - Gen. <i>icis</i> : as, <i>jūd-ēs</i> , <i>jūd-icis</i> . But <i>vībēx</i> , <i>vībēcis</i> ; <i>vērvēx</i> , <i>vērvēcis</i> ; <i>nēx</i> , <i>nēcis</i> . - — <i>ēgis</i> : as, <i>lēx</i> , <i>lēgis</i> . But <i>grēx</i> , <i>grēgis</i> ; <i>rēmēx</i> , <i>rēmīgīs</i> . - - - Remark <i>sēnēx</i> , <i>sēnis</i> ; <i>sūpēllēx</i> , <i>sūpēllētīlis</i> . Gen. <i>icis</i> : as, <i>cōrn-ix</i> , <i>cōrn-icis</i> . - - - — <i>icis</i> : as, <i>cāl-ix</i> , <i>cāl-icis</i> . But <i>strīx</i> , <i>strīgīs</i> ; <i>nīx</i> , <i>nīvis</i> . - - - Gen. <i>ōcis</i> : as, <i>vōx</i> , <i>vōcis</i> . But <i>nōx</i> , <i>nōctis</i> . - Gen. <i>ūcis</i> : as, <i>nūx</i> , <i>nūcis</i> . But <i>lūx</i> , <i>lūcis</i> ; <i>cōnjūx</i> , <i>cōnjūgis</i> . - - - Gen. <i>ygis</i> : as, <i>Phryx</i> , <i>Phrygis</i> . Some have <i>ycis</i> , <i>ycis</i> . - - - Gen. <i>cis</i> or <i>gis</i> : as, <i>lynx</i> , <i>lynēis</i> ; <i>arx</i> , <i>arcis</i> ; <i>Sphīnx</i> , <i>Sphīngīs</i> . - - -	F. M. M. F. M. M. F. M. F. M. N. F. F. N. M. F. N. N. F. F. M. F. M. N. F. M. F. M. F. F. F. F. M. F. M. F. M. F. M. F.

Obs. Parisyllable is a Noun having as many syllables in the Gen. Sing. as in the Nom.: Imparisyllable a Noun having more syllables in the Gen. Sing. than in the Nom.

§ 18.

EXAMPLES IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A. Masculine and Feminine Substantives.

(a) Parasyllables ; or not increasing in the Genitive Singular.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Nūb-ēs, <i>a cloud</i>	Nūb-ēs, <i>clouds</i>
Gen.	Nūb-īs, <i>of a cloud</i>	Nūb-ium, <i>of clouds</i>
Dat.	Nūb-i, <i>to or for a cloud</i>	Nūb-ibūs, <i>to or for clouds</i>
Acc.	Nūb-em, <i>a cloud</i>	Nūb-ēs, <i>clouds</i>
Voc.	Nūb-ēs, <i>O cloud</i>	Nūb-ēs, <i>O clouds</i>
Abl.	Nūb-ē, <i>by, with, or from a cloud.</i>	Nūb-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from clouds.</i>

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Civ-īs, <i>a citizen</i>	Civ-ēs, <i>citizens</i>
Gen.	Civ-īs, <i>of a citizen</i>	Civ-ium, <i>of citizens</i>
Dat.	Civ-i, <i>to or for a citizen</i>	Civ-ibūs, <i>to or for citizens</i>
Acc.	Civ-em, <i>a citizen</i>	Civ-ēs, <i>citizens</i>
Voc.	Civ-īs, <i>O citizen</i>	Civ-ēs, <i>O citizens</i>
Abl.	Civ-ē, <i>by, with, or from a citizen.</i>	Civ-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from citizens.</i>

(b) Imparasyllables ; or increasing in the Genitive Singular.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Lēō, <i>a lion</i>	Lēōn-ēs, <i>lions</i>
Gen.	Lēōn-īs, <i>of a lion</i>	Lēōn-um, <i>of lions</i>
Dat.	Lēōn-i, <i>to or for a lion</i>	Lēōn-ibūs, <i>to or for lions</i>
Acc.	Lēōn-em, <i>a lion</i>	Lēōn-ēs, <i>lions</i>
Voc.	Lēō, <i>O lion</i>	Lēōn-ēs, <i>O lions</i>
Abl.	Lēōn-ē, <i>by, with, or from a lion.</i>	Lēōn-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from lions.</i>

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Virgō, <i>a virgin.</i>	Virgīn-ēs, <i>virgins</i>
Gen.	Virgīn-īs, <i>of a virgin</i>	Virgīn-um, <i>of virgins</i>
Dat.	Virgīn-i, <i>to or for a virgin</i>	Virgīn-ibūs, <i>to or for virgins</i>
Acc.	Virgīn-em, <i>a virgin</i>	Virgīn-ēs, <i>virgins</i>
Voc.	Virgō, <i>O virgin</i>	Virgīn-ēs, <i>O virgins</i>
Abl.	Virgīn-ē, <i>by, with, or from a virgin.</i>	Virgīn-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from virgins.</i>

3.

Nom.	Ætās, <i>an age</i>	Ætāt-ēs, <i>ages</i>
Gen.	Ætāt-is, <i>of an age</i>	Ætāt-um, <i>of ages</i>
Dat.	Ætāt-i, <i>to or for an age</i>	Ætāt-ibūs, <i>to or for ages</i>
Acc.	Ætāt-em, <i>an age</i>	Ætāt-ēs, <i>ages</i>
Voc.	Æt-ās, <i>O age</i>	Ætāt-ēs, <i>O ages</i>
Abl.	Ætāt-ē, <i>by, with, or from an age.</i>	Ætāt-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from ages.</i>

4.

Nom.	Cōmēs, <i>a companion</i>	Cōmīt-ēs, <i>companions</i>
Gen.	Cōmīt-is, <i>of a companion</i>	Cōmīt-um, <i>of companions</i>
Dat.	Cōmīt-i, <i>to or for a companion</i>	Cōmīt-ibūs, <i>to or for companions</i>
Acc.	Cōmīt-em, <i>a companion</i>	Cōmīt-ēs, <i>companions</i>
Voc.	Cōmēs, <i>O companion</i>	Cōmīt-ēs, <i>O companions</i>
Abl.	Cōmīt-ē, <i>by, with, or from a companion.</i>	Cōmīt-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from companions.</i>

5.

Nom.	Sērpēs, <i>a serpent</i>	Sērpēt-ēs, <i>serpents</i>
Gen.	Sērpēt-is, <i>of a serpent</i>	Sērpēt-um, <i>of serpents</i>
Dat.	Sērpēt-i, <i>to or for a serpent</i>	Sērpēt-ibūs, <i>to or for serpents</i>
Acc.	Sērpēt-em, <i>a serpent</i>	Sērpēt-ēs, <i>serpents</i>
Voc.	Sērpēs, <i>O serpent</i>	Sērpēt-ēs, <i>O serpents</i>
Abl.	Sērpēt-ē, <i>by, with, or from a serpent.</i>	Sērpēt-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from serpents.</i>

B. Neuter Substantives.

(a) Plural *ia*.

1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Mār-ē, <i>the sea</i>	Mār-īā, <i>seas</i>
Gen.	Mār-is, <i>of the sea</i>	Mār-ium, <i>of seas</i>
Dat.	Mār-i, <i>to or for the sea</i>	Mār-ibūs, <i>to or for seas</i>
Acc.	Mār-ē, <i>the sea</i>	Mār-īā, <i>seas</i>
Voc.	Mār-ē, <i>O sea</i>	Mār-īā, <i>O seas</i>
Abl.	Mār-i, <i>by, with, or from the sea.</i>	Mār-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from seas.</i>

2.

Nom.	Anīmāl, <i>an animal</i>	Anīmāl-īā, <i>animals</i>
Gen.	Anīmāl-is, <i>of an animal</i>	Anīmāl-ium, <i>of animals</i>
Dat.	Anīmāl-i, <i>to or for an animal</i>	Anīmāl-ibūs, <i>to or for animals</i>
Acc.	Anīmāl, <i>an animal</i>	Anīmāl-īā, <i>animals</i>
Voc.	Anīmāl, <i>O animal</i>	Anīmāl-īā, <i>O animals</i>
Abl.	Anīmāl-i, <i>by, with, or from an animal.</i>	Anīmāl-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from animals.</i>

(b) Plural *a*.

1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Opër- <i>a</i> , a work	Opër- <i>ă</i> , works
Gen.	Opër- <i>ă</i> , of a work	Opër- <i>um</i> , of works
Dat.	Opër- <i>i</i> , to or for a work	Opër- <i>ibûs</i> , to or for works
Acc.	Op- <i>ûs</i> , a work	Opër- <i>ă</i> , works
Voc.	Op- <i>ûs</i> , O work	Opër- <i>ă</i> , O works
Abl.	Opër- <i>ě</i> , by, with, or from a work.	Opër- <i>ibûs</i> , by, with, or from works.

2.

Nom.	Fulmën, lightning	Fulmîn- <i>ă</i> , lightnings
Gen.	Fulmîn- <i>is</i> , of lightning	Fulmîn- <i>um</i> , of lightnings
Dat.	Fulmîn- <i>i</i> , to or for lightning	Fulmîn- <i>ibûs</i> , to or for lightnings
Acc.	Fulmën, lightning	Fulmîn- <i>ă</i> , lightnings
Voc.	Fulmën, O lightning	Fulmîn- <i>ă</i> , O lightnings
Abl.	Fulmîn- <i>ě</i> , by, with, or from lightning.	Fulmîn- <i>ibûs</i> , by, with, or from lightnings.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 19. The Nominative of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in *us*; that of Neuter Substantives in *u*.

1.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Grăd- <i>ûs</i> , a step	Grăd- <i>ûs</i> , steps
Gen.	Grăd- <i>ûs</i> , of a step	Grăd- <i>ûum</i> , of steps
Dat.	Grăd- <i>ûi</i> , to or for a step	Grăd- <i>ibûs</i> , to or for steps
Acc.	Grăd- <i>um</i> , a step	Grăd- <i>ûs</i> , steps
Voc.	Grăd- <i>ûs</i> , O step	Grăd- <i>ûs</i> , O steps
Abl.	Grăd- <i>û</i> , by, with, or from a step.	Grăd- <i>ibûs</i> , by, with, or from steps.

2.

Nom.	Gën- <i>û</i> , a knee	Gën- <i>ûă</i> , knees
Gen.	Gën- <i>û</i> , of a knee	Gën- <i>ûum</i> , of knees
Dat.	Gën- <i>û</i> , to or for a knee	Gën- <i>ibûs</i> , to or for knees
Acc.	Gën- <i>û</i> , a knee	Gën- <i>ûă</i> , knees
Voc.	Gën- <i>û</i> , O knee	Gën- <i>ûă</i> , O knees
Abl.	Gën- <i>û</i> , by, with, or from a knee.	Gën- <i>ibûs</i> , by, with, or from knees.

Obs. 1. The following words take *ādūs* instead of *ībūs* in the Dative and Ablative Plural :

Arcūs, trībūs, ārtūs,
Spēcūs, pōrtūs, pārtūs,
Quercūs, ācūs,
Vērū, lācūs.

Obs. 2. Dōmūs follows the Second and Fourth Declensions ; but in the Voc. Sing. is always dōmūs ; in the Nom. Plural always dōmūs ; in the Dat. and Abl. always dōmībūs.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 20. The Nominative ends in *es*.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Fācī-ēs, <i>a face</i>	Fācī-ēs, <i>faces</i>
Gen.	Fācī-ēi, <i>of a face</i>	Fācī-ērum, <i>of faces</i>
Dat.	Fācī-ēi, <i>to or for a face</i>	Fācī-ēbūs, <i>to or for faces</i>
Acc.	Fācī-em, <i>a face</i>	Fācī-ēs, <i>faces</i>
Voc.	Fācī-ēs, <i>O face</i>	Fācī-ēs, <i>O faces</i>
Abl.	Fācī-ē, <i>by, with, or from a face</i>	Fācī-ēbūs, <i>by, with, or from faces.</i>

ON SOME CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 21.

Im prō *em* Accūsātīvō,
I prō *e* in Ablātīvō,
Dānt *būris*, *cūcūmīs*, *āmūssīs*,
Vis, *secūris*, *sītīs*, *tūssīs* ;
Et flūmīnā quā claudīt *is*,
Ut *Albis*, *Liris*, *Tibēris*.

Im vėl *em* Accūsātīvō,
I vėl *e* in Ablātīvō,
Sūmunt *febris*, *rēstīs*, *clāvis*,
Puppis, *tūrris*, *clāssis*, *nāvis*,
Mēssīs, *pēlvīs* ; addē hīs
Sēmētīs atque *strīgūlīs*.

§ 22.

I Singulārīs Ablātīvī,
Ia Plūralīs Nōmīnātīvī,
Neutrā gaudēt fingērē,
Quā ēxēunt in *al*, *ar*, *e*.

Hīs ēxēptā sūnt in *ar*,
Baccār, *nēctār*, *jūbār*, *fār*.

§ 23.

Ium prō *um* quā ēffērunt
Plūralī Gēnītīvō sūnt :

- (1.) *I* fōrmāntiā Ablātīvō, (ut *mārē*)
- (2.) Nōn crēscēntiā Gēnītīvō ;
(ut *nūbēs*)
- (3.) Plērāquē in *x* vėl *s*
Pōst cōnsōnāntem pōsītis :
(ut *ār*, *serpēs*)
- (4.) Cum āllīs Mōnōsyllābīs ;
Mās, *mūs*, *nīx*, *nōx*, *ōs*
(*ōssīs*), *cōs*,
Sāl, *sōl*, *cōr*, *pāx*, *glīs*,
līs, et *dōs*.

Hīs ēxēpiendā sūnt
(Quā *um* libēntēr ēffērunt),
Vātēs, *sēnēx*, *pātēr*, *pānīs*,
Et *accipītēr*, ēt *cānīs*,
Frātēr, *mātēr*, *jūvēnīs*,
Et sēpiūs *āpis*, *vōlūcrīs*.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 24. A. Adjectives of THREE TERMINATIONS in *us, a, um*, or *er, a, um*, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter Genders like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine Gender like Substantives of the First Declension: as, *bönūs, good*; *nigĕr, black*; *tĕnĕr, tender*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Bön-ūs	bön-ă	bön-um	Bön-I	bön-æ	bön-ă
G. Bön-I	bön-æ	bön-I	Bön-ōrum	bön-ārum	bön-ōrum
D. Bön-ō	bön-æ	bön-ō	Bön-īs	bön-īs	bön-īs
A. Bön-um	bön-am	bön-um	Bön-ōs	bön-ās	bön-ă
V. Bön-ĕ	bön-ă	bön-um	Bön-I	bön-æ	bön-ă
A. Bön-ō	bön-ă	bön-ō	Bön-īs	bön-īs	bön-īs
N. Nig-ĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	Nigr-I	nigr-æ	nigr-ă
G. Nigr-I	nigr-æ	nigr-I	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
D. Nigr-ō	nigr-æ	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
A. Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ă
V. Nig-ĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	Nigr-I	nigr-æ	nigr-ă
A. Nigr-ō	nigr-ă	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
N. Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-I	tĕnĕr-æ	tĕnĕr-ă
G. Tĕnĕr-I	tĕnĕr-æ	tĕnĕr-I	Tĕnĕr-ōrum	tĕnĕr-ārum	tĕnĕr-ōrum
D. Tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-æ	tĕnĕr-ō	Tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs
A. Tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-am	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ōs	tĕnĕr-ās	tĕnĕr-ă
V. Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-I	tĕnĕr-æ	tĕnĕr-ă
A. Tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-ō	Tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs

Obs. The Adjectives declined like *tĕnĕr* are, *ăspĕr, lăcĕr, libĕr, mĭsĕr, prŏspĕr*, and the compounds of *fĕrŏ* and *gĕrŏ*, as, *aŭrĭfĕr, bĕlligĕr*. *Dĕxtĕr* is declined both ways.

§ 25. B. Adjectives with Two TERMINATIONS follow the Third Declension of Substantives: as, *tristĭs, sad*; *fĕlĭx, happy*; *ingĕns, large*; *mĕlĭŏr, better*.

<i>Singular.</i>								
M. F.		N.	M. F.		N.	M. F.		N.
N.	Trist-is	trist-ĕ		Fel-ix			Ingĕns	
G.	Trist-is			Felic-is			Ingĕnt-is	
D.	Trist-i			Felic-i			Ingĕnt-i	
A.	Trist-em	trist-ĕ	Felic-em	fel-ix		Ingĕnt-em	Ingĕns	
V.	Trist-is	trist-ĕ		Fel-ix			Ingĕns	
A.	Trist-i			Felic-i			Ingĕnt-i or ĕ	

<i>Plural.</i>					
N. Trist-ēs	trist-īā	Felic-ēs	felic-īā	Ingēnt-ēs	Ingēnt-īā
G. Trist-ūm		Felic-ūm		Ingēnt-ūm	
D. Trist-ībūs		Felic-ībūs		Ingēnt-ībūs	
A. Trist-ēs	trist-īā	Felic-ēs	felic-īā	Ingēnt-ēs	Ingēnt-īā
V. Trist-ēs	trist-īā	Felic-ēs	felic-īā	Ingēnt-ēs	Ingēnt-īā
A. Trist-ībūs		Felic-ībūs		Ingēnt-ībūs	

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M. F.		N.	M. F.		N.
N. Mēlī-ōr		mēlī-ūs	Mēlīōr-ēs		mēlīōr-ā
G. Mēlīōr-īs			Mēlīōr-um		
D. Mēlīōr-i			Mēlīōr-ībūs		
A. Mēlīōr-em		mēlī-ūs	Mēlīōr-ēs		mēlīōr-ā
V. Mēlī-ōr		mēlī-ūs	Mēlīōr-ēs		mēlīōr-ā
A. Mēlīōr-ē or i			Mēlīōr-ībūs		

Obs. Adjectives in *er*, following the Third Declension of Substantives, have Three Terminations in the Nom. Sing. : *aa*, *ācēr*, *ācr-īs*, *ācr-ē*, *sharp*; *cēlēr*, *cēlēr-īs*, *cēlēr-ē*, *swift*.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Sing.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Acēr	ācr-īs	ācr-ē	Cēlēr	cēlēr-īs	cēlēr-ē
G. Acr-īs	ācr-īs	ācr-īs	Cēlēr-īs	cēlēr-īs	cēlēr-īs
D. Acr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i	Cēlēr-i	cēlēr-i	cēlēr-i
A. Acr-em	ācr-em	ācr-ē	Cēlēr-em	cēlēr-em	cēlēr-ē
V. Acēr	ācr-īs	ācr-ē	Cēlēr	cēlēr-īs	cēlēr-ē
A. Acr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i	Cēlēr-i	cēlēr-i	cēlēr-i

The Plural terminations are like those of *tristis*.

§ 26. The following are irregularly declined in the Singular.

<i>Unūs, one.</i>				<i>Utēr, which of two.</i>			
M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.	
N. Un-ūs	ūn-ā	ūn-um		Ut-ēr	utr-ā	utr-um	
G. Un-iūs					Utr-iūs		
D. Un-i					Utr-i		
A. Un-um	ūn-am	ūn-um		Utr-um	utr-am	utr-um	
A. Un-ō	ūn-a	ūn-ō		Utr-ō	utr-a	utr-ō	

<i>Aliūs, another.</i>				<i>Altēr, one of two.</i>			
M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.	
N. Aī-ūs	āī-ā	āī-ūd		Altēr	altēr-ā	altēr-um	
G. Aī-iūs					Altēr-iūs		
D. Aī-i					Altēr-i		
A. Aī-um	āī-am	āī-ūd		Altēr-um	altēr-am	altēr-um	
A. Aī-ō	āī-a	āī-ō		Altēr-ō	altēr-a	altēr-ō	

Obs. Like *unūs* are declined *ullūs*, *any*; *nullūs*, *none*; *sollūs*, *alone*; *tōtūs*, *whole*. Like *utēr*; *neūtēr*, *neither*; *ūtērquē*, *each*; *ūtēr-vīs*, *utērlibēt*, *which you will*.

COMPARISON.

§ 27. THE ADJECTIVE is compared by Three Degrees; the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative: as,

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
Dūrūs, <i>hard</i> ;	dūriōr, <i>harder</i> ;	dūrissīmūs, <i>hardest</i> ;

The Comparative is formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *ior*.

The Superlative is formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *issimus*: as,

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
Dūrūs, <i>hard</i> , Gen. dūr-ī	dūr-iōr	dūr-issīmūs
Brēvīs, <i>short</i> , „ brēv-īs	brēv-iōr	brēv-issīmūs
Aūdāx, <i>bold</i> , „ aūdāc-īs	aūdāc-iōr	aūdāc-issīmūs

§ 28. EXCEPTIONS.

- (1) Adjectives in *er* form the Superlative by adding *-rimus* to the Nominative: as, pūlchēr, *beautiful*, Comp. pūlchr-iōr, Sup. pūlchēr-rimūs; cēlēr, *swift*, cēlēriōr, cēlērrimūs. So vētūs, *ancient*, (Gen. vētēris,) Sup. vētērrimūs.

- (2) The following form the Superlative in *illimūs*:
fācīlis, difficīlis,
sīmīlis, dissīmīlis,
grācīlis, et hūmīlis.

- (3) Adjectives in *-dicūs*, *-ficūs*, *-völūs*, form their Comparatives and Superlatives from *-dicēns*, *-ficēns*, *völēns*: as,

mālēdicūs, *slanderous*, mālēdicēntiōr, mālēdicēntissīmūs,
bēnēficūs, *beneficent*, bēnēficēntiōr, bēnēficēntissīmūs,
bēnēvölūs, *benevolent*, bēnēvölēntiōr, bēnēvölēntissīmūs.

- (4) If the Positive has a vowel before *us*, the Comparative and Superlative are formed by prefixing the Adverbs māgīs, *more*, mākīmē, *most*, to the Positive: as, ārdū-ūs, *steep*; māgīs ārdūūs, *more steep*; mākīmē ārdūūs, *most steep*. But those in *quus* are compared as usual: as, āntiquūs, *ancient*, āntiquiōr, āntiquissīmūs. So strēnūūs, *vigorous*, forms Sup. strēnūissīmūs; pīūs, *pious*, pīissīmūs.

§ 29.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
Bōnūs, <i>good</i>	mēliōr, <i>better</i>	optīmūs, <i>best</i>
Mālūs, <i>bad</i>	pejōr, <i>worse</i>	pessimūs, <i>worst</i>
Māgnūs, <i>great</i>	mājōr	māximūs
Pārvūs, <i>small</i>	mīnōr, <i>less</i>	mīnimūs, <i>least</i>
Mūltūs, <i>much</i>	(plūs,) <i>more</i>	plūrimūs, <i>most</i>
Nēquam, <i>wicked</i>	nēquiōr	nēquissimūs
Divēs, <i>rich</i>	divitiōr or ditīōr	divitissimūs or ditissimūs
Sēnēx, <i>old</i>	sēniōr	(natū māximūs)
Jūvenīs, <i>young</i>	jūniōr	(natū mīnimūs)
Extēriūs, <i>outward</i>	extēriōr	extremūs (<i>outermost</i>)
Infēriūs, <i>low</i>	infēriōr	infimūs and imūs
Sūpēriūs, <i>high</i>	sūpēriōr	supremūs and summūs
Pōstēriūs, <i>hindward</i>	pōstēriōr	pōstrēmūs (<i>hindmost</i>)

Comparatives and Superlatives formed from Prepositions.

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
(Citrā, <i>this side of</i>)	citēriōr	citīmūs
(Intrā, <i>within</i>)	intēriōr	intīmūs
(Ultrā, <i>beyond</i>)	ultēriōr	ultīmūs
(Præ, <i>before</i> .)	priōr	primūs
(Prōpē, <i>near</i>)	prōpiōr	prōximūs.

Comparatives and Superlatives formed without a Positive.

Comp.	Sup.	Comp.	Sup.
Dētēriōr, <i>worse</i>	dētērrimūs	Ociōr, <i>swifter</i>	ocissimūs
Pōtiōr, <i>more desirable</i>	pōtissimūs		

Obs. Many Adjectives are not compared at all.

§ 30. ADVERBS derived from Adjectives, are compared in *us* and *e*: as,

(Dignūs, *worthy*.) dignē, *worthily*, digniūs, dignissimē,
(Grāvis, *weighty*.) grāvītēr, *weightily*, grāviūs, grāvissimē.

In the same manner,—

Sæpē, *often*, sæpiūs, sæpissimē,

Diū, *long*, diūtiūs, diūtissimē,

Pēnītūs, *deeply*, pēnitiūs, pēnītissimē.

Māgis, *more*, māximē; ociūs, *more quickly*, ocissimē;
pōtiūs, *rather*, pōtissimū; priūs, *sooner*, primum;
have no Positive.

Bellē, *prettily*, bellissimē; mēritō, *deservedly*, mēritis-
simē; nūpēr, *lately*, nūpērrimē; have no Compa-
rative.

Sātīs, *enough*, sātiūs; sēcūs, *wrongly*, sēcūs; have
no Superlative.

§ 31. NUMERALIA, NUMERALS.

SIGLA NUMERORUM ARABICA.	SIGLA ROMANA.	CARDINALIA; answering the question Quot? how many?	ORDINALIA; answering the question Quotus? which in numeric order?	DISRUTIVA; answering the question Quotena? how many each?	ADVERBIA NUMERALIA; answering the question Quoties? how many times?
1	I	unus	primus	singuli	semel.
2	II	duo	secundus	binī	bis.
3	III	tres	tertius	terni or trinī	ter.
4	IV	quatuor	quartus	quaterni	quater.
5	V	quinque	quintus	quinī	quinquies.
6	VI	sex	sextus	seni	sexies.
7	VII	septem	septimus	septeni	septies.
8	VIII	octo	octavus	octoni	octies.
9	IX	novem	nonus	noveni	novies.
10	X	decem	decimus	deni	decies.
11	XI	undecim	undecimus	undeni	undecies.
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus	duodeni	duodecies.
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni	tredecies.
14	XIV	quatuordecim	quartus decimus	quaterni deni	quatuordecies.
15	XV	quindecim	quintus decimus	quinī deni	quindecies.
16	XVI	sedecim	sextus decimus	seni deni	sedecies.
17	XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	septeni deni	septendecies.
18	XVIII	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodevicensi	duodevicies.
19	XIX	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undevicensi	undevicies.
20	XX	viginti	vicesimus	vicensi	vicies.
21	XXI	unus et viginti	unus et vicesimus	vicensi singuli	semel et vices.
28	XXVIII	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodevicensi	duodevicies.
29	XXIX	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undevicensi	undevicies.
30	XXX	triginta	trigesimus	tricensi	trices.
40	XLI	quadraginta	quadragessimus	quadrageni	quadragies.

	quinquaginta	quinquagesimus	quinquagēni	quinquagies.
50	L	sexagesimus	sexagēni	sexagies.
60	LX	septuagesimus	septuagēni	septuagies.
70	LXX	octogesima	octogēni	octogies.
80	LXXX	nonaginta	nonagēni	nonagies.
90	XC	centesima	centēni	centies.
99	IC	undecentum	undecentēni	undecenties.
100	C	centum	centēni	centies.
101	CI	centum et unus	centēni singulī	centies sēmēl.
200	CC	ducenti (ae, ā)	ducenti	ducenties.
300	CCC	trecenti	trecenti	trecenties.
400	CCCC	quadringenti	quadringēni	quadringenties.
500	D or Io	quingenti	quingēni	quingenties.
600	DC	sexcenti	sexcenti	sexcenties.
700	DCC	septingenti	septingēni	septingenties.
800	DCCC	octingenti	octingēni	octingenties.
900	DCCCC	nongenti	nongēni	nongenties.
1000	M or cIo	mille	singulā millia	millies.
2000	MM or IIM	duo millia	binā millia	biē millies.
5000	VM or Io	quinque millia	quinā millia	quinquies millies.
10,000	XM or ccIo	decem millia	denā millia	decies millies.
50,000	LM or Io	quinquaginta millia	quinquagēnā millia	quinquagies millies.
100,000	ccIo	centum millia	centēnā millia	centies millies.
500,000	Ic	quingenta millia	quingēnā millia	quingenties millies.
1,000,000	ccccIo	decies centena millia	decies centēnā millia	decies centies millies.

Obs. 1. MULTIPLICATIVA, answering the question Quotuplex? are : simplex, duplex, triplex, quadruplex, quintuplex, &c. So septemplex, sevenfold; decemplex, tenfold; centuplex, a hundredfold.

Obs. 2. PROPORTIONALIA, answering the question Quotuplus? are : duplus, triplus, quadruplus, &c.

Obs. 3. See Unus declined, § 26.

§ 32. Dŭš, Trés, and Millĭā, are thus declined :—

<i>Plural.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M. F.	N.		N.		
N. Dŭš	dŭš	dŭš	Trés	trĭā		Millĭā		
G. Dŭšŭrum	dŭšŭrum	dŭšŭrum		Trĭum		Millĭum		
D. Dŭšŭbŭs	dŭšŭbŭs	dŭšŭbŭs		Trĭbŭs		Millĭbŭs		
A. Dŭš	dŭš	dŭš	Trés	trĭā		Millĭā		
A. Dŭšŭbŭs	dŭšŭbŭs	dŭšŭbŭs		Trĭbŭs		Millĭbŭs		

Note 1.—Ambo, *both*, is declined like Dŭš.

Note 2.—The other Cardinal Numbers, from quātŭŕ to cĕntum, are undeclined. Millĕ is also an undeclined Adjective.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

§ 33. PRONOMINA, Pronouns, are Fourfold :

A. PERSONALIA, Personal Pronouns : ěgŏ, *I* ; tŭ, *thou* ; sŭĭ, *himself, herself, or themselves*.

B. POSSESSIVA, Possessive Pronouns, which are derived from the Genitives of the Personal Pronouns : as, mĕŭs, *mine* ; tŭŭs, *thine* ; sŭŭs, *his, her, or their own* ; nŏstĕr, *our* ; vĕstĕr, *your*.

C. DEMONSTRATIVA, Demonstrative Pronouns : hĭc, *this* ; ĭs, *illĕ, istĕ, that* ; ĭpsĕ, *self* ; ĭdem, *the same*.

D. RELATIVUM, the Relative Pronoun : quĭ, *who or which* ; INTERROGATIVUM, the Interrogative, quĭs, *who or what?* and their compounds.

§ 34. A. PERSONALIA.

1.—Pronoun of 1st Person.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	Ėgŏ, <i>I</i>	nŏs, <i>us</i>
G.	mĕĭ, <i>of me</i>	nŏstrĭ and nŏstrŭm, <i>of us</i>
D.	mĭhi, <i>to or for me</i>	nŏbĭs, <i>to or for us</i>
A.	mĕ, <i>me</i>	nŏs, <i>us</i>
A.	mĕ, <i>by, with, or from me</i> .	nŏbĭs, <i>by, with or from us</i> .

2.—Pronoun of 2d Person.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N.	Tŭ, <i>thou</i>	vŏs, <i>ye</i>
G.	tŭĭ, <i>of thee</i>	vĕstrĭ and vĕstrŭm, <i>of you</i>
D.	tŭbi, <i>to or for thee</i>	vŏbĭs, <i>to or for you</i>
A.	tĕ <i>thee</i>	vŏs, <i>you</i>
A.	tĕ, <i>by, with, or from thee</i> .	vŏbĭs, <i>by, with, or from you</i> .

3.—Pronoun of 3d Person.

Sing. and Plur.

N.	(wanting)
G.	Sŭi, of himself, herself, or themselves
D.	sibi, to or for himself, herself, or themselves
A.	sē or sēsē, himself, herself, or themselves
A.	sē or sēsē, by himself, herself, or themselves.

Obs. These Pronouns sometimes take the syllable met : as, ēgōmēt, I myself; vōsmēt, ye yourselves; sībīmēt, to himself.

§ 35.

B. POSSESSIVA.

Mēūs, mēā, mēum ; tūūs, tūā, tūum ; sūūs, sūā, sūum ; like bōnūs, § 24.
Nōstēr, nōstrā, nōstrum ; vēstēr, vēstrā, vēstrum ; like nīgēr, § 24.

Obs. 1. Mēūs, Voc. Masc. mī.

Obs. 2. GENTILIA POSSESSIVA : nōstr-ās, -ātis, of our country ; vēstr-ās, -atis, of your country ; cūj-ās, -ātis, of what country ?

Obs. 3. The POSSESSIVE RELATIVE, cūjūs, cūjā, cūjum, whose ?

§ 36.

C. DEMONSTRATIVA.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Sing.</i>		
N. Hic	hæc	hōc		illē	illā	illud	Is	ēā	īd
G.	hūjūs				illiūs			ējūs	
D.	huic				illi			ēi	
A. hūne	hāne	hōc		illum	illam	illud	ēum	ēam	īd
A. hōc	hāc	hōc		illo	illa	illo	ēo	ēā	ēo
	<i>Plur.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. hī	hæ	hæc		illi	illæ	illæ	īi	ēæ	ēā
G. hōrum	hārum	hōrum		illōrum	illārum	illōrum	ēōrum	ēārum	ēōrum
D.	his				illis			īs or ēis	
A. hōs	hās	hæc		illos	illas,	illæ	ēos	ēas	ēā
A.	his				illis			īs or ēis	
	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. Idēm	ēādem	īdem		īdem	ēādem	ēādem			
G.	ējūdem			ēōrūdem	ēārūdem	ēōrūdem			
D.	ēīdem				īdem or ēīdem				
A. ēūdem	ēādem	īdem		ēōdem	ēādem	ēādem			
A. ēōdem	ēādem	ēōdem			īdem or ēīdem				

Obs. Istē is declined like illē ; ipse like illē, but with Neut. S. ipsum.

§ 37.

D. RELATIVUM.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
N. Qui	quæ	quod		quī	quæ	quæ
G.	cūjūs			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui				quibūs or quæis	
A. quem	quam	quod		quos	quās	quæ
A. quō	quā	quō			quibūs or quæis	

The following are mostly declined like Qui.

- (1) Quis, quæ, quid or quodd; G. cūjs, &c.; *who or what?* (Interrogative.)
- (2) Quis, quæ, quid, *any one*. (Indefinite.) Qui is also used indefinitely.
- (3) Quidam, quædam, quoddam or quiddam; G. cūjūsdam; Acc. quēndam, quādam, quōddam, &c.; *a certain one*.
- (4) Quivis, quævis, quōdvīs or quidvīs; G. cūjūsvīs; *any one*.
- (5) Quilibet, quælibet, quōdlibet or quidlibet; G. cūjūslibet; *any one*.
- (6) Quicūquē, quæcūquē, quōdcūquē; G. cūjūscūquē; *who or whatsoever*.
- (7) Quisnam, quænam, quidnam or quōdnam; G. cūjūsnam; *who or what?*
- (8) Quisquīs, Neut. quicquid; Abl. quōquō; *who or whatsoever*.
- (9) Quisque, quæquē, quōdquē or quidquē, *each*.
- (10) Quisquam, quæquam, quidquam, *any one*.
- (11) Quispiam, quæpiam, quidpiam, *any one*.
- (12) Aliquis, aliquā, aliquōd or aliquid, *some one*.
- (13) Equis, equā, equōd or equid, *any one?*
- (14) Siquis, siquā, siquid or siquōd, *if any one*.
- (15) Unusquisquē, unæquæquē, unūmqūdquē or unūmqūdquē; G. unūscūjūsquē; *each one*.

THE VERB.

§ 38. VERBS have Two VOICES (Vōcēs):

- (1) VOX ACTIVA, the Active (or Doing) Voice: as, *āmō, I love*.
- (2) VOX PASSIVA, the Passive (or Suffering) Voice: as, *āmōr, I am loved*.

Verbs of the Active Voice are either

- (1) TRANSITIVA, acting on an object: as, *āmō Dēum, I love God: or,*
- (2) INTRANSITIVA, vel NEUTRA, expressing a state: as, *stō, I stand*.

Obs. Neuter Verbs Active have no Passive Voice, except as Impersonals in the Third Persons Singular.

DEPONENTIA, Deponent Verbs, are such as are declined in the Passive Voice only, but with an Active signification: some being Transitive; as, *hōrtōr, I exhort*; some Neuter; as, *mōrōr, I die*.

§ 39. Verbs have Three proper MOODS (Mödi) :

Modus	{	(1) INDICATIVUS, Indicative, for unconditional action : as, <i>ămō</i> , <i>I love</i> .
		(2) CONJUNCTIVUS, Conjunctive, for conditional action : as, <i>ămēm</i> , <i>I may love</i> .
		(3) IMPERATIVUS, Imperative, for command or entreaty : as, <i>ămā</i> , <i>love thou</i> .

Obs. The Conjunctive Mood is sometimes called Subjunctive, sometimes Potential.

Verbs have also :

- (1) INFINITIVUS, an Infinitive (improper) Mood, expressing the action of the Verb without relations of Person : as, *ămārē*, *to love*, *ămāvissē*, *to have loved*.
- (2) GERUNDIA, Gerunds ; Three in number :

(a) <i>ămāndī</i> , <i>of loving</i> ,	}	Which serve as Cases of the Infinitive.
(b) <i>ămāndō</i> , <i>for or by loving</i> ,		
(c) <i>ămāndum</i> , <i>loving</i> ;		
- (3) SUPINA, Supines ; Two in number :

(a) <i>ămātum</i> , <i>to love</i> ,	}	Which serve as Cases of the Infinitive.
(b) <i>ămātū</i> , <i>to be loved</i> ;		
- (4) PARTICIPIA, Participles ; Two for each Voice : as,

Active	{	Present Part.,	<i>ămāns</i> , <i>loving</i>
		Future Part.,	<i>ămātūrūs</i> , <i>about to love</i>
Passive	{	Past Part.,	<i>ămātūs</i> , <i>loved</i>
		Future Part.,	<i>ămāndūs</i> , <i>to be loved</i>

Note. Participles are so called, because they take part of the properties of Verbs, as Tense and Transitive Power, and part of the properties of Adjectives, as Case and Gender. Thus they are the Adjectives of the Verb, as the Infinitive (with the Gerunds and Supines) forms its Substantive.

§ 40. Verbs have Six TENSES (Tēmpōră) ; Three for unfinished action, Three for finished action.

Unfinished Action.

- (1) **PRÆSENS**, Present ; as, *āmō*, *I love*, or *am loving*.
 (2) **PRÆTERITUM IMPERFECTUM**, Preterimperfect : as, *āmābam*, *I was loving*.
 (3) **FUTURUM IMPERFECTUM**, vel **SIMPLEX**, Future Imperfect, or Simple : as, *āmābō*, *I shall love*, or *be loving*.

Finished Action.

- (1) **PRÆTERITUM PERFECTUM**, Preterperfect : as, *āmāvī*, *I loved*, or *have loved*.
 (2) **PRÆTERITUM PLUSQUAMPERFECTUM**, Preterpluperfect : as, *āmāvēram*, *I had loved*.
 (3) **FUTURUM PERFECTUM**, Future Perfect : as, *āmāvērō*, *I shall have loved*.

§ 41. Verbs are conjugated also by **Two NUMBERS**, Singular and Plural ; and by **Three PERSONS** in each Number :

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
The First expressing the Person or Persons who speak : as,	{ <i>ēgō āmō</i> , <i>I love</i>	{ <i>nōs āmāmūs</i> , <i>we love</i>
The Second expressing the Per- son or Persons to whom one speaks : as, - - - - -		
The Third expressing that of which one speaks : as, - - -		
	{ <i>tū āmās</i> , <i>thou lovest</i>	{ <i>vōs āmātis</i> , <i>ye love</i>
	{ <i>illē āmāt</i> , <i>he loves</i>	{ <i>illī āmānt</i> , <i>they love</i>

CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

§ 42. There are **Four CONJUGATIONS** of Latin Verbs.

- I. The First Conjugation is known by *ā* before *re* in the Infinitive : as, *āmārē*.
 II. The Second Conjugation is known by *ē* before *re* in the Infinitive : as, *mōnērē*.
 III. The Third Conjugation is known by *ē* before *re* in the Infinitive : as, *rēgērē*.
 IV. The Fourth Conjugation is known by *i* before *re* in the Infinitive : as, *aūdīrē*.

§ 43. In order to conjugate a Latin Verb, it is necessary to know : (1) The Present Indic. Act. 1st Person ; (2) The Preterperfect Indic. Act. 1st Person ; (3) The Infinitive Pres. Act. ; (4) The Supine in *um*. For from these the other Tenses are derived.

§ 44. It is useful for the learner, when conjugating a Verb, to mention also the 2d Person Sing. Pres. Indic. Act., the Gerunds, Supines, and Participles. He will therefore conjugate the Verbs as follows :—

ACTIVE VOICE.

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Pres. Ind. 1st Pers.	ām-ō	mōn-ēō	rēg-ō	aūd-iō
” 2d Pers.	ām-ās	mōn-ēs	rēg-is	aūd-is
Preterperfect	ām-āvī	mōn-ūī	rēx-ī	aūd-ivī
Infinitive	ām-ārē	mōn-ērē	rēg-ērē	aūd-irē
Gerund in di	ām-andī	mōn-ēndī	rēg-ēndī	aūd-iēndī
” do	ām-andō	mōn-ēndō	rēg-ēndō	aūd-iēndō
” dum	ām-andum	mōn-ēndum	rēg-ēndum	aūd-iēndum
Supine in um	ām-ātum	mōn-ītum	rēct-um	aūd-itum
” u	ām-ātū	mōn-ītū	rēct-ū	aūd-itū
Participle Present	ām-āns	mōn-ēns	rēg-ēns	aūd-iēns
Future	ām-ātūrūs	mōn-ītūrūs	rēct-ūrūs	aūd-itūrūs

PASSIVE VOICE.

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Pres. Ind. 1st Pers.	ām-ōr	mōn-ēōr	rēg-ōr	aūd-iōr
” 2d Pers.	ām-āris	mōn-ērīs	rēg-ērīs	aūd-irīs
Preterperfect	ām-ātus sum	mōn-ītūs sum	rēct-ūs sum	aūd-itūs sum
Infinitive	ām-ārī	mōn-ērī	rēg-ī	aūd-irī
Participle Perfect	ām-ātūs	mōn-ītūs	rēct-ūs	aūd-itūs
Participle Future	ām-andūs	mōn-ēndūs	rēg-ēndūs	aūd-iēndūs

EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

1st Conj., like ām-ō.

ār-ō, *I plough*
cērt-ō, *I contend*
clām-ō, *I cry out*
cūr-ō, *I regard*
ōpt-ō, *I wish*
pūgn-ō, *I fight*
nōmīn-ō, *I name*
ædific-ō, *I build.*

2nd Conj., like mōn-ēō.

hāb-ēō, *I have*
dēb-ēō, *I owe*
tērr-ēō, *I frighten*
prōhib-ēō, *I forbid*
ēxerc-ēō, *I exercise*
præb-ēō, *I afford*
ādhib-ēō, *I apply*
cōhib-ēō, *I restrain.*

3rd Conj., like rēg-ō.

tēg-ō, *I cover*
fig-ō, *I fix*
sūg-ō, *I suck*
jūng-ō, *I join*
cīng-ō, *I gird*
dic-ō, *I say*
duc-ō, *I lead*
vēh-ō, *I carry.*

4th Conj., like aūd-iō.

fīn-iō, *I end*
pūn-iō, *I punish*
mūn-iō, *I fortify*
nūtr-iō, *I nourish*
vēst-iō, *I clothe*
cūstōd-iō, *I guard*
impēd-iō, *I hinder*
ērūd-iō, *I instruct.*

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	S. Sum, <i>I am</i> ěs, <i>thou art</i> ěst, <i>he is</i> Pl. sũmũs, <i>we are</i> ěstis, <i>ye are</i> sũnt, <i>they are.</i>	sim, <i>I may</i> sis, <i>thou mayst</i> sĩt, <i>he may</i> sĩmũs, <i>we may</i> sĩtis, <i>ye may</i> sĩnt, <i>they may</i> } <i>be.</i>
Preterimperfect.	S. ěram, <i>I was</i> ěrās, <i>thou wast</i> ěrāt, <i>he was</i> Pl. ěrāmũs, <i>we were</i> ěrātis, <i>ye were</i> ěrānt, <i>they were.</i>	ěssem, <i>I might</i> ěssēs, <i>thou mightst</i> ěssēt, <i>he might</i> ěssēmũs, <i>we might</i> ěssētis, <i>ye might</i> ěssēnt, <i>they might</i> } <i>be.</i>
Preterperfect.	S. fũi, <i>I have</i> fũistĩ, <i>thou hast</i> fũit, <i>he has</i> Pl. fũimũs, <i>we have</i> fũistis, <i>ye have</i> fũērũnt, <i>they have</i> } <i>been.</i>	fũěrim, <i>I may</i> fũěris, <i>thou mayst</i> fũěrit, <i>he may</i> fũěrimũs, <i>we may</i> fũěritis, <i>ye may</i> fũěrint, <i>they may</i> } <i>have been.</i>
Preterpluperfect.	S. fũěram, <i>I had</i> fũěrās, <i>thou hadst</i> fũěrāt, <i>he had</i> Pl. fũěrāmũs, <i>we had</i> fũěrātis, <i>ye had</i> fũěrānt, <i>they had</i> } <i>been.</i>	fũěssem, <i>I should</i> fũěssēs, <i>thou shouldst</i> fũěssēt, <i>he should</i> fũěssēmũs, <i>we should</i> fũěssētis, <i>ye should</i> fũěssēnt, <i>they should</i> } <i>have been.</i>
Future Imperfect.	S. ěrō, <i>I shall</i> ěris, <i>thou shalt</i> ěrit, <i>he shall</i> Pl. ěrimũs, <i>we shall</i> ěritis, <i>ye shall</i> ěrũnt, <i>they shall</i> } <i>be.</i>	fũtũrũs sim, <i>I may</i> fũtũrũs sis, <i>thou mayst</i> fũtũrũs sĩt, <i>he may</i> fũtũrĩ sĩmũs, <i>we may</i> fũtũrĩ sĩtis, <i>ye may</i> fũtũrĩ sĩnt, <i>they may</i> } <i>be about to be.</i>
Future Perfect.	S. fũěrō, <i>I shall have</i> fũěris, <i>thou shalt have</i> fũěrit, <i>he shall have</i> Pl. fũěrimũs, <i>we shall have</i> fũěritis, <i>ye shall have</i> fũěrint, <i>they shall have</i> } <i>been.</i>	
Gerunds. (wanting.)		Supines. (wanting.)
Obs. Like Sum are declined its compounds ādsum, děsum, ĩsum,		

Auxiliary Verb SUM, *I am.*

ēssē, fütürs.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
ēs, ēstō, <i>be thou</i> ēstō, <i>let him be</i> ēstē ēstōtē, <i>be ye</i> sūntō, <i>let them be.</i>	ēssē, <i>to be.</i>	(ens)
	fūissē, <i>to have been.</i>	
	fütürum ēssē, <i>to be about to be.</i>	fütürs, <i>about to be.</i>
Intērsūm, ōsum, præsūm, sūbsūm, sūpērsūm. Prōsum takes <i>d</i> before <i>e</i> ; as, Prōsum, prōdēs, prōdēst, prōsūmūs, prōdēstis, prōsūnt. Absūm has Pres. Part. ābsēns; præsūm, præsēns.		

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	<i>S. Am-ō, I love</i> <i>ām-ās, thou lovest</i> <i>ām-āt, he loves</i> <i>Pl. ām-āmūs, we love</i> <i>ām-ātīs, ye love</i> <i>ām-ānt, they love.</i>	<i>ām-em, I may</i> <i>ām-ēs, thou mayst</i> <i>ām-ēt, he may</i> <i>ām-ēmūs, we may</i> <i>ām-ētīs, ye may</i> <i>ām-ēnt, they may</i>
Preterimperfect.	<i>S. ām-ābam, I was</i> <i>ām-ābās, thou wast</i> <i>ām-ābāt, he was</i> <i>Pl. ām-ābāmūs, we were</i> <i>ām-ābātīs, ye were</i> <i>ām-ābānt, they were</i>	<i>ām-ārem, I might</i> <i>ām-ārēs, thou mightst</i> <i>ām-ārēt, he might</i> <i>ām-ārēmūs, we might</i> <i>ām-ārētīs, ye might</i> <i>ām-ārēnt, they might</i>
Preterperfect.	<i>S. ām-āvī, I loved</i> <i>ām-āvistī, thou lovedst</i> <i>ām-āvīt, he loved</i> <i>Pl. ām-āvimūs, we loved</i> <i>ām-āvistīs, ye loved</i> <i>ām-āvērūnt, they loved.</i>	<i>ām-āvērim, I may</i> <i>ām-āvēris, thou mayst</i> <i>ām-āvērīt, he may</i> <i>ām-āvērimūs, we may</i> <i>ām-āvēritīs, ye may</i> <i>ām-āvērint, they may</i>
Preterpluperfect.	<i>S. ām-āvēram, I had</i> <i>ām-āvērās, thou hadst</i> <i>ām-āvērāt, he had</i> <i>Pl. ām-āvērāmūs, we had</i> <i>ām-āvērātīs, ye had</i> <i>ām-āvērānt, they had</i>	<i>ām-āvišem, I would</i> <i>ām-āvišēs, thou wouldst</i> <i>ām-āvišēt, he would</i> <i>ām-āvišēmūs, we would</i> <i>ām-āvišētīs, ye would</i> <i>ām-āvišēnt, they would</i>
Future Imperfect.	<i>S. ām-ābō, I shall</i> <i>ām-ābīs, thou shalt</i> <i>ām-ābīt, he shall</i> <i>Pl. ām-ābīmūs, we shall</i> <i>ām-ābītīs, ye shall</i> <i>ām-ābūnt, they shall</i>	<i>ām-ātūrūs sim, I may</i> <i>ām-ātūrūs sis, thou mayst</i> <i>ām-ātūrūs sīt, he may</i> <i>ām-ātūrī simūs, we may</i> <i>ām-ātūrī sītīs, ye may</i> <i>ām-ātūrī sint, they may</i>
Future Perfect.	<i>S. ām-āvērō, I shall</i> <i>ām-āvēris, thou shalt</i> <i>ām-āvērīt, he shall</i> <i>Pl. ām-āvērimūs, we shall</i> <i>ām-āvēritīs, ye shall</i> <i>ām-āvērint, they shall</i>	
Gerunds. {		<i>ām-andī, of loving</i> <i>ām-andō, for or by loving</i> <i>ām-andum, loving.</i>

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<p>ām-ā, ām-ātō, love thou ām-ātō, let him love ām-ātē, ām-ātōtē, love ye ām-antō, let them love.</p>	<p>ām-ārē, to love, or be loving.</p>	<p>ām-āns, loving.</p>
	<p>ām-āvissē, to have loved.</p>	
	<p>ām-ātūrum ēssē, to be about to love.</p>	<p>ām-ātūrūs, about to love.</p>
<p><i>Supines.</i> { ām-ātum, to love. ām-ātū, to be loved.</p>		

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	<i>S. ăm-ör, I am ăm-äräs, thou art ăm-ätür, he is Pl. ăm-ămür, we are ăm-ămĩnĩ, ye are ăm-ántür, they are</i>	<i>ăm-ër, I may ăm-ëräs, thou mayst ăm-ëtür, he may ăm-ëmür, we may ăm-ëmĩnĩ, ye may ăm-ëntür, they may</i>
Preterimperfect.	<i>S. ăm-abär, I was ăm-abäris, thou wast ăm-abätür, he was Pl. ăm-abämür, we were ăm-abämĩnĩ, ye were ăm-abántür, they were</i>	<i>ăm-arër, I might ăm-arëräs, thou mightst ăm-arëtür, he might ăm-arëmür, we might ăm-arëmĩnĩ, ye might ăm-arëntür, they might</i>
Preterperfect.	<i>S. ăm-ätüs sum, I was ăm-ätüs ęs, thou wast ăm-ätüs ęt, he was Pl. ăm-ätĩ sümüs, we were ăm-ätĩ ętüs, ye were ăm-ätĩ sünt, they were</i>	<i>ăm-ätüs sim, I may ăm-ätüs sĩa, thou mayst ăm-ätüs sīt, he may ăm-ätĩ simüs, we may ăm-ätĩ sītüs, ye may ăm-ätĩ sınt, they may</i>
Preterpluperfect.	<i>S. ăm-ätüs eram, I had ăm-ätüs örös, thou hadst ăm-ätüs ərät, he had Pl. ăm-ätĩ ərämüs, we had ăm-ätĩ ərätüs, ye had ăm-ätĩ əränt, they had</i>	<i>ăm-ätüs essem, I would ăm-ätüs ęsës, thou wouldst ăm-ätüs ęsët, he would ăm-ätĩ ęsëmüs, we would ăm-ätĩ ęsëtüs, ye would ăm-ätĩ ęsënt, they would</i>
Future Imperfect.	<i>S. ăm-abör, I shall ăm-abëris, thou shalt ăm-abitür, he shall Pl. ăm-abimür, we shall ăm-abimĩnĩ, ye shall ăm-abüntür, they shall</i>	
Future Perfect.	<i>S. ăm-ätüs ərö, I shall ăm-ätüs əräs, thou shalt ăm-ätüs ərīt, he shall Pl. ăm-ätĩ ərĩmüs, we shall ăm-ätĩ ərītüs, ye shall ăm-ätĩ ərünt, they shall</i>	

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
ăm-ăre, ăm-ătôr, <i>be thou</i> ăm-ătôr, <i>let him be</i> ăm-ămîni, ăm-ămînôr, <i>be</i> } loved. ăm-ântôr, <i>let them be</i>	ăm-ări, <i>to be loved.</i>	
	ăm-ătum ăsă, <i>to have been loved.</i>	ăm-ătus, <i>loved.</i>
	ăm-ătum iri, <i>to be about to be loved.</i>	ăm-ândus, <i>to be loved.</i>

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	<i>S. Mön-ěö, I advise</i> <i>mön-ēs, thou advisest</i> <i>mön-ēt, he advises</i> <i>Pl. mön-ēmūs, we advise</i> <i>mön-ētis, ye advise</i> <i>mön-ent, they advise.</i>	<i>mön-ěam, I may</i> <i>mön-ěās, thou mayst</i> <i>mön-ěāt, he may</i> <i>mön-ěāmūs, we may</i> <i>mön-ěātis, ye may</i> <i>mön-ěant, they may</i>
Preterimperfect.	<i>S. mön-ebam, I was</i> <i>mön-ebās, thou wast</i> <i>mön-ebāt, he was</i> <i>Pl. mön-ebāmūs, we were</i> <i>mön-ebātis, ye were</i> <i>mön-ebant, they were</i>	<i>mön-erem, I might</i> <i>mön-erēs, thou mightst</i> <i>mön-erēt, he might</i> <i>mön-erēmūs, we might</i> <i>mön-erētis, ye might</i> <i>mön-erēnt, they might</i>
Preterperfect.	<i>S. mön-ūī, I advised</i> <i>mön-ūīsti, thou advisedst</i> <i>mön-ūīt, he advised</i> <i>Pl. mön-ūīmūs, we advised</i> <i>mön-ūīstis, ye advised</i> <i>mön-ūērunt, they advised.</i>	<i>mön-ūērim, I may</i> <i>mön-ūēris, thou mayst</i> <i>mön-ūērīt, he may</i> <i>mön-ūērimūs, we may</i> <i>mön-ūērītis, ye may</i> <i>mön-ūērint, they may</i>
Preteruperfect.	<i>S. mön-ūēram, I had</i> <i>mön-ūērās, thou hadst</i> <i>mön-ūērāt, he had</i> <i>Pl. mön-ūērāmūs, we had</i> <i>mön-ūērātis, ye had</i> <i>mön-ūērānt, they had</i>	<i>mön-ūīssēm, I would</i> <i>mön-ūīssēs, thou wouldst</i> <i>mön-ūīssēt, he would</i> <i>mön-ūīssēmūs, we would</i> <i>mön-ūīssētis, ye would</i> <i>mön-ūīssēnt, they would</i>
Future Imperfect.	<i>S. mön-ēbō, I shall</i> <i>mön-ēbis, thou shalt</i> <i>mön-ēbīt, he shall</i> <i>Pl. mön-ēbīmūs, we shall</i> <i>mön-ēbītis, ye shall</i> <i>mön-ēbūnt, they shall</i>	<i>mön-ītūrūs sim, I may</i> <i>mön-ītūrūs sis, thou mayst</i> <i>mön-ītūrūs sīt, he may</i> <i>mön-ītūrī sīmūs, we may</i> <i>mön-ītūrī sītis, ye may</i> <i>mön-ītūrī sint, they may</i>
Future Perfect.	<i>S. mön-ūērō, I shall</i> <i>mön-ūēris, thou shalt</i> <i>mön-ūērīt, he shall</i> <i>Pl. mön-ūērimūs, we shall</i> <i>mön-ūērītis, ye shall</i> <i>mön-ūērint, they shall</i>	
	<i>Gerunds.</i> { <i>mön-ēndī, of advising</i> <i>mön-ēndō, for or by advising</i> <i>mön-ēndum, advising.</i>	

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<p>mǎn-ě, mǎn-ětǎ, <i>advise thou</i> mǎn-ětǎ, <i>let him advise</i> mǎn-ětě, mǎn-ětǎtě, <i>advise ye</i> mǎn-ěntǎ, <i>let them advise.</i></p>	<p>mǎn-ěřě, <i>to advise,</i> <i>or be advising.</i></p>	<p>mǎn-ěns, <i>advising.</i></p>
	<p>mǎn-ŭssě, <i>to have</i> <i>advised.</i></p>	
	<p>mǎn-ŭtŭrum ěssě, <i>to</i> <i>be about to advise.</i></p>	<p>mǎn-ŭtŭrŭs, <i>about</i> <i>to advise.</i></p>
<p><i>Supines.</i> { mǎn-ŭtum, <i>to advise</i> mǎn-ŭtŭ, <i>to be advised.</i></p>		

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	<i>S. Mön-ëör, I am mön-ëris, thou art mön-ëtür, he is Pl. mön-ëmür, we are mön-ëmîni, ye are mön-ëntür, they are</i>	<i>mön-ëär, I may mön-ëäris, thou mayst mön-ëätür, he may mön-ëämür, we may mön-ëäminî, ye may mön-ëäntür, they may</i>
Preterimperfect.	<i>S. mön-ebär, I was mön-ebäris, thou wast mön-ebätür, he was Pl. mön-ebämür, we were mön-ebäminî, ye were mön-ebäntür, they were</i>	<i>mön-erër, I might mön-erëris, thou mightst mön-erëtür, he might mön-erëmür, we might mön-erëminî, ye might mön-erëntür, they might</i>
Preterperfect.	<i>S. mön-îtüs sum, I was mön-îtüs ës, thou wast mön-îtüs ësät, he was Pl. mön-îti sümüs, we were mön-îti ësüs, ye were mön-îti sünt, they were</i>	<i>mön-îtüs sim, I may mön-îtüs sis, thou mayst mön-îtüs sät, he may mön-îti simus, we may mön-îti sitis, ye may mön-îti sint, they may</i>
Preterpluperfect.	<i>S. mön-îtüs eram, I had mön-îtüs ëras, thou hadst mön-îtüs ërät, he had Pl. mön-îti ëramüs, we had mön-îti ërätis, ye had mön-îti ërânt, they had</i>	<i>mön-îtüs ëssem, I would mön-îtüs ëssës, thou wouldst mön-îtüs ëssët, he would mön-îti ëssëmüs, we would mön-îti ëssëtis, ye would mön-îti ëssënt, they would</i>
Future Imperfect.	<i>S. mön-ëbör, I shall mön-ëbëris, thou shalt mön-ëbitür, he shall Pl. mön-ëbümür, we shall mön-ëbümîni, ye shall mön-ëbüntür, they shall</i>	
Future Perfect.	<i>S. mön-îtüs ërö, I shall mön-îtüs ëris, thou shalt mön-îtüs ërit, he shall Pl. mön-îti ërimüs, we shall mön-îti ëritis, ye shall mön-îti ërünt, they shall</i>	

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
mōn-ērē, mōn-ētōr, <i>be thou</i> mōn-ētōr <i>let him be</i> mōn-ēmīnī, mōn-ēmīnōr, <i>[be ye</i> mōn-ētōr, <i>let them be</i>	mōn-ērī, <i>to be advised.</i>	
	mōn-ītum ēssē, <i>to have been advised.</i>	mōn-ītūs, <i>advised.</i>
	mōn-ītum irī, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>	mōn-ēndūs, <i>to be advised.</i>

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	<i>S. Rēg-ō, I rule, rēg-is, thou rulest rēg-it, he rules Pl. rēg-imūs, we rule rēg-itīs, ye rule rēg-unt, they rule.</i>	<i>rēg-am, I may rēg-ās, thou mayst rēg-āt, he may rēg-amūs, we may rēg-atīs, ye may rēg-ant, they may</i> } <i>rule.</i>
Preterimperfect.	<i>S. rēg-ēbam, I was rēg-ēbās, thou wast rēg-ēbāt, he was Pl. rēg-ēbamūs, we were rēg-ēbātīs, ye were rēg-ēbant, they were</i> } <i>ruling.</i>	<i>rēg-ērem, I might rēg-ērēs, thou mightst rēg-ērēt, he might rēg-ērēmūs, we might rēg-ērētīs, ye might rēg-ērēnt, they might</i> } <i>rule.</i>
Preterperfect.	<i>S. rēx-l, I ruled rēx-istī, thou ruledst rēx-it, he ruled Pl. rēx-imūs, we ruled rēx-istīs, ye ruled rēx-ērunt, they ruled.</i>	<i>rēx-ērim, I may rēx-ēris, thou mayst rēx-ērīt, he may rēx-ērimūs, we may rēx-ērītīs, ye may rēx-ērīnt, they may</i> } <i>have ruled.</i>
Preterpluperfect.	<i>S. rēx-eram, I had rēx-ērās, thou hadst rēx-ērāt, he had Pl. rēx-ērāmūs, we had rēx-ērātīs, ye had rēx-ērānt, they had</i> } <i>ruled.</i>	<i>rēx-isseam, I would rēx-issēs, thou wouldst rēx-issēt, he would rēx-isseamūs, we would rēx-issētīs, ye would rēx-issēnt, they would</i> } <i>have ruled.</i>
Future Imperfect.	<i>S. rēg-am, I shall rēg-ēs, thou shalt rēg-ēt, he shall Pl. rēg-emūs, we shall rēg-ētīs, ye shall rēg-ēnt, they shall</i> } <i>rule.</i>	<i>rēct-ūrūs sim, I may rēct-ūrūs sis, thou mayst rēct-ūrūs sīt, he may rēct-ūrī simūs, we may rēct-ūrī sītīs, ye may rēct-ūrī sint, they may</i> } <i>be about to rule.</i>
Future Perfect.	<i>S. rēx-ērō, I shall rēx-ēris, thou shalt rēx-ērīt, he shall Pl. rēx-ērīmūs, we shall rēx-ērītīs, ye shall rēx-ērīnt, they shall</i> } <i>have ruled.</i>	
Gerunds. { <i>rēg-ēndī, of ruling rēg-ēndō, for or by ruling rēg-ēndum, ruling.</i>		

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>rĕg-ĕ, rĕg-ĭtō, rule thou</i> <i>rĕg-ĭtō, let him rule</i> <i>rĕg-ĭtĕ, rĕg-ĭtōtĕ, rule ye</i> <i>rĕg-ŭntō, let them rule.</i>	<i>rĕg-ĕrĕ, to rule, or</i> <i>be ruling.</i>	<i>rĕg-ĕns, ruling.</i>
	<i>rĕx-ĭssĕ, to have</i> <i>ruled.</i>	
	<i>rĕct-ŭrum ĕssĕ, to</i> <i>be about to rule.</i>	<i>rĕct-ŭrŭs, about to</i> <i>rule.</i>
<i>Supines.</i> { <i>rĕct-um, to rule.</i> <i>rĕct-ŭ, to be ruled.</i>		

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	<i>S. Rēg-ūr, I am rēg-ērīs, thou art rēg-itūr, he is Pl. rēg-īmūr, we are rēg-imīnī, ye are rēg-ūtūr, they are</i>	<i>rēg-ār, I may rēg-ārīs, thou mayst rēg-ātūr, he may rēg-āmūr, we may rēg-āmīnī, ye may rēg-antūr, they may</i>
Preterimperfect.	<i>S. rēg-ēbār, I was rēg-ēbārīs, thou wast rēg-ēbatūr, he was Pl. rēg-ēbāmūr, we were rēg-ēbāmīnī, ye were rēg-ēbāntūr, they were</i>	<i>rēg-ērēr, I might rēg-ērērīs, thou mightst rēg-ērētūr, he might rēg-ērēmūr, we might rēg-ērēmīnī, ye might rēg-ērēntūr, they might</i>
Preterperfect.	<i>S. rēct-ūs sum, I was rēct-ūs ēs, thou wast rēct-ūs ēst, he was Pl. rēct-ī sūmūs, we were rēct-ī ēstīs, ye were rēct-ī sūnt, they were</i>	<i>rēct-ūs sim, I may rēct-ūs sis, thou mayst rēct-ūs sīt, he may rēct-ī sīmūs, we may rēct-ī sītīs, ye may rēct-ī sīnt, they may</i>
Preterpluperfect.	<i>S. rēct-ūs ēram, I had rēct-ūs ērās, thou hadst rēct-ūs ērāt, he had Pl. rēct-ī ērāmūs, we had rēct-ī ērātīs, ye had rēct-ī ērānt, they had</i>	<i>rēct-ūs ēssem, I would rēct-ūs ēssēs, thou wouldst rēct-ūs ēssēt, he would rēct-ī ēssēmūs, we would rēct-ī ēssētīs, ye would rēct-ī ēssēnt, they would</i>
Future Imperfect.	<i>S. rēg-ār, I shall rēg-ērīs, thou shalt rēg-ētūr, he shall Pl. rēg-ēmūr, we shall rēg-ēmīnī, ye shall rēg-ēntūr, they shall</i>	
Future Perfect.	<i>S. rēct-ūs ērō, I shall rēct-ūs ērīs, thou shalt rēct-ūs ērīt, he shall Pl. rēct-ī ērīmūs, we shall rēct-ī ērītīs, ye shall rēct-ī ērūnt, they shall</i>	

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
řěg-ěřě, řěg-ītōr, <i>be thou</i> řěg-ītōr, <i>let him be</i> řěg-īmīnī, řěg-īmīnōr, <i>be</i> [ye řěg-ūntōr, <i>let them be</i>	řěg-ī, <i>to be ruled.</i>	
	řěct-um ěssě, <i>to have been ruled.</i>	řěct-ūs, <i>ruled.</i>
	řěct-um īrī, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>	řěg-ěndūs, <i>to be ruled.</i>

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	<i>S. aūd-iō, I hear</i> <i>aūd-is, thou hearest</i> <i>aūd-īt, he hears</i> <i>Pl. aūd-imūs, we hear</i> <i>aūd-ītis, ye hear</i> <i>aūd-iūnt, they hear.</i>	<i>aūd-īam, I may</i> <i>aūd-īas, thou mayst</i> <i>aūd-īāt, he may</i> <i>aūd-īamūs, we may</i> <i>aūd-īātis, ye may</i> <i>aūd-īānt, they may</i>
Preterimperfect.	<i>S. aūd-īēbam, I was</i> <i>aūd-īēbas, thou wast</i> <i>aūd-īēbāt, he was</i> <i>Pl. aūd-īēbāmūs, we were</i> <i>aūd-īēbātis, ye were</i> <i>aūd-īēbānt, they were</i>	<i>aūd-īrem, I might</i> <i>aūd-īrēs, thou mightst</i> <i>aūd-īrēt, he might</i> <i>aūd-īrēmūs, we might</i> <i>aūd-īrētis, ye might</i> <i>aūd-īrēnt, they might</i>
Preterperfect.	<i>S. aūd-ivī, I heard</i> <i>aūd-ivisti, thou heardst</i> <i>aūd-ivīt, he heard</i> <i>Pl. aūd-ivimūs, we heard</i> <i>aūd-ivistis, ye heard</i> <i>aūd-ivērūt, they heard</i>	<i>aūd-ivērim, I may</i> <i>aūd-ivēris, thou mayst</i> <i>aūd-ivērīt, he may</i> <i>aūd-ivērimūs, we may</i> <i>aūd-ivēritis, ye may</i> <i>aūd-ivērīnt, they may</i>
Preterpluperfect.	<i>S. aūd-ivēram, I had</i> <i>aūd-ivērās, thou hadst</i> <i>aūd-ivērāt, he had</i> <i>Pl. aūd-ivērāmūs, we had</i> <i>aūd-ivērātis, ye had</i> <i>aūd-ivērānt, they had</i>	<i>aūd-ivissem, I would</i> <i>aūd-ivissēs, thou wouldst</i> <i>aūd-ivissēt, he would</i> <i>aūd-ivissēmūs, we would</i> <i>aūd-ivissētis, ye would</i> <i>aūd-ivissēnt, they would</i>
Future Imperfect.	<i>S. aūd-īam, I shall</i> <i>aūd-īēs, thou shalt</i> <i>aūd-īēt, he shall</i> <i>Pl. aūd-īēmūs, we shall</i> <i>aūd-īētis, ye shall</i> <i>aūd-īēnt, they shall</i>	<i>aūd-ītūrūs sim, I may</i> <i>aūd-ītūrūs sis, thou mayst</i> <i>aūd-ītūrūs sit, he may</i> <i>aūd-ītūrī simūs, we may</i> <i>aūd-ītūrī sitis, ye may</i> <i>aūd-ītūrī sint, they may</i>
Future Perfect.	<i>S. aūd-ivērō, I shall</i> <i>aūd-ivēris, thou shalt</i> <i>aūd-ivērīt, he shall</i> <i>Pl. aūd-ivērimūs, we shall</i> <i>aūd-ivēritis, ye shall</i> <i>aūd-ivērīnt, they shall</i>	
Gerunds.		<i>aūd-īēndi, of hearing</i> <i>aūd-īēndō, for or by hearing</i> <i>aūd-īēndum, hearing.</i>

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>aũd-i, aũd-itō, hear thou</i> <i>aũd-itō, let him hear</i> <i>aũd-itě, aũd-itōtě, hear ye</i> <i>aũd-iũntō, let them hear.</i>	<i>aũd-irě, to hear, or</i> <i>be hearing.</i>	<i>aũd-iěns, hearing.</i>
	<i>aũd-ivissě, to have</i> <i>heard.</i>	
	<i>aũd-itũrum essě, to</i> <i>be about to hear.</i>	<i>aũd-itũrũs, about to</i> <i>hear.</i>
<i>Supines.</i> { <i>aũd-itum, to hear</i> <i>aũd-itũ, to be heard.</i>		

	Indicative Mood.	Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.	<i>S. Aūd-iōr, I am</i> <i>aūd-īris, thou art</i> <i>aūd-itūr, he is</i> <i>Pl. aūd-imūr, we are</i> <i>aūd-imīnī, ye are</i> <i>aūd-iuntūr, they are</i>	<i>aūd-lār, I may</i> <i>aūd-lāris, thou mayest</i> <i>aūd-lātūr, he may</i> <i>aūd-lāmūr, we may</i> <i>aūd-lāmīnī, ye may</i> <i>aūd-lāntūr, they may</i>
Preterimperfect.	<i>S. aūd-īebār, I was</i> <i>aūd-īebāris, thou wast</i> <i>aūd-īebātūr, he was</i> <i>Pl. aūd-īebāmūr, we were</i> <i>aūd-īebāmīnī, ye were</i> <i>aūd-īebāntūr, they were</i>	<i>aūd-irēr, I might</i> <i>aūd-irēris, thou mightst</i> <i>aūd-irētūr, he might</i> <i>aūd-irēmūr, we might</i> <i>aūd-irēmīnī, ye might</i> <i>aūd-irēntūr, they might</i>
Preterperfect.	<i>S. aūd-itūs sum, I was</i> <i>aūd-itūs ēs, thou wast</i> <i>aūd-itūs ēst, he was</i> <i>Pl. aūd-itī sūmūs, we were</i> <i>aūd-itī ēstīs, ye were</i> <i>aūd-itī sūnt, they were</i>	<i>aūd-itūs sim, I may</i> <i>aūd-itūs sis, thou mayest</i> <i>aūd-itūs sīt, he may</i> <i>aūd-itī sīmūs, we may</i> <i>aūd-itī sītīs, ye may</i> <i>aūd-itī sīnt, they may</i>
Preterpluperfect.	<i>S. aūd-itūs ēram, I had</i> <i>aūd-itūs ērās, thou hadst</i> <i>aūd-itūs ērāt, he had</i> <i>Pl. aūd-itī ēramūs, we had</i> <i>aūd-itī ērātīs, ye had</i> <i>aūd-itī ērānt, they had</i>	<i>aūd-itūs ēssem, I would</i> <i>aūd-itūs ēssēs, thou wouldst</i> <i>aūd-itūs ēssēt, he would</i> <i>aūd-itī ēssēmūs, we would</i> <i>aūd-itī ēssētīs, ye would</i> <i>aūd-itī ēssēnt, they would</i>
Future Imperfect.	<i>S. aūd-lār, I shall</i> <i>aūd-lēris, thou shalt</i> <i>aūd-lētūr, he shall</i> <i>Pl. aūd-lēmūr, we shall</i> <i>aūd-lēmīnī, ye shall</i> <i>aūd-lēntūr, they shall</i>	
Future Perfect.	<i>S. aūd-itūs ērō, I shall</i> <i>aūd-itūs ēris, thou shalt</i> <i>aūd-itūs ērit, he shall</i> <i>Pl. aūd-itī ērimūs, we shall</i> <i>aūd-itī ēritīs, ye shall</i> <i>aūd-itī ērunt, they shall</i>	

CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

<i>Imperative Mood.</i>	<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
aũd-irĕ, aũd-itŏr, <i>be thou</i> aũd-itŏr, <i>let him be</i> aũd-imĩnĩ, aũd-imĩnŏr, <i>be</i> } heard. aũd-ĩũntŏr, <i>let them be</i>	aũd-iri, <i>to be heard.</i>	
	aũd-ĩtum ĕssĕ, <i>to have been heard.</i>	aũd-ĩtũs, <i>heard.</i>
	aũd-ĩtum iri, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>	aũd-ĩendũs, <i>to be heard.</i>

ON THE SIGNS OF THE TENSES.

§ 54. Most of the Tenses have more than one Sign, or may be put into English in more than one way, though in the foregoing tables only one is given.

SIGNS OF TENSES IN THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. Amō, *I (love, or am loving).*
 Preterimp. Amābam, *I (loved, or was loving, or used to love).*
 Preterperf. Amāvī, *I (loved, or have loved).*
 Preterplup. Amāvēram, *I had loved.*
 Fut. Imp. Amābō, *I (shall or will) (love, or be loving).*
 Fut. Perf. Amāvērō, *I (shall or will) have loved.*

SIGNS OF TENSES IN THE CONJUNCTIVE MOOD,
WHEN POTENTIAL.

Pres. Amem, *I (may, or can, or would, or should, or could) (love, or be loving).*
 Preterimp. Amārem, *I (might, or would, or should, or could) (love, or be loving, or have been loving).*
 Preterperf. Amāvērim, *I (may, or can, or might, or would, or should, or could) (have loved, or love).*
 Preterplup. Amāvissem, *I (would or should) have loved.*

§ 55.

Note 1. When the Conjunctive Mood is truly *Subjunctive* (that is to say, *subjoined* to governing Conjunctions or Relative Pronouns,) it often has the same signs as the Indicative : as,

Laūdābērīs mōdō pārēs.
Thou wilt be praised if thou obeyest.
 Laūdābār quum pārērem.
I was praised when I obeyed.
 Laūdātūr quōd pārūrīt.
He is praised because he obeyed.
 Laūdāvi eum quī pārūrēsēt.
I praised him who had obeyed.

Note 2. The Present Conjunctive is also used for the Imperative Mood : as,

Act. Amem, *may I love, or let me love.*
 Amēs, *mayst thou love, or love thou.*
 Amēt, *may he love, or let him love.*
 Amēmūs, *may we love, or let us love.*
 Amētīs, *may ye love, or love ye.*
 Amēnt, *may they love, or let them love.*

Pass. *Amër, may I be loved, or let me be loved.*
Amëris, mayst thou be loved, or be thou loved.
Amëtür, may he be loved, or let him be loved.
Amëmür, may we be loved, or let us be loved.
Amëmîni, may ye be loved, or be ye loved.
Amëntür, may they be loved, or let them be loved.

Note. 3. The Infinitive in *re* stands for the Preterimperfect as well as for the Present Tense : and the Infinitive in *isse*, for the Preterpluperfect as well as for the Preterperfect Tense : as,

- (1) *Dicît mē āmārē.*
He says (that) I am loving.
Dixît mē āmārē.
He said (that) I was loving.
 (2) *Dicît mē āmāvissē.*
He says (that) I loved, or have loved.
Dixît mē āmāvissē.
He said (that) I had loved.

VERBS IN *io* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 56. Verbs in *io* of the Third Conjugation, in the Tenses derived from the Present or Infinitive, throw away *i* before *i* or short *ë*; but keep it before *a*, *o*, *u*, or long *ē*: as, *răpî-ō, I seize, răpî-is, răpî-unt, răp-ërē, răpî-ëbam, răpî-am, răp-ërem, răp-i, răpî-ëns, &c.* These Verbs are the following with their compounds :

Cûpîō, făcîō, fîdîō, jăcîō,
Fûgîō, lăcîō, pârîō, quătîō,
Adjîcē răpîō, spēcîō, săpîō,
Grădiōr, pătîōr, mîrîōr, pîtiōr.

§ 57. VARIETIES OF FORM.

(a) The following changes are made, in the several Conjugations, chiefly by the poets :

I. *Avis* into *as*; as, *āmăstî* for *āmăvistî*; *āmăssē* for *āmăvissē*.

Aver into *ar*; as, *ămărunt* for *ămăvērunt*; *ămăram* for *ămăvēram*.

II. *Evis* into *es*; as, *implēssem* for *implēvissem*; *implēssē* for *implēvissē*.

Ever into *er*; as, *implērunt* for *implēvērunt*; *implērō* for *implēvērō*.

IV. *Iv* into *ĩ*; as, *aũdĩt* for *aũdivĩt*; *aũdĩerũnt* for *aũdivērũnt*.

Ivis into *iis*, or *is*; as, *aũdĩissě* and *aũdivissě* for *aũdivissě*.

Note. *Nōvĩ*, in the Third Conjugation, changes *ovis* into *os*; as, *nōstĩ* for *nōvistĩ*; and *over* into *or*; as, *nōram* for *nōvēram*. *Pětivĩ* from *pětō*, and *ďesĩvĩ* from *ďesinō*, take the same changes as Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

(b) The Third Person Plural of the Preterperfect Active often ends in *ērě* instead of *ērũnt*; as,

Amāvērũnt or amāvērě.

Mōnũerũnt or mōnũērě.

Rěxērũnt or rěxērě.

Aũdivērũnt or aũdivērě.

Note. We must not change *avērě* into *arě*, or *evērě* into *erě*: thus, *amārě* cannot stand for *amāvērě*, nor *implērě* for *implēvērě*, because these are the forms of the Infinitive.

(c) In the Second Persons Singular of several Passive Tenses, *re* is sometimes put for *ris*; as,

I. *Amābārĩs or amābārě*; *amābērĩs or amābērě*.

Amērĩs or amērě; *amārērĩs or amārērě*.

II. *Mōnēbārĩs or mōnēbārě*; *mōnēbērĩs or mōnēbērě*.

Mōnēārĩs or mōnēārě; *mōnērērĩs or mōnērērě*.

III. *Rěgēbārĩs or rěgēbārě*; *rěgērĩs or rěgērě*.

Rěgārĩs or rěgārě; *rěgērērĩs or rěgērērě*.

IV. *Aũdībārĩs or aũdībārě*; *aũdīērĩs or aũdīērě*.

Aũdīārĩs or aũdīārě; *aũdīrērĩs or aũdīrērě*.

Note. It is not usual to write *re* for *ris* in the Second Person Present Passive, on account of the confusion with Infin. Act. and Imper. Pass. But in Deponent Verbs the change is less displeasing; as, *hōrtārě* for *hōrtārĩs*.

(d) In the Passive Tenses formed with the Auxiliary Verb *sum*, *fũi* may be used for *sum*; *fũeram* for *eram*; *fũerō* for *erō*; *fũerim* for *sim*; and *fũissem* for *essem*; with a stronger past force: as,

Amātūs	}	{	sum or fūi, I was or have been	}	{	loved.
Mōnītūs			eram or fūeram, I had been			advised.
Rēctūs			ērō or fūērō, I shall have been			ruled.
Aūdītūs			sim or fūerim, I may have been			heard.
			essem or fūissem, I should have been			

- (e) Dīcō, dūcō, faciō, make in the Second Person Imperative dīc, dūc, faci.
- (f) The old Infinitive Passive in *ier* for *i*, is sometimes used by the epic poets; as, āmārīēr for āmārī.
- (g) The Participle in *endus* is sometimes written *undus*, especially that of Verbs in *io*; as, faciēndūs or faciūndūs.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 58. The Participles in *rus* and *dus* may be conjugated with all the Tenses of the Verb *sum*: and this is called the Periphrastic Conjugation; as,

ACTIVE VOICE.

	(I) am	was	have been	shall be	shall have been	
Amātūrūs	sum	eram	fūi	ērō	fūērō	} about to love.
—	ēs	erās	fūistī	ērīs	fūerīs	
—	est	erāt	fūit	erit	fūerit	
Amātūrī	sūmūs	ērāmūs	fūimūs	ērīmūs	fūerimūs	
—	estīs	erātīs	fūistīs	erītīs	fūeritīs	
—	sūnt	erānt	fūerunt	erunt	fūerint	

And the other Moods in like manner.

PASSIVE VOICE.

	(I) am	was	have been	shall be	shall have been	
Amāndūs	sum	eram	fūi	ērō	fūērō	} meet to be loved.
—	ēs	erās	fūistī	ērīs	fūerīs	
—	est	erāt	fūit	erit	fūerit	
Amāndī	sūmūs	ērāmūs	fūimūs	ērīmūs	fūerimūs	
—	estīs	erātīs	fūistīs	erītīs	fūeritīs	
—	sūnt	erānt	fūerunt	erunt	fūerint	

And the other Moods in like manner.

Note. The Participle in *dus* is often called the Gerundive.

DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 59. Deponent Verbs follow the Passive Conjugation, but take also Gerunds, Supines, and Participles Active. Intransitive Deponents want the Supine in *u*, and Participle in *dus*.

(a) CONJUGATION OF TRANSITIVE DEPONENTS.

1 <i>I exhort,</i>	2 <i>fear,</i>	3 <i>speak,</i>	4 <i>divide.</i>
Hört-ör	věr-ěör	lõqu-ör	pärt-iör
Hört-ärıs	věr-erıs	lõqu-erıs	pärt-irıs
Hört-ătũs sum	věr-ıtũs sum	lõcũ-tũs sum	pärt-ıtũs sum
Hört-ări	věr-erı	lõqu-i	pärt-iri
Hört-ändı	věr-endi	lõqu-endi	pärt-iendi
Hört-ändõ	věr-endõ	lõqu-endõ	pärt-iendõ
Hört-åndum	věr-endum	lõqu-endum	pärt-iendum
Hört-atum	věr-ıtum	lõcũ-tum	pärt-ıtum
Hört-ătũ	věr-ıtũ	lõcũ-tũ	pärt-itũ
Hört-ans	věr-ens	lõqu-ens	pärt-iens
Hört-ătũs	věr-ıtũs	lõcũ-tũs	pärt-itũs
Hört-ătũrũs	věr-ıtũrũs	lõcũ-tũrũs	pärt-itũrũs
Hört-ändũs.	věr-endũs.	lõqu-endũs.	pärt-iendũs.

(b) CONJUGATION OF INTRANSITIVE DEPONENTS.

1 <i>I wander,</i>	2	3 <i>fall,</i>	4 <i>faun.</i>
Våg-ör		lāb-ör	blānd-iör
Våg-ärıs		lāb-erıs	blānd-irıs
Våg-ătũs sum		lāp-sũs sum	blānd-ıtus sum
Våg-ări		lāb-i	blānd-iri
Våg-ändı	None.	lāb-endi	blānd-iendi
Våg-ändõ		lāb-endõ	blānd-iendõ
Våg-åndum		lāb-endum	blānd-iendum
Våg-atum		lāp-sum	blānd-ıtum
Våg-ans		lāb-ens	blānd-iens
Våg-ătũs		lāp-sũs	blānd-itũs
Våg-ătũrũs		lāp-sũrũs	blānd-itũrũs.

VERBA DERIVATA, DERIVED VERBS.

§ 60. I. Fréquēntatīvā, Frequentative Verbs, express the repetition of an action, are of the 1st Conjugation, and end in -ito, -to, -tor : as, rōg-ītō, *I ask often*, from rōg-ō ; mīn-ītōr, *I threaten often*, from mīn-ōr ; cān-tō, *I sing often*, from cān-ō.

II. Incēptīvā or Inchōatīvā, Inceptive Verbs, express the beginning of an action, are of the 3rd Conjugation, and end in -āscō, -ēscō, -iscō. Some are derived from Verbs : as,

Lāb-āscō, *I begin to totter* ; from lāb-ō (lāb-ās).
 Pāl-ēscō, *I turn pale* ; „ pāl-ēō (pāl-ēs).
 Trēm-iscō, *I begin to tremble* ; „ trēm-ō (trēm-īs).
 Scī-iscō, *I begin to know* ; „ scī-ō (scīs).

Some from Nouns : as,

Pūēr-āscō, *I become a boy* ; from pūēr.
 Mīt-ēscō, *I become mild* ; „ mītīs.

III. Dēsīdērātīvā, Desiderative Verbs, express the desire of an action, end in -ūrō of the 4th Conjugation, and are derived from Supines in -um : as,

Es-ūrō, *I am hungry* ; from ēdō, ēs-um.

VERBA ANOMALA, IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 61. Irregular Verbs are such as do not form their Tenses according to the common rules : as,

- (1) Pōssum, pōtēs, pōtūi, pōssē, pōtūissē, pōtēns, *to be able*.
- (2) Vōlō, vis, vōlūi, vēllē, vōlūissē, vōlēndi, vōlēndō, vōlēndum, vōlēns, *to be willing*.
- (3) Nōlō, nōnvīs, nōlūi, nōllē, nōlūissē, nōlēndi, nōlēndō, nōlēndum, nōlēns, *to be unwilling*.
- (4) Mālō, māvis, mālūi, māllē, mālūissē, mālēndi, mālēndō, mālēndum, mālēns, *to be more willing*.
- (5) Eō, is, ivi, irē, ivissē, itūrum ēssē, ēūndi, ēūndō, ēūndum, itum, itū, ēūns or iēns, itūrūs, *to go*.
- (6) Fērō, fērs, tūli, fērrē, tūlissē, lātūrum ēssē, fērēndi, fērēndō, fērēndum, lātum, lātū, fērēns, lātūrūs, *to bear*.
- (7) Fīō, fis, factūs sum, fiērī, factum ēssē, factum iri, factūs, fāciēndūs, *to become or be made*.
- (8) Fērōr, fērris, lātūs sum, fērri, lātum ēssē, lātum iri, lātūs, fērēndūs, *to be borne*.

Future Perfect.	Future Imperfect.	Present Imperfect.			Imperative Mood.		
		Pot-ūeram Vōl-ūeram Nōl-ūeram Mal-ūeram Iv-eram Tul-eram Fāctūs Lātūs	ū-erās -erās -erās -erās -erās -erās -erās -erās	ū-erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt	Pot-ūissem Vōl-ūissem Nōl-ūissem Mal-ūissem Iv-issem Tul-issem Fāctūs Lātūs	ū-isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs	ū-isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt
Future Perfect.	Future Imperfect.	Pot-ūerō Vōl-am Nōl-am Mal-am Iv-erō Tul-erō Fāctūs Lātūs	ū-eris -eris -eris -eris -eris -eris -eris -eris	ū-erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt	Pot-ūissem Vōl-ūissem Nōl-ūissem Mal-ūissem Iv-issem Tul-issem Fāctūs Lātūs	ū-isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs	ū-isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt
		Pot-ūerō Vōl-am Nōl-am Mal-am Iv-erō Tul-erō Fāctūs Lātūs	ū-eris -eris -eris -eris -eris -eris -eris -eris	ū-erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt -erāt	Pot-ūissem Vōl-ūissem Nōl-ūissem Mal-ūissem Iv-issem Tul-issem Fāctūs Lātūs	ū-isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs -isēs	ū-isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt -isēt

Quō, I am able, and Nēquō, I am unable, are conjugated like Eō, but have no Imperative Mood nor Gerunds.

§ 63. (9) Edō, *I eat*, ēdis *or* ēs, ēdi, ēdērē *or* ēssē, ēdissē, ēsūrum ēssē, ēdēndī, ēdēndō, ēdēndum, ēsum, ēsū, ēdēns, ēsūrūs, *to eat*.

Pres. Indic. Act.

Sing. Edō, ēdis *or* ēs, ēdit *or* ēst :

Plur. ēdimūs, ēditīs *or* ēstīs, ēdūnt.

Conjunct. Preterimp. Act.

Sing. Edērem *or* ēssem, ēdērēs *or* ēssēs, ēdērēt *or* ēssēt :

Plur. ēdērēmūs *or* ēssēmūs, ēdērētīs *or* ēssētīs, ēdērēt *or* ēssēt.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. 2nd Pers. Edē *or* ēs ; ēditō *or* ēstō ;

3rd Pers. ēditō *or* ēstō ;

Plur. 2nd Pers. ēditē *or* ēstē, ēditōtē *or* ēstōtē ;

3rd Pers. ēdūntō.

Obs. The other Tenses are regular : also the Passive Voice ; except that ēstūr may be used for ēditūr, and ēssētūr for ēdērētūr.

VERBA DEFECTIVA, DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 64. Defective Verbs are such as want many of the usual parts of a Verb.

(1) Aiō, *I say* ; and inquam (or inquīō), *say I*.

	<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Conj.</i>	<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Conj.</i>
<i>Present.</i>	Aiō	—	Inquam	—
	āis	aiās	inquīs	inquīās.
	āit	aiāt	inquīt	inquīāt.
	—	—	inquīmūs	—
	—	—	inquītīs	inquīātīs.
	aiūnt.	aiānt.	inquīunt	inquīānt.
<i>Preterimperfect.</i>	aiēbam	—	inquīēbam	—
	aiēbās	—	inquīēbās	—
	aiēbāt	—	inquīēbāt	—
	aiēbāmūs	—	inquīēbāmūs	—
	aiēbātīs	—	inquīēbātīs	—
	aiēbānt.	—	inquīēbānt.	—

Preterperf. — inquistī, inquit, — inquistīs, —

Fut. Imp. — inquitēs, inquitēt.

Imper. inquē, inquitō; inquitēt.

Part. of aiō, aiēns.

§ 65.

(2) Quāesō, *I entreat*; 1st Pers. Pl. quāesūmus.

(3) Fōrem, *I might be*; Preterimperfect Conjunctive of the old Verb fūō, and used for ēssem.

Fōrem, fōrēs, fōrēt, fōrēmūs, fōrētīs, fōrēt.

Infin. fōrē; used for fūtūrum ēssē.

(4) The Imperatives;

Apāgē, *begone*.

Avē, āvētē, *hail*; Infin. āvērē.

Cēdō, cēdītē, or cēttē, *give me*.

Sālvē, sālvētē, *hail*; Infin. sālvērē; Fut. sālvēbīs.

Vālē, vālētē, *farewell*; Infin. vālērē.

(5) Aūsīm, aūsīs, aūsīt —, —, aūsint: for aūdēam, *I may dare*.

Fāxim, fāxis, fāxīt, fāximūs, fāxītīs, fāxint: for fāciām, *I may do*, or fēcērim, *I may have done*. Also fāxō for fēcērō.

§ 66.

(6) Prætērītīvā; or Verbs conjugated only in the Preterperfect and its derived Tenses; cēpi, *I begin*; ōdī, *I hate*; mēmīnī, *I remember*.

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conj.</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
Preterperf.	Cēpi	cēpērim	cēpissē.	—
	Odī	ōdērim	ōdissē.	—
	Mēmīnī	mēmīnērim	mēmīnissē.	—
Preterplu.	Cāpēram	cāpisse.	—	—
	Odēram	ōdissem.	—	—
	Mēmīnēram	mēmīnissem.	—	—
Fut. Perf.	Cāpērō	—	cāptūrum ēssē	cāptūrūs.
	Odērō	—	ōsūrum ēssē	ōsūrūs.
	Mēmīnērō.	—	—	—

Imper. Sing. Mēmētō, *Plur.* mēmētōtē.

Obs. 1. For cēpi and its Tenses may be used the Passive cēptūs sum and its Tenses before an Infinitive Passivē.

Obs. 2. Nōvī, *I know*, Preterp. of nōscō, is also used as a Præteritive.

§ 67.

(7) Impersonal Verbs are conjugated only in the Third Persons Singular of the Proper Moods, and in the Infinitive Mood.

A. Impersonal Verbs Active have no Passive Voice. The principal of these are of the 2nd Conjugation.

Opörtēt, tædēt, mīserēt,
Pīgēt, pūdēt, pānītēt,
Lībēt, līcēt, līquēt, *et*
Dēcēt atquē dēdēcēt.

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conjunc.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	Opörtēt	öpörtēāt	öpörtērē.
<i>Preterimp.</i>	Opörtēbāt	öpörtērēt	—
<i>Preterperf.</i>	Opörtūīt	öpörtüērīt	öpörtüissē.
<i>Preterplu.</i>	Opörtüērāt	öpörtüissēt	—
<i>Fut. Imp.</i>	Opörtēbīt.		
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	Opörtüērīt.		

The Persons are expressed by the Cases following the Verb :
as,

	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	Opörtēt mē, <i>it behoves me,</i>	<i>or I am behoven.</i>
	Opörtēt tē, — <i>thee,</i>	<i>or thou art —</i>
	Opörtēt ēum, — <i>him,</i>	<i>or he is —</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Opörtēt nōs, — <i>us,</i>	<i>or we are —</i>
	Opörtēt vōs, — <i>you,</i>	<i>or ye are —</i>
	Opörtēt ēōs, — <i>them,</i>	<i>or they are —</i>

And so in the other Tenses.

§ 68. B. Intransitive Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice : as, lūdītūr, from lūdō, *I play*.

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conjunc.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	Lūdītūr	lūdātūr	lūdi.
<i>Preterimp.</i>	Lūdēbātūr	lūdērētūr.	—
<i>Preterperf.</i>	Lūsum ēst	lūsum sīt	lūsum ēssē.
<i>Preterplu.</i>	Lūsum ērāt	lūsum ēssēt	lūsum fūissē.
<i>Fut. Imp.</i>	Lūdētūr	—	lūsum iri.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	Lūsum ērīt.	—	—

The Persons are expressed by an Ablative Case with the Preposition *a* or *ab* following the Verb : as,

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>			
<i>Sing.</i>	Lūdītūr ā mē,	<i>it is played by me,</i>	or <i>I play.</i>
	Lūdītūr ā tē,	---	<i>thee,</i> or <i>thou playest.</i>
	Lūdītūr āb ēō,	---	<i>him,</i> or <i>he plays.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	Lūdītūr ā nōbīs,	---	<i>us,</i> or <i>we play.</i>
	Lūdītūr ā vōbīs,	---	<i>you,</i> or <i>ye play.</i>
	Lūdītūr āb ēīs,	---	<i>them,</i> or <i>they play.</i>

And so in the other Tenses.

§ 69. C. The Neuter of the Gerundive Participle in *dus*, is used impersonally, in the same manner, with a Dative or Ablative after it to mark the Persons : as,

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>			
<i>S.</i>	Lūdēndum ēst mīhi,	<i>it must be played by me,</i>	or <i>I</i>
	Lūdēndum ēst tībi,	---	<i>thee,</i> or <i>thou</i>
	Lūdēndum ēst ēī,	---	<i>him,</i> or <i>he</i>
<i>P.</i>	Lūdēndum ēst nōbīs,	<i>it must be played by us,</i>	or <i>we</i>
	Lūdēndum ēst vōbīs,	---	<i>you,</i> or <i>ye</i>
	Lūdēndum ēst ēīs,	---	<i>them,</i> or <i>they</i>

} *must play.*

And so in the other Tenses.

(The Particles are treated of in other parts of this Grammar.)

FIRST RULES

or

CONSTRUING AND PARSING.

FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS.

§ 70. Any full sense is a Sentence, as *I run ; you see me ; Caius went to Rome.*

Every Sentence must have a *Verb* or word of *acting*, as *run, see, went*; and also something which *acts*, called the *Subject*, and put in the Nominative Case, as *I, you, Caius*. If the Verb *acts upon* any thing, this is called its *Object*, as *me*.

§ 71. All declined words either agree with, or are governed by, some other word in a sentence. The Rules for agreement, called *Concords*, are three :

- I. An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case : as,

Rēx bōnūs, a-good king.
Oppidā captā, captured towns.

- II. A Verb in a Proper Mood agrees with its Nominative Case in Number and Person : as,

Dēūs rēgit, God rules.
Vos parētis, ye obey.

- III. The Relative, *quī quā quōd*, agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not always in Case : as,

Egō quī lōquōr, I who speak.
Mūliēr quam vidēō, the-woman whom I-see.

§ 72.

- (1) A Singular Noun of Multitude may have a Plural Verb or Adjective : as

Pars fugiunt victi, part fly conquered.

- (2) Pronoun Nominatives are generally understood : as,
Cūpimūs, we-desire.

- (3) If two or more Nominatives have the same Verb, the Verb will generally be in the Plural Number : as,
Vivant rēx et rēginā, long-live the-king and queen.

- (a) If *ego* or *nos* is one of the Nominatives, the Verb will be of the First Person : as,
Egō et tū vālemūs, thou and I are-well.

- (b) If *tu* or *vos* is one of the Nominatives, and not *ego* or *nos*, the Verb will be of the Second Person : as,
Tū et Læliūs vāletis, thou and Lælius are-well.

Obs. So, an Adjective or Relative belonging to several Substantives will be of the Plural Number : and if one of the Substantives be a living male, the Adjective will be of the Masculine Gender : but if all are lifeless things, it will generally be Neuter.

- (4) When two Substantives, referred to the same thing, come together in the same clause, they are put in the same Case, and said to be in Apposition : as,
Philippūs rēx, King Philip.

- (5) When two Substantives, referred to different things, come together in the same clause, one of them will be in the Genitive Case, with the sign of: as,
Cicēronis filiūs, son of-Cicero (or Cicero's son.)

- (6) *Sum* (I-am), *fio* (I become), with many Neuter and Passive Verbs, especially those of being *made, chosen, called*, and *esteemed*, take the same Case after as before them : as,

Socrātes erat philōsōphūs, Socrates was a-philosopher.

Vos fietis docti, ye will-become learned.

Pēpūsillī vocantūr nānī, very-little-men are-called dwarfs.

Crēdō tē esse fortē, I-believe thee to-be brave.

Obs. 1. Such Verbs are called Copulative, and the Case after them is called the Predicate.

Obs. 2. Transitive Verbs in the Passive Voice turn the Nominative of their Actives into an Ablative, with the Preposition *ā* or *ab* (by) ; and the Accusative of their Actives into a Nominative : as,

Active. *Brūtum Caiūs laudāt, Caius praises Brutus.*

Passive. *Brūtūs a Caiō laudātūr, Brutus is-praised by Caius.*

Obs. Neuter Verbs, as they take no Accusative in the Active, can only be used impersonally in the Passive.—See § 68.

§ 73. A few Rules of Government will enable the beginner to construe easy sentences.

- I. The Vocative is the Case of the person spoken to ; and is governed by an Interjection, expressed or understood : as,

Fili or *O fili, O son.*

- II. (1) Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative Case of their Object, without a sign in English : as,

Spērnē vōluptātēs, despise pleasures.

Vēnērārē Dēum, worship God.

- (2) Thirty-two Prepositions govern an Accusative Case.

- III. (1) Most Verbs may govern a Dative Case of that for the gain of which they happen, with the signs *to*, or *for* : as,

Quērō tibi dōctōrē, I-seek a-teacher for-thee.

Dā mihi librum, give the-book to-me.

- (2) Many Latin Verbs govern a Dative Case having no sign in English : as,

Opitūlarē patriæ, assist thy-country.

- (3) Most Adjectives may govern a Dative Case, which are followed by the sign *to* in English : as,

Jucundūs civibūs, pleasant to-the-citizens.

Inimicūs Cicēronī, unfriendly to-Cicero.

- IV. (1) Most Verbs and Adjectives may govern an Ablative Case of the *cause, instrument, manner, matter, or respect*, with the signs *by, with, of, from, in, &c.*: as,

Fürörē victūs, overcome by-rage.

Dentē pētīt lūpūs, the-wolf attacks with-his-tooth.

Claudūs altērō pedē, lame in-one foot.

- (2) Comparatives govern an Ablative with the sign *than*: as,

Vīlūs argētum ēst aurō, silver is less-valuable than-gold.

- (3) Fifteen Prepositions govern an Ablative Case.

- V. Many Verbs admit an Infinitive after them with the sign *to*: as,

Vēnārī tīmēt, he-fears to-hunt.

Obs. The Infinitive often has an Accusative before it with the sign *that*: as,

Crēdō lunam hābītārī, I-believe that-the-moon is-inhabited.

- VI. Some Conjunctions govern a Subjunctive Mood: as, *ut, that, ne, lest, quum, since, quamvis, although.*

Obs. 1. The Relative, *quī quæ quōd*, governs a Subjunctive Mood, when it means *because, although, in-order-that, or such-that*: as,

Missī sūnt quī spēcūlārēntūr, Men-were sent in-order-to spy.

Obs. 2. Interrogative Pronouns and Particles govern a Subjunctive, when they depend on some preceding Verb: as,

Dic quīs sis, Say who thou-art.

Obs. 3. Conjunctions meaning *and, nor, or*, couple like Cases and usually like Moods and Tenses.

§ 74. As every independent Sentence *must* have

- I. A Subject in the Nominative Case, expressed or understood;
- II. A Verb in a Proper Mood, expressed or understood, and agreeing with the Subject:

So observe more particularly:

- (a) A Substantive *may* have any of these Adjuncts:

- (1) Adjectives agreeing with it.
- (2) Substantives in apposition to it.

- (3) A Genitive governed by it.
- (4) A Preposition and Case depending on it.

(b) An Adjective *may* have any of these Adjuncts :

- (1) An Adverb qualifying it.
- (2) Oblique Cases governed by it.
- (3) A Preposition and Case depending on it.

(c) A Verb *may* have any of these Adjuncts :

- (1) An Adverb qualifying it.
- (2) Oblique Cases governed by it.
- (3) Prepositions (with their Cases) depending on it.
- (4) An Infinitive depending on it.

§ 75. Therefore, in order to construe a simple Sentence :

I. Find its Verb, which must be in a Proper Mood.

Obs. If no Verb appear, *est* or *sunt* is probably understood.

II. Find its Subject, which will be a Nominative Case of the same Number and Person as the Verb.

Obs. 1. If no such Nominative appear, the Pronoun agreeing with the Verb must generally be understood as the Subject.

Obs. 2. If an Adjective appear in the Nominative, but no Substantive, a Substantive with which it agrees is understood ; usually *man* or *men*, if the Adjective is Masculine, *thing* or *things*, if it is Neuter.

III. Find the Adjuncts of the Subject, if any.

IV. Find the Adjuncts of the Verb, seeing first if it has an Adverb.

Obs. In order to find its other Adjuncts, see whether the Verb is Copulative or not. If Copulative, the chief Adjunct will be a Predicate Substantive or Adjective. If not Copulative, the Adjuncts, if any, will be some of those above-mentioned.

V. Having done this, construe into English first the Subject (with its agreeing Adjective), then its other Adjuncts ; then the Verb (with its Adverb), then its other Adjuncts.

Note. Generally, a Simple Sentence contains only one Verb of a Proper Mood : a Compound Sentence contains two or more such Verbs. But, when a Verb is followed by an Accusative and Infinitive, the Sentence is Compound.

§ 76. Observe the following Rules for parsing the words of a Sentence, whether in writing or by mouth. State what Part of Speech any word is, and mention, if

- (1) A Substantive, { Its Case—Number—Nom. Sing.—Genitive Termination—Declension—Gender
—Word it agrees with or is governed by.

Give the Rule for its Gender, if desired, from Appendix I : and the Rule, for its agreement or government, from the Syntax.

Decline it, if desired, through both Numbers.

Obs. It is useful, with every Substantive, to decline the Adjective Pronoun *měūs*, in order to show the Gender. Thus, when required to decline *ăġēr*, a field, say—

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	<i>Ăġēr mēūs, my field</i>	<i>Ăġrī mēī, my fields</i>
Gen.	<i>Ăġrī mēī, of my field</i>	<i>Ăġrōrum mēōrum, of my fields</i>
Dat.	<i>Ăġrō mēō, to my field</i>	<i>Ăġrīs mēīs, to my fields</i>
Acc.	<i>Ăġrum mēum, my field</i>	<i>Ăġrōs mēōs, my fields</i>
Voc.	<i>Ăġēr mī, O my field</i>	<i>Ăġrī mēī, O my fields</i>
Abl.	<i>Ăġrō mēō, by my field.</i>	<i>Ăġrīs mēīs, by my fields.</i>

And in like manner—

Mēnsă mēă, my table. Opūs mēum, my work. &c., &c.

- (2) An Adjective, { Its Case—Gender—Number—Nom. Sing.—What declined like?—What it agrees with ?

Decline it, if required.

- (3) a. A Verb in a { Its Person—Tense—Mood—Voice—
Proper Mood { Verb it comes from—Kind of Verb—
Conjugation—What it agrees with ?

Conjugate it, if required, according to § 44.

Give the Rule, if required, for its Perfect and Supine, from Appendix III ; and the Syntax Rule for its construction.

- b. An Infinitive { Tense—Voice—Verb it comes from—
Kind of Verb—Conjugation—What governed by ?

- c. Gerund or { Verb it comes from, &c., &c.
Supine,

Conjugate and give Rules for b. and c. as for a.

- d. Participle, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Case—Gender—Number—Nom. Sing.} \\ \text{—Tense—Voice—Verb it comes from} \\ \text{—Kind of Verb—Conjugation—What} \\ \text{it agrees with?} \end{array} \right.$

Decline, Conjugate, and give Rules, as above, (2) (3) a.

- (4) Pronoun $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{What Antecedent?—How it agrees} \\ \text{Relative, with its Antecedent?—What Case?—} \\ \text{Why?} \end{array} \right.$

Obs. Personal Pronouns follow the rules of Substantives: Possessive those of Adjectives: Demonstrative Pronouns may be used either as Substantives or Adjectives.

- (5) Adverb, What word it qualifies?
(6) Preposition, What word it governs?

Note. When the learner is somewhat advanced, he must also state, in parsing, the derivation and composition of words, the government of Moods, &c., &c.

§ 77. EXAMPLE.—It is required to construe and parse the words:

Ad firmāndum corpūs multum cōducīt tēmpēstivā ānīmī rēmissiō, quā nēglīgi nōn pōtēst impūnē.

1. These words contain two connected simple sentences, or one compound sentence.

(1) Verb of first sentence is cōducīt (Third Pers. Sing.).

(2) Subject of first sentence is rēmissiō.

(3) Adjuncts to the Subject are,

a. Agreeing Adjective, tēmpēstivā.

b. Genitive Case, ānīmī.

(4) Adjuncts to the Verb are,

a. Adverb, multum.

b. Preposition with Case, ād firmāndum corpūs.

(1) Verb of second sentence is pōtēst.

(2) Subject of second sentence is quā.

(3) Adjuncts to the Subject quā,—none.

(4) Adjuncts to the Verb are,

a. Adverb, nōn.

b. Infinitive, nēglīgi.

c. Adverb, impūnē.

2 Construe the words in this order :

Tēpēstivā rēmissiō | ānīmī, | quā | nōn pōtēst | nēglīgi
Seasonable relaxation of-mind which can-not be-omitted
 impūnē, | cōnducit multum | ād firmāndum cōrpūs.
with-impunity, conduces much to strengthening the-body.

3 Parse thus, taking the words in order of construing :

- (1.) Tēpēstivā. Adjective. Nom. Fem. Sing. from tēpēstivūs, like bōnūs. Agrees with rēmissiō by Rule § 71 I.
- (2.) Rēmissiō. Substantive. Nom. Sing. Third Decl. Fem. (ōnīs) Subject of the Verb cōnducit. Rule for its Gender § 81 (a) (2).
- (3.) Ānīmī. Substantive. Gen. Sing. from ānīmūs (i) *mind*. Second Decl. Masc. Governed by rēmissiō by Rule, § 72 (4) or § 137. Rule for Gender § 80.
- (4.) Quā. Relative Pronoun. Agrees with Antecedent rēmissiō, being Fem. Sing. Third Pers. Rule § 71 III. or § 106. Subject Nominative to the Verb pōtēst.
- (5.) Nōn. Adverb. Qualifies the Verb pōtēst.
- (6.) Pōtēst. Verb. Third Pers. Pres. Indic. Act. from the Irregular Neuter Verb pōssum (pōtēs, &c.) § 61. Agrees with its Nom. quā by Rule § 71. II. or § 103.
- (7.) Nēglīgi. Verb. Pres. Infin. Pass. from the Trans. Verb nēglīgō (īs), *I-neglect*. Third Conj. Is governed by the Verb pōtēst by Rule § 73 V. or § 179. D. (2).
- (8.) Impūnē. Adverb. Qualifies the Verb nēglīgi (or pōtēst).
- (9.) Cōnducit. Verb. Third Pers. Pres. Indic. Act. from the Neuter Verb cōnducō (īs), *I-conduce*. Third Conj. Agrees with its Nominative Case rēmissiō by Rule, § 71. II. or § 103. Conjugate cōnducō, cōnducis, cōnduxi, &c. Rule for Preterperfect and Supine, § 90 (b).
- (10.) Multum. Adverb. Qualifies the Verb cōnducit.
- (11.) Ad. Preposition. Governs the Accus. Case cōrpūs.
- (12.) Firmāndum. Participle. Acc. Neut. Sing. from firmāndūs, Part. Fut. Pass. from the Transitive Verb firmō (ās) ; *I-strengthen* ; First Conj. Agrees with cōrpūs by Rule § 71. I. or § 102. (see § 166.)
- (13.) Cōrpūs. Substantive. Acc. Sing. from cōrpūs (ōrīs). Third Decl. Neut. Governed by ād by Rule § 73. II. (2) or § 118. Rule for Gender § 83 (c).

Note. Each rule, when required, must be repeated at full : each Substantive, when required, be declined with mēūs ; and each Verb be conjugated according to § 44.

APPENDIX.

I. DE GENERE NÓMINUM LATINORUM.

§ 78. A. REGULÆ GENERALES.

(1.) <i>Virī, Pōpūlī, ēt Divī,</i> <i>Vēntī, Mēnsēs, Mōntēs, Rivī,</i> Gēnērīs sūnt Māscūlinī.	(4.) Sūnt Cōmmūnīs Gēnērīs <i>Cānis, civis, jūvenis,</i> <i>Testis, hōstis, artifex,</i> <i>Auctōr, exsul, opifex,</i> <i>Cōmēs, hārēs, hōspēs, dux,</i> <i>Obsēs, vātēs, ēt cōjūx,</i> <i>Bōs, sūs, saccērdōs, cūstōs,</i> <i>vīdēx,</i> <i>Princēps, pārēns, infāns,</i> <i>indēx,</i> <i>Cōnoivā, milēs, ādvēnā,</i> <i>Adōlescēns, incōlā.</i>
(2.) <i>Plāntā, Divā, Fēmīnā,</i> <i>Terrā, Urbēs, Insulā,</i> Gēnērīs sūnt Fēmīnī.	
(3.) Vōx indēclinābīlīs Neutrūs ēst Gēnērīs.	

B. DE GENERE IN DECLINATIONIBUS.

§ 79. I. PRIMA DECLINATIO.

REGULA PRINCIPALIS.

A et *e* sūnt Fēmīnā ; | *As* at *ēs* sūnt Māscūlinā.

EXCEPTIONES.

Māscūlinā sūnt in *a*
Māscūlōrum nōmīnā,

Ut *navīā, vērnā, ēt pōētā,*
Scūrrā, scrībā, ēt prōphētā.

§ 80.

II. SECUNDA DECLINATIO.

REGULA PRINCIPALIS.

Măsculinis *us* et *er*, | Neutris *um* tribuñtũr.

EXCEPTIONES.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1) Fẽmininã sũnt in <i>us</i> ,
<i>Alvus</i> , <i>arctus</i> , <i>cãrbus</i> ,
<i>Cõlus</i> , <i>hũmus</i> , <i>mẽthodus</i> . | (2) Neutrã <i>virus</i> , <i>pẽlagus</i> .
<i>Vũlgus</i> fẽrẽ Neũtrum sũt,
Mãscũlum sũbĩndẽ fĩt. |
|---|--|

§ 81.

III. TERTIA DECLINATIO.

(a) PRIMA REGULA PRINCIPALIS.

Mãscũlis insẽritũr | Et Nõmẽn dẽsĩnẽns in *es*,
Quõd claudĩt *o*, *or*, *os*, vẽl *er*, | Sĩ flectĩt cãsus impãrẽs.

EXCEPTIONES.

- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) Illã Fẽmininã sũnt
In <i>do</i> et <i>go</i> quã dẽsĩnũnt :
Sẽd Mãscũlinã mãnẽnt <i>cãrdõ</i> ,
<i>Lĩgõ</i> , <i>õrdõ</i> , atquẽ <i>mãrgõ</i> . | <i>Æquõr</i> , <i>ãdõr</i> , <i>mãrmõr</i> , <i>cõr</i> :
Fẽmininum est <i>ãrbõr</i> . |
| (2) Sũnt in <i>io</i> Fẽmininã :
Tantum illã Mãscũlinã,
Quã vẽl õcũlis spẽctãbĩs,
Vẽl tũ mãnĩbũs tractãbĩs. | (5) Fẽmininã <i>cõs</i> et <i>dõs</i> ,
Neutrã sũnt ùtrũmquẽ <i>os</i> . |
| (3) <i>Cãrõ</i> (<i>cãrnĩs</i>) māvũlt sẽ
Fẽmininis addẽrẽ. | (6) Neutrã mũltã sũnt in <i>er</i> ,
<i>Vẽrbẽr</i> , <i>sĩlẽr</i> , <i>ũcõr</i> , <i>vẽr</i> ,
<i>Tũbẽr</i> , <i>ũbẽr</i> , et <i>cũdãvẽr</i> ,
<i>Pĩpẽr</i> , <i>itẽr</i> , et <i>pãpãvẽr</i> . |
| (4) Neutrã paũcã sũnt in <i>or</i> ; | (7) Et nõnnũllã sũnt in <i>es</i>
Quã flectũnt cãsus impãrẽs,
Fẽmininã, <i>cõmpẽs</i> , <i>tẽgẽs</i> ,
<i>Mẽrcẽs</i> , <i>rẽquĩẽs</i> , <i>quĩẽs</i> , <i>sẽgẽs</i> . |

§ 82.

(b) SECUNDA REGULA PRINCIPALIS.

Fẽmininis insẽrãs | *S* cum cõnsõnãntẽ nẽxã,
Quã claudũnt *is*, *x*, *aus*, et *as*, | *Es* ãquãlĩtẽr ĩnflectã.

EXCEPTIONES.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(1) Multă sunt quæ claudīt is
Mascūlini Gēnērīs,
<i>Amnis, axis, cāllis, cōllis,</i>
<i>Caulis, cucūmis, et follis,</i>
<i>Fascis, funis, fustis, finis,</i>
<i>Ignis, orbis, atque crinis,</i>
<i>Pānis, piscis, postis, ensis,</i>
<i>Sentis, cōrbis, torguis, mēnsis,</i>
<i>Torris, unguis, et cānalis,</i>
<i>Vectis, vermīs, et sōdālis,</i>
<i>Cāssis, cinis, glis, et ānguīs,</i>
<i>Lāpis, pulvis, atque sānguīs.</i></p> <p>(2) Plerăquē quæ claudīt ex
Mascūlinā sunt, ūt gr̄ex :
Sēd Fēmīnā mănēt nēx,
Sūpēllēx, ilēx, cārēx, lēx.</p> | <p>(3) Mascūlinā sunt in īx,
<i>Fōrnix, phēnix, et cālix.</i></p> <p>(4) Mascūlinā sunt in ās,
<i>Vās (vādīs), gīgās, ēlēphās,</i>
<i>As (āsis), mās, et ādāmās,</i>
Neutrā, vās (vāsīs), nēfās, fās.</p> <p>(5) Mascūlinis addē mōns,
<i>Dēns, fōns, tōrrēns, gr̄yps, et</i>
<i>pōns,</i>
<i>Rūdēns, hydrōps, atque bīdēns,</i>
<i>Oriēns, occidēns, et tridēns.</i></p> <p>(6) Mascūlinā sunt in es,
<i>Verrēs et ācinācēs.</i></p> |
|---|---|

§ 83.

(c) TERTIA REGULA PRINCIPALIS.

Neutrā claudūnt a et e, | Ar, ur, us, c, l, n, et t.

EXCEPTIONES.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>(1) Mascūlinā sunt in ur,
<i>Furfūr, tūrtūr, vultūr, fūr.</i></p> <p>(2) Mascūlinā sunt in us,
<i>Lēpūs (lēpōris) et mūs.</i></p> <p>(3) Fēmīnā sunt in ūs,
<i>Virtūs atque sērvitūs,</i>
<i>Jūvēntūs, incūs, atque pālūs,</i>
<i>Sēnēctūs, tēllūs, atque sālūs,</i>
Quībūs lōngā mănēt u
In Gēnīvī trānsītū.</p> | <p>(4) Est et pēcūs (pēcūdīs)
Fēmīnī Gēnērīs.</p> <p>(5) Mascūlā in l sunt mūgīl,
<i>Cōnsūl, sāl, sōl, atque pūgīl.</i></p> <p>(6) Mascūlinā sunt rēn, splēn,
<i>Pēctēn, dēlphīn, āltāgēn.</i></p> <p>(7) Fēmīnā sunt in on,
<i>Gōrgōn, sīndōn, hālcyōn.</i></p> |
|--|--|

§ 84.

IV. QUARTA DECLINATIO.

REGULA PRINCIPALIS.

Mascūlis in Quārtā ūs, | Neutrīs ū trībūimūs.

EXCEPTIONES.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Fēmīnā sunt in ūs
Quārtā dōmūs, pōrticōūs,</p> | <p>Acūs, Idūs, atque mănūs,
Tribūs, nūrūs, socrūs, ānūs.</p> |
|---|--|

§ 85.

V. QUINTA DECLINATIO.

REGULA PRINCIPALIS.

Femīnīnis insērēs		Quīntāe nōmīnā īn ēs.
-------------------	--	-----------------------

EXCEPTIO.

<i>Dīs est īn Singlō</i>		<i>īn Plūrālī Nūmērō</i>
<i>Fērē Femīnīnū :</i>		<i>Sēmpēr Mascūlīnū.</i>

II. DE ANOMALIS SUBSTANTIVIS.

§ 86.

I. DEFECTIVA NUMERO.

(a) Singlārīs Nūmērūs Mūltīs deest Nōmīnībūs : <i>Ut Mānēs, lōcūlī, Pēnātēs ;</i> <i>Cūnā, thērmā, nūgā, grātēs ;</i> <i>Armā, viscērā, māgālīā,</i> <i>Cum dēum festīs, ūt Flōrālīā.</i>		(b) Lēctāntībūs appārēt Mūltā quā Plūrālī cārēt.
--	--	---

II. DEFECTIVA CASIBUS.

Nōnnūllī cāsūs absūnt hīs, <i>Fās, frūgīs, dāpīs, ōpīs, vis :</i>		Et mūltā prætēr hāc appārēt Quā cāsībūs nōnnūllīs cārēt.
--	--	---

III. ABUNDANTIA NUMERO.

<i>Tārtārūs fīt īn Plūrālī</i>		<i>īn a vēl ī quā effērūt</i>
<i>Tārtārū, ēt oculū oculī.</i>		<i>Nūmērū Plūrālem, sūnt</i>
		<i>Frēnum, cārbāsūs, ēt lōcūs,</i>
		<i>Rāstrum, sībīlūs, ēt jōcūs.</i>

IV ABUNDANTIA CASIBUS.

Abūdānt quādam Cāsībūs,		Ut <i>dōmūs, laurūs, Œdīpūs.</i>
-------------------------	--	----------------------------------

III. DE PERFECTIS ET SUPINIS VERBORUM
LATINORUM.

§ 87.

I. VERBORUM PRIMA CONJUGATIO,

Cui *ō, ās, ārē*, tērminātīō,
Avī īn Pēfēctō fīt,
 Sūpīnō *ātum* sūbjīcīt.
 (Am-ō, ām-ās, ām-ārē, ām-āvī, ām-ātum.)

EXCEPTA.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>(1) Hinc excipiendā sunt
Quæ ūi, <i>itum</i> effērunt :
<i>Crēpō, cūbō, atquē sōnō,</i>
<i>Dēmō, vētō, atquē tōnō.</i></p> <p>(2) Sēd <i>sēcō, sēcūi, faciūt sēctum ;</i>
<i>Fricō, fricūi, formāt frictum.</i></p> <p>(3) <i>Jūvō, jūvi, jūtum stāt ;</i>
<i>Lāvō, lāvi, lōtum dāt,</i>
<i>Et lāvātum vindicāt.</i></p> | <p>(4) <i>Dō fit dēdi atquē dātum,</i>
<i>Sio fit sēsi atquē stātum.</i></p> <p>(5) <i>Micō flecitūr in micūi,</i>
<i>Plicō vertitūr in plicūi ;</i>
<i>Nallum fert Sūpinum micō,</i>
<i>-ātum dāt vėl -itum plicō.</i></p> |
|---|---|

§ 88. II. VERBORUM ALTERA CONJUGATIO,

Cūi, *ēō, ēs, ērē, tērminātiō,*
Ui in *Pēfēctō* fit,
Sūpinō itum subjicit.

(*Mōn-ēō, mōn-ēs, mōn-ērē, mōn-ūi, mōn-ītum.*)

EXCEPTA.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>(1) Hinc excipiendā sunt
Quæ <i>ēvi, ētum</i>, effērunt :
Ut <i>nēō</i> faciūt <i>nēvi, nētum ;</i>
<i>Dēlēō, dēl-ēvi, -ētum.</i>
<i>Addē sēō, plēō, his,</i>
<i>Et ōlēō, cum cōmpōsitis.</i></p> <p>(2) <i>His</i> in <i>di</i> <i>Pēfēctum</i> stāt,
<i>Sum</i> <i>Sūpinum</i> tērmināt.
<i>Dāt prāndi, prānsūm, prāndēō ;</i>
<i>Sēdi sēasūm, sēdēō ;</i>
<i>Vidi, vīsūm, vidēō.</i>
<i>Sēd spōndēō, spōspōndi, spōnsūm ;</i>
<i>Tōndēō, tōiōndi, tōnsūm ;</i>
<i>Mōmōrdi, mōrsūm, mōrdēō ;</i>
<i>Pēpēndi, pēnsūm, pēndēō.</i></p> <p>(3) <i>His</i> in <i>si</i> <i>Pēfēctum</i> fit,
<i>Sum</i> <i>Sūpinum</i> exigit.
<i>Dāt jūssi, jūssūm, jūddēō ;</i>
<i>Mūlsi, mūlsūm, mūlcēō ;</i>
<i>Mūlsi, mūlotum, mūlgēō ;</i>
<i>Tērsi, tērsūm, tērgēō ;</i>
<i>Arsi, ārsum, ārdēō ;</i>
<i>Rīsi, risūm, ridēō ;</i>
<i>Suāsi, suāsūm, suādēō ;</i>
<i>Mānsi, mānsūm, mānēō ;</i>
<i>Hāsi, hāsūm, hārēō.</i>
Sic <i>ēt algēō ālsi</i> dāt,
<i>Fulgēō fulsi</i> pōstulāt,</p> | <p><i>Urgēō</i> item <i>ursi</i> fit ;
Sēd <i>his</i> <i>Sūpinum</i> deficit.</p> <p>(4) <i>Dāt si</i> <i>ēt tum</i> <i>indul-gēō,</i>
<i>Sic tōr-si, tōr-tum, tōr-quēō.</i></p> <p>(5) Sēd <i>aūgēō, aūxi, auctum, sūt ;</i>
<i>Frigēō, frixi, suscipit :</i>
Sic <i>lūgēō, lūcēō, lūxi</i> dant,
Sēd nōn <i>Sūpinum</i> gēnērānt.</p> <p>(6) Hāc <i>Pēfēctō</i> vōlūt <i>vī,</i>
<i>Tum</i> <i>Sūpinō</i> sufficii :
<i>Cāvēō, cāvi, atquē caūtum ;</i>
<i>Fāvēō, fāvi, atquē fāutum ;</i>
<i>Fōvēō, fōvi, atquē fōtum ;</i>
<i>Mōvēō, mōvi, atquē mōtum ;</i>
<i>Vōvēō, vōvi, atquē vōtum.</i></p> <p>(7) <i>His</i> ūi in <i>Pēfēctō</i> stāt,
<i>Tum</i> <i>Sūpinum</i> tērmināt.
<i>Dāt dōcēō dōctum ; dāt mīstum mis-</i>
<i>oēō ; sōrptum</i>
<i>Sōrbēō ; fit tēnēō tēntum ; fit tōrrēō</i>
<i>iōstum.</i></p> <p>(8) <i>His</i> <i>Prætēritum</i> <i>Passivē,</i>
<i>Præsens</i> scribitūr <i>Activē ;</i>
<i>Aūdēō dāt ausus sum ;</i>
<i>Gaudēō, gāvissus sum ;</i>
<i>Sōlēō fit solitus sum.</i></p> |
|--|--|

§ 89. III. VERBORUM TERTIA CONJUGATIO,

Cui *ō, is, ērē, tērminātīō,*
I vėl *sī* Pērfectō dāt,
Tum vėl *sum* Sūpinō stāt.

(Rēg-ō, rēg-īs, rēx-ī, rēg-ērē, rēct-um.)

- § 90. (a) *Bō* ēt *pō*.
Bō, pō, hābēt additum
 Pērfectō *psī*, Sūpinō *ptum* :
 Ut *nūbō* formāt *nūpsī, nūptum*.

EXCEPTA.

Rūmpō, tāmēn, rūpī, rūptum ;
Bibō, bibī, bibitum ;
Strēpō, strēpū, strēpitum.

(b) *Cō, gō, hō, quō*.
Cō, gō, hō, quō, sic declinō,
Xī Pērfectō, *ctum* Sūpinō :
 Ut *dūcō* gignit *dūxī, dūotum* ;
Sūgō, sūxī, atquē sūotum ;
Rēgō, rēxī atquē rēotum ;
Vēhō, vēxī atquē vēotum.

EXCEPTA.

- (1) *Scō* Pērfectō jūbēt *vī*,
Tum Sūpinō subjici :
 Ut *crēscō, crēvī, crētum* ; *suēscō,*
Suēvī, suētum ; sic *quiescō*.
Nāscō, nōvī, nōtum dāt ;
Pāscō, pāvī, pāstum stāt.
Cōmpēscō fit *cōmpēscūi* ;
Pōpōscī, pōscō ; *dīscō, didicī*.

- (2) *Ioō* facit *ici, iotum* ;
Vinoō, vici atquē viotum ;
Linqū, liqui atquē licium.

- (3) *Pārcō* dāt *pēpērcī, pārsum*.

- (4) *Spārgō, spārsī atquē spārsum* ;
Mērgō formāt *mērsī, mērsum* ;
Tērgō, lērsī atquē tērsūm.

- (5) *Agō, ēgī atquē āctum* ;
Frāngō, frēgī atquē frāctum ;
Tāngō, tēgī ēt tāctum ;
Pāngō, pēpīgī ēt pāctum ;
Sēd cōmpōstā -pēgī -pāctum ;
Pūngō, pūpūgī, ēt pūnotum ;
Jungō facit *jūnxī, jūnotum*.

- (6) *Lēgō lēgī* pōstulāt,
 Cōmpōstum sēpē *lēxī* dāt.

- (7) *Fīgō fixum* vindicāt
 In Sūpinō : *fiṅgō, fictum* ;
Pīngō, piotum ; *stringō, strictum*.

(c) *Dō*.
Dō Pērfectō jūbēt *sī*,
Sum Sūpinō suffici.
Lēxī, lēsum, facit lēdō ;
 (Vērūm *cēssī, cēssum, cēdō*).
 Sic *il-lidō, -lixi, -lisum* ;
Dividō, divisi, -visum.

EXCEPTA.

- (1) Quē exēunt in *-āndō, -ēndō*,
 Flectē *dō* in *dī* vērtēndō.
Pēndō fit *pēpēndī, pēnsūm* ;
Tēndō dāt *tētēndī, tēnsūm*.

- (2) *Fīndō* tāmēn *fidi, fissum* ;
Sciindō, scidi atquē sciissum ;
Fūndō, fūdi, atquē fūsum ;
Tūndō, tūtūdi ēt tūsum.
Cūdō, cūdi atquē cūsum ;
Cādō, cēcidī ēt cāsum ;
Cēdō fit *cēcidī, cāsum* ;
 Facit *ēdō, ēdi, ēsum*.

- (3) *Abdō, āddō, cōndō, crēdō,*
Obdō, pērdō, rēddō, ēdō,
Prōdō, trādō, vēndō, dēdō,
Quā ā dō cōmpōstā sūnt,
-dīdī, -dītum, ēffērūt :
Ut ēdō, ēdīdī ēt ēdītum,
Dēdō, dēdīdī, ēt dēdītum.

(d) *To.*

Flectō fōrmāt flectī, flectum ;
Nectō, nectī atque nectum ;
Pectō, pectī atque pectum :
Pētiō ēt pētītum, pētō ;
Messū ēt messum, mētō ;
Mittō, misi, missum, dāt ;
Vērtō, vērtī, vērsum, stāt.
Verbum quōd ā sistō fit,
Perfectō -sistī sūfficit.

§ 91. (e) *So.*

Sō, -sivī, -situm, fit ; arcēssō
Sic fōrmātūr, ēt lūcēssō.
Visō visi vindicāt ;
Pinsō, pinsū, pistum, dāt.

§ 92. (f) *Xo.*

Unum in xō tēxō stāt,
Quōd tēxū, tēxtum, cōnjūgāt.

§ 93. (g) *Lo.*

Lō, lū, tum : cōn-sūlū, -sūltum,
Cōnsūlō ; sic cōlū, cūltum,
Cōnjūgārē gaudēt oolō ;
Sēd mōlū, mōlūtum fit, mōlō.
A cēllō vērba cēllū ;
Sēd pērcēllō, pērcūlū,
In Sūpinō dāt pērcūlsum ;
Pēllō pēpūlī ēt pūlsum ;
Vēllō, vēllī, (vūlī) vūlsum.
Fāllō fit fēfēllī, fālsū ;
Psāllō, psāllī ; sāllō, sālsū ;
Tōllō, sūstūlī fōrmātum,
In Sūpinō fit sūblātum.

(h) *Mo.*

Mō, mū, mītum fit ; ūt frēmō,
Frēmū, frēmītum ; sic gēmō,
Et Sūpinō cārēns trēmō.

EXCEPTA.

St, tum : cōmō, cōmsī, cōmtum,
Prōmō, prōmsī, atque prōmtum ;
Sic flectūtūr sūmō, dēmō ;
Sēd emī, emtum, faciūt emō ;
Prēssī, prēssum, māvūlt prēmō.

(Intēr *m* ēt *s* vēl *t*

Lātinī sēpē pōnūt *p.*

Sic fiūt sūmpsī, dēmpsī, dēmp-
tum,
Cōmptum, prōmptum, sūmptum,
ēmptum.)

(i) *No.*

Cānō, cāntum, cēcīnī,
Cōmpōstā -cēntum, -cīnī ;
Gīgnō, gēnū, gēnitum ;
Fit pōnō, pōsū, pōsitum ;
Tēmnō, tēmsī, tēmtum, dāt ;
Stērnō, strāvī, strātum, stāt.
Spērnō faciūt sprēvī, sprētum ;
Cērnō, crēvī atque crētum ;
Līnō, lēvī atque lītum ;
Sīnō, sīvī atque sītum.

(j) *Rō.*

Vērō, vērrī atque vērsū ;
Cūrō dāt cūcūrri, cūrsū ;
Quērō fit quā-sivī, -situm ;
Tērō, trivī atque trītum ;
Urō, ūssī, ūstum, stāt ;
Gērō, gēssī, gēstum, dāt ;
Fērō faciūt tūlī, lātum ;
Sērō sēvī atque sūtum ;
Sērō sērū, sērtum dāt.
Si cum vī nēctēndī stāt.

§ 94. (k) *Io.*

Fāciō pōcīt fēcī, fāctum ;
Jāciō, jēcī atque jāctum ;
Dānt ā lāciō, lēcī, lēctum ;
Et ā spēciō, spēcī, spēctum ;
Fōdiō, fōdī fit fōssū atque ;
Fūgiō, fūgī, fūgitum atque ;
Cūpiō faciūt cēpī, cāptum ;

Rāpiō, rāpiī ēt rāptum ;
Cūp-ivī, -itum, cūpiō ;
Pēpēri, pārtum, pāriō ;
Quātiō quāssum pōstulāt,
Sēd in cōmpōstis -cūssum dāt.

§ 95. (1) *Uō ēt vō.*

Uō fōrmāt ūi, ūtum ;
Ut tribūō, tribūi, tribūtum.
Vō inflectit vi ēt ūtum :

Ut sōlvō, sōlvi, ēt sōlūtum ;
Vōlvō, vōlvi, ēt vōlūtum.

EXCEPTA.

Flūō faciūt flūzum, flūzi ;
Strūō, strūctum, ātquē strūzi ;
Vivō, vīzi, victum, dāt ;
Sīnguō, sīnzi, sīnctum, stāt.

§ 96. IV. VERBORUM QUARTA CONJUGATIO,

Cuī iō, is, ire, tērmīnātiō,
Ivi in Perfectō fit,
Sūpinō itum sūfficit.

(*Aūd-iō, aūd-is, aūd-irē, aūd-ivī, aūd-itum.*)

EXCEPTA.

Sānciō, sānzi, sānctum, fit ;
Nēc -civī, -citum rēspūit.
Vīnzi, vīnctum, vīnciō ;
Fūlsi, fūltum, fūlciō ;
Sārciō fit sārsi, sārctum ;
Fārciōquē fārsi, fārtum ;
Amiciō, āmicūi,
Amictum māvūlt effīci ;
Sāliō, sālii, sālii, stāt,
In Sūpinō sāltum dāt ;
Cōmpōstā -siliī, -siliī, -sūltum.

At sīngūltiō sīngūltum ;
Et sēpēliō sēpūltum ;
Vēniō, vēni, vēntum, fit ;
Vēnēō vēniī sūscipit ;
Sēpiō, sēpsi, sēptum dāt ;
A-pēriō, -pēriī, -pērtum stāt ;
Sēd cōmpēriō, cōmpēri ;
Et rēpēriō, rēpēri.
Haūsi, haūstum, haūrīō ;
Sēnsi, sēnsū, sēnsiō.

§ 97. V.

DE VERBORUM DEPONENTIUM PERFECTIS ET SUPINIS.

Dēpōnēntiā flēxēris
Ex Activōrum rēgūlis,
Nam Prætēritum Pāssivum
Sūpinī ēst Dērivātivum.

EXCEPTA.

(1) SECUNDÆ CONJUGATIONIS.

Rēōr rātūs ēxigūt ;
Misērēōr misērtūs fit ;
Fūitēōr, fūssūs ; flēctē sīs
Fēssūs in cōmpōstis.

(2) TERTIÆ CONJUGATIONIS.

Lābōr lāpsūs ritē fit ;
Uitōr ūssūs effīciūt ;

Lōquōr ārrōgāt lōcūtūs,
Sēquōr āccipit sēcūtūs ;
Nitōr, nisūs, nixūs, fit ;
Irātūs āb irāscōr it ;
Quērōr, quēstūs ; grādīōr, grēssūs ;
Pātiōr pāssūs dāt, ēt -pēssūs
In cōmpōstis ; fit ūlciscōr
Ultūs ; āptūs sum, āpiscōr ;
Sēd ādēptūs, ādipiscōr ;

*Præficioſcōr fit præfectūs ;
Expērgiſcōr, expērrēotūs ;
Fit oblitūs obliuiſcōr ;
Et cōmmētūs, cōmmiuiſcōr ;
Sēd nānciſcōr flēctit nāctus ;
Et pāciſcōr ritē pāctūs.
Mōritūs expōscit mōriōr ;
Nāscōr, nātūs ; ōritūs, ōriōr ;*

*Quēis Futūrā mōritūrūs,
Nāscitūrūs, ōritūrūs.*

- (3) QUARTÆ CONJUGATIONIS.
Quartā mēnsūs, mētiōr ;
Orsūs fōrmāt ōrdiōr ;
At expēriōr, expērtūs,
Et oppēriōr, oppērtūs.

§ 98. VI.

DE VERBORUM INCEPTIVORUM PERFECTIS ET SUPINIS.

- (1) A Verbis ductā Inceptivā
Flexēris ut Primitivā :
Sic *exārsi, exārdēscō,*
Obdolēvi, obdolēscō ;
Trēmui vindicāt trēmiscō ;
Sciui ritē faciūt sciſcō.

- (2) Factorum ex Nominibus
Perfecto ūi terminūs :
Evānēscō sic evānui ;
Cōsānēscō fit cōsānui.
Plurimā Supinis cārēnt,
Perfectā multis nōn appārēnt.

VII. DE VERBORUM IMPERSONALIVM PERFECTIS.

Impersonaliā flexēris
Ex Personalium rēgulis :
Sic *pūdēt faciūt pūdūt ;*
Pānitēt, pānitūt.

Sēd mīserēt, mīsertum ēst ;
Lībēt, libūt, libitum ēst ;
Tādēt dāt pētāsum ēst,
Vēl tādūt ; sic pigēt fit
Pigitum ēst ēt pigūt.

VIII. DE DEFECTU PERFECTORUM ET SUPINORUM.

In ōpēribūs Lātīnis,
Multā Verbā quā Supinis,

Multā quā Perfecto cārēnt,
Lēctitantībūs appārēnt.

§ 99. IV. DE VERBORUM COMPOSITORUM MUTATIONIBUS.

- (1) *A* in *e* cōvērtēris
Hōrum in Cōmpōsitis :
Arcēō, cārpō, dāmnō, lāctō,
Fūſcōr, fāllo, fārciō, jāctō,
Grādīōr, pāſiōr, pāſiōr, trāctō,
Pāriō, patrō, atquē cāndō,
Sacrō, spārgō, atquē scāndō.

Excēptā : *pērāgō, pērplācō ;*
Et cum Adverbis mistum *fāciō.*

- (3) *A* in *u* cōvērtitō
Ex *calcō, sālūt, quāſiō.*

- (2) *A* in *i* cōvērtēris
Hōrum in Cōmpōsitis :
Agō, cādō, cānō, frāngō,
Hābēō, lātēō, fātēōr, pāngō,
Sālūtō, stātūtō, atquē tāngō,
Cāpiō, rūpiō, sūpiō, fāciō,
Jāciō, lāciō, plācō, tūcō.

- (4) *E* in *i* cōvērtēris
Hōrum in Cōmpōsitis :
Egēō, tēnēō, atquē ēmō,
Spēcīō, sēdēō, atquē prēmō,
Addē dēdī atquē lēgō,
Addē stētī atquē rēgō.

Sunt excēptā : *rēlēgō,*
Pērlēgō, ēt prālēgō.

Nota. •

SI, mutātō Simplīcī,
Cōmpōstī Præsēns sūmsīt i,
In Pēfēctō sūmēt ē,
Sī lōngam vālēt fingērē :
Sic dēficiō fīt dēfēcī ;
Sic prōjiciō, prōjēcī ;
Sic cōspiciō, cōspēcī ;
Sic ā dirīgō dirēcī.
Pērgō (pēr-rēgō), pērrēcī ;
Sūrgō (sūs-rēgō), sūrrēcī ;
Pōrrīgō (prō-rēgō), pōrrēcī.

- (5) *Æ* īn ī, ā quærō, cædō,
Cōmpōstā mutānt, ēt ā lædō.

- (6) *Ā* ū īn ō cōnvertīt *plaudō* ;
Ā ū īn ū cōmmūtāt *claudō* ;
Ā u īn ē solūmmōdō
Ex *aūdīō* dāt *ōbedīō*.

- (7) Rēduplicatiō Simplīcīs
Exibīt ē Cōmpōsitīs :
Sic ā pēllō, pēpūlī,
Fīt *impēllō*, *impūlī*.

Sēd ā *discō*, *pōscō*, *dō*,
Cōmpōstā sērvānt, ēt ā *stō*.

§ 100. DE PRÆPOSITIONIBUS COMPOSITIS.

- (1) *Con-* fīt Præpōsitiō *cum*,
Quāndō stāt cōmpōsitum.

- (2) Tantum īn Cōmpōsitīs
Stānt *ambi*, *rē*, *sē*, *sus*, ēt *dis*.

- (3) Præpōsitiō tērmināntem
Sæpē mutāt cōnsōnāntem
Sic, ūt fīāt sīmīlis
Cōnsōnāntī Simplīcīs :
Ut *ad-fērō* fīt *affērō*,
Ut *in-līnō* fīt *illīnō*,
Ut *ob-pētō* fīt *ōppētō*.

- (4) *N* īn *m* cōnvertītē
Antē *b* vėl antē *p*.
Ut *cōn-bibō* fīt *cōm-bibō*,
Ut *in-plicō* fīt *im-plicō*.

- (5) Aliā aliā transfērunt,
Quæ rēlatū lōngā sūnt ;
Unum hoc nōtandum dō,
Ab-fērō fīt *aūfērō* ;
Ab-fūgīō fīt *aūfūgīō*.

SYNTAXEOS LATINÆ COMPENDIUM.

PARS I. DE SIMPLICI SENTENTIA.

§ 101. PREFATORY EXCURSION.

Syntax teaches the correct arrangement of words in sentences. The simplest sentence is the Proposition or Enuntiation of a single thought : *homo est mortalis*, man is mortal. Every Proposition or simple Sentence has three essential members :

1. *Subjectum*, the Subject; that is, the person, thing, or notion concerning which something is predicated, or declared.
2. *Predicatum*, the Predicate; that which is predicated (*prædicatur*), or declared, concerning the Subject.
3. *Copula*, or the Link, which shows the connexion between the Subject and its Predicate, and so constructs the sentence.
 - (1.) The Subject must be a Substantive, or that which possesses the force of a Substantive: as *homo*, man; *ego*, I; *Gallus*, a Gaul; *errare*, to err.
 - (2.) The Predicate, when distinct from the Copula, must be a Substantive, Adjective, Participle, or Adjectival Pronoun; as, *animal*, an animal; *mortalis*, mortal; *victus*, conquered; *noster*, ours: or a Preposition with its case (equivalent to a noun); as *sine vitiiis*, *pro consule*.
 - (3.) The Copula, when distinct from the Predicate, is generally some finite form of the Verb of being, *sum*.

Examples of Simple Sentences in which the three members are distinct:—

SUBJECT.	COPULA.	PREDICATE.
1. <i>Homines</i>	<i>sunt</i>	<i>animalia</i> .
Men	are	animals.
2. <i>Ego</i>	<i>sum</i>	<i>mortalis</i> .
I	am	mortal.
3. <i>Galli</i>	<i>erant</i>	<i>victi</i> .
The Gauls	were	conquered.
4. <i>Errare</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>nostrum</i> .
To err	is	ours.
5. <i>Tu</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>pro consule</i> .
Thou	art	Proconsul.

But, in general, the Predicate and Copula are blended together in one finite Predicative Verb: as

SUBJECT.	PREDICATE WITH COPULA.
<i>Ego</i>	<i>disc-o</i> .
<i>I</i>	learn (am learning).
<i>Homines</i>	<i>spira-nt</i> .
<i>Men</i>	breaths (are breathing).

Here, strictly speaking, the crude Forms, or Roots, of the Verbs (*disc-*, *spira-*) are the Predicates, and the Inflections, or Terminations (*-o*, *-nt*), are the Copulas. (See § 100). And when the Subject is understood from the Termination, a single Verb may be a complete sentence. Thus, the famous despatch of Cæsar to the Roman Senate, after his victory over Pharnaces, *Veni, vidi, vici*, (I came, I saw, I conquered), contains three distinct sentences, each consisting of one word only.

- Obs.* 1. When an Adjective qualifies a Substantive without being joined to it by a Copula, it is said (*attribui, attributum esse*) to be an Attributive or Epithet. Thus, in the sentence, *Vir bonus laudatur* (a good man is praised), *bonus* is an Epithet; but in the sentence, *Vir est bonus* (the man is good), *bonus* is the Predicate.
- Obs.* 2. The Infinitive, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, are called *Verbum Infinitum*: all the other forms of the Verb, any of which can make a complete sentence, are called *Verbum Finitum*.
- Obs.* 3. Objectum, the Object, is that person or thing upon which an action is directed: as, *Parentes amant liberos*, where *liberos* is the Object. Sometimes there are two Objects, a nearer and a remoter: as *Pater librum filio dat*; where *librum* is the nearer Object, *filio* the remoter.
- Obs.* 4. Copulative Verbs are those which connect a Subject and distinct Predicate. Of these verbs *sum* is the chief: but others also have a Copulative use, as *forem, fio, existo, evado, moneo, audio, nascor, videor*; and Passive Verbs of making, naming, declaring, choosing, thinking, finding, &c.: as *efficio, appello, voco, nuncupor, dico, feror, designor, eligor, inscribor, existimor, putor, credor, agnoscor, habeor, reperior, &c., &c.*

I. CONCORDANTIA PRIMA.

Adjectivi cum Substantivo.

§ 102. *Regula Generalis.* — Adjectiva, Participia, et Pronomina, sive attribuuntur sive prædicantur, cum Substantivis suis genere, numero, et casu concordant: ut,

Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos ;
Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes.—OVIDIUS.

- Obs.* 1. Substantivum sæpè per ellipsin intelligitur: ut,
Laborem plerique fugiunt. (supple *homines*).—CICERO.
Cornix a lævâ canit, corvus a dextrâ. (supple *manu*).—CIC.

Obs. 2. Neutra Adjectiva abstractè posita Substantivorum vice funguntur: ut,

Omnium rerum mors est extremum.—CIC.

Honestum et utile pugnare aliquando videntur.—CIC.

Verecundâ laxamus seria mensâ.—PERSIUS.

II. CONCORDANTIA SECUNDA.

Verbi cum Nominativo Subjecti.

§ 103. *R. G.*—Verbum personale concordat cum Nominativo Subjecti numero et personâ: ut,

Omnia vitia contra naturam pugnant.—SENECA.

Sera nimis vita est crastina.—MARTIALIS.

Obs. Aliquando Infinitivus, vel continuata Locutio, vel Adverbium cum Genitivo, pro Nominativo Subjecti ponitur: ut,

Non est mentiri meum.—TERENTIUS.

Incertum est quam longa nostrum cuiusque vita futura sit.—CIC.

Parum in eo putabatur esse animi.—CIC.

A. DE ELLIPSI NOMINATIVI.

§ 104. *Obs.* 1. Nominativus Pronominum rarè exprimitur: ut,

Nitimur in vetitum semper cupimusque negata.—OV.

(*Obs.*) Nisi distinctioni vel emphasi inserviat: ut,

Ego reges ejeci: vos tyrannos introducitis.—CIC.

Obs. 2. *Dicendi, narrandi, et appellandi* Verba tertie personæ pluralis Nominativum *homines* sæpè habent intellectum: ut,

Quod aiunt, auribus teneo lupum.—TER.

Obs. 3. Impersonalia Nominativum non habent expressum: ut,

Tædet ipsum vehementerque pœnitet.—CIC.

(*Obs.*) Multa verò, quæ Impersonalia vocantur, Nominativum aliquem habent intellectum: ut,

Jam advesperascit. (supple *dies*.)—CIC.

B. DE ELLIPSI VERBI.

§ 105. *Obs.* 1. Personæ præsentis Verbi *sum* sæpè intelliguntur: ut

Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum. (supple *est*.)—CIC.

Obs. 2. Infinitivus interdum Nominativo postponitur: ut,

Tum pius Æneas humeris abscindere vestem.—VIRG.

(*Obs.*) Plerumque autem Infinitivus Accusativo postponitur, præcedente Verbo finito: ut,

Tradunt Homerum cæcum fuisse.—CIC.

III. CONCORDANTIA TERTIA.

Relativi cum Antecedente.

§ 106. *R. G.*—Relativum cum Antecedente concordat genere, numero, et personâ: casu verò constructur cum suâ sententiâ: ut,

Ea est jucundissima amicitia, quam similitudo morum conjugavit.—CIC.

Obs. 1. Si Sententia pro Antecedente ponitur, Relativum erit in neutro genere: ut,

In tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.—
TER.

Obs. 2. Interdum Antecedens in possessivo Pronomine includitur: ut,

*Omnes laudare fortunas meas
Qui natum haberem tali ingenio præditum.* (scilicet, *fortunas mei qui.*)—TER.

§ 107. *Nota.* Relativum, *Qui, quæ, quod*, plerumque considerari debet tanquam positum inter duos casus unius Substantivi, sive expressos sive suppressos: cum antecedente conveniet in genere et numero: cum sequente etiam in casu, sicut Adjectivum cum Substantivo.

Obs. 1. Ambo Casus interdum exprimuntur: ut,

Erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exire possent.—CÆSAR.

Obs. 2. Plerumque supprimitur Casus posterior: ut,

*Animum rege, qui, nisi paret,
Imperat.* (scilicet *qui animus.*)—HOBATIUS.

Obs. 3. Interdum prior: ut,

Sic tibi dent nymphæ quæ levet unda sitim. (scil. *undam quæ unda.*)—OV.

Obs. 4. Interdum uterque: ut,

Sunt quibus in satirâ videar nimis acer. (scil. *homines quibus hominibus.*)—HOB.

SUPPLEMENTUM AD CONCORDANTIAS.

A. DE SYNESI.

§ 108 *Synësis* est ea constructionis ratio, quæ ad sensum vocabulorum, non ad formam, spectat.

R. G. I.—Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu singulare, sæpè habet Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale: ut,

Pars epulis onerant mensas.—VIRGILIUS.

Clamor inde populi, mirantium quid rei esset.—LIVIVS.

Cæsar equitatum præmittit, qui hostes observent.—CÆS.

R. G. II.—Substantivum, formâ sed non sensu neutrum vel femininum, sæpè habet Adjectivum aut Relativum diversi Generis: ut,

Capita conjurationis securi percussi sunt.—LIV.

Ubi est is scelus, qui me perdidit?—TER.

Subeunt Tegeæa juvenus

Auxilio tardi.—STATIUS.

B. DE PLURIBUS NOMINIBUS IN SUBJECTO.

§ 109. **R. G. I.**—Duo vel plura Nomina singularia conjuncta in Subjecto habent plerumque Adjectivum, Verbum, vel Relativum plurale: ut,

Veneno absumpti sunt Hannibal et Philopæmen.—LIV.

§ 110. **R. G. II.**—Si Nomina illa singularia diversarum sunt personarum vel generum, Verbum plurale cum Nominativo dignioris personæ, Adjectivum verò vel Relativum cum Substantivo dignioris generis, ferè concordabit.

(a.) Prima Persona dignior est quam secunda, secunda quam tertia: ut,

Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.—CIC.

(b.) In rebus animatis dignius est masculinum Genus quam femininum: ut,

Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.—TER.

(c.) In rebus verò inanimis Adjectivum vel Relativum sæpius erit in neutro Genere: ut,

Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt.—SALLUSTIUS.

(Obs.) Verbum vel Adjectivum haud rarè cum propiore Substantivo concordat: ut,

Religio et fides anteponatur amicitiae.—CIC.

Convicta est Messalina et Silius.—TACITUS.

C. DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM COPULATIVORUM.

§ 111. **R. G.**—Verba Copulativa, sive finiti modi, sive infiniti, eundem habent Subjecti et Prædicati casum: ut,

Si spes est expectatio boni, mali expectationem esse necesse est metum.—CIC.

Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur Iambus.—HOR.

Regius agnoscor per rata signa puer.—OV.

Vobis licet esse beatis.—HOR.

§ 112. **Obs. 1.** Si in Prædicato Substantivum est numero vel genere differens a Subjecto, aliquando Verbum Copulativum concordat cum Prædicato: ut,

Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.—TER.

Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda.—CIC.

Obs. 2. Si Relativo postponitur Verbum Copulativum cum Substantivo Prædicati, Relativum non raro concordat cum sequente Substantivo : ut,

Animal plenum rationis, quem vocamus hominem.—CIC.
Thebæ, quod Bæotia caput est.—LIV.

D. DE APPOSITIONE.

§ 113. *R. G.* — Substantivo, Pronomini, et interdum Sententiæ, apponi potest Substantivum ejusdem rei in eodem casu : ut,

Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.—OV.
Nos consules desumus.—CIC.
Cogitet oratorem institui, rem arduam.—CIC.

II. SYNTAXIS RECTIONIS.

RECTIO CASUUM.

ACCUSATIVUS.

§ 114. Accusativus est casus propioris Objecti.

R. G.—Verba Transitive regunt Accusativum propioris Objecti : ut,

Sperne voluptates.—HOR.
Imprimis venerare Deum.—VIRG.
Percontatorem fugito.—HOR.

Obs. Verba quædam Neutra et Passiva Accusativum admittunt suæ operationis : ut,

Duram servit servitutem.—PLAUTUS.

§ 115. Verba Transitive, quæ in Voce Passivâ Copulativa fiunt, duplicem habent Accusativum, unum Objectivum, alterum Prædicativum : ut,

Ciceronem populus consulem declaravit.—CIC.
Hannibal Philippum hostem reddidit Romanis.—NEPOS.

§ 116. Verba quædam rogandi et docendi duplicem habent Accusativum, unum personæ, alterum verò rei : ut,

Pacem te poscimus omnes.—VIRG.
Quid nunc te, asine, literas doceam ?—CIC.

Et interdum celo : ut,

Ea ne me celet consuefeci filium.—TER.

(*Obs.*) Eadem verba in Passivâ Voce retinent Accusativum rei : ut,

Is primus rogatus est sententiam.—LIV.
Motus doceri gaudet Ionicos.—HOR.

§ 117. Accusativus limitationis Græco more subicitur tum Verbis Neutris et Passivis tum Adjectivis : ut,

Micat auribus et tremis artus.—VIRG.

Inficitur teneras tota rubore genas.—TIBULLUS.

Germanorum femine nude sunt brachia ac lacertos.—TAC.

§ 118. Accusativum regunt hæ Præpositiones :

Ante, apud, ad, adversus,

Circum, circa, citra, cis,

Contra, inter, erga, extra,

Infra, intra, juxta, ob,

Penes, pone, post, et præter,

Prope, propter, per, secundum,

Supra, versus, ultra, trans ;

His, super, subter, addito,

Et in, sub, si fit motio.

Obs. Harum Præpositionum quædam etiam in Compositione regunt Accusativum : ut,

Te nunc alloquor, Africane.—CIC.

§ 119. Interjectiones *en* et *ecce* regunt Accusativum et Nominativum ; *o, ah, heu, hem, proh,* Accusativum, Nominativum, et Vocativum : ut,

En miserum hominem !—CIC.

Ecce nova turba atque rixa !—CIC.

Heu miserande puer !—VIRG.

Heu vanitas humana !—PLINIUS.

Proh Deum atque hominum fidem !—CIC.

Proh sancte Jupiter !—CIC.

Obs. Dativum regunt *hei* et *væ* : ut,

Hei misero mihi !—TER.

Væ tibi, cauidice !—MART.

DATIVUS.

§ 120 Dativus est Casus remotioris Objecti. Interdum agentem, interdum rem destinatam significat.

A. DATIVUS OBJECTI.

R. G. I.—Omnia ferè Adjectiva et Verba, item Adverbia, interdum etiam Substantiva, regunt Dativum ejus personæ aut rei, cui acquiritur, vel adimitur, vel cujus causâ fit aliquid : ut,

Non solum nobis divites esse volumus.—CIC.

Liberalis est qui, quod alii donat, sibi detrahit.

—S. CLEMENS.

Numa virgines Vestæ legit.—LIV.

Urbi pater est urbiqûe maritus.—LUCANUS.

Obs. 1. Ita *sum* possessivè significans Dativum possidentis habet : ut,
Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.—VIRG.

Obs. 2. Dativus abundat eleganter : ut,
Quid mihi Celsus agit ?—HOR.
Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo.—TER.

§ 121. R. G. II.—Dativum regunt plurima Adjectiva, Adverbia, et Verba, interdum etiam Substantiva, a quibus indicatur

<i>Commodum, communicatio,</i>	<i>Traditio, venia, demonstratio,</i>
<i>Comparatio, consecratio,</i>	<i>Promissio, fides, et narratio,</i>
<i>Auxilium et adsuetudo,</i>	<i>Obsequium, imperium,</i>
<i>Proclivitas et aptitudo,</i>	<i>Et quicquid his contrarium ;</i>
<i>Benignitas, vicinitas,</i>	<i>Cum nubo, vaco : cætera</i>
<i>Jucunditas, affinitas,</i>	<i>Sub primâ stabunt regulâ.</i>

(1.) Adjectiva : ut,

Patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris.—JUV.

Nil fuit unquam sic impar sibi.—HOR.

Est finitimus oratori poeta.—CIC.

Turba gravis paci placideque inimica quieti.

—LUCAN.

Homini fidelissimi sunt equus et canis.—PLIN.

(2.) Adverbia : ut,

Congruenter naturæ vivendum est.—CIC.

Improbo et inertî nemini bene esse potest.—CIC.

(3) Verba :

(a) Transitive : ut,

Culturæ patientem commodat aurem.—HOR.

Præsentia confer præteritis.—LUCRETIVUS.

Hunc lucum tibi dedico, Priape.—CATULLUS.

Hoc mihi non modo confirmavit sed etiam persuasit.

—CIC.

Nobis spondet fortuna salutem.—VIRG.

(b.) Intransitive : ut,

Neve mihi noceat, quod vobis semper, Achivi,

Profuit ingenium.—OV.

Philosophia medetur animis.—CIC.

Tibi favemus.—CIC.

Irascor tibi.—CATULL.

Victrix causa deis placuit, sed victa Catoni.—LUCAN.

Parce pio generi.—VIRG.

Anguis Syllæ apparuit immolanti.—CIC.

O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori.—VIRG.

Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.—HOR.

Placitone etiam pugnabis amor?—VIRG.

Venus nupsit Vulcano.—CIC.

Philosophiæ semper vaco.—CIC.

(4.) Substantiva: ut,

Nulla fides regni sociis.—LUCAN.

Justitia est obtemperatio legibus et institutis.—CIC.

§ 122. Obs. 1. *Æqualis, proprius, communis, par, alienus, Dissimilis, similis, dispar, consors, sociusque, Consciis, affinis, sacer, æmulus, atque superstes, Pluraque, nunc voluere* Dativum, nunc Genitivum:

ut, *Media simillima veris sunt.*—LIV.

Deos esse similes tui putas?—PLAUT.

Propria est nobis mentis agitatio et solertia.—CIC.

Proprium est oratoris ornatè dicere.—CIC.

(Obs.) Eadem ferè Adjectiva, item Verba et Substantiva ejusdem significationis, sequitur etiam Præpositio cum suo casu: ut,

Hi inter se æquales et pares sunt.—CIC.

Hæc sunt locupletibus cum plebe communia.—CIC.

Homo sum: humani nihil a me alienum puto.—TER.

Homini cum Deo similitudo est.—CIC.

Senões cum Carnutibus consilia communicavere.—CÆS.

§ 123. Obs. 2. Ex Adjectivis quæ affectionem animi denotant, multa capiunt Præpositiones *in, erga, adversus*, cum Accusativo: ut,

Acer in hostem.—HOR.

Benignus erga te fui.—PLAUT.

Obs. 3. *Natus, aptus, utilis*, cum aliis Adjectivis *commodi et congruentiæ*, Accusativo sæpè junguntur cum Præpositione *ad*: ut,

Ad laudem et ad decus nati sumus.—CIC.

Thracibus promptus est ad mortem animus.—TAC.

§ 124. Obs. 4. *Delecto atque juvo, jubeo, rego, lædo, guberno*, et alia quædam Verba, Accusativo contra regulam junguntur: ut,

Multos castra juvant.—HOR.

Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento.—VIRG.

Obs. 5. Tempero et moderor nunc Dativum nunc Accusativum habent: ut,

Privignis mulier temperat innocens.—HOR.

Temperat ora frænis.—HOR.

Hic moderatur equos qui non moderabitur iræ.—HOR.

§ 125. *R. G. III.*—Dativum fermè regunt Verba composita cum Adverbiis *bene, satis, male*; et cum Præpositionibus, præsertim his:—

Ad, ante, ab,

In, inter, de,

Sub, super, ob,

Con, post, et præ.

(1.) Verba Transitiva: ut,

Gigantes bellum diis intulerunt.—CIC.

Andatum ova gallinis scæpè supponimus.—CIC.

Deus animum præfecit corpori.—CIC.

(2.) Verba Intransitiva: ut,

Cæteris satisfacio semper; mihi nunquam.—CIC.

Sicilia quondam Italiæ adhæsit.—JUSTINUS.

Vir mihi semper abest.—OV.

Impendent hominibus varia genera mortis.—CIC.

Squamis intermicat aurum.—CLAUDIARUS.

Lucumo superfuit patri.—LIV.

Vitia nobis sub virtutum nomine obrepunt.—SEN.

Obs. Multa ex his variant constructionem: ut,

Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt.—CÆS.

In amore hæc insunt vitia.—TER.

B. DATIVUS AGENTIS.

§ 126. *R. G.*—Dativus agentis sequitur Verbalia in *bilis*, Gerundium in *dum*, et Gerundivum in *dus*; rariùs Participia perfecta; rarissimè Verba: ut,

Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit.—HOR.

Restat Chremes qui mihi exorandus est.—TER.

Magnus civis obit et formidatus Othoni.—JUV.

Barbarus hic ego sum, quia non intelligor ulli.—OV.

Obs. Verba et Participia Passiva plerumque habent Ablativum agentis cum Præpositione a vel ab: ut,

Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis.—HOR.

Mors Crassi est a multis defleta.—CIC.

C. DATIVUS REI DESTINATÆ.

§ 127. *R. G.*—Dativus rei destinatæ additur Verbo *sum* et multis aliis, vel pro Nominativo vel pro Accusativo: ut,

Exemplo est magni formica laboris.—HOR.

Nucleum amisi; reliquit pignori putamina.

—PLAUT.

Obs. Sæpè etiam duplex admittitur Dativus, alter objecti, alter verò rei destinatæ: ut,

Exitio est avidum mare nautis.—HOR.

Pausanias venit Atticis auxilio.—NEP.

GENITIVUS.

§ 128. Genitivus vel Subjectivus est, vel Objectivus.

A. Subjectivus: ut,

Crassi defensio. (scil. oratio quâ Crassus defendit.)

B. Objectivus: ut,

Defensio Gabinii. (scil. oratio quâ defensio est Gabinii.)

Interdum uterque Genitivus ab eodem Substantivo pendet: ut,

Repentina erat Crassi defensio Gabinii. (scil. oratio quâ Crassus Gabinium defendit.)—CIC.

Sic *metus hostium*, *amor Dei*, et similia, duplici sensu dici possunt.

§ 129. A. GENITIVUS SUBJECTIVUS indicat in primis Auctorem et Possessorem; item Qualitatem, et Distributionem.

R. G. 1.—Genitivus Auctoris et Possessoris sequitur omnia ferè Substantiva, item Verba *sum*, *facio*, *fio*, per ellipsin Substantivi: ut,

Polycleti signa planè perfecta sunt.—CIC.

Singulorum opes sunt divitiæ civitatis.—CIC.

Omnia, quæ mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt.—CIC.

Scipio Hispaniam Romanæ ditionis fecit.—LIV.

§ 130. *Obs.* 1. *Est* Impersonale præponitur Genitivo, si intelligitur *Indoles*, *indicium*, | *Munus* aut *officium*.

ut, *Cujusvis hominis est errare.*—CIC.

Improbi hominis est mendacio fallere.—CIC.

Honoris amplissimi est miseros defendere.—CIC.

Est adolescentis majores natu vereri.—CIC.

Obs. 2. Fit etiam ellipsis aliorum Nominum ante Genitivum : ut,

Hectoris Andromache. (supple *uxor.*)—VIRG.

Deiphobe Glauci. (supple *filia.*)—VIRG.

Ventum erat ad Vestæ. (supple *templum.*)—HOR.

Hujus video Byrrhiam. (supple *servum.*)—TER.

§ 131. Obs. 3. Genitivi *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, objectivè tantum usurpantur: subjectivè ponuntur Possessiva *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester* : ut,

Si tibi cura mei, sit tibi cura tui.—OV.

Quonam nostri tibi cura recessit?—STAT.

Venatum puer ire parat, mea maxima cura.—VIRG.

Nicias vehementer tuâ sui memoriâ delectatur.—CIC.

(Obs. 1.) Genitivus Personalis in Possessivo inclusus sæpè recipit alterum Genitivum sibi conoordantem vel appositum : ut,

Respublica meâ unius operâ salva erat.—CIC.

Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest.—CIC.

Aves fœtus adultos suâ ipsorum fiduciâ permittunt.—QUINT.

Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos.—OV.

Studium tuum adolescentis persperi.—CIC.

(Obs. 2.) *Nostri, vestri*, objectivè, *nostrum, vestrum*, partitivè ponuntur.

§ 132. R. G. II. — Genitivus Qualitatis sequitur

Substantiva et Verba Copulativa : ut,

Ingenui vultus puer ingenuique pudoris.—JUV.

Claudius erat somni brevissimi.—SUET.

Obs. Qualitas etiam in Ablativo ponitur : ut,

Senex promissâ barbâ, horrenti capillo.—PLIN.

§ 133. R. G. III.—Vocabula Partitiva, Numeralia, Comparativa, et Superlativa, regunt Genitivum rei distributæ.

Not.—Adjectivum vel Pronomen plerumque erit in eodem genere cum Genitivo: Genitivus erit in Plurali Numero, nisi sit nomen collectivum.

1. Adjectiva et Pronomina Partitiva :

Alius, alter, uter, ullus,

Plerique, pauci, multi, nullus,

Solus, atque singuli,

Ceteri, et reliqui ;

Hic, is, ille, qui, et quis,

Tot, quot ; cum Compositis ;

Et si quod aliud Adjectivum

Acquirit sensum partitivum :

ut,

Virtutum in aliâ alius excellit.—CIC.

Multæ harum arborum meâ manu sunt satæ.—CIC.

Elephanto belluarum nulla est prudentior.—CIC.

Stultorum quisnam beatus ?—CIC.

Utroque vestrum delector.—CIC.

Lecti juvenum.—STAT.

Sequimur te, sancte deorum.—VIRG.

2. Numeralia, sive Cardinalia, sive Ordinalia, item *princeps, medius* : ut,

Homini uni animantium luctus est datus.—PLIN.
Sylla centum viginti suorum amisit.—EUTROPIUS.
Sicilia prima omnium nationum provincia est appellata.—CIC.
Nunc juvenum princeps, deinde future senum.—OV.
Roma regionum Italiae media est.—LIV.

3. Comparativa et Superlativa : ut,

Major Neronum.—HOR.
Gallorum fortissimi sunt Belgæ.—CÆS.

4. Adverbia Superlativa : ut,

Hoc ad te minime omnium pertinet.—CIC.

5. Substantiva Partitiva et partitivè posita : ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.—PLIN.
Piscium feminae majores quàm mares.—PLIN.

- § 134. Obs. Hi Genitivi, loci, locorum, gentium, terrarum, sequuntur Adverbia localia, *ed, quò, ubi, usquam, longè*, et similia : ut,

Migrandum aliquò terrarum arbitror.—CIC.
Vir bonus, ubicunque erit gentium, a nobis diligitur.—CIC.
Perseus perfugium sibi nusquam gentium esse ait.—LIV.

- § 135. R. G. IV.—Substantiva, Adverbia, item Neutra Adjectiva et Pronomina, Quantitatem significantia, regunt Genitivum rei distributæ : ut,

Justitia nihil expetit præmii.—CIC.
Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum.—SALL.
Aliud alii commodi Deus muneratur.—CIC.
Dimidium facti qui bene cœpit habet.—HOR.
Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei.—JUV.

- § 136. Not.—Distributionem etiam efficiunt Præpositiones *ex, in, inter, ante, de* : ut,

Nihil ex his, quæ videmus, manet.—SEN.
Thales sapientissimus in septem fuit.—CIC.
Inter Scythiæ amnes amœnissimus Borysthenes.—MELA.
Ante omnes Turnus pulcherrimus.—VIRG.
Una de multis fuit in parentem Splendide mendax.—HOR.

§ 137. *R. G.* 1.—Genitivum Objectivum regunt multa Substantiva, in quibus transitiva quædam vis est: ut,

Insitus est menti cognitionis amor.—CIC.

Obs. Hic Genitivus aliquando pro Præpositione cum casu ponitur: ut,

Bellum Helvetiorum. (scil. *cum Helvetiis.*)—CÆS.

§ 138. *R. G.* II.—Genitivum Objectivum regunt Verbalia in *ax*, Participia quædam adjectivè posita, et Adjectiva significantia

<i>Notitiam, cupiditatem,</i>	Et quæ contrario sensu stant; Poetæ multa alia dant:
<i>Memoriam, metum, potestatem,</i>	
<i>Curam, crimen, egestatem,</i>	

ut, *Tempus edax rerum.*—OV.

Animus alieni appetens, sui profusus.—SALL.

Nescia mens hominum est fati.—VIRG.

Omnes immemorem beneficii oderunt.—CIC.

O seri studiorum.—HOR.

§ 139. *R. G.* III.—Verba quædam *accusandi, convincendi, absolvendi, damnandi*, regunt, cum Accusativo personæ, Genitivum rei: ut,

Cicero Verrem avaritiæ arguit.—CIC.

Condemnamus haruspices stultitiæ.—CIC.

Ne quem innocentem capitis arcessas.—CIC.

Obs. 1. Pro hoc Genitivo sæpè ponitur Præpositio, præsertim *de*, cum suo casu: ut,

Accusatur inter sicarios et de beneficiis.—CIC.

Obs. 2. Sine Præpositione usurpantur hi Ablativi, *crimine, lege, scelere, capite*, et alii nonnulli: ut,

Themistocles crimine proditionis absens damnatus est.—NEP.

Legibus ambitus interrogatus pœnas dedit.—CIC.

Fulvium capite anquirendum subclamant.—LIV.

Obs. 3. Similiter Verba *monendi*, cum Accusativo personæ, regunt Genitivum rei: ut,

Res adversæ admonent religionum.—LIV.

(*Obs.*) Vel Ablativum cum Præpositione *de*: ut,

Terentiam de testamento moneatis.—CIC.

- § 140. *R. G. IV.*—*Memini, recordor, reminiscor, obli-
viscor*, nunc Genitivum regunt, nunc Accusa-
tivum : ut,

Jubet mortis te meminisse Deus.—MART.

Dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos.—VIRG.

- § 141. *R. G. V.*—*Misereor, miseresco*, Genitivo jungun-
tur; *miseror, commiseror*, Accusativo : ut,

Nil nostri miserere.—VIRG.

Arcadii, quæso, miserescite regis.—VIRG.

Agesilaus commiseratus est fortunam Græciæ.

—NEP.

- § 142. *Not. 1.* Genitivus interdum ponitur post Verba *desinendi, liberandi, implendi, carendi* : præsertim post *egeo* et *indigeo* : ut,

Desine mollium tandem querelarum.—HOR.

Hæ res vitæ me saturant.—PLAUT.

Virtus plurimæ exercitationis indiget.—CIC.

- Not. 2.* Item post Verba potestatis, *potior, adipiscor, regno* : ut,

Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt.—SALL.

Armis Galba rerum adeptus est.—TAC.

Daurus agrestium regnavit populorum.—HOR.

ABLATIVUS.

- § 143. Ablativus est Casus qui circumstantias actionis definit.

R. G.—Adjectiva, Verba, et aliquando Substantiva, admittunt Ablativum significantem rei aut actionis causam, vel instrumentum, vel modum, vel materiam, vel limitationem qualemcunque.

- A. Ablativus Causæ sequitur Adjectiva, Verba, et præsertim Participia : ut,

Cæptis immanibus effera Dido.—VIRG.

Oderunt peccare boni virtutis amore ;

Oderunt peccare mali formidine pœnæ.—HOR.

Aninus pravis cupidinibus captus pessumdatur.

—SALL.

- § 144. *Obs.* Huc referendus est Ablativus post Verba et Participia Originis : ut,

Atræus Tantalo prognatus, Pelope natus.—CIC.

Sate sanguine divum.—VIRG.

Orte Saturno.—HOR.

§ 145. B. Ablativus Instrumenti sequitur Verba, rariùs Adjectiva: ut,

Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit.—HOR.

C. Ablativus Modi plerumque sequitur Verba: ut,

Injuria fit duobus modis, vi aut fraude.—CIC.

Obs. Aliquando capit Præpositionem *cum*: ut,

Magnâ cum curâ atque diligentia scripsit.—CIC.

Cum veniâ facito, quisquis es, ista legas.—OV.

§ 146. D. (a.) Ablativus Materiæ sequitur Verba *construendi, consistendi*, et similia: ut,

Animo constamus et corpore.—CIC.

Obs. Vel cum Præpositione *ex*: ut,

Beata vita constat ex rectis actionibus.—SEN.

§ 147. (b.) *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior*, Ablativum regunt: ut,

Fungar vice cotis.—HOR.

Cum victoriâ posset uti, frui maluit.—FLORUS.

Numidæ ferinâ carne vescebantur.—SALL.

Auro vi potitur.—VIRG.

Obs. Hæc Verba interdum Accusativum habent: ut,

Functus est officium boni viri.—TER.

§ 148. (c.) Adjectiva et Verba *abundandi, implendi*, et his contraria, Ablativo junguntur: ut,

Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus.—PLAUT.

Numquam animus motu vacuus est.—CIC.

Turpe est diffluere luxuriâ.—CIC.

Vacare culpâ maximum est solatium.—CIC.

§ 149. (d.) *Opus et usus* Ablativum regunt: ut,

Ubi res adsunt, quid opus est verbis?—SALL.

Usus est filio viginti minis.—PLAUT.

(e.) *Dignus, indignus, præditus, fretus*, item Verbum *dignor*, Ablativum regunt: ut,

Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori.—HOR.

Lentulus est singulari modestiâ præditus.—CIC.

Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.—VIRG.

§ 150. E. Ablativus Limitationis latè patet.

- (a.) Ablativus Respectûs jungitur præsertim Adjectivis, item Verbis et Substantivis : ut,

Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis.—OV.

Oculis capti fodere cubilia talpæ.—VIRG.

Agasilæus fuit claudus altero pede.—NEP.

Et corde et genibus tremit.—HOR.

Obs. Huc referuntur Ablativi illi, *domo, natione, numero*, similes ; item *ætate* et *natu* : ut,

Domo Carthaginienses sunt.—PLAUT.

Mardonius natione Medus.—NEP.

Non grandis natu est, sed tamen jam ætate provectus.—CIC.

Ennius fuit major natu quàm Plautus et Nævius.—CIC.

§ 151. (b.) Ablativus Pretii sequitur Verba et Adjectiva significantia *emptionem, venditionem, vel æstimationem* : ut,

Ego spem pretio non emo.—TER.

Plurimus auro vènit honos.—PROP.

Multorum sanguine victoria stetit.—LIV.

Quod non opus est, asse carum est.—SEN.

Obs. 1. Per Ellipsin usurpantur, omissâ voce *pretio*, hi Ablativi, *vili, parvo, minimo, nimio, magno, plurimo, duplo*, et *dimidio* : ut,

Parvo fames constat, magno fastidium.—SEN.

Obs. 2. *Æstimatio* rei plerumque Genitivum habet, præsertim ellipticos illos, *parvi, minimi, magni, plurimi*, similes : ut,

Sapiens dolorem nihili facit.—CIC.

Voluptatem virtus minimi facit.—CIC.

Pluris est oculatus testis unus, quàm auriti decem.—PLAUT.

(Obs.) Tam Pretium quàm *Æstimationem* significant, *pluris, minoris, tanti, quanti, maximi* : ut,

Emit hortos tanti quanti Pythius voluit.—CIC.

§ 152. (c.) Ablativus Excessûs vel Defectûs jungitur Adjectivis comparativis et superlativis, item Verbis comparisonem habentibus : ut,

Sol multis partibus major est quàm luna.—CIC.

A Cynicis tunicâ distant tua dogmata, Zeno.

—HOR.

Obs. In primis Ablativi elliptici :

<i>Altero, hoc, eo, quo, Nihilo et nimio,</i>	<i>Dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto, Paulo, multo, aliquanto :</i>
---	---

ut, *Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa major.*—CIC.
*Tanto pessimus omnium poeta,
 Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus.*—CATULL.

§ 153. (d.) Ablativus Comparisonis regitur a Comparativis, sive Adjectivis, sive Adverbiis.

Nota.—Hic Ablativus ponitur pro Conjunctione *quàm* cum Nominativo vel Accusativo.

(1.) Pro *quàm* cum Nominativo : ut,
Nihil est amabilius virtute.—CIC.
Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.—HOR.

(2.) Pro *quàm* cum Accusativo : ut,
Puto mortem dedecore leniorem.—CIC.
Neminem Lycurgo utiliorem Lacedæmon genuit.
 —VAL. MAX.

Obs. 1. *Quàm* duobus Comparativis eleganter interponitur : ut,
Triumphus Camilli clarior erat quàm gratior.—LIV.

Obs. 2. *Quàm* eleganter omittitur post Comparativa *plus, amplius, minus* : ut,
Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi.—TER.

Obs. 3. Comparationi inserviunt etiam Præpositiones *ante, præter, supra, præ* : ut,
Pygmalion, scelere ante alios immanior omnes.—VIRG.
Galba multo præter ceteras altiore cruce statui jussit.—SUET.
Formâ supra hominem augustiore erat.—SOLINUS.
Beatus es tu præ nobis.—CIC.

§ 154. R. G.—Ablativum regunt hæ Præpositiones :

<i>A, ab, absque, coram, de, Palam, clam, cum, ex, et e, Sine, tenus, pro, et præ :</i>	<i>His subter, super, addito, Et in, sub, si fit statio.</i>
---	---

Obs. 1. Præpositio etiam in Compositione interdum regit Ablativum : ut,

*Vides ut pallidus omnis
 Cœnâ desurgat dubiâ ?*—HOR.

Obs. 2. Eleganter iteratur eadem Præpositio : ut,
E corpore excedit animus.—CIC.

(Obs.) Vel importatur nova : ut,
Alto defluxit ab æthere tabes.—LUCAN.

- Obs. 3. Verba discedendi, separandi, arcendi, removendi, et similia, ommissâ quoque Præpositione, regunt Ablativum: ut,*
Cedes coemptis saltibus et domo.—HOR.
Populus Atheniensis Phocionem patriâ pepulit.—NEP.
- Obs. 4. Tenus vel Genitivum pluralem vel Ablativum regit, et post suum Casum ponitur: ut,*
Crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent.—VIRG.
Antiochus Tauro tenus regnare jussus est.—CIC.
- Obs. 5. Cum ita subjungitur casibus Pronominum Personalium, et plerumque Relativi, ut ex duobus vocibus una fiat: ut, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum pro quocum, quibuscum.*

A. DE ABLATIVO ABSOLUTO.

- § 155. *R. G.*—Substantivum cum Participio, sententiam principalem limitantia, sed ab eâ non pendente, ponuntur in Ablativo, quem Absolutum vocant: ut,
Regibus exactis consules creati sunt.—LIV.
Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem.—MART.
- Obs. 1. Absolutè etiam ponitur Substantivum cum Substantivo vel Adjectivo, ubi intelligitur Participium existendi: ut,*
Nil desperandum est, Teucro duce et auspice Teucro.—HOR.
Jamque cinis, vivis fratribus, Hector erat.—OV.
- Obs. 2. Aliquando cum Ablativo Participii absolutè ponitur continuata Locutio pro Ablativo Substantivi: ut,*
Excepto quòd non simul esses, cætera lætus.—HOR.

B. DE CONSTRUCTIONE TEMPORIS.

- § 156. *R. G.*—I.—Definitio Temporis in Ablativo ponitur, si rogatur *quando* vel *intra quantum tempus*: ut,
Hyeme omnia bella conquiescunt.—CIC.
Quicquid est, bi duo sciemus.—CIC.
- Obs. 1. In definiendo Tempore multus est Præpositionum usus: ut,*
Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit.—CIC.
De die. (id est, ante finem diei.)—HOR.
De nocte. (id est, ante finem noctis.)—HOR.
De multâ nocte. (id est, multo ante finem noctis.)—CIC.
Sub vesperum. (id est, appropinquante vespero.)—CÆS.
Diem ex die expecto.—CIC.
- Obs. 2. Quanto tempore abhinc, antè vel pòst, interdum per Ablativum, interdum per Accusativum dicitur: ut,*
Comitia jam abhinc triginta diebus erant habita.—CIC.
Hoc factum est fermè abhinc biennium.—PLAUT.

- R. G. II.—Duratio temporis, ubi rogatur *quamdiu*, longè frequentissimè in Accusativo ponitur, rariùs in Ablativo : ut,
Pericles quadraginta annos præfuit Athenis.—CIC.
Imperium Assyrii mille trecentis annis tenere.—JUST.

C. DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS LOCI ET SPATII.

- § 157. R. G. I.—Locus, in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, vel sine Præpositione, vel longè frequentius cum Præpositione *in* : ut,
Rure ego viventem, tu dicis in urbe beatum.—HOR.
- R. G. II.—Oppidi nomen, significantis locum in quo est aut fit aliquid, ponitur in Ablativo, modò sit vel tertiæ Declinationis, vel pluralis Numeri : ut,
Alexander Babylone mortuus est.—CIC.
Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis.—CIC.
Thebis nutritus an Argis.—HOR.
- R. G. III.—Sed in Genitivo ponitur, si et Declinationis est primæ vel secundæ, et singularis Numeri : ut,
Quid Romæ faciam ? mentiri nescio.—JUV.
Is habitat Miletî.—TER.
- R. G. IV.—Oppidi nomen, significantis locum ad quem itur, in Accusativo ponitur : ut,
Regulus Carthaginem rediit.—CIC.
- R. G. V.—Oppidi nomen, significantis locum a quo itur, ponitur in Ablativo : ut,
Demaratus fugit Tarquinius Corintho.—CIC.
- § 158. Obs. *Humus, domus*, et *rus oppidorum* constructionem imitantur : ut,
Cadmus spargit humi, mortalia semina, dentes.—OV.
Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.—CIC.
Video rure redeuntem senem.—TER.
- § 159. R. G. VI.—Nominibus Regionum Præpositio ferè præmittitur : ut,
In Lemno uxorem ducit.—TER.
- R. G. VII.—Via, quâ aut per quam itur, in Ablativo sæpè ponitur : ut,
Ibam fortè Viâ Sacrà.—HOR.
Portâ Collinâ urbem intravêre, mediâque urbe in Aventinum pergunt.—LIV.
- § 160. R. G. I.—Spatium Distantiæ frequentius in Accusativo, interdum in Ablativo ponitur : ut,
Aberam ab Amano iter unius diei.—CIC.
Æsculapii templum quinque millibus passuum ab Epidaurò distat.—LIV.

R. G. II.—Spatium Progressionis in Accusativo ponitur: ut,
Millia tum pransi tria repimus.—HOR.

R. G. III.—Spatium Dimensionis frequentissimè in Accusativo, interdum in Ablativo, interdum in Genitivo ponitur: ut,
Erant muri Babylonis ducenos pedes alti.—PLIN.
Longum sesquipede, latum pede.—PLIN.
Areas latas pedum denum facito.—COLUM.

DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM IMPERSONALIU.

§ 161. R. G. I.—*Libet, licet, liquet*, et pleraque Impersonalia, regunt
Dativum: ut,

Ne libeat tibi quod non licet.—CIC.

Sævis inter se convenit ursis.—JUV.

R. G. II.—*Piget, pudet, pœnitet, tædet* atque *miseret*, regunt
Accusativum Personæ, cum Genitivo Rei, vel cum
Infinitivo: ut,

Miseret te aliorum: tui te nec miseret, nec pudet.—PLAUT.

Me civitatis morum piget tædetque.—SALL.

Eos partim scelerum, partim ineptiarum pœnitet.—CIC.

Quem pœnitet peccasse, pœnè est innocens.—SEN.

R. G. III.—*Delectat, juvat, decet, dedecet*, impersonaliter
posita, Accusativum cum Infinitivo postulant: ut,

Oratorem irasci minimè decet.—CIC.

Me juvat in primâ coluisse Heliconâ juventâ.—PROPERTIUS.

R. G. IV.—*Oportet* vel Accusativum cum Infinitivo regit,
vel Nominativum cum Subjunctivo, Conjunctione *ut*
omissâ: ut,

Legem brevem esse oportet.—CIC.

Me ipsum ames oportet, non mea.—CIC.

R. G. V.—*Pertinet, attinet*, Præpositionem *ad* cum Accusativo sumunt: ut,

Ad rempublicum pertinet, me conservari.—CIC.

Profundat, perdat, pereat, nihil ad me attinet.—TER.

R. G. VI.—*Interest* et *rêfert* Genitivum admittunt: ut,

Interest omnium rectè facere.—CIC.

Rêfert compositionis, quæ quibus anteponas.—CIC.

Obs. 1. Cum his Verbis junguntur, loco Pronominum Personalium,
Ablativi feminini, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*, subauditâ voce
re: ut,

Et tuâ et meâ interest te valere.—CIC.

Quid rêfert meâ, cui serviam?—PHEDR.

Obs. 2. Adduntur his Verbis Genitivi Æstimationis, tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris: ut,

Utriusque nostrum magni interest, ut te videam.—CIC.

Hoc non pluris refert, quam si imbrem in cribrum geras.—PLAUT.

Not. 1. Verba Neutra in Passivâ Voce impersonaliter usurpantur pro quibuslibet personis, Ablativo personæ cum Præpositione ab vel expresse vel intellecto: ut,

Ab omnibus reclamatum est. (scil. omnes reclamârunt.)—CIC.

Quid agitur? statur. (scil. statur ab illis, sive stant.)—TER.

Not. 3. Cæpit, debet, desinit, potest, solet, incipit, Infinitivis Impersonalium præposita, ipsa fiunt Impersonalia: ut,

Pigere eum facti cæpit.—JUST.

Perveniri ad summa, nisi ex principiis, non potest.—QUINT.

DE CONSTRUCTIONE VERBORUM PASSIVORUM.

§ 162. *R. G. I.*—Activa sententia ferè omnis ita in Passivam converti potest, ut Subjectum Activæ sententiæ fiat in Passivâ Ablativus Agentis.

A. Si Activæ Sententiæ Verbum Accusativum habet propioris Objecti, Verbum in Passivâ personale erit, Objecto Activæ in Subjectum Passivæ transeunte: ut,

ACT. Egregiè consul rem gessit.

PASS. Egregiè ab consule res gesta est.—LIV.

B. Sin minus, Verbum Passivæ impersonale erit, et vel sine casu stabit, vel eundem casum reget, quem in Activâ regebat: ut,

ACT. Hostes constanter pugnabant.

PASS. Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.—CÆS.

ACT. Medicinæ nos indigemus.—CIC.

PASS. Medicinæ a nobis indiget.

ACT. Mihi isti nocere non possunt.

PASS. Mihi ab istis noceri non potest.—CIC.

ACT. Litibus et jurgiis supersedere vos æquum est.

PASS. Litibus et jurgiis supersederi a vobis æquum est.—CIC.

Obs. Ubi nihil ambigui esse potest, supprimitur Ablativus Agentis post Impersonalia Passiva: ut,

Itur in antiquam silvam.—VIRG.

Non potest jucundè vivi, nisi cum virtute vivatur.—CIC.

R. G. II.—Hinc apparet, eosdem casus a Passivis Verbis regi, atque ab Activis, præterquam unum Accusativum propioris Objecti.

Not. Ex Verbis Neutris nonnulla vi Passivâ construuntur aliquando cum Ablativo Agentis: ut,

Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit.—QUINT.

Malo a cive spoliari, quàm ab hoste vênire.—QUINT.

Torqueor, infesto ne vir ab hoste cadat.—OV.

DE CONSTRUCTIONE PARTICIPIORUM.

§ 163. *R. G.*—Participia, quæ Verbalia Adjectiva sunt, tum Substantivis attribuuntur, tum etiam regunt casus Verborum a quibus oriuntur, Activa Activorum, Deponentia Deponentium, Passiva Passivorum.

[(*Obs. 1.*) Participii Præteriti usus in Verbis Passivis atque in Deponentibus accuratè distinguendus est: in Passivis enim Activè usurpari nunquam potest: in Deponentibus plerisque solùm Activè usurpatur: ex Deponentibus tamen Transitivity multa sunt, quorum Participia Præterita tam Passivè quàm Activè significant.

(*Obs. 2.*) *Cænatus, pransus, fisus, juratus, et ausus, Gavisus, solitus,* ceu Deponentia rectè Construimus, licet Activis orientia Verbis; His etiam *exosus, pertæsus,* et adde *perosus.*

(*Obs. 3.*) Participium Futuri in *du* Passivè semper significat.]
ut, *Cernimus ire suis parentia finibus astra.—MANILIUS.*
Virgo compositos ostentatura capillos.—AUSONIUS.
Nubiferi montes et saxa minantia cælo.—SIL.
Nil oriturum alias, nil ortum tale fatemur.—HOR.
Duces functos virtute canemus.—HOR.
Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti.—VIRG.
Omnia ei quæsitæ, meditata, evigilata erant.—GELL.
Male parta male dilabuntur.—CIC.
Pueris sententias ediscendas damus.—SEN.
Vita data est utenda, datur sine fenore nobis
Mutua, nec certo persolvenda die.—OV.

DE INFINITIVO SUBSTANTIVE POSITO, ET DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS GERUNDIORUM, GERUNDIVI, ET SUPINORUM.

§ 164. Infinitivus cum Gerundiis et Supinis Substantivum Verbi efficit.

R. G. I.—Infinitivus ita pro Substantivo ponitur, ut Verbi finiti Subjectum vel Objectum sæpè fiat: ut interdum, sed rarius, Neutra Adjectiva sibi habeat attributa: ut nonnunquam, sed rarissimè, a Præpositione regatur: ut,
Invidere non cadit in sapientem.—CIC.
Dulce et decorum est pro patriâ mori.—HOR.
Velle suum cuique est.—PERS.
Mori nemo sapiens miserum dixerit.—CIC.
Multum interest inter dare et accipere.—SEN.

§ 165. *R. G. II.*—Gerundia pro casibus Infinitivi ponuntur, et ipsa regunt casus suorum Verborum; sed sine Objecto frequentius apparent.

A. Pro Accusativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *dum* post Præpositiones *ad*, *inter*; rarius post *ob*, *in*, *ante*: ut,
Breve tempus satis est longum ad bene vivendum.—CIC.
Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt.—QUINT.

B. Pro Genitivo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *di* post Adjectiva Genitivum regentia, et post multa Substantiva: ut,
Epaminondas studiosus erat audiendi.—NEP.
Cupidus sum satisfaciendi rei publicæ.—CIC.
Thucydides omnes dicendi artificio vincit.—CIC.
Scribendi rectè sapere est et principium et fons.—HOR.

C. Pro Dativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *do* post Adjectiva Commodi et Congruentiæ, item post Verba nonnulla: ut,
Crassus disserendo par esse non potuit.—CIC.
Epidicum operam querendo dabo.—PLAUT.

D. Pro Ablativo Infinitivi ponitur Gerundium in *do* Causam, Instrumentum, aut Modum significans, vel cum Præpositionibus *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *in*: ut,
Nihil agendo homines male facere discunt.—COLUM.
P. Scipio Latine loquendo cuius erat par.—CIC.
Jovem a juvando nominamus.—CIC.
Multa de bene beatèque vivendo a Platone disputata sunt.—CIC.

§ 167. *Not.*—Gerundia Activè significant: si verò Transitive sunt, eorum constructio Passivè representari potest, imò frequentius representatur, per Participium in *us*, quod inde Gerundivi nomen accipit.

R. G. III.—Gerundiva constructio ejusmodi est, ut Substantivum in Gerundii casum trahatur, cum quo concordet Gerundivum: ut,
E terrâ ignem elicimus ad colendos agros.—CIC.
Occasio videbatur rerum novandarum.—LIV.
M. Antonius fuit triumvir rei publicæ constituendæ.—NEP.
Exercenda est memoria ediscendis veterum scriptis.—CIC.
Brutus in liberandâ patriâ est interfectus.—CIC.

R. G. IV.—Ad Necessitatem Passivè significandam Gerundivum in Neutro Genere impersonaliter adhibetur ita, ut, cum Dativo vel Ablativo Agentis, sive expresso sive intellecto, sui etiam Verbi constructionem habeat: ut,
Suo cuique judicio utendum est.—CIC.
Civium bonis est a vobis consulendum.—CIC.
Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.—JUV.
Eudoxus opinatur, Chaldaeis minimè esse credendum.—CIC.

Obs. In Verbis Transitivity rarior est Impersonalis constructio, est tamen ubi obviam fit: ut,

Æternas quoniam pœnas in morte timendum.—LUCR.

Gerundivum enim ipsum, Adjectivè in Prædicato positum, suapte vi Necessitatem exprimit: ut,

Deus et diligendus est et timendus.—TERTULLIANUS.

Agnosenda et amplectenda sunt beneficia divina.—S.CYPRIANUS.

§ 168. *R. G. V.*—Supinum in *um*, vi Activâ præditum, sui Verbi casum regit; postponitur autem, ut Accusativus, Verbis motum significantibus, et quibusdam aliis, ad Actionis finem indicandam: ut,

Ast ego non Graiis servitum matribus ibo.—VIRG.

Coriolanus in Volscos exulatum abiit.—LIV.

Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.—OV.

Scitatum oracula Phœbi mittimus.—VIRG.

Obs. Ex Supino in *um* et Impersonali Infinitivo *iri* conficitur Futurum Infinitivi Passivi: ut,

Audierat non datum iri filio suo uxorem.—TER.

R. G. VI.—Supinum in *u*, vi Passivâ præditum, postponitur, ut Ablativus Respectûs, tum multis Adjectivis, tum Substantivis *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*: ut,

Nil dictu fœdum visuque hæc limina tangat

Intra quæ puer est.—JUV.

Ecce (nefas visu) serpens altaribus exit.—OV.

Not. Supina formam habent Substantivorum Quartæ Declinationis.

DE ADJECTIVORUM USU.

§ 169. (a.) *Primus* et *extremus*, *postremus* et *ultimus*, *imus*, *Intimus* et *medius*, sic *summus* et *infimus*, atque *Cæterus* et *reliquus*, partitivè attribuuntur:

ut, *Primâ luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur.*—CÆS.

(b.) Neutra Adjectiva utriusque Numeri ponuntur interdum Adverbialiter, præsertim apud poetas: ut,

Serviet æternum, qui parvo nesciet uti.—HOR.

Asper, acerba tuens, retrò redit.—VIRG.

(c.) Adjectivum sæpè ita attribuitur, ut Anglicè per Adverbium reddatur necesse sit:

Tum tu insiste audax muris.—LIV.

Castris se pavilus tenebat.—LIV.

§ 170. Superlativum ita usurpatur, ut non modò altissimum omnium gradum, sed etiam præaltum quemcunque designet: ut,

Ego sum miserior quàm tu, quæ es miserrima.—CIC.

Obs. Pronomen quisque Superlativo distribuendo adhibetur: ut,

Epicureos doctissimus quisque contemnit.—CIC.

Maximæ cuique fortunæ minimè credendum est.—LIV.

DE NUMERALIUM USU.

§ 171. A. Cardinalia.

- (a.) *Unus* non, nisi cum Emphasi, ponitur: ut,
Matronæ annum, ut parentem, Brutum luxerunt.—LIV.
Amicitia vis est in eo, ut unus quasi animus fiat ex pluribus.—CIC.

Obs. *Unus* sæpè vim habet Superlativam, sæpè Superlativorum vim auget: ut,

Demosthenes unus eminet inter omnes oratores.—CIC.

P. Nigidius, unus omnium doctissimus.—CIC.

- (b.) *Mille* nunc Substantivè, nunc Adjectivè, usurpatur: *millia* Substantivè tantum: ut,

Amplius mille hominum cecidit.—NEP.

Mille greges illi.—OV.

Quatuor millia hominum Capitolium occupavêre.—LIV.

B. Ordinalia in Temporum Rationibus usurpantur: ut,

Plato uno et octogesimo anno scribens mortuus est.—CIC.

Obs. 1. Ad Ordinalia distribuenda usurpatur *quisque*: ut,

Quinto quoque anno Sicilia tota censetur.—CIC.

Obs. 2. *Alter* nunc ut *secundus*, nunc ut *unus* e duobus ponitur: ut,

Alter ab undecimo tum me jam ceperat annus.—VIRG.

Quidquid negat alter, et alter.—HOR.

C. Distributiva efficiunt ut, quod fiat, id cuique e pluribus, vel a quoque, vel quoque tempore factum esse appareat: ut,

Militibus quini viceni denarii dati sunt.—LIV.

Verberibus mulcant, sexageni singulos.—TAC.

Ursæ pariunt plurimum quinos.—PLIN.

§ 172. D. (a.) *As Romanus*, sive *Libra*, antiquissimis temporibus æneus erat: unde Genitivus *æris* ellipticè ponitur aliquando, *Assibus* omissis: ut,

Millibus æris quinquaginta census est.—LIV.

- (b.) *Nummus Romanus*, qui antiquissimè binos *Asses* cum *Semisse* valebat, hinc *Sestertius* (semis-tertius) vocatus, *Siglum* habebat HS, corruptum ex IIS (2½): ut,

Tiberius populo trecenos nummos viritim dedit.—SUET.

Pretium constitutum est in singulos modios HS terni.—CIC.

- (c.) *Sestertium* valebat mille *Sestertios*, et ipsum interdum *Siglo* HS designatur: ut,

Ducena sestertia singulis dedit.—TAC.

Candidati HS quingena deposuerunt.—CIC.

Obs. Adverbia Numeralia, *decies* et quæ majora sunt, ubi Numerum

Sestertiorum definiunt, suppleri sibi volunt *centena millia*: ut,

Vicies HS (Sestertii, Sestertium) id est, 2,000,000 Nummum.

Ter et quadragies HS - - - 4,300,000 Nummum.

DE PRONOMINUM USU.

§ 173. A. Personalia et Possessiva.

(a.) Pronomina Pluralia, *nos, noster*, pro Singularibus *ego, meus*, sæpè ponuntur: ut,

Nôris nos, inquit, docti sumus.—HOR.

Ad nostra me studia referam literarum.—CIC.

(b.) *Sui et suus* Reflexiva sunt, et referuntur in primis ad principale sententiæ Subjectum, quum tertiæ Personæ est: ut,

Senatui populus moderandi sui potestatem tradidit.—CIC.

Themistocles domicilium Magnesiæ sibi constituit.—NEP.

Sentit animus se vi suâ, non alienâ, moveri.—CIC.

Homerum Colophonii civem esse dicunt suum.—CIC.

Obs. 1. Referri etiam possunt Reflexiva ad Objectum, si ipsa Subjecto appendent, vel si Subjectum primæ est aut secundæ Personæ, si, denique, nullus ambiguitati locus est; quod ubi fit, Objecto plerumque postponitur Reflexivum: ut,

Scipionem impellit ostentatio sui.—CÆS.

Cæsarem sua natura mitiorem facit.—CIC.

Apibus fructum restituo suum.—PHÆD.

Suis flammis delete Fidenas.—LIV.

Multa sunt civibus inter se communia.—CIC.

(Obs.) Sed Pronominis quisque casibus Reflexivum præponitur: ut,

Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam.—NEP.

Longius aut propius mors sua quemque manet.—PROPERT.

Obs. 2. Referuntur etiam abstractè Reflexiva ad Personam indefinitam: ut,

Subsequitur cæcus Amor sui.—HOR.

Deforme est de se prædicare.—CIC.

Difficile est sua vitia nôsse.—CIC.

Obs. 3. Ubi Reflexivo non est locus, usurpatur Demonstrativum, præsertim is: ut,

Aranti Cincinnato nuntiatum est eum dictatorem esse factum.
—CIC.

Condiunt Ægyptii mortuos et eos domi servant.—CIC.

Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu.—CIC.

Obs. 4. Pro Reflexivi casibus, si in his futura esset Ambiguitas, Pronominis ipse casus obliqui ponuntur: ut,

Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: si quid ipsi a Cæsare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; si quid ille a se vellet, illum ad se venire oportere.—CÆS.

§ 174. B. (a.) Pronomina Demonstrativa ita ferè distinguenda sunt: *is* est de quo mentio facta est; *hic* mihi propior; *iste* alteri propior: *ille* qui ab utroque remotus est.

Obs. 1. *Iste* cum Contemptu quodam sæpè dicitur: ut,

Quid sibi isti miseri volunt?—CIC.

Errare malo cum Platone, quàm cum istis vera sentire.—CIC.

Obs. 2. Cum *hic* et *ille* ad duo anteposita respiciunt, *hic* refertur ad id quod vel posterius in sententiâ, vel prius est in animo narrantis; *ille* ad id quod vel prius in sententiâ, vel posterius est in animo narrantis: ut,

Idem et docenti et discenti propositum esse debet, ut ille prodesse velit, hic proficere.—SEN.

Melior est certa pax quàm sperata victoria; hæc in tuâ, illa in deorum manu est.—LIV.

§ 175 (b.) *Ipse* est omnium Personarum, et vim augeat tum Substantivorum, tum Pronominum, quibus apponi solet: ut,

Ipse Pater dextrâ molitur fulmina.—VIRG.

Tardè nosmet ipsos cognoscimus.—CIC.

Sibi ipsa improbitas cogit fieri injuriam.—SYRUS.

Me ipse consolor. (Id est, *nemo alius me consolatur, verùm ego*; ubi emphasis est in Subjecto.)—CIC.

Me ipsum consolor. (Id est, *neminem alium ego consolor, verùm me*; ubi emphasis est in Objecto.)

Obs. 1. *Ipse* pro *ultrò* vel *sponte suâ* ponitur aliquando: ut,

Ipse veniunt ad mulctra capellæ.—VIRG.

Obs. 2. *Ipse* præstantissimam Personam interdum significat: ut,

Pythagorei respondere solebant; Ipse dixit. (scil. *Pythagoras.*)—CIC.

Obs. 3. *Ipse* Tempori exactè definiendo adhibetur: ut,

Athenis decem ipsos dies fui.—CIC.

Nunc ipsum sine te esse non possum.—CIC.

C. Pronomina Interrogativa sunt *quis*, *quisnam*, substantivè usurpata; *qui*, *quinam*, adjectivè. (De Relativo mox disseretur.)

§ 176. D. Indefinita, *quis* et *qui*, sequuntur Particulas, quales sunt *ne*, *si*, *sive*, *nisi*, *qui*, *quò*, *quàm*, *quum*, *unde*, *ubi*, *ut*, *an*, *num*. *Aliquis* et *aliqui* ponuntur vel sine Particulis, vel cum Particulis, sensu minus indefinito quàm *quis* et *qui*; ut significetur is, quem existere credimus, sed nondum novimus: ut,

Oppida cæperunt munire et ponere leges,

Ne quis fur esset, neu latro, neu quis adulter.—HOR.

Semper aliqui anquirendi sunt quos diligamus.—CIC.

Si superest aliquis post funera sensus.—OV.

§ 177. Obs. 1. *Aliquis* interdum pro *eximio* ponitur: ut,

Sese aliquem credit.—PERS.

Obs. 2. *Quidam* definitius est quàm *aliquis*; ut significetur is, quem novimus quidem, sed non nominamus: ut,

Accurrit quidam, notus mihi nomine tantum.—HOR.

(Obs.) Hinc cum Contemptu ponitur aliquando: ut,

Habitant hic quædam mulieres pauperculæ.—TER.

DE CONJUNCTIONIBUS COPULATIVIS ET DISJUNCTIVIS.

§ 178. Conjunctiones Copulativæ et Disjunctivæ similes Casus, Modos, et Tempora connectunt : ut,

Miratur portas, strepitumque, et strata viarum.—VIRG.

Virtus nec eripi nec surripi potest.—CIC.

Amicitia conveniens est ad res vel secundas vel adversas.—CIC.

Veniet mors, sive retractabis, sive properabis.—CIC.

Nisi alia Constructionis ratio intercedat: ut,

Pompeius Dyrrachii, Apolloniæ, omnibusque oppidis maritimis hiemare constituit.—CÆS.

Obs. 1. Conjunctiones Copulativæ per Asyndeton omittuntur: ut,
Ex cupiditatibus odia, dissidia, seditiones, bella nascuntur.—CIC.

Obs. 2. Comparationi inserviunt *ac, atque, interdum et, que, ut, post* Adjectiva vel Adverbia Similitudinis et Dissimilitudinis:

Par, dispar, alius, similis, diversus, et idem,

Proinde, perinde, pro eo, contra, contrarius, æquè,

Queis aliter, pariter, juxta, secus adde, simulque :

ut, *Dissimulatio est, quum alia dicuntur ac sentias.*—CIC.

Desiderium absentium nihil perinde ac vicinitas acuit.—SEN.

Obitum filiæ tuæ pro eo ac debui graviter tuli.—CIC.

Omnia ferè contra ac dicta sunt evenère.—CIC.

Pro civium salute æquè ac pro meâ laboravi.—CIC.

Simul atque natum animal est, gaudet voluptate.—CIC.

DE VERBI TEMPORIBUS ET MODIS.

§ 179. I. Omnis Actio in Tempore ponitur, vel Præsenti, vel Præterito, vel Futuro: ita verò, ut vel alterâ temporali relatione careat, vel habeat alteram relationem temporalem.

A. Tempora Verbalia, quæ alterâ temporali relatione carent (Aorista, Indefinita, sive Absoluta), sunt:

a. Præsens Aoristum, *scribo, Anglicè I write.*

b. Præteritum Aoristum, *scripsi, — I wrote.*

c. Futurum Aoristum, *scribam, — I shall write.*

B. Tempora Verbalia, quæ habent alteram relationem temporalem (Relativa), sunt:

(a.) Præsens cum Relatione	{	(1) Præsenti, <i>scribo,</i>	Anglicè <i>I am writing.</i>
		(2) Præteritâ, <i>scripsi,</i>	— <i>I have written.</i>
		(3) Futurâ, <i>scripturus sum</i> —	<i>I am about to write.</i>

(b.) Præteritum cum Relatione	{	(1) Præsenti, <i>scribebam,</i>	— <i>I was writing.</i>
		(2) Præteritâ, <i>scripseram,</i>	— <i>I had written.</i>
		(3) Futurâ, <i>scripturus fui</i> —	<i>I was about to write.</i>

(c.) Futurum cum Relatione	{	(1) Præsenti, <i>scribam,</i>	— <i>I shall be writing.</i>
		(2) Præteritâ, <i>scripsero,</i>	— <i>I shall have written.</i>
		(3) Futurâ, <i>scripturus ero,</i> —	<i>I shall be about to write.</i>

Obs. 1. Temporum Passivorum similis est Ratio.

Obs. 2. Tempus historicum in primis est Præteritum Aoristum. Multas autem in historiâ usus est Præteritorum Relativorum (*b*). Præsens etiam (cum Relatione Præsenti) historicè usurpatur aliquando, ut legentium oculis quasi pingatur actio: ut,

Dimisso senatu, decemviri prodeunt in concionem, abdicantque se magistratu, ingenti hominum lætitiâ.—LIV.

Obs. 3. In epistolis Romani Præterito ferè utebantur, ubi nos Præsenti utimur: ut,

Res, quum hæc scribebam, erat in summo discrimine.—CIC.

II. Ex Modis,

A. Indicativus enuntiat absolute.

B. Imperativus imperat vel hortatur.

Obs. 1. Ne, prohibitiva Particula, Imperativo vel Subjunctivo jungitur: ut,
Ne qua meis esto dictis mora.—VIRG.
Ne conferas culpam in me.—TER.

Obs. 2. Pro Imperativo eleganter ponitur Futurum Simplex: ut,

Non verbum verbo curabis reddere.—HOR.

Si quid acciderit novi, facies ut sciam.—CIC.

C. Coniunctivi triplex usus est:

(a.) Potentialis; qui speciem habet vel conditionalem, vel permissivam, vel dubitativam: ut,

Id arbitror apprimè in vitâ esse utile, ut ne quid nimis:

Ita sine invidiâ laudem invenias, et amicos pares.—TER.

Si sine pace tuâ atque invito numine Troes

Italiam petière, luant peccata, neque illos

Juveris auxilio.—VIRG.

Eloquar an sileam?—OV.

Obs. 1. Peculiaris usus est Perfecti Potentialis, ut affirmet, neget, aut vetet cum urbanitate et moderatione quâdam: ut,

Bruti iudicium, pace tuâ dixerim, longè antepono tuo.—CIC

Nil ego contulerim jucundo sanus amico.—HOR.

Obs. 2. Elegans in eodem genere usus est Futuri Perfecti pro Simplicis Futuro: ut,

Ah, si pergis, abiero.—TER.

(b.) Optativus; vel sine Particulâ, vel post Particulas *ne*, *utinam*, *O si*, *si*, ut pro *utinam*: ut,

Valeant cives mei, sint incolumes, sint beati!—CIC.

Ita vivam ut maximos sumptus facio!—CIC.

Ne sim salvus si aliter scribo ac sentio!—CIC.

O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos!—VIRG.

Ut illum dii deæque perdant!—TER.

(c.) Subjunctivus propriè dictus, quia Verbis et Particulis subjungitur.

D. Superius dictum est (§ 165.) Infinitivum quasi Substantivum Verbi esse, quod vel subjectivè vel objectivè stare possit. Jam verò Simplex Infinitivus

(a.) Subjectivè jungitur Verbis Impersonalibus: ut,

Juvat ire sub umbras.—VIRG.

Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.—HOR.

Libet semper discere.—CIC.

(b.) Objectivè sequitur multa Verba, in primis

(1) Verba Voluntatis, *volo, nolo, malo, avelo, cupio*, &c.

(2) Verba Potentiæ, Officii, et Consuetudinis, *possum, queo, nequeo, debeo, soleo, consuesco*, &c.

(3) Verba Actionis incipiendæ, continuandæ, vel deponendæ, *cæpi, meditor, statuo, disco, doceo, conor, pergo, desino*, &c.

(4) Verba Passiva multa, quibus in Activâ subjungitur Accusativus cum Infinitivo, *videor, credor, putor, existimor, dicor, feror, narror, trador*, &c. : ut,

Solent diu cogitare qui magna negotia volunt gerere.—CIC.

Socrates parens philosophiæ jure dici potest.—CIC.

Intueri solem adversum nequimus.—CIC.

Suos quisque debet tueri.—CIC.

Gallinas saginare Deliaci cæpère.—PLIN.

Sallustius statuit res gestas Romanorum perscribere.—SALL.

Scipiones Saguntum pergunt ire.—LIV.

Venæ et arteriæ micare non desinunt.—CIC.

Quid sit futurum cras, fuge quærere.—HOR.

Videor pios errare per lucos.—HOR.

Aristides unus omnium justissimus fuisse traditur.—CIC.

Obs. 1. Post Adjectiva vel Poeticus est Infinitivus, vel Argentæ, quam vocant, Ætatis: ut,

Et cantare pares et respondere parati.—VIRG.

Cereus in vitium flecti, monitoribus asper.—HOR.

Agricola fuit peritus obsequi.—TAC.

Obs. 2. Futuri Infinitivi, cum Activi, tum Passivi, circumlocutio sæpè fit per fore ut, futurum esse ut, cum Subjunctivo: ut,

Spero fore ut in cælum migremus.—CIC.

Dixit futurum esse, ut balneum incallescere.—TAC.

Pompeius dixerat, fore uti exercitus Cæsaris pelleretur.—CÆS.

Obs. 3. Infinitivus Historicus locum habet in gravi narratione: (vid. § 105. Obs. 2.) ut,

Tum verò ingenti sono cælum strepere.—LIV

Obs. 4. In violentioribus affectibus usurpatur Infinitivus Interrogativus: ut,

Mene incepto desistere victam?—VIRG.

PARS II.

DE COMPOSITA SENTENTIA.

§ 180. PREFATORY EXCURSION.

I. *Oratio Directa* means any statement, question, or command directly put. *Oratio Obliqua* means any statement, question, or command not directly put, but depending on some verb which stands in *Oratio Directa*. Thus, *Valeo*:—*An valet?*—*Vale*: are *Oratio Directa*: while *Scin' me valere?*—*Nescio an valet*; *Cura ut valeas*, each contain *Oratio Obliqua*; namely, *me valere* depending on the *Oratio Directa scin'*?—*an valet* on *nescio*; *ut valeas* on *cura*.

II. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences connected together: of which one is the Principal, the others either (A.) Coordinate, or (B.) Subordinate.

A. A Coordinate Sentence is one which does not depend in construction upon the Principal Sentence. Coordinate Sentences are introduced by such particles as *et, que, ac, atque, nec; aut, vel; sed, at, autem, vero; nam, namque, enim, etenim; igitur, itaque, ergo; modo, primum, deinde, denique, &c., &c.*, as *Gyges a nullo videbatur; ipse autem omnia videbat*.—CIC. Or the particle may be understood, as, *Vincere scis, Hannibal; victoria uti nescis*.—LIV.

B. A Subordinate Sentence is one which depends in construction on the Principal Sentence. Subordinate Sentences are of three kinds:—

(1) Substantival: (2) Adverbial: (3) Adjectival.

(1) A Substantival Sentence is one which stands, like a Substantive, as Subject, Object, or in Apposition. Substantival Sentences belong to *Oratio Obliqua*, and are of three kinds: (a.) Oblique Enuntiation: (b.) Oblique Interrogation: (c.) Oblique Petition.

(a.) The Oblique, or Indirect Enuntiation, is formed generally by the Accusative with Infinitive Mood, sometimes by *ut* with Subjunctive, or *quod* with Indicative or Subjunctive Mood. Thus, *Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest* is a Direct Enuntiation: whilst *Verum est, amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*; is a Compound Sentence, containing the Direct Enuntiation, *Verum est*, and the Oblique Enuntiation, *amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*: which is Substantival, being the Subject of the verb *est*, and having *verum* for its Predicate. So, *Invidia gloriæ comes est*; is a Direct Enuntiation; but *Est hoc commune vitium, ut invidia gloriæ comes sit*; is a Compound Sentence, containing the Oblique Enuntiation, *ut invidia gloriæ comes sit*, in Apposition to *hoc*, the Subject of the Verb *est*, of which *commune vitium* is the Predicate. Again, *Culex ignis* is a Direct Enuntiation: *Sentimus calere ignem* a Compound Sentence, having the Direct Enuntiation *sentimus*, and the Oblique, *calere ignem*, which is Object of the Verb *sentimus*.

(b.) The Oblique Interrogation is formed by dependent Interrogatives, whether Pronouns or Particles, governing a Subjunctive Mood. Thus *Quis est?* is a Direct Interrogation: but *Nescio quis sit, incer-*

tum est quis sit, are Compound Sentences, containing the Oblique Interrogation, *quis sit*, which is the Object of *nescio*, and the Subject of *est*.

- (c.) The Oblique Petition is formed by the Subjunctive Mood, with or without the Conjunction *ut* or *ne*, or by the Infinitive; following Verbs of *desire*, *command*, *endeavour*, &c. Thus *Mane in sententiâ* is a Direct Petition, which may be expressed in a Compound Sentence by *Oro ut maneas in sententiâ*, *Oro maneas in sententiâ*, or *Oro te manere in sententiâ*.
- (2.) An Adverbial Sentence is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adverb, answering the questions, *how*, *why*, *when*, &c. Adverbial Sentences are formed by Conjunctions, and are (a.) Final (*in order that*) (b.) Consecutive (*so that*) (c.) Causal (*because*, *since*), (d.) Temporal (*when*, *while*, *until* &c.) (e.) Conditional (*if*, *unless*) (f.) Concessive (*although*) (g.) Comparative (*as if*, *as though*, &c.)
- (3.) An Adjectival Sentence is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adjective or Epithet. It is formed by the Relative Pronoun *Qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, or by a Relative Conjunction.

Note 1.—It is to be observed that Subordinate Sentences may have others subordinate to them, in relation to which they are therefore principal clauses. From what has been said of Substantival Sentences, it appears that the principal clauses of *Oratio Obliqua* are either in the Infinitive or in the Subjunctive Mood. Its subordinate clauses generally take the Subjunctive; as may be seen in the subjoined example:—

Oratio Directa:—*Ars earum rerum est, quæ sciuntur; oratoris autem omnis actio opinionibus, non scientiâ continetur: nam et apud eos dicimus, qui nesciunt, et ea dicimus, quæ nescimus ipsi.*—CIC.

Oratio Obliqua:—(*Antonius apud Ciceronem docet:*) *Artem earum rerum esse, quæ sciuntur; oratoris autem omnem actionem opinione, non scientiâ, contineri: quia et apud eos dicat, qui nesciant, et ipse dicat, quod nesciat.*—QUINT.

Oratio Directa may be virtually Oblique, and its Subordinate clauses may require the Subjunctive Mood, when it contains the statement of an opinion or thought rather than of a simple matter of fact. Thus in the sentence:—*Themistocles noctu ambulabat, quod somnum capere non posset*, it is implied that Themistocles alleged his inability to sleep as the reason why he used to walk by night.

Note 2. The Relative Pronoun *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, has great influence in Latin Construction. It is of all persons, and may be used compendiously as a substitute for the union of a Conjunction with a Personal Pronoun. Hence it forms Coordinate Sentences when used for *et ego*, *et tu*, *et is*, &c.: for *ego autem*, *tu autem*, *is autem*, &c.: for *ego igitur*, *tu igitur*, *is igitur*, &c.; for *ego enim*, *tu enim*, *is enim*, &c. And it forms Subordinate Sentences when used for *ut ego*, *ut tu*, *ut is*, &c.; for *quia ego*, *quia tu*, *quia is*, &c.; for *si ego*, *si tu*, *si is*, &c.; for *etsi ego*, *etsi tu*, *etsi is*, &c.; besides its ordinary power.

Obs. The Relative for *is enim* has a very elegant use, which will be understood from the following examples:—*Spero, quæ tua temperantia est, te valere.*—CIC. *Quâ es prudentiâ, nihil te fugiet.*—CIC.: for which might have been written *pro tuâ temperantiâ*, *pro tuâ prudentiâ*.

DE SENTENTIIS SUBSTANTIVALIBUS.

§ 181. (A.) Enuntiatio Obliqua.

R. G. I. Infinitivus cum Accusativo sui Subjecti jungitur subjective Verbo *est* et aliis Impersonalibus : ut,
Facinus est vinciri civem Romanum, scelus verberari.—CIC.
Metiri se quemque suo modulo ac pede verum est.—HOR.
Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam.—CIC.
Constat leges ad salutem civium inventas esse.—CIC.

Obs. 1. Pro hoc Infinitivo sæpè ponitur ut cum Subjunctivo : ut,
Vetus est lex illa, ut idem amici velint.—CIC.
Reliquum est ut officiis certemus inter nos.—CIC.
Mihi opus est ut lavem.—PLAUT.
Expedit omnibus, ut singulæ civitates sua jura habeant.—JUST.

(Obs.) Oportet et necesse est, ubi Subjunctivum capiunt, ut omittunt : ut,
Philosophiæ servias oportet, ut liber sis.—CIC.
Virtus voluptatis aditus intercludat necesse est.—CIC.

Obs. 2. Pro eodem Infinitivo ponitur interdum quòd cum Indicativo, rariùs cum Subjunctivo : ut,
Me una consolatio sustentat, quòd tibi nullum a me pietatis officium defuit.—CIC.
Hoc uno præstamus vel maxime feris, quòd colloquimur inter nos.—CIC.
Accedit quòd mirificè ingeniis excellentibus delectatur.—CIC.
Gratum est quòd patriæ civem populoque dedisti.—JUV.

R. G. II.—Infinitivus cum Accusativo sui Subjecti jungitur objective multis Verbis, in quibus inest sentiendi vel declarandi vis : ut,
Pompeios desedissee terræ motu audivimus.—SEN.
Ego illum peritisse duco cui periit pudor.—PLAUT.
Xenophanes ait lunam habitari.—CIC.
Solon furere se simulavit.—CIC.

Obs. 1. *Sperandi* et *pollicendi* Verbis plerumque jungitur Infinitivus Futuri : ut,
Sperabam id me assecuturum.—CIC.
Pollicebatur pecuniam se esse redditurum.—CIC.

Obs. 2. *Metuendi* Verbis additur *ne*, vel *ut pro ne non*, cum Subjunctivo : ut,
Verendum est ne fames in urbe sit.—CIC.
O puer, ut sis vitalis metuo.—HOR.

§ 182. (B.) Interrogatio Obliqua.

R. G. Pronomina et Particulæ, quæ obliquè interrogant, regunt Subjunctivum : ut,
Disce quid sit vivere.—TER.
Tu quotus esse velis rescribe.—HOR.
Est ubi plus tepeant hyemes ?—HOR.
Nesciunt quàm magnum vectigal sit parsimonia.—CIC.
Interrogavi ipsos an essent Christiani.—PLIN.

Not. Talia sunt:

*Qui, quantus, qualis, quis, quot, quotus, unde, ubi, quando,
Cur, quare, quamobrem, quàm, quomodo, num, nè, ut, an,
utrum.*

§ 183. (C.) *Petitio Obliqua.*

*R. G. Verba optandi, rogandi, hortandi, imperandi, permit-
tendi, curandi, enitendi, efficiendi, et similia, Sub-
junctivum regunt, vel cum Conjunctionibus ut, ne,
vel omissà Conjunctione: ut,*

Phaethon optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur.—CIC.

Hoc te rogo ne demittas animum.—CIC.

Immortalia ne speres monet annus.—HOR.

Cura ut valeas.—CIC.

Potes efficere ut male moriar, ne moriar non potes.—PLIN.

Cæsar Labieno mandat Remos in officio contineat.—CÆS.

Sine te exorem, mi pater.—CIC.

Cave mentiaris.—CIC.

Obs. Multa ex his Infinitivum admittunt: ut,

Ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare.—CIC.

Jubet nos Pythius Apollo noscere nosmet ipsos.—CIC.

DE SENTENTIIS ADVERBIALIBUS.

§ 184. (A.) *Finale Sententiæ.*

R. G. Ut, ne, ut ne, finali sensu, Subjunctivum postulant: ut,

Ut jugulent homines, surgunt de nocte latrones.—JUV.

Legum idcirco servi sumus, ut liberi esse possimus.—CIC.

Nevana urbis magnitudo sit, Romulus asyllum aperit.—LIV.

Scipio rus abiit, ne ad causam dicendam adesset.—CIC.

*Exercenda est animadversio ut ne quid temere agamus.
—CIC.*

§ 185. (B.) *Consecutivæ Sententiæ.*

*R. G. Ut, ut non, ut nihil, ut nullus, ut nemo, consecutivo
sensu, Subjunctivum postulant.*

(a.) *Post Demonstrativa sic, ita, eo, tam, adeo, tot, tantus,
talis, is, hic, huc: ut,*

Quis tam demens est ut suâ voluntate mæreat?—CIC.

Titus ita facilis fuit ut nulli quidquam negaret.—EUTR.

Tantus terror fuit ut egredi nemo sit ausus.—NEP.

Decori vis ea est ut ab honesto non queat separari.—CIC.

(b.) *Suppressio Demonstrativo: ut,*

*Arboribus consita Italia est, ut tota pomarium videatur.
—VARRO.*

(c.) *Post Comparativum et quàm: ut,*

*Isocrates majore ingenio est quàm ut cum Lysiâ compare-
tur.—CIC.*

*Obs. Tantum abest duas sententias sibi subordinatas habet, primam Substantivalem, alteram Adverbialem: ut,
Tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes.—CIC.*

§ 186. (C.) Causales Sententiæ.

R. G. I. Quum, causali sensu, Subjunctivum plerumque regit; sed interdum Indicativum: ut,

Quæ quum ita sint, in alia omnia abeo.—CIC.

Quum in Matii familiaritatem venisti, gaudeo!—CIC.

R. G. II. Quodd, quando, quia, quandoquidem, quoniam, siquidemque, causali sensu, Indicativo plerumque junguntur: ut,

Adsunt propterea quodd officium sequuntur.—CIC.

Tacent, quia periculum metuunt.—CIC.

Dicite, quandoquidem in molli consedimus herbâ.—VIRG.

Quoniam jam nox est, discedite.—LIV.

§ 187. (D.) Temporales Sententiæ.

R. G. I. Quum, quando, quoties, simul, ut, simul atque, ubi, postquam, Conjunctiones Temporis, Indicativum plerumque habent, interdum Subjunctivum, præsertim ubi duæ res præteritæ connectuntur: ut,

Tua res agitur, paries quum proximus ardet.—HOR.

Ut veni coram, non sum permulta locutus.—HOR.

Miserum est fodere, ubi sitis fauces tenet.—PLAUT.

Zenonem, quum Athenis essem, audiebam frequenter.—CIC.

Decessit Agesilaus, quum in portum venisset.—NEP.

R. G. II. Dum, donec, quoad, antequam, priusquam, nunc Indicativum, nunc Subjunctivum capiunt: ut,

Homines, dum docent, discunt.—SEN.

Expectate dum consul fiat Kæso.—LIV.

Cato, quoad vixit, virtutum laude crevit.—NEP.

Oppetire quoad scire possis, quid tibi agendum sit.—CIC.

Antequam opprimit lux, erumpamus.—LIV.

Providentia est, per quam animus aliquid videt, antequam factum sit.—CIC.

§ 188. (E.) Conditionales Sententiæ.

R. G. I. Si, nisi, nunc Indicativo, nunc Conjunctivo præmittuntur: ut,

Si vales, bene est.—CIC.

Sincerum est nisi vas, quodcunque infundis, acescit.—HOR.

Si quod erat grande vas, læti afferebant.—CIC.

Si noles sanus, curres hydropicus.—HOR.

Sume, catelle: negat: si non des, optet.—HOR.

Si foret in terris, rideret Democritus.—HOR.

Si id scissem, nunquam huc tulissem pedem.—TER.

Si Atheniensis esses, clarus nunquam fuisses.—CIC.

R. G. II. *Modò, dum, dummodo, modò ut*, Conditionali sensu, Subjunctivum regunt: ut,

Manent ingenia senibus, modò permaneat industria.—CIC.
Caligula jactabat illud: Oderint dum metuant.—SUET.
Scies, modò ut tacere possis.—TER.

§ 189. (F.) Concessivæ Sententiæ.

R. G. I. Concessivæ Conjunctiones, *etsi, tametsi, etiamsi*, nunc Indicativum, nunc Conjunctivum capiunt: ut,

Etsi culpâ tenemur, scelere liberati sumus.—CIC.
Obtundis, tametsi intelligo.—TER.
Etiamsi non is esset Cæsar qui est, tamen ornandus videretur.—CIC.

R. G. II. *Quamquam, utut*, Indicativo plerumque junguntur, rariùs Subjunctivo: ut,

Quamquam festinas, non est mora longa.—HOR.
Utut erga me est meritis, mihi cordi est tamen.—PLAUT.
Utut illud acceptum sit, hoc addam insuper.—PLAUT.

R. G. III. *Quamvis, quantumvis, licet, ut, quum, ne*, Concessivo sensu, Subjunctivum regunt: ut,

Quod turpe est, quamvis lateat, non fiet honestum.—CIC.
Licet vitium sit ambitio, causa virtutum est.—SEN.
Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.—OV.
Phocion fuit pauper, quum divitissimus esse posset.—NEP.
Ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certè est.—CIC.

Obs. 1. *Quamvis* cum Indicativo reperitur apud historicos et poetas: ut,
Quamvis ingenio non valet, arte valet.—OV.

Obs. 2. Eleganter excidit conditionalis vel concessiva Conjunctio: ut,
Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes.—VIRG.
Naturam expellas furcâ, tamen usque recurret.—HOR.

§ 190. (G.) Comparativæ Sententiæ.

R. G. Comparativæ Particulæ *quasi, tanquam, ceu, velut*, cum similibus, Subjunctivum regunt: ut,

Parvi primo ortu jacent, tanquam sine animo sint.—CIC.
Tum verò attoniti, ceu templo irrumperet hostis, Exsiluere patres.—SIL.
Sæpè, velut gemmas ejus signumque probarem, Per causam memini me tenuisse manum.—TIBULL.

DE SENTENTIIS ADJECTIVALIBUS.

§ 191. *R. G. I. Relativum, qui quæ quod, Indicativum plerumque habet : ut,*

Quis fuit, horrendos primus qui protulit enses ?—Ov.

Obs. Itidem Relativa qualis, quantus, quot ; et Universalis quisquis, quicumque, quotcumque, cum similibus.

R. G. II. Qui, causali sensu, Subjunctivum regit : ut,
Miseret tui me, qui hunc facias inimicum tibi.—Ter.

R. G. III. Qui, concessivo sensu, Subjunctivum plerumque regit, interdum Indicativum : ut,
Egomēt, qui leviter Græcas literas attigissem, tamen Athenis commoratus sum.—Cic.
In luctu et squalore sum, qui provinciæ præsum.—Cic.

R. G. IV. Qui, finali sensu, Subjunctivum regit : ut,
Literas misi, quibus et placarem eum et monerem.—Cic.

§ 192. *R. G. V. Qui consecutivo sensu, Subjunctivum regit :*

(a.) *Post Demonstrativa, is, talis, tantus, similia : ut,*
Non is sum qui his rebus delecter.—Cic.
Nihil tanti est quo vendamus libertatem.—Cic.

(b.) *Omisso Demonstrativo : ut,*
Audies ex me quod non omnes probent.—Cic.

(c.) *Post Comparativum et quàm : ut,*
Majora deliquerant quàm quibus ignosci posset.—Liv.

(d.) *Post dignus, indignus, idoneus, aptus : ut,*
Dignus est qui imperet.—Cic.

(e.) *Ubicunque demum idem ferè significat ac talis ut : sic enim construitur*

(1.) *Post est, sunt, invenio, reperio, habeo, similia : ut,*
Est quod differat inter justitiam et verecundiam.—Cic.
Inventus est qui flammis imponeret manum.—Liv.
Habes qui assideat, fomenta paret.—Hor.

(2.) *Post aliquis, pauci, multi, nonnulli, unus, solus, similia : ut,*
Est aliquid quod non oporteat, etiamsi licet.—Cic.
Solus es, Cæsar, cujus in victoriâ nemo ceciderit nisi armatus.—Cic.

(3.) *Post nemo, nihil, nullus, similia, item post Interrogativa negationem expectantia : ut,*
Nihil est quod tam deceat quàm servare constantiam.—Cic.
Quis est qui non oderit protervam adolescentiam ?—Cic.

- § 193. *Obs.* Relativæ Particulæ *quo, quâ, quomodo, ubi, cur, quare, unde,* cum similibus, iisdem ferè regulis, quibus Relativum *qui quæ quod*, Indicativum vel Subjunctivum postulant : ut,

Perge quo cæpisti.—CIC.

Digna res est ubi nervos intendas.—TER.

Erat nihil cur properato opus esset.—CIC.

Dum est unde discatur, adolescentes in disciplinam tradite.—CIC.

DE ALIIS QUIBUSDAM PARTICULIS.

- § 194. A. 1. *Quo pro ut eo* Subjunctivum regit : ut,

Ager novatur, quo meliores fetus edat.—CIC.

2. *Non quo, pro non quod*, Subjunctivum, regit : ut,

Non quo quenquam plus amem eo feci.—TER.

Not. Similiter construitur *non quin pro non quia non*.

- § 195. B. *Quominus*, post Verba quæ quid impedimenti continent, Subjunctivum regit inceptæ, sed impeditæ actionis : ut,

Senectus non impedit quominus literis utamur.—CIC.

Epaminondas non recusavit quominus pœnam subiret.—NEP.

Per Afranium stetit quominus prælio dimicaretur.—CÆS.

Obs. Ne post eadem Verba stat cum Subjunctivo prohibetæ actionis : ut,

Pontus erat vetitus ne mergeret æquore terram.—MANIL.

Sulpicius intercesserat ne exules reducerentur.—CIC.

- § 196. C. *Quin* Subjunctivum regit :

- (a.) *Pro qui non* post Negativa et Interrogativa : ut,

Nihil est quin male narrando possit depravarier.—TER.

Quis fundum colit, quin sues habeat ?—VARRO.

- (b.) *Pro quod non, ut non*, post negationem vel interrogationem dubitandi, abstinendi, deficienti, et similium : ut,

Non dubitari debet quin fuerint ante Homerum poetæ.

Deesse mihi nolui quin te admonerem.—CIC. —CIC.

Nec requies quin mox pomis exuberet annus.—VIRG.

Facere non possum quin quotidie ad te mittam.—CIC.

Prorsus nihil abest quin sim miserrimus.—CIC.

Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiæ positæ sint ?—CIC.

- (c.) *Pro cur non* post negationem causæ : ut,

Quin ad diem decedam nulla causa est.—CIC.

- § 197. D. (a.) *Nedum* Subjunctivo sæpè jungitur : ut,

Mortalia facta peribunt,

Nedum sermonum stet honos et gratia vivax.—HOR.

- (b.) *Ne - - - quidem* negativam vim auget, interpositâ inter ne et quidem eâ parte sententiæ, in quâ fit emphasis : ut,

Non prætereundum est ne id quidem.—CIC.

Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo.—CIC.

DE CONSTRUCTIONIBUS ORATIONIS OBLIQUÆ.

- § 198. *R. G. I.* Sententia, quæ subordinatur Orationi Obliquæ, sive Relativo sive Conjunctione intercedente, Subjunctivum exigit: ut,
Ais, quoniam sit natura mortalis, immortalem etiam esse oportere.—CIC.
Credo neminem, quum suffragium ineat, satis cernere quem eligat.—LIV.
Scito me, postquam in urbem venerim, redisse cum libris in gratiam.—CIC.
Fateor me oratorem, si modò sim, ex Academiæ spatiis exstitisse.—CIC.
Cerni licet, quàm sint inter se Ennius, Pacuvius, Acciusque dissimiles, quanquam omnibus par pæne laus in dissimili scribendi genere tribuatur.—CIC.
Sapientissimum esse dicunt eum, cui, quod opus sit, ipsi veniat in mentem; propius accedere illum, qui alterius bene inventis obtemperet.—CIC.
Cæsar ad me scripsit, gratissimum sibi esse quod quieverim.—CIC.
- § 199. *R. G. II.* Sententia Subordinata, quæ opinionem cujuspiam vel cogitationem indicat, sive Relativo sive Conjunctione intercedente, Subjunctivum exigit: ut,
Noctu ambulabat Themistocles, quòd somnum capere non posset.—NEP.
Laudat Africanum Panætius quòd fuerit abstinens.—CIC.
Alium rogantes regem misère ad Jovem,
Inutilis quoniam esset, qui fuerat datus.—PHÆDR.
Majores nostri accubitionem epularem amicorum, quia vitæ conjunctionem haberet, convivium nominarunt.—CIC.
Eti nihil habeat in se gloria, cur expetatur, tamen virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur.—CIC.
- § 200. *R. G. III.* Relativum vel Conjectio, quum subordinatur Subjunctivo, Subjunctivum regit: ut,
Erat in Hortensio memoria tanta, ut, quæ secum commentatus esset, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, quibus cogitavisset.—CIC.
Equidem illud molior, ut mihi Cæsar concedat, ut absim, quum aliquid in senatu contra Cnæum agatur.—CIC.
Tanta est caritas patriæ, ut vestris etiam legionibus sanctus essem, quòd eam a me servatam esse meminissent.—CIC.

PROSODIÆ LATINÆ COMPENDIUM.

- § 201. De Syllabarum quantitate disserit,
Et de Metrorum legibus, Prosodia.

DE SYLLABARUM QUANTITATE.

DEFINITIONES.

1. *Mensura Tempus eloquendæ est syllabæ :*
Quod et vocatur Quantitas.
Obs. Vocalis observetur : in vocalium
Stat quantitate syllabarum quantitas.
2. *Longi (—) brevisque (—) Temporis notas habes.*
Obs. 1. Singulis longis brevibusque binis
Par est eademque potestas.
Obs. 2. *Communis audit illa, quæ interdum brevis,*
Et rursus eadem longa vocalis sonat.
Not. *H* non habetur consonans, nullamque vim
Exercet in Prosodiâ.

REGULÆ QUANTITATIS GENERALES.

- § 202. *R. G. I.* Omnis Diphthongus contractaque Syllaba longa est :
Ut prǣs, hǣu, gaũdens : cȭdgo fit cõgo, nĩhĩl nĩl ;
Pro bȭvibus bõbus ; mȭmentum pro mõvĩmentum.
Obs. At tu vocali *prǣeuntem* corripies *prǣ.*
- § 203. *R. G. II.* Dant Derivatis proprium Primaria tempus :
Sic sã̄lĩceta sã̄lĩx, pȭmum pȭmaria format.
Obs. Fit tamen in multis aliter : sic *ã̄ret ã̄rena,*
Sic hũ̄manus hȭmo est ; sic *lũ̄cet parva lũ̄cerna.*
R. G. III. Nec non Simplicium tempus Composita sequuntur :
A pũ̄to sic repũ̄to, sic a mẽ̄mor immẽ̄mor exstat.
Obs. Sunt excepta tamen : sic *jũ̄ro pejẽ̄ro* format.
- § 204. *R. G. IV.* Prǣvia vocali vocalis corripitur : ceu
Prĩncĩpũ̄m, prȭhĩbe :
Obs. 1. Sed multa hinc excipe Græca :
Chã̄onis, Ænẽ̄as, Clĩo, Myrtȭus, Enyo.

Obs. 2. A longam Primæ priscus Genitivus habebit :
Terrâi, aulâi ; sic format Quinta, *diâi* :
 Scribe tamen *rêi* atque *rêi, fidêi, atque fidêi*.

Obs. 3. Longa Vocativo est penultima vocis in *aius*,
 Aut *eius* ; *Câi, Pompêi*, hâc lege sonantur.

Obs. 4. *I* Verbi *fio* longa est, nisi cùm comes est *er* ;
 “ *Omnia nunc flent, fieri quæ posse negabam.* ”

Obs. 5. *I* dat communem Genitivus in *ius* : ut *ille*
Illius illiusque facit : sic *ius iusque*
Totus et unus habent, *ipse isteque, nullus et ullus* :
Uirtus, alterius, breviant ; producit *altus*.

Obs. 6. Nunc *Diana* feras agitât, nunc *dâa Diana*.
 Sic *ôhe* vel *ôhe* ; sed semper dicimus *êheu*.

§ 205. *R. G. V.* Longa situ vocalis erit, quamcumque sequentur
 Seu duo, sive duplex in eâdem consona voce :
 Ut ; *dûlcis cõnjûx* ; *êt notâ mājor imago*.

Obs. Excipe *quadrjûgus, bîjûgus*, quæ corripunt *i*.

Not. Vocalis, vi curta suâ, communis erit, si
 Consona postponens liquidam sibi muta sequetur :
 Sic rectè *lugûbre* melos vel *lugûbre* dices :
Dûplex sive *dûplex, Têcmessam* sive *Têcmessam*.

(*Obs.* 1.) *N* post *g* longam dat semper : ut *âgnus* et *ignis*.
 Nec minus *m* post *g* ; *têgmen* quod monstrat et *âgmen*.

(*Obs.* 2.) Syllaba si liquidam diviserit altera mutâ,
 Longa prior semper : quod *sûbruit, âblue*, monstrant.

§ 206. *R. G. VI.* Præteriti brevis est geminati syllaba prima :
 Ut, *pêpuli, didici, pûpugi, cêcidi*, atque *cêcidi*.

R. G. VII. Præterita efficiunt primam dissyllaba longam,
 Ut, *vîdi, lêgi, mōvique*. Sed excipe septem :
Bîbi, dēdi, atque fîdi,
Stēti, stîti, tûli, scîdi.

R. G. VIII. Producent primam dissyllaba ritè Supina,
 Ut, *vîsum, lōtum, mōtumque* : sed excipe pauca :
Cîtum, dâtum, îtum, îtum,
Râtum, rûtum, sâtum, sîtum.

DE QUANTITATE SYLLABARUM FINALIUM.

§ 207. *R. I.* Pleraque produces Monosyllaba, qualia *mê, vēr*.

Obs. Corripiuntur in *l, b, d, t, ut, vël, sâb, id, et, stât* :
Es cum compositis, ut *adês* : *quê, vê*, quumque rogat, *nê*.
Fâc, nêc, ân, in, fêr, pêr, têr, vêr, côr, quîs, ôis, is et *cîs*.

§ 208. *R. II. Producuntur in A ; contrā, frustrāque parāque.*

Obs. Sed casus rectos et quartos excipe : quales,
Carminā musā canit ; resonant *Amaryllidā* sylvæ.
 Atque vocativos plerosque, ut *Orestā, Thyestā* :
Ejā, itā particulas, cumque his *quidā*, quæ breviant a.

§ 209. *R. III. Corripiuntur in E : sinē regē timetē manerē.*

Obs. E longam Primæ casus Quintæque requirunt :
 Ut *Thisbē, speciē* : quæ derivantur ab illis,
 Ut *quarē* atque *hodiē* : contractaque, qualia *Tempē* :
 Verba in eo primi numeri mandantia, ut *audē* :
 (Sed *cavē* sive *cavē* scribendi est æqua potestas)
 Ex Adjectivis Adverbia ducta Secundæ,
 Ut *miserē* : jungantur *ohē, fermēque ferēque*.

§ 210. *R. IV. Producuntur in I : ceu dicī, orbīque, dolīque.*

Obs. Attamen hinc multos Græcorum deme Dativos
 Atque Vocativos : ut *Thyrsidī, Phyllidī, Chlort* :]
 Deme *nisi* et *quasi*, *sicubi*, *necubi*, quæ brevis est i.
 (At *mihi, ubi, tibi, ibi, sibi*, communem faciunt i.)

§ 211. *R. V. Producuntur in O : ceu virgō, ultrōque, juvōque.*

Obs. At *putō* finalem, *sciō, nesciō*, corripiunt O :
 Adde *modō* et compōsta, *duō, octō, egō*, quæ *citō* jungē.
 O proprium claudens nomen communis habetur,
 Ut *Matho* : (sed longa est in Græcis semper, ut *Argō*).
 Quædam Flaccus habet communis, plurima Naso,
 Plura poetarum corruptior addidit ætas.

R. VI. Producuntur in U : sic tū, dictūque, diūque.

R. VII. Corripiuntur in Y : sic dant chely, Tiphys, poetæ.

§ 212. *R. VIII. In C producuntur, ut illic : (excipe donēc.)*

R. IX. Corripit in L, D, T : sic Hannibāl, illūd, amavit.

R. X. Corripiuntur in N : ceu culmēn.

(At excipe Græca
 Multa, ut *Hymēn, Acrōn*, vocali prædita longā.)

R. XI. Corripiuntur in R : ceu calcār.

(At excipe Græca,
 Ceu *cratēr, æthēr*, vocali prædita longā.)

§ 213. *R. XII. Producuntur in As : ut terrās.*

(Excipe Græca,
 Quæ Genitivus *-adis*, ceu *Peliās* : adjice casus
 Crescentium quartos, ceu *lampadās* : his *andis* adde.)

R. XIII. Producuntur in *Es*, ut *sedēs* atque *viderēs*.

Obs. Excipienda tamen quæ Græci corripiunt; ut

Troadēs: excipias etiam *penēs*, excipiasque
Crescentis brevis est penultima queis Genitivi,
Ut *segēs*: (at *pariēs* semper producit, atque
Pēs cum compositis: *abiēsque*, *ariēsque*, *Cerēsque*.)

§ 214. R. XIV. Corripiuntur in *Is*: ceu *diceris*, *utilis*, *ensis*:

Obs. Obliqui casus plurales excipiuntur.

Ut *terris*, *vobis*: etiam persona secunda
In primo numero Quartæ Præsentis, ut *audis*:
Composita a *vis*, *sis*: *malis*, *nohisque*, *velisque*.
(Atqui Præteriti et persona secunda Futuri
In Coniunctivo rectè communis habetur;
Feceris, *addideris*, *tuleris*.) At nomina produc
Crescentis longa est penultima queis Genitivi,
Ut *Samnis*: itidem *Simois*, *gratissque*, *fortissque*.

§ 215. R. XV. Producuntur in *Os*: ut *ventōs* atque *sacerdōs*.

Obs. Corripienda tamen quæ Græci corripiunt, ut

Phasidōs, *Argōs*, *epōs*. Sic *compōs* et *impōs*, *ōs*, *exōs*.

R. XVI. Corripiuntur in *Us*: ceu *tempūs*, *amamūs*, et *intūs*.

Obs. Hinc Quartæ casus contractos excipe, ut *artūs*:

Longaque crescentis penultima queis Genitivi,
Ut *tellūs incūsque*, *juventūs* atque *senectūs*:
Producta a Græcis, ut *Sapphūs* atque *Melampūs*,
Aque piis cunctis venerandum nomen *Iesūs*.

**R. XVII. Corripiuntur in *Ys*: *Tiphys*, *chlamys*, *Othrys*,
Erinnys.**

Not. Ducit ab *Auctorum* scriptis ea syllaba tempus,
Regula quam longam nulla brevemve facit.

DE METRORUM LEGIBUS.

DEFINITIONES.

§ 216. 1. In proferendis syllabis *Arsin* voca

Elationem vocis; (huic *Ictus* comes)

Thesisque contra vocis est depressio.

Pes syllabarum est certa consecutio:

Pedumque certa consecutio *Rhythmus*:

Apud poetas *Versus* est nomen *Rhythm*i;

Certumque Versuum ordinem *Carmen* voca

*Metrum*ve: et audit certa pars Versus *Metrum*.

§ 217. 2. Syllaba longa brevi subjecta vocatur *Iambus*: —

Quod si longa brevi præcesserit, ille *Trochæus*: — —

Pyrrhichius brevibus voluit consistere binis: — —

Spondeus binis voluit consistere longis: — —

Dactylus efficitur longâ brevibusque duabus: — — —

Postque breves binas *Anapestus* simplice longâ: — — —

Tribrachyn huc brevibus formatum subijce ternis. — — —

- Not.* 1. Quem Thesis incipiat, dices *ascendere* Rhythmum :
 Quale tuus speciem versus, Iambe, dabit :
 Cæperit ex Arsi contra, *descendere* dices ;
 Dactyle, tu talem, tuque, Trochæe, facis.
- Not.* 2. *Metrum* in Dactylico carmine singuli,
 Binique in reliquis constituunt pedes.
- Not.* 3. Complendis metris cui syllaba deficit una,
 Hic Versus Catalecticus audit.
 Complendis metris cui deerit syllaba duplex,
 Ille Brachycatalecticus audit.
 Syllaba cui superest completis unica metris,
 Versus Hypercatalecticus audit.
 Cui nihil aut deest aut superest, teres atque rotundus,
 Versus is Acatalecticus audit.

DE SCANSIONE ET FIGURIS SCANSIONIS.

- § 218. *Scansio*, | quam vari|à con|cinnant | arte Fil|guræ,
 Distribu|it Ver|sum | pro rati|one Pe|dum.
- A. Vocalem elidit *Synalæpha* in limite vocis,
 Si Vocalis erit subnexæ in limine vocis,
Phyllid' am' | ant' ali|as : nam | me dis|cedere | flevit.
 (pro *Phyllida*, *amo*, *ante*.)
- Obs.* 1. Interdum legem *Synalæphæ* infringit *Hiatus* :
Ter sunt | cona|ti im|ponere | Pelid' | Ossam.
- Obs.* 2. *Heu*, *O* et *ah* nunquam vocalis proxima delet.
- B. *Ecthlipsis* Vocalem atque *m* de limite trudit,
 Si Vocalis erit subnexæ in limine vocis.
O cu|ras homin' | O quant'|est in | rebus in|ane.
 (pro *hominum*, *quantum*.)
- § 219. C. Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæresis* audit,
 Ut monstrant *deest*, *dein*, *aureos*, *alvearia*, *Thesei*.
- Obs.* Apud poetas jura consonantium
 Subinde sumit *I* vel *U* :
"Flāviorum rex Eridanus. Labat æriete murus.
"Gēnua tremunt. Pectunt et tēnuia vellera Seres."
- D. Distrahit in geminas resoluta *Dialysis* unam :
 Quod tibi *Naiades* monstrant flavique *Suēvi* :
- Obs.* Ponitur *U* pro *V* : *siliās*, *solūitque* videbis.
- § 220. E. Ante pedum finem *Cæsura* vocabula finit :
"Lumina, labentem || cælo || quæ ducitis annum."—VIRG.
- Obs.* Quam fecit natura brevem, vocalis in Arsi
 Longa fit interdum, *Cæsura* Ictuque juvante :
"Pectoribūs || inhians spirantia consulit exta."
- F. Secernit vocemque pedemque *Dieresis* unā :
"Lumina || labentem cælo quæ || ducitis || annum."
- Not.*—Ultima communis censetur syllaba versûs.

DE VERSIBUS DACTYLICIS.

I. DE HEXAMETRO SIVE SENARIO DACTYLICO.

- § 221. Hexameter pedibus senis concluditur : horum
Dactylus est quintus : sextâ statione locatur
Spondeus ; reliquisque locis reperitur utervis.

Obs. 1. Quintâ | sede lo | cat re | rum gravi | tas spon | deum.

Obs. 2. Hexametrum Cæsura solet distinguere, qua pes
Tertius aut quartus || sese || discernit in Arsi.

(Obs. 1.) Post Thesin interdum Cæsura est unica Versûs :
“ *Impiger, iracundus, || inexorabilis, acer.*”—HOR.

(Obs. 2.) Damnabis versum, Cæsura qui vacet omni.

Obs. 3. Efficit Hexametri justam dissyllaba finem
Sive trisyllaba vox, rarò polysyllaba, rarò,
Altera ni præeat, claudit monosyllaba versum.

Obs. 4. Ultima perrarò sorbetur syllaba versûs :
Quod quum contingit, tum versus *Hypermæter* audit :
“ *Omnia | Mercuri | o simi | lis, vo | cemque co | loremque*
Et cri | nes fla | vos et | membra de | cora ju | ventæ.”—VIRG.

II. DE PENTAMETRO DACTYLICO.

- § 222. Pentameter partes binas habet : utraque binis
Procedit pedibus, quibus instat syllaba longa.
Primam pro lubitu Spondeus, Dactylus, intrant :
Dactylicis tantum pedibus pars altera gaudet.

Obs. 1. Pentametri primam partem Cæsura secundâ
Separat : aque loco Synalæpha excluditur illo.

“ *Quamvis | ingeni | o || non valet, | arte valet.*

Obs. 2. Pentametri justam faciunt Dissyllaba finem.

(Obs.) Est licet ad finem, si fit Synalæpha, remitti :

“ *Invi | tis ocu | lis | littera | lecta tu | a est.*

Vel si vox anteit monosyllaba, qualis in illo :

Præmia | si studi | o | consequor | ista, sat | est.

Obs. 3. Ne partis primæ sit vox monosyllaba finis,
Ni vox præcedat monosyllaba, qualis in illo :

“ *Magna ta | men spes | est | in boni | tate De | i.*

Vel vox interdum brevibus confecta duabus ;

Hæc præ | stat sine | vi | sceptra tre | menda Jo | vi.

DE CARMINE HEROICO ET DE CARMINE
ELEGIACO.

- § 223. Hexametris gaudet solis Heroica Musa :
Hexametros Elegi Pentametrosque ligant.

Obs. Disticha perfectum malunt includere sensum :

Nec simplicis sententiæ

Constructionem distichis scindi placet.

§ 224. HEXAMETRORUM DACTYLICORUM EXEMPLA,

(Qui et Versus Memoriales sunt de Vocum differentiâ.)

Cantat *acanthis* avis, sed floret *acanthus* in agris.
In silviis *âcer* est : equus *âcer* Olympia vincit.
Qui fert arma *humeris*, armo dux fertur equino.
Mel vaga condit *âpis* : deus est *Ægyptius Apis*.
Vexat *asilus* equos; miseros excepit *asylum*.
Qui sculpit, *cælat*, qui servat condita, *celat*.
Voce *cânes* ; duc eja *cânes*, nisi tempora *cânes*.
Tenduntur nexi *casses* ; nitet ærea *cassis*.
Casside cinge caput : capiuntur *cassibus* apri.
Cædo facit *cessi* ; *cecidi* *cado* ; *cædo* cecidi.
Clava ferit : *clavus* firmat ; *clavisque* recludit.
Fert ancilla *côlum* ; penetrat res humida *côlum*.
Rusticus arva *côlit*, sed *côlat* turbida vina.
Côminus ense feris ; jactâ cadis *eminus* hastâ.
Ut placeas *cômiti*, mores *cômes* induc *cômes*.
Comædi scenam, *cômédones* quærite *cœnam*.
Consule doctores ; sic tu tibi *consulis* ipsi.
Bellandi *cupido* nocuit sua sæpè *cupido*.
Carmina *dicuntur*, Domino dum templa *dîcantur*.
Solvere *diffidit*, nodum qui *diffidit* ense.
Edûcat hic catulos, ut mox *edûcat* in apros.
Si tibi non est *æs*, *ês* inops, et pinguia non *ês*.
Fallit sæpè *frêtum* placido nimis æquore *frêtum*.
Fructus arboribus, *fruges* nascuntur in agris.
Sol nubes *fûgat*, et *fûgit* irreparabile tempus.
Ales *hirundo* canit ; nat *hirudo* ; vernat *arundo*.
Per quod quis peccat, per *idem* mox plectitur *idem*.
Difficilis *lâbor* est, cujus sub pondere *lâbor*.
Frons pueri est *lêvis*, *lêvis* autem lingua puellæ.
In silvis *lêpôres*, in verbis quære *lêpôres*.
Non licet asse mihi, qui me non asse licetur.
Mâlo ego *mâla* meâ bona quàm *mâla* frangere *mâlâ*.
Merx vênit, mercesque vênit quæsitâ labore.
Carus eris Domino, *miseris* si *miseris* aurum.
Nitère, parve puer, cupies quicumque *nîtère*.
Oblita quæ fûco rubet, est *oblita* decori.
Occidit ille dolo turpi, quem *occidit* amicus.
Opperior Caium qui pullo *ôperitur* amictu.
Os (*ôris*) mandat, sed *ôs* (*ossis*) manditur *ôre*.
Uxoris *pârère* et *pârère*, *pârère* mariti est.
Pârentes pueri faciunt gaudere *pârentes*.
Nî *pendère* völes, non debita *pendère* nôles.
Lude *pîllâ* : *pîlum* torquetur : *pîla* columna est.
Pro reti et regione *plâga* est ; pro verbere *plâga*.
Sunt cives urbis *pôpulus* ; est *pôpulus* arbor.

Si vitare *pōtes*, ne plus duo pocula *pōtes*.
Prora prior, *puppis* pars postera, et ima *carina*.
Tribula grana terunt; *tribuli* nocuere novali.
Spondet vas (vadis), at *vas (vasis)* continet escam.
Vas caput, at nummos tantum *præes* præstat amicè.
 Si transire *vêlis* maris undas, utere *vêlis*.

ELEGORUM EXEMPLA.

(Qui et Versus Memoriales sunt.)

Fidē, sed ante *vidē*; qui *fidit*, nec benè *vidit*,
 Fallitur: inde *vidē* ne capiare *fidē*.
Forfice sartores, tonsores *forpice* gaudent;
 At faber ignitum *forcipe* prensat opus.
Consortes fortuna eadem, *socios* labor idem,
 Unum *collegas* efficit officium:
 At caros faciunt schola, ludus, mensa, *sodales*:
 Sulcus agri *lira* est: dat *lyra* tacta modos.
 Ne sit *securus*, qui non est *tutus* ab hoste;
 Ad flumen *ripas*, ad mare *littus* habes.
 Sunt ætate *senes*; *veteres* vixere priores:
 Quod non est *simulo dissimuloque* quod est.
Ungula conculcat; lacerat, tenet, arripit *unguis*;
Ulva tenax stagno nascitur, *alga* mari.
Vallamus proprie castra, at *sepimus* ovile,
 Hasta *teres* dici, sphaera *rotunda* potest.
 Quod scriptum est *dele*, sed *flamman* *extingue* lucernæ;
 Lingua cibum *gustat*, qui bene cunque *sapit*.
 Est in carne *cutis*, detracta e corpore *pellis*;
Tergum expandit homo; bellua *tergus* habet.
Pistor habet *furnum*; *forname* hypocausta calescunt:
 Hæc *nōta* Grammatici non mihi *nōta* fuit.
 Anne *nōvi* quid habes? Alium *pete*: nil ego *nōvi*.
 Quod minimè *rēfert* garrulus ille *rēfert*.
 Si quā fortè *sēdes*, atque est tibi commoda *sēdes*,
 Illā *sēdē sēdē*; fors nova tuta parum est.

ACCIDENCE AND ETYMOLOGY.

TRANSLATIONS AND EXCURSIONS.

EXCURSION A. ON THE LATIN LETTERS.

§ a. THE ancient Latin Alphabet consisted of the following fifteen letters, like the Hebrew and Greek, with which, indeed, it is identical:—

A, B, C, D, E, I, K, L, M, N, O, P, R, S, T.

V was introduced at the end as a consonantal spirant, and gradually softened into the vowel U. X came in next as a substitute for CS. Y and Z were afterwards received, but never thoroughly naturalised, being only used in words borrowed from the Greek. G was first introduced about the time of the second Punic war; and also Q, used before *v* or *u*, to express some of the sounds previously represented by C. Hence K became superfluous, and is only found in certain abbreviations, as K. for *Cæso*, and for *Calendæ*. To these was added F, borrowing the place of the Hebrew Vau and the form of the Greek Digamma, but used as a kind of aspirate. Then the vowel I began to be used as a consonant (like the Hebrew Yod): and as V (when softened into a vowel) received in modern times a separate sign and name (U), so I (when a consonant) took the separate sign and name of J. Lastly, the Romans naturalised the aspirate under the form H, which is not to be regarded either as a vowel or consonant.

§ b. The proper Diphthongs are—

ai ei oi au eu ou.

All these were anciently used in Latin; but gradually *ai* was changed into *æ*, *oi* into *æ*; while *ei* passed into either *ē* or *ī*, and *ou* into *ū*. Thus Mousai became Musæ, pœna pœna, Aineias Æneas, Seiren Siren, lumen, &c.

§ c. The Divisions and Relations of the Letters are of the first importance in Latin Etymology.

Consonants are divided, according to the organ by which they are uttered, into

1. *Labials*, or Lip-sounds, *b, p, v, f, m*.
2. *Linguals*, or Tongue-sounds, *d, t, j, l, n, r, s*.
3. *Gutturals*, or Throat-sounds, *c, g, h, k, q, x*.

The double consonant *x* arises from *cs*, *gs*, *gus*, *qus*, *hs*; *z* from *ts*: *j* is properly a vowel: *h* is merely a breathing; *f* originally a breathing; *v* partly a vowel, partly a breathing: *s* holds a middle place between liquids and mutes: *k* is out of use; and *q* stands for *c* before *u* (*v*) and another vowel. The proper Mutes are thus reduced to six, *b*, *c*, *d*, *g*, *p*, *t*.

Of these the Labials, *b*, *p*, are called P-sounds.
 — the Linguals, *d*, *t*, — T-sounds.
 — the Gutturals, *c*, *g*, — K-sounds.

These are again divided, according to the *strength* with which they are uttered, into

Tenuēs (smoothly uttered), *p*, *c*, *t*.
Mediæ (firmly uttered), *b*, *g*, *d*.

The Greek language has corresponding aspirates; but (as F does not fully correspond to Phi) the Latin can only represent them by *ph*, *ch*, *th*; which, however, are not very commonly used. Thus arises the following two-fold division, which must be carefully remembered:—

Tenuēs. Mediæ. Aspiratæ.

P-sounds

T-sounds

K-sounds

<i>p</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>ph</i>
<i>t</i>	<i>d</i>	<i>th</i>
<i>c</i>	<i>g</i>	<i>ch</i>

Rh is only used in Greek words, as *rhetor*.

§ d. ON THE INTERCHANGES OF THE CONSONANTS.

I. LABIALS.

(1.) B stands for the Greek Pi in words derived from the Greek, as *ἀπό* *ab*, *ὑπό* *sub*: sometimes for Phi, as *ἀμφί* *ambi*, *νεφέλη* *nebula*. In Latin it is interchanged with V, especially where *v* has a vowel use, as *duellum* = *dvellum* = *bellum* (dropping *d*); so *Duellona* = *Bellona*; *duis* = *bis*. On the other hand, *abfero* = *avfero* = *aufero*; *abfugio* = *avfugio* = *aufugio*.

(2.) F sometimes stands for the Greek Beta, as *βρέμω* *fremo*: sometimes for Phi, as *φέρω* *fero*. Having been originally a mere aspirate, it was interchanged with H in old Latin, as *Formiæ* = *Hormiæ*.

(3.) M stands for the Greek Nu, as in the Accus. Sing. and Gen. Plur. of the Declensions; so *μή* *nē*, and so *quom-jam* = *quoniam*: sometimes for Pi, as *ἄπνος* *somnus*. Sometimes euphonically inserted, as *ἄπης* *Mars*; sometimes drops out, as *quam-si* = *quasi*, *com-arceo* = *coerceo*.

(4.) P stands sometimes for the Greek Beta, as *Κάνωσος* *Canopus*; for Kappa, as *λύκος* *lupus*; for Tau, as *ταός* *pavo*; for Mu, as *μέρος* *pars*; for Phi, as *πορφύρα* *purpura*. Interchanges with V, as *ovilio* = *opilio*; with B, as *pop-licus* = *publicus*.

(5.) V. See I. (1.), (4.), and *Obs.*

II. LINGUALS.

(1.) D stands for Lambda, as *μελετᾶω* meditor, *ἐλεῖφαρ* adeps; for Zeta, as *σχίζω* scindo; for Theta, as *Θεός* Deus; for Sigma, as *μέσος* medius, *ῥόδον* rosa. Is interchanged with T, as *mendax* from *mentior*, *quadraginta* from *quatuor*; with S, as *Claudius* for *Clausus*. Is euphonically inserted between *re*, *se*, or *pro*, and a vowel, as *re-amo* = *redamo*, *se-itio* = *seditio*, *pro-est* = *prodest*.

(2.) T stands for Pi, as *σπουδή* studium; for Delta, as *σπᾶδιον* spatium. Is interchanged with D, as *ad-que* = *atque*. Drops out, as *lac, poema*. See § e. I. Rule 7.

(3.) L stands for Delta, as *Ὀδυσσεύς* Ulysses, *δάκρυ* lacryma, *δάηρ* levir, *ὀλεῖν* oleo; for Rho, as *παῦρος* paulus. Interchanges with R, as *Latialis* and *Latiaris*.

(4.) N stands for Rho, as *δῶρον* donum, *δενός* dirus. Is euphonically inserted, as *δασύς* densus, *σᾶος* sanus. Drops out, as *Πλάτων* Plato, *contusum*.

(5.) R stands for Lambda, as *χελιδόν* hirundo; for Sigma, as *χθές* heri. Is interchanged with S, as *honor* and *honos*, *quæro* and *quæso*, *nasus* and *naris*; with D, as *medi-dies* = *meridies*; *auris*, *audio*, Drops out, as *prorsa* = *prosa*. Of its euphonic insertion, see § e. III.

(6.) S stands for Tau, as *ῥητίνη* resina; for the smooth breathing, as *εἰ* si, *εἶρω* sero; for the rough breathing, as *ἄλς* sal, *ἄλλομαι* salio, *ἐξ* sex, *ἔ* se, *ἔρπω* serpo, *ἡμι* semi, *ὑπέρ* super, *ἐλη* silva. Falls out, as *σφάλω* fallo, *is-dem* = *idem*,

(7.) J stands for Zeta, as *ζύγον* jugum; and SS for Zeta, as *μόζω* musso.

III. GUTTURALS.

(1.) C stands for the Greek Kappa, as *Procne*; and for Gamma, as *ἀμυργή* amurca. In Latin it is interchanged with G, as *nec-otium* = *negotium*, *nec-lego* = *negligo*, *quadrin-centi* = *quadringenti*. Sometimes it is euphonically inserted, as *σπέος* specus (a cave), *sicubi* for *si ubi*, *necubi* for *ne ubi*; sometimes falls out, as *hoc-die* = *hodie*, *quinctus* = *quintus*.

(2.) G stands for the Greek Kappa, as *δική* dignus; falls out, as *γάλα* lac, *γνώω* nosco. Interchanged with other gutturals, as *tragula*, from *traho*. Falls out, as *exagimen*, *exa-imen* = *exāmen*; *contagimen*, *contaimen* = *contāmen*; *magior*, *ma-ior* = *māior*; *jūgmentum* = *jūmentum*.

(3.) Q stands for Tau, as *τε* que, *τις* quis, *τέτταρες* quatuor; for Pi, as *πέντε* quinque, *λείπω* linquo; for Kappa, as *εἰκός* æquus. Is interchanged with C, as *secundus* from *sequor*.

(4.) X stands for Sigma, as *Αἶας* Ajax; for Psi, as *ὤψ* vox.

Obs. — Many words contain the Æolic Digamma (or sixth letter of the old Greek alphabet), which appears in Latin generally as V, like which it was probably sounded; sometimes as U, B, F, P, H.

(a.) Words containing the Digamma as V: *Vesta*, *Velia*, *vinum*, *vestis*, *vis*, *ver*, *vespera*, *vicus*, *volvo*, *vomo*, *video*, *clavis*, *ævum*, *ovis*, *ovum*, *navis*, *rivus*, *exuvie*, *silva*, *pavo*, *divus*, *levis*, *lævus*, *scævus*, *novus*, *Achivus*, *Argivus*, *divido*, *vivo*, *Jovis*, &c., *bovis*, &c. (from the Nom. of which (*bos bov-s*) it has fallen out), &c.

(b.) As U: *audio*, *claudio*.

(c.) As B: *bustum*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *nobis*, *vobis*.

(d.) As F: frango, frigus.

(e.) As P: dapis, lapis.

(f.) As H: mihi.

§ e. ON EUPHONY.

All nations, more or less, study *Euphony*, or pleasing sound, in language. Hence, when in the composition or flexion of words, an unpleasant sound would be caused by the concurrence of certain letters, one or more of these are altered according to various laws. These laws, as they appear in the Latin language, demand peculiar attention.

I. EUPHONIC CHANGES OF THE CONSONANTS.

RULE 1.—A P-sound or K-sound before a T-sound must be of the same *strength* as the latter. Therefore, *p* or *c* must stand before *t* instead of *b* or *g*: and thus

nub-tum becomes nup-tum. | reg-tum becomes rec-tum.

Obs. 1. — *Sub*, *ob*, remain before *t* in composition, as subtraho, ob-tineo.

Obs. 2. — *Gu*, *qu*, before *t*, are likewise changed into *c*, as exting-tum = extinctum, coqu-tum = coctum; also *h*, as trah-tum = tractum, sometimes *v*, as viv-tum = victum.

RULE 2.—B before S is changed into *p*; thus,

scrib-si becomes scrip-si. | lab-sus becomes lap-sus.

Obs. 1. — Except Prepositions in composition, as ob-sideo; and Substantives in *bs*, as urbs, plebs.

Obs. 2. — Sometimes *b* before *s* is assimilated, as jub-si becomes jussi.

RULE 3.—A K-sound and S become *x*; thus,

duc-si becomes dux. | reg-s becomes rex.
duc-si — duxi. | reg-si — rexi.

Obs. 1. — So the K-sounds, *qu*, *gu*, with *s*, become *x*; as coqu-si = coxi, exting-si = extinxi. *hs* = *x*, as trah-si = traxi; sometimes *vs* = *x*, as viv-si = vixi, niv-s = nix.

Obs. 2. — K-sounds sometimes fall out between *r* or *l* and *s* or *t*, as sparg-si = sparsi; ulc-tum = ultum. Sometimes *ct* or *gt* after *r* or *l* become *s*; as mulctum = mulsum, paretum = parsum, mergtum = mersum.

RULE 4.—Two T-sounds concurring are changed into *s*, the preceding Vowel, if short, being lengthened; as,

cād-tum becomes cāsum. | vert-tum becomes versum.
divīd-tum — divīsum. | nect-tum — nec-sum = nexum.

Sometimes they form *ss*; as,

ced-tum becomes cessum. | concut-tum becomes concussum.

So three T-sounds form *ss*; as,

mitt-tum becomes missum.

Obs. — N before the T-sound may be rejected or not, as

tund-tum becomes tunsum or tūsum.

pand-tum — pansum or passum.

RULE 5. — One or more T-sounds before S are rejected, the preceding vowel, if necessary, being lengthened; as,

læd-si becomes læsi.	ætat-s becomes ætas.
lud-si — lusi.	juventut-s — juventus.
divid-si — divisi.	frond-s — frons.
mitt-si — misi.	front-s — frons.

RULE 6. — RR, or R, before T, is sometimes changed into s; as,
 torr-tum becomes tostum
 haur-tum — haustum.

RULE 7. — The only Noun which ends with a T-sound is caput. Others reject a final T-sound, as
 cord becomes cor. | lact becomes lac.

RULE 8. — M before a K-sound or T-sound is changed into n; as,
 quem-dam becomes quendam.
 prim-ceps — princeps.

Obs. — N before a P-sound is changed into m; as,
 cun-bo becomes cumbo.
 run-po — rumpo.
 in-primo — imprimo.

RULE 9. — A Tenuis before a Liquid is changed into its Media; as,
 pop-licus becomes publicus.
 sec-mentum — segmentum.
 quat-rupe — quadrupes.

RULE 10. — One Consonant before another is often assimilated, or changed into the latter; as,

in-mitto becomes immitto.	pat-ricida becomes parricida.
liber-lus — libellus.	quidquid — quicquid.
caten-la — catella.	sup-mus — summus.
un-lus — ullus.	ur-si — ussi.
lapid-lus — lapillus.	ger-si — gessi.

Obs. 1. — Sometimes the second Consonant is assimilated to the first; as,
 vel-re becomes velle.

facil-simus —	facillimus.
pulcher-simus —	pulehrrimus.

Obs. 2. — R after a diphthong, and before S, falls out: as,
 hæ-r-si becomes hæsi. | haur-si becomes hausi.

RULE 11. — R at the end of a word is sometimes changed into s; as,
 jur becomes jus. | mor becomes mos.
 So honör and honös, arbör and arbös, are used indifferently.

RULE 12. — If two similar Consonants come together at the end of a word, one is rejected; as,

farr becomes far	mell becomes mel.
------------------	-------------------

On the changes of the Prepositions in Composition, see Notes to § 100

II CHANGES OF THE VOWELS.

(a.) CONTRACTION.

RULE 1. — Two similar short vowels concurring are usually contracted into one long vowel; thus,

diĕ-ĕ becomes diē. | ali-yus becomes aliūs.

RULE 2. — When two different vowels concur, they sometimes form a diphthong; as,

Romā-i becomes Romæ. | co-itus becomes cœtus.

If both are short, the first is often lengthened, and the latter absorbed in it; as,

populō-ĕ becomes populō. | cō-āgo becomes cōgo.
mensā-ĕ — mensā.

Sometimes the first drops out; as,

fructū-ybus becomes fructibus.

If the first is short, and the second long, the first usually falls out; as,

populō-is becomes populis. | mensā-is becomes mensis.

But often the first is lengthened, and the second absorbed; as,
populō-ī becomes populō.

Obs. — H being neither consonant nor vowel does not interfere with contraction; as,

nē-hōmo becomes nēmo. | ds-hībilis becomes dēbilis.
præ-hībeo — præbeo. | vē-hēmens — vēmens.

Sometimes the spirants J and V are removed to make way for a contraction; as,

bijugæ becomes bigæ.
bōv-ibus — (bo-ibus) bōbus or bubus.
providens — (pro-idens) prūdens.

RULE 3. — When V comes before a consonant, it is generally considered as a vowel, and coalesces with the preceding vowel into one sound: thus av becomes au, ov ō, uv ū; as,

cav-tum becomes cautum. | juv-tum becomes jūtum.
mov-tum — mōtum. | bov-s — bōs.

But see Rule 1. Obs. 2., and Rule 9. Obs. 1.

(b.) VOWEL-CHANGE.

One vowel is often changed into another in flexion and composition. This is called Vowel-change.

1. Vowel-change in Flexion.

(1.) A into e; as,

from facio comes feci. | from fallo comes fefelli.

- (2.) A into *i*; as,
from cado comes cecidi.
- (3.) Æ into *i*; as,
from cædo comes cecidi.
- (4.) E into *i*; as,
pulver becomes pulvis.
- (5.) E into *u*; as,
vulner becomes vulnus. | from vello comes vulsum.
- (6.) I into *e*; as,
mari becomes mare. | from rejicio comes rejeci.
- (7.) I into *o*; as,
homin becomes homo.
- (8.) O into *u*; as,
populus becomes populus. | tetoli becomes tetuli.
litor — litus. | coltum — cultum.

2. *Vowel-change in Composition and Derivation.*

- (1.) A into *e*; as,
in-ars becomes iners.
- (2.) A into *i*; as,
in-amicus becomes inimicus.
- (3.) A into *o*; as,
part-io becomes portio.
- (4.) A into *u*; as,
cent-assis becomes centussis. | in-salsus becomes insulsus.
con-quatio — concutio. |
- (5.) Æ into *i*; as,
in-æquus becomes iniquus.
- (6.) AU into *u*, *o*, or *ē*; as,
ex-plaudo becomes explodo. | ob-audio becomes obēdio.
ac-causo — accuso. |
- (7.) E into *i*; as,
pro-tenus becomes protinus.
- (8.) E into *o*; as,
from tego comes toga.
- (9.) E into *u*; as,
scopelus becomes scopulus.
- (10.) I into *u*; as,
from similis comes simulo. | optimus or optumus.
libet or lubet. |
- (11.) O into *i*; as,
in-loco becomes illico. | cog-notus becomes cognitus.
- (12.) O into *u*; as,
ex-sol becomes exsul.

(13.) OE into *u*; as,
from *mœnia* comes *munio*.

(14.) U into *e*; as,
from *jūro* comes *pejēro*.

(15.) U into *i*; as,
famul-ia becomes *familia*.

Note.—I is frequently used as a connective vowel or vincular, to fasten together the elements of compounded or inflected words; as,

nid-i-fico. parent-i-um. parent-i-bus.

E is sometimes so used; as,

nub-s becomes nubes.
parent-m ——— parentem.
matr ——— mater.

Obs.—The quantity of the Root-vowel is often changed both in flexion and derivation; as,

from *āgo* comes *ēgi*.
— *fōveo* ——— *fōvi*.
— *sēdeo* ——— *sēdi* and *sēdes*.

On the Vowel-change in Compound Verbs, see § 99., and Notes.

III. EUPHONIC INSERTIONS.

The concurrence of two vowels is sometimes obviated by the insertion of an euphonic *r*; as,

sēo becomes *sēro*
mensā-um ——— *mensārūm*
populō-um ——— *populōrūm*.

When this happens in Gen. Plur. of Nouns, as in the last two examples, the foregoing vowel is lengthened. Other letters are sometimes euphonically inserted, as *n*, *s*, &c.

EXCURSION B. ON THE DECLENSIONS.

§ a. IN every word there is some essential element, which contains its most general meaning, and is common to all the kindred words containing that meaning. This is called the Root. Though sometimes very difficult to ascertain with correctness, yet it may often be discovered by a careful comparison of all its existing forms, and by the removal of all the additions it has received from flexion, composition, or euphony. The last letter of the root is called the Root-character.

Besides this root, common to all words of one kindred, every word has a *crude form* or *stem*, which represents it independently of any relation to other words. (The crude form and root may coincide, but generally there is some difference between them.) Thus *currū* is the crude form of *currus*, but *curr-* the root, as seen in *curro*. This crude form or stem is

the base of all the inflexions of a word; and its last letter is called the *Stem-character*, and is usually meant when the *character* alone is named. The *endings* affixed to the crude form represent its relations to other words in discourse. See § 10. *Note*.

§ b. The Inflexions of Nouns are called *Casus* (fallings), because they fall or decline from the stem. The Nominative and Vocative are called *Casus recti*, being considered by the ancient grammarians as perpendicular lines, from one of which (the Nominative) the other cases decline or slant, and are therefore called *Casus obliqui* (oblique cases). The *original* Case-endings of Latin Nouns were the following:—

SING.		PLUR.	
Nom.	— or s.	Nom.	ēs, ū.
Gen.	īs.	Gen.	um.
Dat.	i.	Dat.	bus.
Acc.	m.	Acc.	es, a.
Voc.	— or s.	Voc.	es, a.
Abl.	ē.	Abl.	bus.

From these, by certain alterations, arose a later *truncated* system of Case-endings:—

SING.		PLUR.	
Nom.	— or s, or m.	Nom.	i, ū.
Gen.	i.	Gen.	um.
Dat.	i.	Dat.	is.
Acc.	m.	Acc.	es, ū.
Voc.	— or s, or m.	Voc.	i, a.
Abl.	ē.	Abl.	is.

The *original* system was kept in Nouns having for their character *i*, *u*, or a consonant: the *truncated* system was adopted in Nouns having for their character *a* or *o*. Nouns, with character *e*, took the *truncated* system in the Singular, and kept the *original* system in the Plural.

§ c. The learner should remember the following facts:—

- (1.) Neuter Nouns are not found in the First and Fifth Declensions (character *a*, *e*).
- (2.) Neuter Nouns have the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike in each number: and in the Plur. these cases end in *a*.
- (3.) The Nom. and Voc. of all Nouns are alike, except in the Sing. of Nouns in *us* of the Second Declension.
- (4.) The Dat. and Abl. Plural are always alike.

§ d. FIRST DECLENSION. — CHARACTER A.

This Decl. follows the truncated system. Its endings are modified according to the rules given, Exc. A. § e.

The Nom. Sing. coincides with the stem.

SING.		PLUR.	
Nom.	mensā.	mensā-i	= mensae.
Gen.	mensā-i = mensae.	mensā-um	= mensārum.
Dat.	mensā-i = mensae.	mensā-is	= mensis.
Acc.	mensā-m.	mensā-ēs	= mensas.
Voc.	mensā.	mensā-i	= mensae.
Abl.	mensā-ē = mensā.	mensā-is	= mensis.

Obs. 1. — The original Genitive ending *ā-is* (= *as*) remains in the word *familias*, which is used with *pater*, *mater*, *filius*, *filia*; *as*, *pater-familias*, *a father or master of a family*.

Obs. 2. — The uncontracted Gen. *ai* is found with long *ā* in old Latinity and in Epic poetry, as *materiali*.

Obs. 3. — The Abl. *ae* is (according to some grammarians) contracted into *æ* in names of Towns when they answer the question, *Where?* as *Romæ*, at *Rome*. Others refer this form to an ancient locative case in *i*. See § 157. *Note 2*.

Obs. 4. — The words which take *um* for *arum* in Gen. Plur. are (1.), Patronymics, as *Æneadum*. (2.) Compounds in *-cola*, *-gena*; as, *agricolūm*, *Grajugenūm*. (3.) Amphorūm from *amphora*; *drachmūm* from *drachma*. (4.) Some names of peoples, as *Teleboūm*.

§ e. SECOND DECLENSION. — CHARACTER O.

Most Nouns of this Decl. change *o* of the stem into *u*, and add *s* in Nom. Sing., as *dominō-s* = *dominus*. Most of those which end in *ero* reject *o* in Nom., as *puer-ō* = *puer*; so *vir-ō* = *vir*. If a consonant comes before *-rō* in the stem, a vincular *e* is introduced in Nom. before *r*, as *agrō* = *ager*, *magistrō* = *magister*. Neuters assume the ending *m* instead of *s* in Nom. Sing., and *a* in Nom. Plur. The Voc. of Nouns in *o-s* (*us*) takes *e* instead of *o-s* (*us*). The other endings are modified according to the rules of euphony. See Exc. A. § e.

The Nouns declined like *puer* are: *socer*, *a father-in-law*; *gener*, *a son-in-law*; *armiger*, *an armour-bearer*; *adulter*, *a paramour*; *vesper*, *evening*; *signifer*, *a standard-bearer*; *Liber*, *Bacchus*; *liberi*, *children*. The Adjectives declined like *tener* are: *asper*, *rough*; *lacer*, *tattered*; *liber*, *free*; *miser*, *wretched*; *prosper*, *prosperous*: with the compounds of *fero* and *gero*; *as*, *aurifer*, *gold-bearing*; *belliger*, *warlike*. So *satur*, *satura*, *saturum*, *full*.

I.

SING.	PLUR.
Nom. Dominō-s = dominūs.	dominō-ī = dominī.
Gen. Dominō-ī = dominī.	dominō-um = dominōrum.
Dat. Dominō-ī = dominō.	dominō-is = dominīs.
Acc. Dominō-m = dominum.	dominō-es = dominōs.
Voc. Dominē.	dominō-ī = dominī.
Abl. Dominō-ē = dominō.	dominō-is = dominīs.

II.

Nom. Magistrō = magister.	magistrō-ī = magistrī.
Gen. Magistrō-ī = magistrī.	magistrō-um = magistrōrum.
Dat. Magistrō-ī = magistrō.	magistrō-is = magistrīs.
Acc. Magistrō-m = magistrum.	magistrō-es = magistrōs.
Voc. Magistrō = magister.	magistrō-ī = magistrī.
Abl. Magistrō-e = magistro.	magistrō-is = magistrīs.

III.

Nom. Puerō	= puer.	puerō-I	= puer-I.
Gen. Puerō-I	= puerI.	puerō-um	= puerōrum.
Dat. Puerō-I	= puerō.	puerō-is	= pueris.
Acc. Puero-m	= puerum.	puerō-ēs	= puerōs.
Voc. Puerō	= puer	puerō-I	= puerI.
Abl. Puerō-ē	= puero.	puerō-is	= pueris.

IV.

Nom. Bello-m	= bellum.	bellō-ā	= bellā.
Gen. Bellō-I	= bellI.	bellō-um	= bellōrum.
Dat. Bellō-I	= bellō.	bellō-is	= bellis.
Acc. Bello-m	= bellum.	bellō-ā	= bellā.
Voc. Bello-m	= bellum.	bellō-ā	= bellā.
Abl. Bellō-ē	= bellō.	bellō-is	= bellis.

Obs. 1.—The Genitives Plur. in *um* for *orum* are :—(1.) Coins, weights, and measures ; as, denariūm, nummūm, sestertiūm, talentūm, modium, medimnūm, &c. (2.) Names of people, in Poetry ; as, Danaūm, Argivūm. (3.) Deūm, fabrūm, liberūm, sociūm, duumvirūm, &c.

Obs. 2.—Greek Nouns in *ōs* are usually declined thus : Athōs, Athō, Athō, Athōn, Athō ; but sometimes with a Latin flexion. Those in *eūs* make Voc. in *eū*, as Orpheus, Gen. Orphēi (or Orphēos), Voc. Orpheu,

§ f. THIRD DECLENSION.—CHARACTER A CONSONANT ; IN SOME WORDS I.

The stem in this Decl. may be found by casting off *is* from the Gen. Sing., excepting in the words mentioned (§§ 21, 22.), which have *i* for their character ; and the stem of these may be found by casting off *s* from the Gen. Sing. A comparison of the stem with the Nom. Sing. will show what changes the latter has undergone in various words. This Decl. follows the original system of case-endings ; connecting the stem and case-ending in Acc. Sing. by a vincular *e*, and in Dat. and Abl. Plur. by a vincular *i*. The *e* and *i* in the Nominatives *es* and *is* of Parisyllables are also vincular (excepting those named, § 21.) ; likewise the *i* of Gen. Plur. *ium*, with the exceptions, §§ 21, 22. Also *e* is vincular in Nominatives in *ter* (except later, *iter*), in *imber*, and in names of months, as November. Some Nouns take the ending *s* in the Nom. Sing. ; others omit it. Compare the following Vocabulary with Exc. A. § e.

VOCABULARY OF THIRD DECLENSION. (§ 17.)

Stem.	Nominative.	Stem.	Nominative.
Poemăt	Poema, a poem, n.	Turbĭn	Turbo, a whirlwind, m.
Marĭ	Mare, a sea, n.	Apollĭn	Apollo, Apollo, m.
Leōn	Leo, a lion, m.	Ligōn	Ligo, a spade, m.
Natiōn	Natio, a nation, f.	Macedōn	Macedo, a Macedonian, m.
Carn	Caro, flesh, f.	Lact	Lac, milk, n.
Ordĭn	Ordo, order, m.	Sōl	Sōl, the sun, m.
Virgĭn	Virgo, a virgin, f.	Mell	Mel, honey, n.
Homĭn	Homo, a man, c.	Fell	Fel, gall, n.
Nemĭn	Nemo, no man, c.		

<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Nominative.</i>
Titān	Titān, <i>Titan</i> , m.	Or	Os, <i>a mouth</i> , n.
Rēn	Rēn, <i>the kidney</i> , m.	Custōd	Custos, <i>a guardian</i> , c.
Sindōn	Sindōn, <i>fine linen</i> , f.	Bōv	Bōs, <i>an ox</i> , c.
Lumīn	Lumen, <i>light</i> , n.	Oss	Os, <i>a bone</i> , n.
Calcārī	Calcār, <i>a spur</i> , n.	Virtūt	Virtūs, <i>virtue</i> , f.
Jubār	Jubār, <i>a sunbeam</i> , n.	Palūd	Palūs, <i>a marsh</i> , f.
Farr	Far, <i>meal</i> , n.	Pecūd	Pecus, <i>cattle</i> , f.
Carcēr	Carcēr, <i>a prison</i> , n.	Tellūr	Tellūs, <i>earth</i> , f.
Vēr	Vēr, <i>spring</i> , n.	Rūr	Rūs, <i>the country</i> , n.
Patr	Patēr, <i>a father</i> , m.	Mūr	Mūs, <i>a mouse</i> , m.
Imbr	Imber, <i>a shower</i> , m.	Grū	Grus, <i>a crane</i> , f.
Itinēr	Itēr, <i>a journey</i> , n.*	Sū	Sus, <i>a swine</i> , c. } †
Latēr	Latēr, <i>a brick</i> , m.	Vulnēr	Vulnūs, <i>a wound</i> , n.
Honōr	Honōr, <i>honour</i> , m.	Tempōr	Tempūs, <i>time</i> , n.
Arbōr	Arbōr, <i>a tree</i> , f.	Pecōr	Pecūs, <i>cattle</i> , n.
Cord	Cor, <i>the heart</i> , n.	Laud	Laus, <i>praise</i> , f.
Fulgūr	Fulgūr, <i>lightning</i> , n.	Fraud	Fraus, <i>deceit</i> , f.
Ebōr	Ebūr, <i>ivory</i> , n.	Front	Frons, <i>a brow</i> , f.
Jecōr	} Jecūr, <i>the liver</i> , n.*	Part	Pars, <i>a part</i> , f.
Jecinōr		Fronđ	Frons, <i>a leaf</i> , f.
Ētāt	Ētas, <i>age</i> , f.	Gland	Glans, <i>an acorn</i> , f.
Vās	Vās, <i>a vessel</i> , n.	Trāb	Trabs, <i>a beam</i> , f.
Vād	Vas, <i>a surety</i> , m.	Stīrp	Stīrps, <i>a trunk</i> , f.
Mār	Mas, <i>a male</i> , m.	Hyēm	Hyems, <i>winter</i> , f.
Ass	As, <i>a pound</i> , n.	Cœlib	Cœlebs, <i>a bachelor</i> , m.
Nub	Nubes, <i>a cloud</i> , f.	Prīncēp	Princeps, <i>chief</i> , c.
Mīlīt	Mīlēs, <i>a soldier</i> , c.	Capīt	Caput, <i>a head</i> , n.
Segēt	Segēs, <i>standing corn</i> , f.	Pāc	Pax, <i>peace</i> , f.
Quiēt	Quiēs, <i>rest</i> , f.	Fāc	Fax, <i>a torch</i> , f.
Obsīd	Obsēs, <i>a hostage</i> , c.	Judīc	Judex, <i>a judge</i> , c.
Præsīd	Præsēs, <i>a president</i> , c.	Vībīe	Vibex, <i>a wheel</i> .
Pēd	Pēs, <i>a foot</i> , m.	Vervēc	Vervex, <i>a wether</i> , m.
Mercēd	Mercēs, <i>hire</i> , f.	Nēc	Nex, <i>death</i> , f.
Hærēd	Hærēs, <i>an heir</i> , c.	Lēg	Lex, <i>law</i> , f.
Cerēr	Cerēs, <i>Ceres</i> , f.	Grēg	Grex, <i>a flock</i> , m.
Ær	Æs, <i>copper</i> , n.	Remīg	Remex, <i>a rower</i> , m.
Præd	Præs, <i>a surety</i> , m.	Sen	Senex, <i>an old person</i> , c.*
Av	Avīs, <i>a bird</i> , f.	Supellectil	Supellex, <i>furniture</i> , n.*
Amn	Amnis, <i>a river</i> , m.	Cornīc	Cornix, <i>a crow</i> , f.
Lapīd	Lapis, <i>a stone</i> , m.	Calīc	Calix, <i>a cup</i> , m.
Cīnēr	Cīnīs, <i>ashes</i> , m.	Strīg	Strix, <i>a screech-owl</i> , f.
Pulvēr	Pulvīs, <i>dust</i> , m.	Nīv	Nix, <i>snow</i> , f.
Līt	Līs, <i>strife</i> , f.	Vōc	Vox, <i>a voice</i> , f.
Samnīt	Samnis, <i>a Samnite</i> , m.	Noct	Nox, <i>night</i> , f.
Quīrīt	Quīris, <i>a Roman</i> , m.	Nūc	Nux, <i>a walnut-tree</i> , f.
Dīt	Dis, <i>Pluto</i> , m.	Lūc	Lux, <i>light</i> , f.
Sanguīn	Sanguīs, <i>blood</i> , m.	Conjūg	Conjux, <i>a spouse</i> , c.
Glīr	Glīs, <i>a dormouse</i> , m.	Phryg	Phryx, <i>a Phrygian</i> , m.
Dōt	Dōs, <i>a dowry</i> , f.	Lync	Lynx, <i>a lynx</i> , m.
Flōr	Flōs, <i>a flower</i> , m.	Arc	Arx, <i>a citadel</i> , f.

* Irregular in their flexion.

† See § g. Obs. 2.

Æquor, marmor (*the sea*), Gen. -ōris, are neuter. Anas, anāt-is (*a duck*), is masc. Pār, pār-is (*a pair*), is neut. Compos (*possessed of*), impos (*powerless*), form Gen. -ōtis; puls (*pulse*), pul-tis; biceps (*two-headed*), bicipit-is; so triiceps (*three-headed*); anceps (*doubtful*); præceps (*headlong*).

(1.) STEM ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

I.	
SING.	PLUR.
Nom. leon-s = leo.	leon-es.
Gen. leōn-is.	leon-um.
Dat. leon-i.	leon-i-bus.
Acc. leon-e-m.	leon-es.
Voc. leon = leo.	leon-es.
Abl. leon-e.	leon-i-bus.
II.	
Nom. serpent-s = serpens.	serpent-es.
Gen. serpent-is.	serpent-i-um.
Dat. serpent-i.	serpent-i-bus.
Acc. serpent-e-m.	serpent-es.
Voc. serpent-s = serpens.	serpent-es.
Abl. serpent-e.	serpent-i-bus.
III.	
Nom. nub-e-s.	nub-es.
Gen. nub-is.	nub-i-um.
Dat. nub-i.	nub-i-bus.
Acc. nub-e-m.	nub-es.
Voc. nub-e-s.	nub-es.
Abl. nub-e.	nub-i-bus.
IV.	
Nom. oper-s = opus.	oper-a.
Gen. oper-is.	oper-um.
Dat. oper-i.	oper-i-bus.
Acc. oper-s = opus.	oper-a.
Voc. oper-s = opus.	oper-a.
Abl. oper-e.	oper-i-bus.

Obs. 1. — Greek words of this Decl. are generally declined after the Latin form in prose; but in poetry they often keep the Greek terminations; as,

SING.	PLUR.
Nom. lampas (<i>a torch</i>).	lampadēs, or lampadēs.
Gen. lampadis, or lampados.	lampadum.
Dat. lampadī, or lampadī.	lampadibus, or lampasin.
Acc. lampadem, or lampada.	lampadēs, or lampadās.
Abl. lampade.	lampadibus, or lampasin.

Æthēr, *the sky*, aēr, *the atmosphere*, always take the Accusatives æthera, aëra.

The Greek Nom. ending in *ων* is sometimes changed into *ος*; as Macedō, Platō: sometimes kept; as, Babylōn, Cīmōn.

The Gen. *ūs* is sometimes found; as, Sapphūs, from Sappho; Didūs, from Dido: which also have the Accus. Sappho, or Sapphonem; Dido, or Didonem.

Nouns in *is*, *idis*, not oxyton, have Accus. *im*; as, Osiris, Osirim; sometimes *in*, as Osirin.

Words in *s* often form the Voc., as in Greek, by throwing away *s*; as, Daphnis, Voc. Daphnī; Atlas, Voc. Atlā; Achilles, Voc. Achillē.

Proper names in *es*, G. *is*, often form a Gen. in *i* (for *ei* of 2d Decl.), as Achilles, G. Achillis and Achilli: and, in poetry, an Acc. in *ēn*; as, Xerxēn. Some have a double flexion in *etis* and *is*; as Thales, G. Thaletis, or Thalīs.

The Greek Decl. *eus*, G. *eos*, Acc. *eā*, is used by the poets, especially the Accus.; as, Promethea, Typhoea.

The Greek Neuters Plur. *cete*, *whales*, *mele*, *melodies*, *Tempe*, are used in Latin.

(2.) STEM ENDING IN *Ī*.

SING.		PLUR.	
Nom.	tussī-s.	tussī-ēs = tussēs.	
Gen.	tussī-īs = tussīs.	tussi-um.	
Dat.	tussī-ī = tussī.	tussi-bus.	
Acc.	tussi-m.	tussi-ēs = tussēs or tussīs.	
Voc.	tussī-s.	tussi-ēs = tussēs.	
Abl.	tussī-ē = tussī.	tussi-bus.	
Nom.	marī = marē.	marī-ā.	
Gen.	marī-īs = marīs.	mari-um.	
Dat.	marī-ī = marī.	mari-bus.	
Acc.	marī = marē.	mari-a.	
Voc.	marī = marē.	mari-a.	
Abl.	marī-ē = marī.	mari-bus.	
Nom.	animālī = animal.	animālī-ā.	
Gen.	animālī-īs = animālīs.	animali-um.	
Dat.	animālī-ī = animālī.	animali-bus.	
Acc.	animālī = animal.	animali-a.	
Voc.	animālī = animal.	animali-a.	
Abl.	animālī-ē = animālī.	animali-bus.	

Obs. — Greek words with character *i* are usually declined after the Latin form, as, *poesis*, G. *poesis*, &c. Those with character *y*, keep *y* in all the cases before the endings; as, *Halys*, *Halyis*, *Halyi*, *Halym*, *Halye*. A contraction sometimes occurs; as, *Coty* for *Cotyī*.

Translation of the Latin Rules, § 21—23.

§ 21. (Dant) The following nouns make (*im pro em*) *in* instead of *em* (Accusativo) in the Accusative case; (*i pro e*) and *i* instead of *e* (in Ablativo) in the Ablative: *buris*, *a ploughtail*; *cucumis*, *a cucumber*; *amussis*, *a carpenter's*

rule; vis, *force*; securis, *an axe*; sitis, *thirst*; tussis, *a cough*; (et) and (flumina) names of Rivers (quæ claudit *is*) which end in *is*; (ut) as Albis, *the Elbe*; Liris, *the Gargigliano*; Tiberis, *the Tiber*.¹ (Sumunt) The following take (*im* vel *em*) either *im* or *em* (Accusativo) in the Accusative case, (*i* vel *e*) and either *i* or *e* (in Ablativo) in the Ablative: febris, *a fever*; restis, *a rope*; clavis, *a key*; puppis, *a ship's stern*; turris, *a tower*; classis, *a fleet*; navis, *a ship*; messis, *a harvest*; pelvis, *a pan*; (adde his) add to these sementis, *seed-time*; (atque) and strigilis, *a flesh-brush*.²

§ 22. (Neutra) Neuter Nouns (quæ exeunt) which end (in *al*, *ar*, *e*), in *al*, *ar*, and *e*, (gaudent) prefer (fingere) to form (*i* Singularis Ablativi) *i* in the Ablative Singular, (*ia* Pluralis Nominativi) and *ia* in the Nominative Plural. (His excepta sunt) From these are excepted (in *ar*) the following in *ar*: baccar, *a kind of plant*; nectar, *nectar*; jubar, *a sunbeam*; far, *corn or meal*.³

§ 23. (Quæ efferunt) Those which form (*ium* pro *um*) *ium* instead of *um* (Plurali Genitivo) in the Genitive case Plural (sunt) are, 1. (*i* formantia Ablativo) Nouns forming *i* in the Ablative Singular; (ut) as mare, *the sea*: 2. (non crescentia Genitivo) Nouns not increasing in the Genitive case; (ut) as nubes, *a cloud*: 3. (pleraque) most Nouns (in *x* vel *s*) ending in *x* or *s* (positis post consonantem) following a consonant; (ut) as arx, *a citadel*; serpens, *a serpent*⁴; 4. (cum aliis Monosyllabis) with other Nouns of One Syllable; mas, *a male*; mus, *a mouse*; nix, *snow*; nox, *night*; os, gen. ossis, *a bone*; cos, *a whetstone*; sal, *salt*; sol, *the sun*; cor, *the heart*; pax, *peace*; glis, *a dormouse*; lis, *strife*; (et) and dos, *a dowry*.⁵ (His excipiendæ sunt) From these must be excepted (quæ *um* libenter efferunt) the following, which prefer to form *um*: vates, *a prophet, prophetess, poet, or poetess*; senex, *an old man*; pater, *a father*; panis, *bread*; (et) and accipiter, *a hawk*; (et) and canis, *a dog*; frater, *a brother*; mater, *a mother*; juvenis, *a youth*; (et sæpius) and generally apis, *a bee*; volucris, *a bird*.⁶

[¹ To these must be added some words of Greek origin in *is*; as Syrtis, Charybdis, poesis: and some names of towns; as, Bilbilis.

² Amnis, *a river*; anguis, *a snake*; avis, *a bird*; civis, *a citizen*; finis, *an end*; fustis, *a bludgeon*; ignis, *fire*; imber, *a shower*; unguis, *a nail or talon*; supellex, *furniture*; sometimes take *i* in the Ablative. Add ruri, *in the country*, from rus; vesperi, *in the evening*, from vesper.

³ *Mare*, the sea; and *rete*, a net; sometimes have the Ablatives *mare* and *rete* in Poetry.

⁴ Yet some of these often reject *i* in Gen. Pl.; as *cliens*, a client, Gen. Pl. *clientium* and *clientum*; *parens*, a parent, Gen. Pl. *parentium* and *parentum*. So *serpens*, animans, and others.

⁵ *Dos*, however, takes *dotum* as commonly as *dotium*. The Gen. Pl. of many other Monosyllables is liable to the same fluctuation. *Boa*, G. Pl. *boum*; D. *bōbus* or *būbus* (contracted from *bovibus*).

Nouns in *as ātis*, *is itis*, *ax ācis*, *ix icis*, often take a Gen. Pl. in *ium*: as *civitas*, a state, *civitatum*; *Samnis*, a Samnite, *Samnitium*; *fornax*, a furnace, *fornacium*; *cervix*, a neck, *cervicium*.

Other irregularities will sometimes be found; and the usage of Latin writers as respects the Ablative Singular and Genitive Plural of Substantives, in this Declension, must be diligently observed.

⁶ All Adjectives of the Third Decl. make Acc. Sing. in *em*. Parisyllable Adjectives, and those of three terminations, make Abl. Sing. in *i*: imparisyllables in *i* or *e*. Of these, Participles and Comparatives prefer *e*; others prefer *i*, except the following, which take *e*: *pauper*, poor; *superstes*, surviving; *sospes*, safe; and some others.

All Adjectives and Participles of this Decl. make Nom. Pl. *ia*, except Comparatives, and *vetus*, old, *vetera*. And all which make Nom. Pl. *ia*, make Gen. *ium*; except *celer*, swift; *degener*, degenerate; *dives*, rich; *inops*, destitute; *memor*, mindful; *uber*, fruitful; and a few more; which make *um*.]

§ g. FOURTH DECLENSION. — CHARACTER Ū.

This Declension takes the original system of endings, and modifies its cases according to Exc. A, § e. II. (a.) The Dat. and Abl. Plur. take a vincular *i*, before which they reject the character *u*; except *arcus*, a bow; *tribus*, a tribe; *artus*, limbs; *specus*, a cave; *portus*, a port; *partus*, a bringing forth; *quercus*, an oak; *acus*, a needle; *veru*, a spit; *lacus*, a lake.

The Genitive Sing. of the Neuters generally throws away *s*: the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing. lengthen the character.

I.

SING.	PLUR.
Nom. <i>gradu-s</i> .	<i>gradu-es</i> = <i>gradūs</i> .
Gen. <i>gradu-is</i> = <i>gradūs</i> .	<i>gradu-um</i> .
Dat. <i>gradu-i</i> .	<i>gradu-i-bus</i> = <i>gradibus</i> .
Acc. <i>gradu-m</i> .	<i>gradu-es</i> = <i>gradūs</i> .
Voc. <i>gradu-s</i> .	<i>gradu-es</i> = <i>gradūs</i> .
Abl. <i>gradu-e</i> = <i>gradū</i> .	<i>gradu-i-bus</i> = <i>gradibus</i> .

II.

Nom. <i>genū</i> = <i>genū</i> .	<i>genū-a</i> .
Gen. <i>genu-is</i> = <i>genūs</i> = <i>genū</i> .	<i>genū-um</i> .
Dat. <i>genu-i</i> = <i>genū</i> .	<i>genu-i-bus</i> = <i>genibus</i> .
Acc. <i>genu</i> .	<i>genu-a</i> .
Voc. <i>genu</i> .	<i>genu-a</i> .
Abl. <i>genu-e</i> = <i>genū</i> .	<i>genu-i-bus</i> = <i>genibus</i> .

Obs. 1. — The Dat. Sing. of Masc. and Fem. words is sometimes contracted by the Poets; as, victu-i = victu.

Obs. 2. — *Grus*, a crane, Gen. *gruis*; and *sus*, a swine, Gen. *suis*, are uncontracted Nouns of this Declension, though usually classed in the Third.

§ 4. FIFTH DECLENSION. — CHARACTER E.

This Decl. follows the truncated endings in the Sing. Number, and the original system in the Plural. The character of the stem is lengthened before the ending in the Nom., Gen., and Dat. Sing.; and in the Gen. and Dat. Plur.

SING.	PLUR.
Nom. faciē-s = faciēs.	faciē-es = faciēs.
Gen. faciē-i = faciēi.	faciē-um = faciērum.
Dat. faciē-i = faciēi.	faciē-bus = faciēbus.
Acc. faciē-m.	faciē-es = faciēs.
Voc. faciē-s = faciēs.	faciē-es = faciēs.
Abl. faciē-ē = faciē.	faciē-bus = faciēbus.

Obs. — The Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur. are only used in the words *dies*, a day, and *res*, a thing.

Notes on § 27—30.

(1.) The termination of the Comparative Adjective is *-or* (Neut. *-us*); and that of the Superlative *-simus*: each is joined to the stem by a vincular *i*; after which, in the superlative, *s* is doubled euphonically; as,
doct-us, doct-i-or, doct-i-(s)imus.
pruden(t)-s, prudent-i-or, prudent-i-(s)imus.

Adjectives whose stem ends in *r* or *ro*, together with those mentioned, § 28. (c), have no vincular *i* in the Superlative, but the *s* is assimilated to the foregoing consonant; as,

ac(e)r,	acr-i-or,	(acer-simus=)	acerrimus.
tener(o),	tener-i-or,	(tener-simus=)	tenerrimus.
simili(s),	simil-i-or,	(simil-simus=)	simillimus.

So *vetus* (stem, *veter*), Sup. *veterrimus*; *maturus* forms *maturrimus* and *maturissimus*.

(2.) To uncomparated Adjectives add those in *-ycus*, *-ldus*, *-ūlus*, *-ālis*, *-ilis*, *-bundus*, as *modicus*, *credulus*, &c.; also *albus*, *white*; *calvus*, *bald*; *canus*, *hoary*; *curvus*, *bending*; *ferus*, *wild*; *gnarus*, *knowing*; *mirus*, *wonderful*; *mutus*, *dumb*; *par*, *equal*; *trux*, *wild*; and some others.

To Adjectives having a Superlative without a Comparative add *incolitus*, *renowned*; *novus*, *new*; *pius*, *pious*; *sacer*, *sacred*.

To Adjectives which form a Comparative without a Superlative add those in *-bilis*, as *amabilis*; *agrestis*, *rustic*; *alacer*, *brisk*; *cæcus*, *blind*; *juvenis*, *young*; *senex*, *old*; and others.

(3.) The Comparatives from *citra*, *intra*, *infra*, *extra*, *ultra*, take an euphonic *e* before *r*, and throw away *a*, as *cit-e-r-i-or*, &c. Ante forms. *anterior*.

The Superlatives generally reject *ra* and take a vincular *i*, with the ending *-mus*, as *cit-i-mus*, *int-i-mus*, *inf-i-mus*, *ext-i-mus*, *ult-i-mus*. The Superlative of *supra* throws out *i*, and assimilates *p* to *m*, as *sup-i-mus* = *sup-mus* = *summus*. *Infimus* has another form, *in-mus* = *imus*, from *in*, the root of *infra*. From the Adjectives *exterus*, *superus*, comes another form of the Superlative, viz. *exter-mus* = *extremus*, *super-mus* = *supremus*. From *post* comes the Adjective *posterus*, whence *posterior*, *postremus*; but from *post* itself is formed another Superlative, *post-u-mus*. From *præ* or *pro* come *pro-i-or* = *prior*, and *pro-i-mus* = *primus*. *Melior* is perhaps for *mavelior* from *mage-volo*, *optimus* or *optumus* from *opto*, *pejor* and *pessimus* from the root *pes* (*pessum*, *pestis*), *minor* and *minimus* from the Greek root *min-*, plus (*plur-s*) *plurimus* from a Greek root, *nequam* from *ne-æquus*, *prop-simus* = *proximus*, *magnus* (stem *mag*) *mag-i-or* = *ma-i-or* = *major*, *mag-simus* = *maximus*, *diviti-or* = *diiti-or* = *ditior*. So *juvenior* = *junior*.

(4.) The Adverbs derived from Irregular Adjectives follow the comparison of their Primitives; as,

<i>benè, well,</i>	<i>meliùs,</i>	<i>optimè.</i>
<i>malè, ill,</i>	<i>pejùs,</i>	<i>pessimè.</i>
<i>parùm, little,</i>	<i>minùs,</i>	<i>minimè.</i>
<i>multùm, much,</i>	<i>plùs,</i>	<i>plurimùm.</i>

From *magnus* is found no Positive Adverb (for which is used *magno-perè*); Comp. *magis*; Sup. *maximè*.

Notes on § 33—37.

(1.) The Genitives *nostri*, *vestri*, belong to the Pronoun considered as an individual; *nostrùm*, *vestrùm*, to the Pronoun considered as divisible into parts. They are syncopated forms of *nostrorum*, *vestrorum*, which occur in the older verbs.

(2.) The Relative, Interrogative, and Demonstrative Pronouns form Gen. Sing. *ius*, which is added to their stem. The stem of *qui* and *quis* is *quo*; of *ille*, *ill*; of *iste*, *isti*; of *is*, *i*; of *hic*, *hi*: the terminations various, that of Neut. Sing. usually *d*; as,

Nom. Quo = qui.	ill	= ille.
Gen. Quo-ius = ejus.	illy-yus	= illius (or illŷus).
Dat. Quo-i = cui.	illy-i	= illi.
&c. &c.		&c. &c.
Nom. I-s	hŷ-c.	
Gen. I-yus = ejus.	hŷ-yus	= hujus.
Dat. I-i = ei.	hŷ-i-c	= huic
&c. &c.		&c. &c.

C, the peculiar termination of *hic*, is kept in Dat. Acc. and Abl. Sing., and in the Neut. Plur.

(3.) Pronouns and Pronominal Adverbs have various Prefixes and Affixes.

(a.) *Nè* negative, as *ne-uter* = *neuter*, *ne-ullus* = *nullus*. So *ne-homo* = *nemo*.

(b.) *En*, as *en-quis* = *ecquis*; so *ecce-eum* = *eccum*.

- (e.) *Ce*, as *hicce*, *illicce* = *illic*, *istiece* = *istic*.
- (d.) *Dem*, as *isdem* = *idem*, *ibidem*.
- (e.) *Met*, as *egomet*, *vosmet*.
- (f.) *Pse*, as *is-pse* = *ipse*, *re-ca-pse* = *reapse*.
- (g.) *Te*, as *iste*.
- (h.) *Pte*, as *meapte*.
- (i.) *Dam*, *piam*, *quam*, *cumque*, *nam*, appended to *qui* and *quis*.

Translation of the Latin Rules (p. 63. § 78.).

I. (DE GENERE NOMINUM LATINORUM) ON THE
GENDER OF LATIN NOUNS.

§ 78. A. (REGULA PRIMARIA) PRIMARY RULE.

(Viri) Names of Men, (Populi) names of People, (et) and (Divi) names of Gods, (Venti) names of Winds¹, (Menses) names of Months, (Montes) names of Mountains, (atque) and (Rivi) names of Rivers, (sunt) are (Generis Masculini) of the Masculine Gender. (Plantæ) Names of Plants, (Divæ) names of Goddesses, (Feminæ) names of Women, (Terræ), names of Countries, (Urbes) names of Cities, (Insulæ) names of Islands, (sunt) are (Generis Feminini) of the Feminine Gender.² (Vox indeclinabilis) Any undeclined Word (*est*) is (Neutrius Generis) of the Neuter Gender. (Sunt) The following are (Communis Generis) of the Common Gender: *canis*, a dog; *civis*, a citizen; *juvenis*, a young person; *testis*, a witness; *hostis*, an enemy; *artifex*, an artisan; *auctor*, an author; *exsul*, an exile; *opifex*, an artificer; *comes*, a companion; *hæres*, an heir; *hospes*, a guest, or host; *dux*, a leader; *obses*, a hostage; *vates*, a prophet, prophetess, poet, or poetess; (et) and *conjux*, a husband or wife; *bos*, an ox or cow; *sus*, a swine; *sacerdos*, a priest or priestess; *custos*, a guardian; *vindex*, an avenger; *princeps*, a chief; *parens*, a parent; *infans*, an infant; *index*, an informer; *conviva*, a guest; *miles*, a soldier; *advena*, a comer from foreign parts; *adolescens*, a young man or woman; *incola*, an inhabitant.³

[¹ Winds follow the Gender of *ventus*, Months of *mensis*, Mountains of *mons*, Rivers of *fluvius*, Plants of *arbor*, &c. Some Rivers are Feminine, as *Styx*, *Lethæ*, *Allia*. Many names of Mountains are Feminine, as *Ossa*, *Œta*, *Ætna*, *Rhodope*, *Alpes*, &c; some Neuter, as *Soracte*, *Pelion*.

² Some names of Plants are Masculine, as *oleaster*, a wild olive: some Neuter, as *siler*, a withy. Some names of Cities are Masculine, as *Sulmo*,

Selinus; and those in *i*, as *Delphi*, *Veii*; some Neuter, as *Tibur*, *Anxur*, *Tarentum*, *Præneste*.

³ Add to these affinis, *a relative by marriage*; *interprex*, *an interpreter*; *par*, *a mate*; *patruelis*, *a cousin*; *satelles*, *a body-guard*; *judex*, *a judge*; *augur*, *a soothsayer*; *tigris*, *a tiger*. Virgil has *dama*, *a deer*, and *talpa*, *a mole*, masc.

Those names of Animals which are not Common are called *Epicœna*; and the words *mas* or *femina* must be used when it is necessary to distinguish the sex: as *Masc. passer*, *a sparrow*; *passer femina*, *a hen-sparrow*: *Fem. vulpes*, *a fox*; *vulpes mas*, *a dog-fox*.]

B. (DE GENERE IN DECLINATIONIBUS) ON GENDER IN THE DECLENSIONS.

§ 79. I. (PRIMA DECLINATIO) THE FIRST DECLENSION.

(REGULA PRINCIPALIS) PRINCIPAL RULE.

(*A* et *e*) Words ending in *a* and *e* (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine; (*as* et *es*) words ending in *as* and *es* (sunt) are (Masculina) Masculine.

(EXCEPTIONES) EXCEPTIONS.

(Masculorum nomina) The names of Males ending in *a* (sunt) are (Masculina) Masculine: (ut) *as*, *nauta* or *navita*, *a sailor*; *verna*, *a slave born in his master's house*; (et) *poeta*, *a poet*; *scurra*, *a buffoon*; *scriba*, *a notary*; (et) *propheta*, *a prophet*.¹

[¹ Also *Hadria*, *the Adriatic Gulf*; *cometa*, *a comet*; *planeta*, *a planet*.]

§ 80. (SECUNDA DECLINATIO) THE SECOND DECLENSION.

(REGULA PRINCIPALIS) PRINCIPAL RULE.

(*Us* et *er*) The terminations *us* and *er* belong (Masculinis) to Masculine Nouns; (*um*) the termination *um* (tribuitur) is assigned (Neutris) to Neuter Nouns.

(EXCEPTIONES) EXCEPTIONS.

(In *us*) The following Nouns in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: *alvus*, *the belly*; *arctus*, *the Bear constellation*; *carbasus*, *canvass*; *colus*, *a staff*; *humus*, *the ground*; *methodus*, *a method*; *virus*, *poison*; *pelagus*, *the sea*; (Neutra) are Neuter. *Vulgus*, *the common people*, (*fere sit*) may

generally be (Neutrum) Neuter: (subinde) now and then (fit Masculum) it is made Masculine.

§ 81. III. (TERTIA DECLINATIO) THE THIRD DECLENSION.

(a.) (PRIMA REGULA PRINCIPALIS) FIRST PRINCIPAL RULE.

(Masculis) Among Masculine words (inseritur) is placed (quod claudit *o*, *or*, *os*, vel *er*) any Noun which ends in *o*, *or*, *os*, or *er*; (et) and (Nomen) any Noun (desinens in *es*) ending in *es*, (si) if (flectit casus impares) it forms imparisyllabic cases [that is, if it increases in the Genitive case Singular].

(EXCEPTIONES) EXCEPTIONS.

(1.) (Illa) Those Nouns (quæ desinunt in *do* et *go*) which end in *do* and *go* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine; (sed) but (manent) the following remain (Masculina) Masculine: *cardo*, *a hinge*; *ligo*, *a spade*; *ordo*, *order*; (atque) and *margo*, *a margin*.

(2.) (In *io*) Nouns in *io* (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine: (illa) those (tantum) only (Masculina) are Masculine, (quæ) which (vel spectabis) you may either see (oculis) with your eyes (vel tu tractabis) or you may touch (manibus) with your hands.¹

(3.) (*Caro*, *carnis*) *Flesh* (mavult) prefers (addere se) to be added (Femininis) to Nouns feminine.

(4.) (Pauca in *or*) A few Nouns in *or* (sunt Neutra) are Neuter: *æquor*, *the level surface of the sea* or *of a plain*; *ador*, *parched corn*; *marmor*, *marble*; or *the smooth surface of the sea*; *cor*, *the heart*. *Arbor*, *a tree*, (est Femininum) is Feminine.

(5.) *Cos*, *a whetstone*, (et) and *dos*, *a dowry*, (sunt Feminina) are Feminine: (utrumque *os*) the two words, *os ossis*, *a bone*; and *os oris*, *a mouth*; (Neutra) are Neuter.²

(6.) (Multa in *er*) Many Nouns in *er* (sunt) are (Neutra) Neuter: *verber*, *a stripe*; *siler*, *a withy*; *acer*, *a maple*; *ver*, *spring*; *tuber*, *a wen*; *uber*, *a teat*; (et) and *cadaver*, *a carcass*; *piper*, *pepper*; *iter*, *a journey*; (et) and *papaver*, *a poppy*.

(7.) (Et) And (nonnulla in *es*) some Nouns in *es* (quæ) which (flectunt casus impares) form imparisyllabic cases (sunt) are (Feminina) Feminine: *compes*, *a fetter*; *teges*, *a*

mat; *merces*, *reward*, *hire*; *requies*, *quies*, *rest*; *seges*, *standing corn*.³

[¹ As *papilio*, *a butterfly*; *scipio*, *a staff*. Also Numerals in *io*, as *ternio*, *senio*.

² Also the Greek words: *chaos*; *epos*, *an epic poem*; *melos*, *melody*, *a lyric poem*.

³ *Ales*, *a bird*, Common.]

§ 82. (b.) (SECUNDA REGULA PRINCIPALIS) SECOND PRINCIPAL RULE.

(Inseras Femininis) You must place among Feminine words (*quæ claudunt is, x, aus, et as*) those which end in *is, x, aus, and as, (s cum consonante nexa)* in *s* immediately following a consonant (*es æqualiter inflexa*) and *es* forming parasyllabic cases [that is, not increasing in the Genitive case Singular].

(EXCEPTIONES) EXCEPTIONS.

(1.) (Multa) Many Nouns (*quæ claudit is*) which end in *is* (sunt) are (Masculini Generis) of the Masculine Gender: *amnis*, *a river*; *axis*, *an axle*; *callis*, *a path*¹; *collis*, *a hill*; *caulis*, *a stalk*; *cucumis*, *a cucumber*; (*et*) and *follis*, *a leathern bag or bellows*; *fascis*, *a bundle*; *funis*, *a rope*; *fustis*, *a cudgel*; *finis*, *an end or boundary*; *ignis*, *fire*; *orbis*, *a circle*; (*atque*) and *crinis*, *hair*; *panis*, *bread*; *piscis*, *a fish*; *postis*, *a doorpost*; *ensis*, *a sword*; *sentis*, *a bramble*; *corbis*, *a basket*; *torquis*, *a chain*; *mensis*, *a month*; *torris*, *a fire-brand*; *unguis*, *a nail or talon*; (*et*) and *canalis*, *a conduit*; *vectis*, *a lever*; *vermis*, *a worm*; (*et*) and *sodalis*, *an intimate companion*; *cassis*², *a net*; *cinis*, *ashes*; *glis*, *a dormouse*; (*et*) and *anguis*, *a snake*; *lapis*, *a stone*; *pulvis*, *dust*; (*atque*) and *sanguis*, *blood*.

(2.) (Pleraque) Most Nouns (*quæ claudit ex*) which end in *x* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine, (*ut*) as *grex*, *a flock*; (*sed*) but (*manent*) the following remain (Feminina) Feminine; *nex*, *death*; *supellex*, *furniture*; *ilex*, *the scarlet oak*; *carex*, *sedge*; *lex*, *a law*.³

(3.) (In *ix*) The following in *ix* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine: *fornix*, *an arch or vault*; *phoenix*, *the fabulous bird so called*; (*et*) and *calix*, *a cup*.⁴

(4.) (In *as*) The following words in *as* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine: *vas*, *vadis*, *a personal surety*; *gigas*, *a giant*; *elephas*, *an elephant*; *as*, *assis*, *a Roman coin and weight*; *mas*, *a male*; (*et*) and *adamas*, *adamant*; (Neutra) the fol-

lowing are Neuter : *vas, vasis, a vessel; nefas, sin; fas, right.*

(5.) (Adde) Add (Masculinis) to Masculine words : *mons, a mountain; dens, a tooth; fons, a fountain; torrens, a torrent; gryps, a griffin; (et) and pons, a bridge; rudens, a cable; hydrops, dropsy; (atque) and bidens, a two-pronged fork; oriens, the east; occidens, the west; (et) and tridens, a trident.*⁵

(6.) (In *es*) The following in *es* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine : *verres, a boar pig; (et) and acinaces, a scimitar.*⁶

[¹ *Callis, corbis, torquis, anguis, cinis, pulvis*, sometimes occur as Feminine.

² *Cassis*, is, a *net*, is Masculine ; *cassis, idis, a helmet*, Feminine.

³ Other Feminine Nouns are : *fax, dregs; forfex, a pair of shears; forpex, a pair of tongs.* The following are sometimes found Feminine : *imbrex, tiling; obex, a bolt; rumex, sorrel; pumex, pumice-stone; and, in Poetry, cortex, bark, and silex, flint.*

⁴ Also *oryx, a mountain goat; onyx, a kind of marble; bombyx, a silk-worm; and the parts of the Roman As ending in x, as quincunx; are masculine.*

⁵ Also the parts of the Roman As ending in *ns; as, sextans, quadrans, triens, &c.*

⁶ *Palumbes, a wood-pigeon*, is Common.]

§ 83. (c.) (TERTIA REGULA PRINCIPALIS) THIRD PRINCIPAL RULE.

(*Neutra claudunt*) Neuter words of the 3d declension end in *a* (et) and *e, ar, ur, us, c, l, n*, (et) and *t*.

(EXCEPTIONES) EXCEPTIONS.

(1.) (In *ur*) The following words in *ur* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine : *furfur, bran; turtur, a turtle-dove; vultur, a vulture; fur, a thief.*

(2.) (In *us*) The following in *us* (Masculina sunt) are Masculine : *lepus, lepōris, a hare; (et) and mus, a mouse.*

(3.) (In *us*) The following in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine : *virtus, virtue; (atque) and servitus, slavery; juvenus, youth; incus, an anvil; (atque) and palus, a marsh; senectus, old age; tellus, earth; (atque) and salus, health; (quibus *u*) in which *u* (manet longa) remains long (in transitu Genitivi) in passing to the Genitive case.*

(4.) (Et) Also *pecus, pecūdis, cattle, (est) is* (Feminini Generis) of the Feminine Gender.¹

(5.) (In *l*) The following in *l* (Mascula sunt) are Masculine: *mugil*, a sea-mullet; *consul*, a consul; *sal*, salt; *sol*, the sun; (*atque*) and *pugil*, a pugilist.

(6.) (Masculina sunt) The following are Masculine: *ren*, a kidney; *splen*, the spleen; *pecten*, a comb; *delphin*, a dolphin; *attagen*, a bird of the grouse tribe.²

(7.) (In *on*) The following in *on* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: *Gorgon*, a Gorgon; *sindon*, muslin; *halcyon*, a king-fisher.

[¹ *Grus*, a crane, is generally Feminine.

² Compounds of *cano*, *I sing*, are Masculine, as *tibicen*, a flute-player.]

§ 84. IV. (QUARTA DECLINATIO) THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

(REGULA PRINCIPALIS) PRINCIPAL RULE.

(In Quarta) In the Fourth Declension (*tribuimus us*) we assign the termination *us* (Masculis) to Nouns Masculine; (Neutris *u*) the termination *u* to Nouns Neuter.

(EXCEPTIONES) EXCEPTIONS.

(Quartæ in *us*) The following of the Fourth Declension in *us* (Feminina sunt) are Feminine: *domus*, a house; *porticus*, a porch; *acus*, a needle; *Idus*, the Ides in a Roman month; (*atque*) and *manus*, a hand; *tribus*, a tribe; *nurus*, a daughter-in-law; *socrus*, a mother-in-law; *anus*, an old woman.

§ 85. V. (QUINTA DECLINATIO) THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

(REGULA PRINCIPALIS) PRINCIPAL RULE.

(Inseres Femininis) You will place among Feminine words (Nomina Quintæ) Nouns of the Fifth Declension (in *es*) ending in *es*.

(EXCEPTIO) EXCEPTION.

Dies, a day, (*est*) is (in Singulo) in the Singular Number (*ferè*) commonly (Femininum) Feminine; (in Plurali Numero) in the Plural Number (*semper*) always (Masculinum) Masculine.¹

[¹ *Meridies*, noon-day, is Masculine.]

C. (DE ANOMALIS SUBSTANTIVIS) CONCERN-
ING IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 86. I. (DEFECTIVA NUMERO) SUBSTANTIVES
DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

(a.) (Singularis Numerus) The Singular Number (deest) is wanting (multis Nominibus) to many Nouns: (ut) *as*, *manes*, *the spirits of the dead*; *loculi*, *a purse*; *penates*, *household deities*; *cunæ*, *a cradle*; *thermæ*, *warm baths*; *nugæ*, *trifles*; *grates*, *thanks*; *arma*, *arms*; *viscera*, *bowels*; *magalia*, *costages*; (cum deûm Festis) with Festivals of the gods, (ut) *as*, *Floralia*, *the festival of Flora*.¹

(b.) (Multa) Many Substantives (quæ) which (carent Plurali) are destitute of a Plural Number (apparent) appear (lectitantibus) to students.²

[¹ The following is a further list of Substantives wanting the Singular Number: —

FIRST DECLENSION.

Angustiæ, *straits*.
Argutiæ, *refinements*.
Bigæ, *a chariot and pair*.
Clitellæ, *panniers*.
Deliciæ, *delight, daintiness*.
Divitiæ, *riches*.
Epulæ, *a feast*.
Excubiæ, *a night watch*.
Exequiæ, *a funeral*.
Exuviz, *spoils*.
Facetiæ, *pleasantries*.
Feriæ, *a holiday*.
Habenz, *reins*.
Induciæ, *a truce*.
Inferiæ, *offerings to the dead*.
Insidia, *an ambush*.
Lapidicinæ, *a stone quarry*.

Minæ, *threats*.
Minutiæ, *details*.
Nundinæ, *market-day*.
Nuptiæ, *a bridal*.
Phaleræ, *horse-trappings*.
Prestigiæ, *jugglery*.
Primitiæ, *first-fruits*.
Quisquiliæ, *rubbish*.
Reliquiæ, *remnants*.
Scalæ, *a staircase*.
Scopæ, *a besom*.
Salebræ, *roughnesses*.
Salinæ, *a salt-work*.
Tenebræ, *darkness*.
Tricæ, *intricacies, trifles*.
Valvæ, *folding-doors*.
Vindiciæ, *a claim, defence*.

Also *Calendæ*, *the Calends*; *Nonæ*, *the Nones of a month*; *Athenæ*, *Thebæ*, *Syracusæ*, with other towns.

SECOND DECLENSION.

(a.) Masculine.

Cani, *white hairs*.
Cancelli, *a lattice*.
Codicilli, *writing tablets*.
Fasti, *annals*.
Fori, *the hatches*.

Inferi, *the gods below*.
Liberi, *children*.
Posterî, *posterity*.
Superi, *the gods above*.

(b.) *Neuter.*

Bellaria, *dainties*.
 Crepundia, *toys*.
 Cunabula, *a cradle*.
 Exta, *entrails*.
 Justa, *funeral offerings*.

Lamenta, *lamentations*.
 Munia, *duties*.
 Præcordia, *the midriff*.
 Tesqua, *wild places*.

Also names of People and Places, as Volsci, Delphi, Leuctra, &c.

THIRD DECLENSION.

(a.) *Masculine and Feminine.*

Antes, *the outer pillars*.
 Cœlites, *the Gods above*.
 Cervices, *the neck* (also sing. in poetry).
 Fides, *a lute* (also sing. in poetry).

Fores, *a door*.
 Lemures, *goblins*.
 Majores, *ancestors*.
 Minores, *posterity*.
 Proceres, *nobles*.

Also names of People, Places, &c., as Brigantes, Cyclades, &c.

(b.) *Neuter.*

Brevia, *shallows*.

Mœnia, *city walls*.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Artus, *limbs*.

Idus, *the Ides*.

² Among the many words which are not used in the Plural Number, we may notice:—(1.) Materialia: as, aurum, *gold*; argentum, *silver*; lac, *milk*; sanguis, *blood*. (2.) Abstracta: as, senectus, *old age*; fames, *hunger*; pietas, *piety*. (3.) Collectiva: as, vulgus, *the common people*; supellex, *furniture*. (4.) And the following: aer, *the atmosphere*; æther, *the sky*; humus, *the ground*; pontus, *the sea*; tellus, *earth*; ævum, *time*; ver, *spring*; vesp̄r, *evening*.]

II. (DEFECTIVA CASIBUS) SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN CASES.

(Nonnulli Casus) Some Cases (absunt his) are wanting to these Nouns: fas, *right*; frugis, *fruit*; dap̄is, *a feast*; opis, *help*; vis, *force*; (et) and (multa) many Nouns (præter hæc) besides these (apparent) appear, (quæ) which (carent) are destitute of (Casibus nonnullis) some Cases.¹

[¹ Nouns defective in Case are numerous. Those having only one case in a Number are called Monoptota; those having two, Diptota; three, Triptota, &c.

(1.) Many Nouns have only the Nom. and Accus. in one or both Numbers:—

(a.) Greek Neuters in *os* in Sing. and Plur., as melos, melē.

(b.) Fas, nefas, instar, nihil, necesse, opus (*need*), in Sing. only.

(c.) Rura, mella, farra, tura, murmura, metus, situs, spes, &c., in Plur., which form Sing. fully.

(2.) Many Verbalis of the Fourth Decl. are used in Dat. Sing. or Abl. Sing. only; as, Dat. despicatui, derisui, ostentui, &c.; jussu, injussu, rogatu, permissu, monitu, promptu, procinctu, natu, &c.

(3.) Various words are used in single Cases with an adverbial force; as, Abl. noctu, gratis, ingratiis, fortuitu, &c.: Accus. infitias (ire), to deny; (ad) incitas (redigere), to reduce to extremity; venum (tradere), to offer for sale; suppetias (ferre), to lend succours: Gen. dicis (causa), for form's sake; nauci (facere), to hold cheap, &c.

(4.) Observe especially the following Defectives:—

(Ambages, a circuit) has Abl. Sing. and full Plur.

Astus, cunning, Nom. and Abl. Sing., Nom. and Acc. Plur.

(Cassis, a net), Acc. Abl. Sing. (both rare), full Plur.

(Compes, a fetter), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

(Daps, a feast), has all but Nom. Sing.

(Ditio, sway), has all but Nom. Sing.

(Faux, a jaw), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

Fors, chance, Nom. Abl. Sing.

(Frux, fruit), has all but Nom. Sing.

Grates, thanks, Nom. Acc. Plur.

Inquies, restlessness, Nom. Sing.

(Juger, an acre), Abl. Sing., Dat. Abl. Plur.; other forms from jugerum, i.

Mane, morning, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing.

Nemo, nobody, Gen. nullius, Dat. nemini, Acc. neminem, Abl. nullo.

(Obex, a bolt), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

(Ops, help), Gen. Acc. Abl. Sing., full Plur. See IV. Obs.

Pondo, pounds, indeclin. Plur.

(Prex, prayer), Abl. Sing., full Plur.

(Repetundæ, sc. pecuniæ, extortion), Gen. Abl. Plur.

(Spons, inclination), Abl. Sing.

(Verber, a stripe), Gen. Abl. Sing., full Plur.

Gen. vicis, Acc. vicem, Abl. vice, change, no Nom. S., full Plur.

Vis, force, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing., full Plur.

Obs.—Fruxi, the old Dat. of frux, is used Adjectively; as, homo frugi, an honest man. So nequam, worthless, is of all cases.]

III. (ABUNDANTIA NUMERO) SUBSTANTIVES REDUNDANT IN NUMBER.

Tartarus, hell, (fit) becomes (in Plurali) in the Plural Number Tartara; (et) and cœlum, heaven, cœli. (Quæ efferunt) Those which form (Numerum Pluralem) the Plural Number (in a vel i) in a or i (sunt) are: frenum, a bit; carbasus, canvas; (et) and locus, a place¹; rastrum, a rake; sibilus, a hiss; (et) and jocus, a jest.²

[¹ Loca, spots; loci (usually, but not always), places in books, topics.

² Ostrea, an oyster; Pl. ostræ and ostrea.]

IV. (ABUNDANTIA CASIBUS) SUBSTANTIVES REDUNDANT IN CASES.

(Quædam) Some Substantives (abundant Casibus) are redundant in Cases: (ut) *as, domus, a house; laurus, a laurel; Œdipus, Œdipus*.¹

[¹ Declension of Domus:—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Domus	domus
Gen. Domûs	domuum or domorum
Dat. Dpmui	domibus
Acc. Domum	domus or domos
Abl. Domu or domo	domibus.

The Gen. Domi is used to signify *at home*; *as, domi meæ, at my home*.

Laurus, ficus, pinus, cupressus, colus, follow the 2d Declension, but also take from the 4th the Cases in *us* and *u*: Œdipus (Gen. Œdipodis and Œdipi): and there are many other Substantives with a two-fold Declension; *as, juvena and juvenus; vespera and vesper, eri* (which forms Abl. *vespero, vespere, or vesperi*); *duritia and durities, &c.* Many adjectives have also double forms, *as bijugus and bijugis*.

Vas makes Gen. Pl. *vasorum*, Dat. *vasis*. So anciliorum from ancile, *a shield*. Greek Nouns in *ma*, Gen. *tis*, have Dat. Pl. *tis*; *as, poema*, Dat. Pl. *poematis*.

Obs.—The following Substantives change their signification in the Plural Number:—

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Ædes, <i>a temple</i> ;	ædes, <i>a house</i> .
Aqua, <i>water</i> ;	aque, <i>medicinal springs</i> .
Auxilium, <i>help</i> ;	auxilia, <i>auxiliary forces</i> .
Bonum, <i>a good</i> ;	bona, <i>goods, effects</i> .
Carcer, <i>a prison</i> ;	carceres, <i>a starting-place</i> .
Castrum, <i>a fort</i> ;	castra, <i>a camp</i> .
Cera, <i>wax</i> ;	ceræ, <i>a waxen tablet</i> .
Comitium, <i>the Assembly-place</i> ;	Comitia, <i>the Assembly at Rome</i> .
Copia, <i>plenty</i> ;	copiæ, <i>forces</i> .
Epulum, <i>a sacred feast</i> ;	epulæ, <i>a banquet</i> .
Facultas, <i>a faculty</i> ;	facultates, <i>means</i> .
Finis, <i>an end</i> ;	fines, <i>boundaries</i> .
Fortuna, <i>fortune</i> .	fortunæ, <i>the gifts of fortune, a fortune</i> .
Gratia, <i>favour</i> ;	gratiæ, <i>thanks</i> .
Hortus, <i>a garden</i> ;	horti, <i>a pleasure-garden</i> .
Impedimentum, <i>a hindrance</i> ;	impedimenta, <i>baggage</i> .
Littera, <i>a letter of the alphabet</i> ;	litteræ, <i>an epistle, or literature</i> .
Ludus, <i>play</i> ;	ludi, <i>public games</i> .
Lustrum, <i>a term of five years</i> ;	lustra, <i>lair of wild beasts</i> .

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Natalis, <i>a birth-day</i> ;	natales, <i>origin.</i>
Opera, <i>exertion</i> ;	operæ, <i>workmen.</i>
Opis (Gen.), <i>help</i> ;	opes, <i>power, wealth.</i>
Pars, <i>a portion</i> ;	partes, <i>a part in a play.</i>
Rostrum, <i>a beak</i> ;	rostra, <i>the pulpit for speaking in the Roman forum (adorned with the beaks of captured ships).</i>
Sal, <i>salt</i> ;	sales, <i>wit.</i>
Tabula, <i>a board</i> ;	tabulæ, <i>writing tablets.]</i>

EXCURSION C. ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

§ a. THE Conjugations of Verbs, like the Declensions of Substantives, are distinguished by the character or last letter of their stem. They are :

1. Verbs with Character <i>a</i> or Conj. I.	} Contracted.
2. — — — <i>e</i> II.	
3. — — — <i>i</i> IV.	
4. — — — <i>u</i>	
5. — — — a Consonant	} III. Uncontracted.

No Verbs exist with Character *o*, though traces may be found in the forms *no-vi* (*no-tum*) and *potus*.

Obs. — The Character, when a Vowel, is always long before a Consonant, and short before another vowel.

§ b. The Form ending in this Character is called the Present-stem, and in the 1st, 2d, and 4th Conjugations it does not coincide with the Root of the Verb: in the 3d it usually, but not always, coincides with the root. Thus *ama-* is the Present-stem, and *a* the Stem-character of the Verb *am-o* ; *am* its root, and *m* its Root-character. But *reg-* is both Present-stem and Root, *g* both Stem-character and Root-character, of *reg-o*. The Present-stem is most easily found by throwing off from the Infin. Pres. Act. *-re* in the Contracted Conjugations, and *-ere* in the Uncontracted.

§ c. From the Present-stem are derived the following parts of the Verb : —

<i>Active Voice.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>
Present Ind. and Conjunct.	Present Ind. and Conjunct.
Preterimp. Ind. and Conjunct.	Preterimp. Ind. and Conjunct.
Future Imperf.	Future Imperf.
Imper. Mood.	Imper. Mood.
Present Infinitive.	Present Infinitive.
Present Participle.	Future Participle.
Gerunds.	

§ d. The general Endings of the Present-stem Forms are : —

ACTIVE.				PASSIVE.	
Present Tense.		<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Conj.</i>	<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Conj.</i>
	Sing. 1.	-o.	-am.	-or.	-ar.
	2.	-is.	-as.	-aris.	-aris.
	3.	-it.	-at.	-itur.	-atur.
	Plur. 1.	-imus.	-āmus.	-īmur.	-amur.
	2.	-itis.	-ātis.	-īmini.	-amini.
	3.	-unt.	-ant.	-untur.	-antur.
Preterimperf.	Sing. 1.	-ēbam.	-ērem.	-ēbar.	-ērer.
	2.	-ēbas.	-ēres.	-ēbaris.	-ērēris.
	3.	-ēbat.	-ēret.	-ēbatur.	-ērētur.
	Plur. 1.	-ēbamus.	-ērēmus.	-ēbamur.	-ērēmur.
	2.	-ēbatis.	-ērētis.	-ēbamini.	-ērēmini.
	3.	-ēbant.	-ērent.	-ēbantur.	-ērentur.
Fut. Imperf.		<i>Ind.</i>		<i>Ind.</i>	
		I. II.	III. IV.	I. II.	III. IV.
	Sing. 1.	-bo	-am.	-bor	-ar.
	2.	-bis	-es.	-bēris	-ēris.
	3.	-bit	-et.	-bitur	-ētur.
	Plur. 1.	-bimus	-ēmus.	-bimur	-ēmur.
	2.	-bitis	-ētis.	-bimini	-ēmini.
	3.	-bunt	-ent.	-buntur	-entur.
<i>Imperative Mood.</i>					
	Sing. 2.	-ē, Yto.		-ēre, -Ytor.	
	3.	-Yto.		-Ytor.	
	Plur. 2.	-Yte, -Ytote.		-Ymini, Yminor.	
	3.	-unto.		-untor.	
<i>Infinitive Mood.</i>					
		-ēre.		I. II. IV.	III.
				-ēri	-i.
<i>Partic. Pres.</i>			<i>Part. Fut.</i>		
		-ens.		-endus.	
<i>Gerunds.</i>					
		-endi,	-endo,	-endum.	

These Forms are obtained in any Verb by prefixing the Present-stem to the Endings, and making the requisite Contractions (Exc. A. § e.) in the contracted Conjugations.

§ e. Thus in Conjug. I. $\left. \begin{array}{l} a-e \\ a-i \\ a-u \\ a-a \\ a-o \end{array} \right\}$ are contracted into \bar{a} .
 — — — — — \bar{e} .
 a-o = o (a falling out).

Obs. — Except that a-it = $\dot{\text{it}}$, a-at = $\dot{\text{et}}$, a-ar = $\dot{\text{er}}$. (The contraction of a-a into e in the Present Conjunctive is made for the sake of distinguishing it from the Present Indicative.)

In Conjug. II. $\left. \begin{array}{l} e-e \\ e-i \\ e-u \\ e-a \\ e-o \end{array} \right\}$ are contracted into \bar{e} .
 — — — — — remain uncontracted.

Obs. — Except that e-it = $\dot{\text{et}}$.

In Conjug. IV. $\left. \begin{array}{l} i-\dot{\text{e}} \\ i-i \\ i-a \\ i-\bar{e} \\ i-o \\ i-u \end{array} \right\}$ are contracted into \bar{i} .
 — — — — — remain uncontracted.

Obs. — Except that i-it (Pres. 3d Sing.) = $\dot{\text{yt}}$, and i- $\dot{\text{et}}$ remains uncontracted. Anciently this Conjugation had the forms -ibam, -ibar in the Preterimp., and -ibo, -ibor in the Fut. Imperf.

In Conjug. III. no changes are necessary when the Present-stem has been prefixed to the Endings.

§ f. PARADIGM OF PRESENT-STEM FORMATION IN CONJ. I.

ACTIVE.

	<i>Pres.</i>		<i>Conjunct. Mood.</i>	
	<i>Indic. Mood.</i>			
Sing.	ama-o = amo.		ama-am = amem.	
	ama- $\dot{\text{is}}$ = am $\dot{\text{as}}$.		ama-as = am $\dot{\text{es}}$.	
	ama- $\dot{\text{it}}$ = am $\dot{\text{it}}$.		ama-at = am $\dot{\text{et}}$.	
Plur.	ama- $\dot{\text{ymus}}$ = am $\dot{\text{amus}}$.		ama-amus = am $\dot{\text{emus}}$.	
	ama- $\dot{\text{ytis}}$ = am $\dot{\text{atis}}$.		ama-atis = am $\dot{\text{etis}}$.	
	ama-unt = amant.		ama-ant = ament.	

Preterimp.

Sing.	ama- $\dot{\text{ebam}}$ = am $\dot{\text{abam}}$.		ama- $\dot{\text{erem}}$ = am $\dot{\text{arem}}$.
	&c. &c.		&c. &c.

			<i>Fut. Imp.</i>			
Sing.	ama-ēbo	= amābo.		—	—	—
	&c.	&c.				
			<i>Imper. Mood.</i>			
Sing.	ama-ě	= amā.		ama-ěre	= amāre.	
	ama-īto	= amāto.				
	&c.	&c.				
				<i>Part. Pres.</i>		
				ama-ens	= amans.	

Gerunds.

ama-endi = amandi, &c.

PASSIVE.

			<i>Pres.</i>			
			<i>Indic. Mood.</i>			
Sing.	ama-or	= amōr.		ama-ar	= amēr.	
	ama-ēris	= amāris.		ama-āris	= amēris.	
	&c.	&c.		&c.	&c.	
			<i>Preterimp.</i>			
Sing.	ama-ēbar	= amābar.		ama-ērer	= amārer.	
	&c.	&c.		&c.	&c.	
			<i>Fut. Imp.</i>			
Sing.	ama-ēbor	= amābor.		—	—	—
	&c.	&c.				
			<i>Imper. Mood.</i>			
Sing.	ama-ěre	= amāre.		ama-ēri	= amāri.	
	&c.	&c.		&c.	&c.	
			<i>Part. Fut.</i>			
				ama-endus	= amandus.	

Obs.—The Stem *dă* (*give*) remains short, the Vowel following the Character being cast out; except in 1st and 2d Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act.; in Pres. Conj. Act. and Pass.; and in 2d Pers. Imper. Act.: as, Pres. Ind. *do, dās, dāt, dāmus, dātis, dant.* Pres. Conj. *dem, dēs, dēt, dēmus, dētis, dent* (so *dētur*). Imper. *dā, dāto, dāte, &c.*

§ g. PARADIGM OF PRESENT-STEM FORMATION IN CONJ. II.

ACTIVE.

			<i>Pres.</i>			
			<i>Indic. Mood.</i>			
Sing.	mone-o.			mone-am.		
	mone-is	= monēs.		mone-as.		
	mone-it	= monēt.		mone-at.		
	mone-imus	= monēmus.		mone-amus.		
	mone-itis	= monētis.		mone-atis.		
	mone-unt	= monent.		mone-ant.		

Preterimperf.

Sing.	mone-ēbam = monēbam.		mone-ērem = monērem.
	&c.		&c.

Fut. Imperf.

Sing.	mone-ēbo = monēbo.		—
	&c.		&c.

Imper. Mood.

Sing.	mone-ě = moně.		
	mone-yto = moněto.		
	&c.		&c.

Infin. Pres.

mone-ěre = moněre.

Part. Pres.

mone-ens = monens.

Gerunds.

mone-endi = monendi.
&c.

PASSIVE.

Pres.

Sing.	mone-or.		mone-ar.
	mone-ěris = moněris.		mone-āris.
	&c.		&c.

Preterimperf.

Sing.	mone-ēbar = monēbar.		mone-ěrer = monērer.
	&c.		&c.

Fut. Imperf.

Sing.	mone-ēbor = monēbor.		—
	&c.		&c.

Imper. Mood.

Sing.	mone-ěre = moněre.		
	&c.		&c.

Infin. Pres.

mone-ěri = moněri.
&c.

Part. Fut.

mone-endus = monendus.

§ h. PARADIGM OF PRESENT-STEM FORMATION IN CONJ. IV.

ACTIVE.

*Pres.**Indic. Mood.*

Sing.	audi-o.		
	audi-ys = audīs.		
	audi-yt = audīt.		
Plur.	audi-ymus = audīmus.		
	audi-itis = audītis.		
	audi-unt.		

Conjunct. Mood.

audi-am.
audi-as.
audi-at.
audi-amus.
audi-atis.
audi-ant.

		<i>Preterimperf.</i>	
Sing.	audi-ēbam. &c. &c.		audi-ērem = audīrem. &c. &c.
		<i>Fut. Imperf.</i>	
Sing.	audi-am. audi-es. &c. &c.		— — —
		<i>Imper. Mood.</i>	
Sing.	audi-ē = audī. audi-yto = audīto. &c. &c.		<i>Infinit. Pres.</i> audi-ēre = audīre. <i>Part. Pres.</i> audi-ens.
		<i>Gerunds.</i> audi-endi, &c.	
		<i>PASSIVE.</i>	
		<i>Pres.</i>	
		<i>Indic. Mood.</i>	
Sing.	audi-or. audi-ēris = audīris. &c. &c.		<i>Conjunct. Mood.</i> audi-ar. audi-aris. &c. &c.
		<i>Preterimperf.</i>	
Sing.	audi-ebar. &c.		audi-ērer = audīrer. &c. &c.
		<i>Fut. Imperf.</i>	
Sing.	audi-ar. audi-ēris.		— — —
		<i>Imper. Mood.</i>	
Sing.	audi-ēre = audīre.		<i>Infinit. Mood.</i> audi-ēre = audīre.
		<i>Part. Fut.</i> audi-endus.	

Obs. — The irregular verb *eo* belongs to this Conjugation. Its character *i* is changed into *e* before *o*, *a*, *u*; and *i-ē* is contracted into *i*, as *i-ēbam* = *ibam*. It also takes the *Fut.* form *-ebo*, as *i-ēbo* = *ibo*. (See §§ 61, 62.) *Queo* and *nequeo* are formed in like manner.

§ *i*. The forms of the 3d Conjugation, being free from contraction, appear distinctly (§§ 50, 51.).

Although in the 3d Conjugation the Present-stem is commonly identical with the Root, yet there are many Verbs which exhibit some departure from the Root in the Present-stem. The variation is of several kinds.

(1.) The letter *n* has been inserted into many Roots: —

a. After the final Vowel of the Root, as *li-n-o*, *si-n-o*.

b. After the final Consonant of the Root, as *tem-n-o*, *sper-n-o*, *cer-n-o*, *pōs-n-o* = *pōno*.

c. Before the final Consonant of the Root, as *vi(n)c-o*, *li(n)qu-o*, *fra(n)g-o*, *ta(n)g-o*, *pa(n)g-o*, *pu(n)g-o*, *pi(n)g-o*, *fi(n)g-o*, *stri(n)g-o*, *ju(n)g-o*, *fi(n)d-o*, *sei(n)d-o*, *tu(n)d-o*, *fu(n)d-o*. But *ru(n)p-o* = *rumpo*, *cu(n)b-o* = *cumbo*.

(2.) The letters *sc* have been added to many Roots, which have thus been transferred from other Conjugations to the 3d; as *cre(sc)-o*, *sue(sc)-o*, *pa(sc)-o*, *quie(sc)-o*, *no(sc)-o*, *ira(sc)-or*. (See § 60.) But *di(s)c-o* from the Root *dic-* only takes the insertion *s*. In the following Verbs with consonantal characters, *sc* has been joined to the Root by the vincular *i*; *ap(i-sc)-or*, *ulc(i-sc)-or*, *profic(i-sc)-or*, *men(i-sc)-or*, *experg(i-sc)-or*, *obliv(i-sc)-or*, *pac(i-sc)-or*, *fat(i-sc)-or*. In *na(n)c(i-sc)-or* both the insertions, *n* and *sc*, are found.

(3.) *R* is added to the root *se*, and forms *se(r)-o*, *I sow*.

(4.) In a few Verbs the Liquid *l* has been doubled in the Present-stem, as *pel-l-o*, *percel-l-o*.

(5.) *U* has been added to some Roots, as *ting-u-o*, *sting-u-o*, *ung-u-o*, which are still dissyllabic, with *gu* (= *g*) for their Character. The *u* of some Verbs in *u-o* does not belong to the Root, as in *ac-u-o*, *min-u-o*, which come from the Roots *ac-*, *min-*. But of these latter Verbs *u* is the Stem-character, as *a*, *e*, *i*, in the other Conjugations.

(6.) Respecting the Verbs in *io* of the 3d Conjugation, see § 56. The *i* of these Verbs belongs neither to Stem nor Ending, and must be viewed as a mere vincular insertion, affecting some of the Present-stem forms. It does not appear in the Infinitive, Imperative, or Preterimperfect Conjunctive of either Voice.

(7.) Three Roots are reduplicated in the Present-stem with the first Consonant of the Root and *i*: *bi-bo*, from Root *bo* or *po*; *si-sto*, from Root *st* or *sta*; *gi-gēu-o* = (by syncope) *gi-gno*, from Root *gēn*.

§ j. In order to form the Tenses of past signification, the Supines, the Future and Perfect Participles, it is not enough to know the Present-stem and Root of a Verb, with the Endings, but also the Perfect-stem and Supine-stem must be known; and, in order to form these, we must know the Perfect-character and Supine-character.

From the Perfect-stem are derived:—

- The Preterperf. Act. Indic. and Conjunct.
- Preterplup. Act. — —
- Future Perf.
- Preterperf. Infin.

From the Supine-stem are derived:—

- The Supines,
- Future Participle Active,
- Perfect Participle Passive,

with all the Tenses of which these make a part, as the Past Tenses Passive, the Futures Infin., &c.

The Perfect-stem and Supine-stem being known, the forms derived from them are obtained by prefixing them severally to the Endings; with the requisite euphonic changes (Exc. A. § e).

§ k. The general Endings of the Perfect-stem Forms are : —

ACTIVE.

		<i>Indic. Mood.</i>	<i>Conjunct. Mood.</i>
Preterperf. Tense.	Sing. 1.	-i.	-ërim.
	2.	-isti.	-ëris.
	3.	-it.	-ërit.
	Plur. 1.	-imus.	-ërimus.
	2.	-istis.	-ëritis.
	3.	-erunt, or -ërë.	-ërint.
Preterplup. Tense.	Sing. 1.	-ëram.	-issem.
	2.	-ëras.	-isses.
	3.	-ërat.	-isset.
	Plur. 1.	-ëramus.	-issemus.
	2.	-ëratîs.	-issetis.
	3.	-ërant.	-issent.
Fut. Perf. Tense.	Sing. 1.	-ëro.	
	2.	-ëris.	
	3.	-ërit.	
	Plur. 1.	-ërimus.	
	2.	-ëritis.	
	3.	-ërint.	
<i>Infîn. Preterperf.</i>			
-isse.			

§ l. The general Endings of the Supine-stem Forms are : —

Supine 1.	-um.
Supine 2.	-u.
Fut. Part. Act.	-urus.
Perf. Part. Pass.	-us.

For the Tenses compounded with some of these Forms, see § 51.

§ m. The Perfect-stem is formed from the Present-stem or Root in various ways : —

(1.) By adding to the Present-stem or Root the Character *v*, which, after a Root with a consonantal Character, is generally softened into the vowel *u*.

(2.) By adding the Character *s* to the Root.

(3.) By reduplicating the Root, either with the initial Consonant (or Consonants) and *e*, in which case a Vowel-change occurs, as *ce-cin(i)* from *can-o*; or with the initial Consonant (or Consonants) and Vowel, as *to-tond(i)*. From some Perfect-stems the reduplication appears to have fallen away, as *scid-i*.

(4.) By lengthening the Root-vowel, as *ēm-(i)*; sometimes with a Vowel-change, as *fēc-i* from *fāc-io*. Perhaps these Perfect-stems were once reduplicated.

(5.) In some Verbs the Present-stem and Perfect-stem are the same, as *scand-i* from *scand-o*. These also may have been reduplicated originally.

§ n. I. Perfect-character *v* or *u*.

(a.) *V* is added to the Present-stem: — (1.) In most Verbs of the 1st and 4th Conjugations (Character *a* and *i*); as, *amā-v(i)*, *audī-v(i)*. (2.) In a few Verbs of the 2d Conjugation (Character *e*); as, *delē-v(i)*, *flē-v(i)*, *nē-v(i)*, *plē-v(i)*, *olē-v(i)*, and their Compounds.

Obs. — In these latter Verbs the Character *e* belongs to the Root, as does *a* in *flā-* (*fl-o*), *nā-* (*n-o*), *stā-* (*st-o*), *fā-* (*f-o*), and *dā-* (*d-o*) of Conjug. I.; and *i* in *ī-* (*e-o*), *cī-* (*ci-o*), and *scī-* (*sci-o*) of Conjugation IV.

(b.) *V* is added to the Root and softened into *u*: — (1.) In several Perfect-stems of the 1st Conjugation; as, *crep-u(i)*, *cub-u(i)*, *dom-u(i)*, *fric-u(i)*, *mic-u(i)*, *nec-u(i)* (also *necavi*) *plic-u(i)*, (also *plicavi*), *sec-u(i)*, *son-u(i)*, *ton-u(i)*, *vet-u(i)*. (2.) In most Perfect-stems of the 2d Conjugation; as, *mon-u(i)*, *doc-u(i)*. (3.) In most Perfect-stems of the 3d Conjugation from Roots with Character a liquid or *s*; as, *al-u(i)*, *col-u(i)*, *cell-u(i)*, *gem-u(i)*, *gen-u(i)* from Pres. *gigno*, *ser-u(i)*, *pins-u(i)*, *tex-u(i)*, *pos-u(i)* from Pres. *pōno* (= *pōs-n-o*). Also *elic-u(i)* from Pres. *ēlicio*, *compesc-u(i)*, *strep-u(i)*, *rap-u(i)* from Pres. *rap-io*, *sap-u(i)* from Pres. *sap-io*, *stert-u(i)*, *mess-u(i)* from Pres. *meto*, *nex-u(i)* (also *nexi*) from Pres. *necto*; and in almost all Inceptive Verbs derived from Nouns, as *obdur-u(i)*. (4.) In a few Perfect-stems of the 4th Conjugation; as, *amic-u(i)*, *aper-u(i)*, *oper-u(i)*, *sal-u(i)*.

(c.) *V* is added to the Root in the following Verbs of the 3d Conjugation, with strengthened Present-stem. See § i.

<i>Present-stem.</i>	(Root.)	<i>Perfect-stem.</i>
Līn-o	(lī or lē)	lī-v(i) or lē-v(i).
Sīn-o	(sī)	sī-v(i).
Ser-o	(sē)	sē-v(i).
Cern-o	(cer)	crē-v(i)
Spern-o	(sper)	sprē-v(i)
Stern-o	(ster)	strā-v(i)
[So ter-o	(ter)	trī-v(i)]
Cresc-o	(crē)	crē-v(i).
Suesc-o	(suē)	suē-v(i).
Quiesc-o	(quiē)	quiē-v(i).
Pasc-o	(pā)	pā-v(i).
Nosc-o	(nō)	nō-v(i).

} by Metathesis.

} by Metathesis, with Vowel-change.

(d.) *V* is joined to the Root by a vincular *i* in the following Perfect-stems of the 3d Conjugation, which thus assume the semblance of the 4th: *cup-iv(i)* from Pres. *cup-io*, *pet-iv(i)*, *quæ-iv(i)* from Pres. *quæro* = *quæso*, *rud-iv(i)*, *arcess-iv(i)*, *capess-iv(i)*, *incess-iv(i)*, *facess-iv(i)* (also *facessi*), *laccess-iv(i)* (also *laccessi*).

II. Perfect-character *s*.

(a.) *S* is the proper Perfect-character of Roots of the 3d Conjug., with Root-character a Mute (including the guttural sounds *h*, *qu*, *gu*); and when *s* is added to such a Root, the euphonic rules (given Exc. A. § e. I.) must, where necessary, be applied, viz. *b* before *s* must be changed into *p*; a guttural and *s* become *x*; a guttural falls out between *r* or *l* and *s*. *T*-sounds before *s* fall out, and the preceding vowel is, if necessary, lengthened. Thus are formed: — (1.) *Rep-s(i)*, *nub-s(i)* = *nupsi*. (2.) *Duc-s(i)* = *duxi*, *reg-s(i)* = *rex*, *veh-s(i)* = *vex*, *coqu-s(i)* = *coxi*, *extingu-s(i)* = *extinxi*, *viv-s(i)* = *vixi*, *fin-g-s(i)* = *finxi*, *spec-s(i)* = *spexi* from *spec-io*, and with a Vowel-change *lec-s(i)* = *lexi* from *lac-io*. (3.) *Sparg-s(i)* = *sparsi*. (4.) *Læd-s(i)* = *læsi*, *divid-s(i)* = *divisi*, *mitt-s(i)* = *misi*, *flect-s(i)* = *flec-s(i)* = *flexi*, *quat-s(i)* = *quassi* from *quat-io*. But *nect-o* forms *nexi* and *nexui*; *pect-o*, *pexi* and *pexui*.

Obs. 1. — *Fluv-s(i)* = *fluxi* from *flu-o*, and *struv-s(i)* = *struxi* from *struo*, are from the old Roots *flu-*, *struv-*.

Obs. 2. — The following Perfect-stems with Character *s* are formed from Roots with Character a liquid: — *Sum-s(i)*, *com-s(i)*, *dem-s(i)*, *prom-s(i)*, *tem-s(i)* from *tem(n)o*, all which may insert *p* between *m* and *s*. Also *prem-s(i)* = *pressi*, *ur-s(i)* = *ursi*, *ger-s(i)* = *gessi*. *Vell-o* forms *vul-s(i)* or *vell-i*.

(b.) Some Perfect-stems of the 2d Conjug. are formed in the same manner, by adding *s* to the root, and applying the euphonic rules, as: — (1.) *Sorb-s(i)* = *sorpsi* (also *sorb-ui*); but *jub-s(i)* = *jussi*. (2.) *Aug-s(i)* = *auxi*, *frig-s(i)* = *frixi*, *lug-s(i)* = *luxi*, *luc-s(i)* = *luxi*. (3.) *Mul-g-s(i)* = *mulsi*, *mulc-s(i)* = *mulsi*, *alg-s(i)* = *alsi*, *indulg-s(i)* = *indulsi*, *fulg-s(i)* = *fulsi*, *urg-s(i)* = *ursi*, *torqu-s(i)* = *torsi*. (4.) *Ard-s(i)* = *arsi*, *rid-s(i)* = *risi*, *suad-s(i)* = *suasi*. (5.) Also *man-s(i)*, *hær-s(i)* = *hæsi*.

(c.) In the 4th Conjug. the following Perfect-stems are formed with *s*: — (1.) *Sep-s(i)*. (2.) *Sanc-s(i)* = *sanxi* (also *sancivi*), *vinc-s(i)* = *vinxi*. (3.) *Fulc-s(i)* = *fulsi*, *sarc-s(i)* = *sarsi*, *farc-s(i)* = *farsi*. (4.) *Sent-s(i)* = *sensi*. (5.) *Haur-s(i)* = *hausi*.

III. The reduplicated Perfect-stem is formed from the Root.

(a.) With initial Consonant (or Consonants) and *e*, a Vowel-change being made in the Root. (1.) *A* into *i*; as, *cē-cīd(i)* from *cād-o*, *cē-cīn(i)* from *can-o*, *pē-pīg(i)* from *pa(n)g-o* (root *pāg*), *tē-tīg(i)* from *ta(n)g-o* (root *tāg*); so *cē-cīd(i)* from *cædo*. (2.) *E* into *i*; as, *mē-mīn(i)*, from the Root *mē-*. (3.) *A* into *e*; as, *fē-fell(i)* from *fall-o*, *pē-perc(i)* from *parc-o*, *pē-per(i)* from *pār(i)o*. (4.) *E* into *u*; as, *pē-pūl(i)* from *pel(i)o* (Root

pēl), with the obsolete form *cē-cul(i)* from *cel(l)o* (Root *cēl*). (5.) *O* into *u*, in the antiquated Perf. *tē-tul(i)* from *tol(l)o* (Root *tēl*).

Obs. — *De-d(i)* is formed from *do* (Root *dā*), *a* falling out; *stē-t(i)* from *sto* (Root *sta*), *s* being euphonically rejected before *ti*, on account of the initial *st*, and *a* falling out.

(b.) With initial Consonant (or Consonants) and Vowel of Root; as, In Conj. II., *mō-mord(i)*, *tō-tond(i)*, *pē-pend(i)* from *pend-eo*, and *spo-pond(i)* from *spond-eo*. (See *ste-t(i)*). *Obs.* In Conj. III. *po-pose(i)*, *pe-pend(i)*, *te-tend(i)*, *cū-curr(i)*, *dī-dīc(i)* from *dī(s)co* (Root *dīc*), *pu-pūg(i)* from *pu(n)go* (Root *pūg*), *tū-tūd(i)* from *tu(n)do* (Root *tūd*).

Obs. — In *fīd(i)* from *fī(n)do* (Root *fīd*), *scīd(i)* from *scī(n)do* (Root *scīd*), and *tūl(i)*, the reduplication appears to be dropped.

IV. The Perfect-stem is formed by lengthening the Root-vowel.

(a.) Without a Vowel-change: — In 1st Conj.; *jūv(i)* from *jūv-o*, *lāv(i)* from *lāv-o*. In 2d Conj.; *sēd(i)* from *sēd-eo*, *vid(i)* from *vid-eo*, *cāv(i)* from *cāv-eo*, *fāv(i)* from *fāv-eo*, *pāv(i)* from *pāv-eo*, *fōv(i)* from *fōv-eo*, *mōv(i)* from *mōv-eo*, *vōv(i)* from *vōv-eo*. In 3d Conj.; *lēg(i)* from *lēg-o*, *ēm(i)* from *ēm-o*, *ēd(i)* from *ēd-o*, *fōd(i)* from *fōd-io*, *fūg(i)* from *fūg-io*, *vic(i)* from *vi(n)c-o* (Root *vic*), *liqu(i)* from *li(n)qu-o* (Root *liqu*), *fūd(i)* from *fu(n)d-o* (Root *fūd*), *rūp(i)* from *ru(m)p-o* (Root *rūp*). In 4th Conj.; *vēn(i)* from *vēn-io*.

(b.) With a Vowel-change only in 3d Conj.; *cēp(i)* from *cāp-io*, *jēc(i)* from *jāc-io*, *fēc(i)* from *fāc-io*, *ēg(i)* from *āg-o*, *frēg(i)* from *fra(n)g-o* (Root *fāg*), *impēg(i)*, &c., from Root *pāg*.

V. The Perfect-stem is the same as the Present-stem or the Root, chiefly in Verbs with Root-character a T-sound, *u*, or *v*; as: — In 2d Conj.; *prand(i)*, *ferv(i)* also *ferbui*. In 3d Conj.; *scand(i)*, *cūd(i)*, and some others with Character *d*; *vert(i)*; *tribu(i)*, *ru(i)*, and some others with Character *u*; *solv(i)*, *volv(i)*, &c. Also *bib(i)*, *lamb(i)*, *psall(i)*, *verr(i)*, *ic(i)*, &c. In 4th Conj.; *comper(i)*, *reper(i)*.

§ o. The Supine-character is *t*, which, in order to form the Supine-stem, is affixed either to the Present-stem or Root, before the ending *-um*.

(a.) *T-um* is affixed to the Present-stem Character *a* or *i*, without further change in most Verbs of the 1st and 4th Conjugations; as, *amā-t(um)*, *dā-t(um)*, *audī-t(um)*: to the Character *ē*, in those verbs of the 2d Conjugation which form the Perf. in *ē-v(i)*; as, *delē-t(um)*: and to the lengthened Character *ū*, as *tribū-t(um)*: except *rū-i-t(um)* or *rū-t(um)*.

(b.) *T-um* is joined to the Root, with a vincular *t*, in most Supines of the 2d Conj.; as, *mon-i-t(um)*, *sol-i-t(um)*: in the following of the 1st Conj.; *crep-i-t(um)*, *cub-i-t(um)*, *son-i-t(um)*, *dom-i-t(um)*, *vet-i-t(um)*, *ton-i-t(um)*, *plic-i-t(um)*: and in the following of the 3d; *bib-i-t(um)*,

cub-*i-t(um)*, strep-*i-tum*, mol-*i-t(um)*, frem-*i-t(um)*, gem-*i-t(um)*, pos-*i-t(um)*, gen-*i-t(um)*, fug-*i-t(um)*. The vincular *i* is retained in the Supines of Verbs which have it in the Perfect; as, pet-*i-t(um)*, quæ-*i-t(um)*, arcess-*i-t(um)*.

(c.) In the following Supine-stems *t-um* is affixed to the Root without further change:— Conjug. I.; sec-*t(um)*, fric-*t(um)*. Conjug. II.; doc-*t(um)*, ten-*t(um)*, miser-*t(um)*. Conjug. III.; carp-*t(um)*, and others with Character *p*; duc-*t(um)*, and others with Character *c*; tex-*t(um)*; consul-*t(um)*, and others with Character *l*; em-*t(um)* = emptum, com-*t(um)* = comptum, &c., can-*t(um)*, ser-*t(um)*: and the following from Roots strengthened in the Present-stem (see § i.); rup-*t(um)*, crê-*t(um)*, suê-*t(um)*, quî-*t(um)*, li-*t(um)*, sl-*t(um)*, nō-*t(um)*, vic-*t(um)*, tem-*t(um)* = temptum, na-*t(um)*, ira-*t(um)*, ap-*t(um)*, nac-*t(um)*, pac-*t(um)*. Conjug. IV.; sanc-*t(um)*, vinc-*t(um)*, amic-*t(um)*, sal-*t(um)*, ven-*t(um)*, sep-*t(um)*, aper-*t(um)*, exper-*t(um)*, opper-*t(um)*, or-*t(um)*, &c.

(d.) In the following Supine-stems *t-um* has been added to the Root with various Euphonic changes of the Root-syllable, not altering the Supine-character:—

(1.) *V* before *t* is changed into *u*; as, Conj. III., volv-*t(um)* = volūtum; solv-*t(um)* = solūtum.

u-*u* = ū; as, Conj. I., juv-*t(um)* = ju-utum = jutum.

a-*u* = au; as, Conj. I., lav-*t(um)* = lautum or lotum; Conj. II., fav-*t(um)* = fautum, cav-*t(um)* = cautum.

o-*u* = o; as, Conj. II., fov-*t(um)* = fōtum, mov-*t(um)* = mōtum, vov-*t(um)* = vōtum; Conjug. III., obliv-*t(um)* throws out *v* = obli-*t(um)*.

(2.) *B* before *t* is changed into *p*; as, Conj. II., sorb-*t(um)* = sorptum; Conj. III., nub-*t(um)* = nuptum.

(3.) *g*, *gu*, *qu*, *h*, and sometimes *v*, before *t*, are sometimes changed into *c*; as, Conj. II., aug-*t(um)* = auctum; Conj. III., reg-*t(um)* = rec-*tum*, fung-*t(um)* = functum, extingui-*t(um)* = extinctum, coqu-*t(um)* = coctum, veh-*t(um)* = vectum, viv-*t(um)* = victum.

And the following from Roots strengthened in the Present-stem:— liqu-*t(um)* = lictum, frag-*t(um)* = fractum, pag-*t(um)* = pactum, tag-*t(um)* = tactum.

So fi(n)g-o Perf. fi(n)xi Sup. fig-*t(um)* = fictum.

pi(n)go — pi(n)x-i — pig-*t(um)* = pictum.

stri(n)g-o — stri(n)x-i — strig-*t(um)* = strictum.

but pu(n)g-o — pu-pug-i — pu(n)g-*t(um)* = punctum.

ju(n)g-o — ju(n)x-i — ju(n)c-*t(um)*.

Obs. — Struo (old Root *struv*), Perf. struxi, Sup. struv-*t(um)* = structum; sequ-*t(um)* = secutum; loqu-*t(um)* = locutum.

(4.) The K-sound falls out before *t* in the following:— Conj. II., indulg-*t(um)* = indultum, torqu-*t(um)* = tortum, misc-*t(um)* = mistum or mixtum; Conj. III., ulc-*t(um)* = ultum; Conj. IV., fule-*t(um)* = fultum, sarc-*t(um)* = sartum, farc-*t(um)* = fartum.

(5.) *R*, or *rr*, is changed into *s* before *t*; as, Conj. II., *torr-t(um)* = *tostum*; Conj. III., *ur-t(um)* = *ustum*, *ger-t(um)* = *gestum*, *quer-t(um)* = *questum*; Conj. IV., *haur-t(um)* = *haustum*.

(6.) In the following a Vowel-change occurs:— Conj. II., *re-t(um)* from *re-or* = *rātum*; Conj. III., *col-t(um)* = *cultum*, *sepel-t(um)* = *sepultum*, *se-t(um)* from *se(r)o* = *sātum*.

So from *profic(i-se)or* comes *profec-t(um)*; *commin(is-c)or* comes *commen-t(um)*.

(7.) The Roots which are transposed in the Perfect-stem keep the same transposition in the Supine-stem; and the same Vowel-changes. Conj. III., *ster(n)o*, *strā-v(i)*, *stra-t(um)*; *sper(n)o*, *sprē-v(i)*, *spre-t(um)*; *cer(n)o*, *crē-v(i)*, *cre-t(um)*; *ter-o*, *trī-v(i)*, *tri-t(um)*.

(8.) The following are irregular Supine-stems:— Conj. III., *pas-t(um)* from *pa(se)o*, *mor-tu(um)* from *mor-i-or*, *fruc-t(um)* from *fru-or*, *pis-t(um)* or *pins-(um)* from *pinso*; Conj. IV., *singul-t(um)* for *singulti-o*.

(e.) The Supine-character *t* becomes *s*:—

a. In many Verbs with a T-sound for their Root-character.

(1.) The Root-character being cast out, and the penultima, if necessary, lengthened; as, Conj. II., *prand-t(um)* = *pransum*, *vid-t(um)* = *visum*; Conj. III., *fud-t(um)* = *fusum*, *flect-t(um)* = *flec-sum* = *flexum*, *cad-t(um)* = *cāsum*, *ut-t(um)* = *ūsūm*. But, *tend-t(um)* = *tensum* or *tentum*, *tud-t(um)* = *tūsum* or *tunsum*, *nit-t(um)* = *nīsum* or *nixum*; Conj. IV., *sent-t(um)* = *sensum*, *ord-t(um)* = *orsum*.

(2.) The Root-character being also changed into *s*; as, Conj. II., *sed-t(um)* = *sessum*, *fat-t(um)* (from *fate-or*) = *fassum*; Conj. III., *ced-t(um)* = *cessum*, *fid-t(um)* (from *fi(n)do*) = *fissum*, *scid-t(um)* = *scissum*, *fod-t(um)* = *fossum*, *met-t(um)* = *messum*, *pat-t(um)* = *passum*, *quat-t(um)* = *quassum*. So, *mitt-t(um)* = *missum*; and, with Vowel-change, *grad-t(um)* = *gressum*; *fat-t(um)*, from *fat(i-se)-or* = *fessum*.

b. In some Verbs having a K-sound for their Root-character, with *l* or *r* before it, in which case the K-sound is thrown out; as, Conj. II., *mulc-t(um)* = *mulsum*, *terg-t(um)* = *tersum*; Conj. III., *parc-t(um)* = *parsum*, *sparg-t(um)* = *sparsum*.

c. In Verbs with *ll* or *rr* for their Root-character, in which the second liquid is thrown out; as, *fall-t(um)* = *falsum*, *curr-t(um)* = *cursum*. And, with Vowel-change, *percell-t(um)* = *perculsum*, *pell-t(um)* = *pulsum*, *vell-t(um)* = *vulsum*.

d. In the following particular instances:— Conj. II., *man-t(um)* = *mansum*, *hær-t(um)* = *hæsum*, *jub-t(um)* = *jussum*, *cens-t(um)* = *cen-sum*; Conj. III., *fig-t(um)* (from *fig-o*) = *fixum*, *fluv-t(um)* (from *flu-o*) = *fluxum*, *lab-t(um)* = *lapsum*, *prem-t(um)* = *pressum*; Conj. IV., *metior* forms *mensum*.

Obs.—*Gavisum* comes from *gaudeo*, i. e. *ga-video*. *Latum* is the supine of an obsolete Verb.

§ p. Of the irregular Verb Sum the Root is *ēs-*; and its Present-stem tenses are formed thus:—

Pres.

<i>Indic.</i>		<i>Conjunct.</i>
1. <i>ēs-um</i>	= sum.	<i>es-im</i> = sim.
2. <i>ēs-s</i>	= ēs.	<i>es-is</i> = sis.
3. <i>es-t</i>		<i>es-it</i> = sit.
4. <i>es-umus</i>	= sumus.	<i>es-imus</i> = simus.
5. <i>es-tis</i>		<i>es-itis</i> = sitis.
6. <i>es-unt</i>	= sunt.	<i>es-int</i> = sint.

Preterimp.

1. <i>ēs-am</i>	= ēram.	<i>es-rem</i>	= essem.
2. <i>ēs-as</i>	= ēras.	<i>es-rēs</i>	= esses.
&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.

Fut. Imp.

1. <i>ēs-o</i>	= ēro.
2. <i>ēs-īs</i>	= erīs.
&c.	&c.

Inf.

es-re = esse.

Obs.—*Se* is probably the older ending of the Infinitive, *r* having been afterwards substituted for *s*, as in the Gen. Plur. (*rum* for *sum*) of Nouns. Hence the form of the Inf. Perf., in which the ending *-se* is connected with the Perfect-stem by a vincular *i* and *s* doubled euphonically: *as*,

<i>amav-i-se</i>	= amavisse.
<i>monu-i-se</i>	= monuisse.
&c.	&c.

The Perfect-stem and Supine-stem of the Verb of “*being*” are formed from the obsolete Verb *fu-o*; whence *fu-i*, *fu-ero*, *fu-isse*, &c., and the Fut. Part. *fu-t-urus*. From the same Verb come the Preterimp. Conj. forem, for *fu-rem*, and the Fut. Inf. *fo-re* for *fu-re*.

§ q. 1. Possum is for *pote-sum* = *pot-sum* = *possum*, *pot-fui* = *potui*. Hence the etymology of the other tenses will be evidently seen.

2. Of *Volo* (I wish), the Root-vowel is sometimes *o*, sometimes *u*, sometimes *e*.

Pres.

<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conjunct.</i>
1. <i>Vol-o</i> .	<i>vel-im</i> .
2. <i>vol-is</i> = <i>vo-is</i> = <i>vis</i> .	<i>vel-is</i> .

<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Conjunct.</i>
3. vol- <i>t</i> or vul- <i>t</i> .	vel- <i>it</i> .
4. vol- <i>u-mus</i> .	vel- <i>imus</i> .
5. vol- <i>tis</i> or vultis.	vel- <i>itis</i> .
6. vol- <i>unt</i> .	vel- <i>int</i> .

In Preterimp. Conj. vel-rem = vellem, &c.

In Pres. Infin. vel-re = velle.

The rest of the formation is regular.

Nōlo is for non-vōlo; Mālo for ma-vōlo. Their formation may be easily traced. The Imper. noli is irregular.

3. The irregularity in the Present-stem formation of Fero consists in the absence of a vincular vowel from certain forms: fer-s, fer-t, fer-tis, fer, fer-re, fer-rem, &c. The Perfect-stem is from the Root tol- = tul-; the Supine-stem from the Root la-.

4. Fio is for fi-*lo* (from Root -fu); but in some of the forms the second *i* falls out, instead of forming a contraction, as fi-*erem*, fi-*eri*, &c.

It is used as a Neutro-passive Verb in the Present-stem forms; but its past tenses are borrowed from fact-um, the Supine of facio, and conjugated passively.

5. Of Ed-o some forms change *d* into *s*, and reject the vincular vowel; as,

ed-is or (ed-s =) ēs.
ed-it or (ed-t =) est.
ed-e or es.
ed-erem or (ed-rem =) essem.
&c. &c.
ed-ere or (ed-re =) esse.
&c. &c.

Translation of Rules § 87—100.

Note.

VOCABULARY of some Latin words used in the following Rules:—
Et, atque, que, and; sed, at, verum, tamen, but; facit, efficit, makes; format, flectit, dat, forms; stat, stands; vindicat, arrogat, claims; fit, becomes; flectitur, is formed; vertitur, is changed; fert, receives; nullum Supinum, no Supine; vel, or; sic, so; postulat, poscit, exigit, exposcit, requires; item, also; sit, should be; suscipit, accipit, takes; dant, form; ut, as; gignit, forms; mavult, prefers; effici, to be formed; rite, properly; it, comes; ab, from.

III. (DE PERFECTIS ET SUPINIS VERBORUM LATINORUM) ON THE PRETERPERFECTS AND SUPINES OF LATIN VERBS.

§ 87. I. (VERBORUM PRIMA CONJUGATIO) THE FIRST CONJUGATION OF VERBS,

(cui *o, as, āre*, terminatio) the termination of which is *o, as, āre*, (fit *avi* in Perfecto) becomes in the Preterperfect Tense *avi*; (subjicit *atum* Supino) and makes its Supine end in *atum*.

(EXCEPTA) EXCEPTIONS.

(1.) (Hinc excipienda sunt) From this rule must be excepted (quæ efferunt) verbs which form (*ui itum*) *ui* in the Preterperfect, and *itum* in the Supine.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
crepo, <i>I utter a sound</i> ;	crepui,	crepitu[m].
cubo, <i>I lie down</i> ;	cubui,	cubitu[m].
sono, <i>I sound</i> ;	sonui,	sonitu[m]. ¹
domo, <i>I tame</i> ;	domui,	domitu[m].
veto, <i>I forbid</i> ;	vetui,	vetitu[m].
tono, <i>I thunder</i> ;	tonui,	tonitu[m]. ²
(2.) (Sed) But,		
seco, <i>I cut</i> ;	secui,	sectu[m].
frico, <i>I rub</i> ;	fricui,	frictu[m]. ³
(3.) Juvo, <i>I please</i> ;	jūvi,	jutu[m].
lāvo, <i>I wash</i> ;	lāvi,	lōtu[m] ⁴ and lāvatu[m].
(4.) Do, <i>I give</i> ;	dēdi,	dātu[m]. ⁵
sto, <i>I stand</i> ;	stēti,	stātu[m]. ⁶
(5.) Mico, <i>I glitter</i> ;	micui,	— ⁷
plico, <i>I fold</i> ;	plicui,	plicatu[m] or plicitu[m]. ⁸

[¹ The Fut. Part. sonaturus is used by Horace.

² The Pass. Part. intonatus (from the Compound Intono) is used by Horace.

³ Fricatum is more usual than frictum. Neco, *I kill*, takes regularly necavi, necatum; but its Compound Eneco has either enecavi or enecui, enecatum or enectum.

⁴ Lavi, lotum (and lautum), may belong to a verb Lavo of the 3d Conj., which is also used in the Present Indicative, and in the Infinitive Mood, by Horace and Virgil.

⁵ Of the Compounds of Do; circumdo, pessumdo, satisdo, venumdo, keep dedi, datum: for the rest see § 90. (*d.*), (2.).

⁶ Of the Compounds of Sto; circumsto, and supersto keep steti; the rest take stēti. The Supine is hardly found; but among the Compounds

are to be met with the Future Participles, *extaturus, instaturus, obstaturus, perstaturus, præstaturus, and præstiturus.*

⁷ Of the Compounds of *Mico*, we find *emico, I shine forth, emicui, emicatum*; *dimico, I combat, dimicavi, dimicatum.*

⁸ The Compounds of *Plico* have both *plicui* and *plicavi, plicitum* and *plicatum*: but *plicui* and *plicatum* are the more common.]

§ 88. II. (VERBORUM ALTERA CONJUGATIO) THE SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS,

(*cui eo, es, ēre, terminatio*) the termination of which is *eo, es, ēre*, (fit in Perfecto) becomes in the Preterperfect Tense *ui*, (subjicit *itum* Supino) and makes its Supine end in *itum*.

(1.) (*Hinc excipienda sunt*) From this rule must be excepted (*quæ efferunt*) Verbs which form (*evi, etum*) *evi* in the Preterperfect, and *etum* in the Supine; (*ut*) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
<i>neo, I spin</i> ;	<i>nevi,</i>	<i>netum.</i>
<i>deleo, I blot out</i> ;	<i>delevi,</i>	<i>deletum.</i>
(Adde his) Add to these:—		
<i>fleo, I weep</i> ;	<i>flevi,</i>	<i>fletum.</i>
<i>pleo, I fill</i> ;	<i>plevi,</i>	<i>pletum.¹</i>
<i>oleo, I grow</i> ;	<i>olevi,</i>	<i>oletum.²</i>
(cum Compositis) with their Compounds.		

(2.) (*His*) In the following, (Perfectum) the Preterperfect Tense (*stat in di*) stands in *di*; (*sum* Supinum terminat) the Supine ends in *sum*:

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
<i>prandeo, I dine</i> ;	<i>prandi,</i>	<i>pransum.</i>
<i>sēdeo, I sit</i> ;	<i>sēdi,</i>	<i>sessum.</i>
<i>video, I see</i> ;	<i>vīdi,</i>	<i>visum.</i>
(Sed) But,		
<i>spondeo, I promise</i> ;	<i>spopondi,</i>	<i>sponsum.</i>
<i>tondeo, I shear</i> ;	<i>tōtondi,</i>	<i>tonsum.</i>
<i>mordeo, I bite</i> ;	<i>mōmordi,</i>	<i>morsum.</i>
<i>pendeo, I hang</i> ;	<i>pēpendi,</i>	<i>pensum.</i>

(3.) (*His*) In the following (Perfectum) the Preterperfect Tense (fit) is formed (in *si*) in *si*, (*sum* Supinum exigit) the Supine requires *sum*:

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
<i>jubeo, I command</i> ;	<i>jussi,</i>	<i>jussum.</i>
<i>mulceo, I soothe</i> ;	<i>mulsi,</i>	<i>mulsum.</i>
<i>mulgeo, I milk</i> ;	<i>mulsi,</i>	<i>mulectum.</i>
<i>tergeo, I wipe</i> ;	<i>tersi,</i>	<i>tersum.</i>
<i>ardeo, I burn</i> ;	<i>arsi,</i>	<i>arsum.</i>

rideo, <i>I laugh</i> ;	risi,	risum.
suadeo, <i>I persuade</i> ;	suasi,	suasum.
maneo, <i>I remain</i> ;	mansi,	mansum.
hæreo, <i>I stick</i> ;	hæsi,	hæsum.
(Sic et) So also,		
algeo, <i>I am chill</i> ;	alsi,	—
fulgeo, <i>I shine</i> ;	fulsi,	—
urgeo, <i>I push</i> ;	ursi,	—
(Sed) But (his) in these (Supinum) the Supine (deficit) is wanting.		

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
(4.) Indulgeo, <i>I indulge</i> ;	indulsi,	indultum.
torqueo, <i>I twist</i> ;	torsi,	tortum.
(5.) Augeo, <i>I increase</i> ;	auxi,	auctum.
frigeo, <i>I am cold</i> ;	frixi,	—
lugeo, <i>I mourn</i> ;	luxi,	—
luceo, <i>I shine</i> ;	luxi,	—
(Sed) But (non generant) these three latter do not form (Supinum) a Supine.		

(6.) (Hæc) The following (volunt) will have (*vi* suffici) *vi* to be added (Perfecto) to the Preterperfect Tense, (*tum* Supino) and *tum* to the Supine :

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
caveo, <i>I beware</i> ;	cavi,	cautum.
faveo, <i>I favour</i> ;	favi,	fautum.
foveo, <i>I cherish</i> ;	fövi,	fötum.
moveo, <i>I move</i> ;	mövi,	mötum.
voveo, <i>I vow</i> ;	vövi,	vötum. ³

(7.) (His) In the following (*ui* stat) *ui* stands (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect Tense, (*tum* Supinum terminat) *tum* is the termination of the Supine :

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
doceo, <i>I teach</i> ;	docui,	doctum.
misceo, <i>I mingle</i> ;	miscui,	mistum.
sorbeo, <i>I suck in</i> ;	sorbui, ⁴	sorptum.
teneo, <i>I hold</i> ;	tenui,	tentum.
torreo, <i>I roast</i> ;	torrui,	tostum.

(8.) (His) In the following (Præteritum) the Preterperfect (scribitur) is written (Passivè) Passively, (Præsens) the Present (Activè) Actively :

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
audeo, <i>I dare</i> ;	ausus sum,	—
gaudeo, <i>I rejoice</i> ;	gavisus sum,	—
soleo, <i>I am wont</i> ;	solitus sum,	—. ⁵

[¹ Pleo is only found in its Compounds, compleo, expleo, impleo, op-pleo, repleo, suppleo.

² Oleo is only found in its Compounds: as, exoleo or exolesco, obsoleo or obsolesco, inoleo or inolesco. But aboleo makes abolevi, abolitum; and adoleo or adolesco, adolevi and adultum. Oleo, *I smell*, olui, is a distinct word.

³ Paveo, <i>I fear</i> ;	pāvi,	—
Conniveo, <i>I wink</i> ;	connivi and connixi,	—
Ferveo, <i>I glow</i> ;	fervi and ferbui,	—.

⁴ Also sorpsi.

⁵ Some Verbs of the 2d Conjug. have another (poetical) form belonging to the 3d; as, stridēre and stridēre; fervēre and fervēre.]

§ 89. III. (VERBORUM TERTIA CONJUGATIO) THE THIRD CONJUGATION OF VERBS,

(cui *o, is, ēre*, terminatio) the termination of which is *o, is ēre*, (dat Perfecto) makes in the Preterperfect Tense (*i vel si*) *i* or *si*; (*tum vel sum*) *tum* or *sum* (stat) stands (Supino) in the Supine.¹

§ 90. (a.) Bo and po.

(*Bo, po*, habent) *Bo* and *po* have (*psi* additum Perfecto) *psi* added to the Preterperfect, (*ptum* Supino) and *ptum* to the Supine: (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
nubo, <i>I marry</i> ;	nupsi,	nuptum.

(EXCEPTA) EXCEPTIONS.

(Tamen) But,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
rumpo, <i>I break</i> ;	rupi,	ruptum.
bibo, <i>I drink</i> ;	bibi,	bibitum.
strepo, <i>I roar</i> ;	strepui,	strepitum.

(b.) Co, go, ho, quo.

(Sic declino *co, go, ho, quo*) I thus decline *co, go, ho, quo*; (*xi* Perfecto) *xi* in the Preterperfect; (*ctum* Supino) *ctum* in the Supine: (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
duco, <i>I lead</i> ;	duxi,	ductum.
sugo, <i>I suck</i> ;	suxi,	suctum.
rego, <i>I rule</i> ;	rexī,	rectum.
veho, <i>I carry</i> ;	vexi,	vectum.

(EXCEPTA) EXCEPTIONS.

(1.) (*Sco jubet*) *Sco* desires (*vi subiei*) *vi* to be joined (Perfecto) to its Preterperfect, (*tum* Supino) and *tum* to its Supine : (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
cresco, <i>I grow</i> ;	crevi,	cretum.
suesco, <i>I am habituated</i> ;	suevi,	suetum.
quiesco, <i>I rest</i> ;	quievi,	quietum.
nosco, <i>I know</i> ;	nōvi,	nōtum. ²
pasco, <i>I feed</i> ;	pāvi,	pastum.
compesco, <i>I restrain</i> ;	compescui,	—
posco, <i>I require</i> ;	poposci,	—
disco, <i>I learn</i> ;	didici,	—
(2.) Ico, <i>I strike</i> ;	ici,	ictum.
vinco, <i>I conquer</i> ;	vici,	victum.
linquo, <i>I leave</i> ;	liqui,	lictum.
(3.) Parco, <i>I spare</i> ;	peperci,	parsum. ³
(4.) Spargo, <i>I sprinkle</i> ;	sparsi,	sparsum.
mergo, <i>I dip</i> ;	mersi,	mersum.
tergo, <i>I wipe</i> ;	tersi,	tersum.
(5.) ago, <i>I do</i> ;	egi,	actum. ⁴
frango, <i>I break</i> ;	fregi,	fractum.
tango, <i>I touch</i> ;	tetigi,	tactum.
pango, <i>I covenant</i> ;	pepigi,	pactum :
(sed Composita) but its Compounds make - <i>pegi</i> , - <i>pactum</i> .		
pungo, <i>I prick</i> ;	pupugi,	punctum. ⁵
junco, <i>I join</i> ;	junxi,	junctum.
(6.) Lego, <i>I read or gather</i> ;	lēgi,	lectum :
(compositum) when compounded (<i>sæpè lexi dat</i>) it often forms <i>lexi</i> . ⁶		

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
(7.) Figo, <i>I fix</i> ;	fixi,	fixum.
tingo, <i>I frame</i> ;	finxi,	fictum.
pingo, <i>I paint</i> ;	pinxi,	pictum.
stringo, <i>I tie</i> ;	strinxi,	strictum.

(c.)

Do.

(*Do jubet*) *Do* requires (*si suffici*) *si* to be joined (Perfecto) to its Preterperfect, (*sum* Supino) and *sum* to its Supine :

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
lædo, <i>I hurt</i> ;	læsi,	læsum.
(Verum) But,		
cedo, <i>I yield</i> ;	cessi,	cessum

Present.
illido, *I beat on* ;
divido, *I divide* ;

Preterp.
illisi,
divisi,

Supine.
illisum.
divisum.

(EXCEPTA) EXCEPTIONS.

(1.) (Flecte) Form (vertendo) by changing (*do* in *di*) *do* into *di* (quæ exeunt) those which end (in *ando*, *endo*) in in *ando*, *endo*⁷ :

Present.
pendo, *I pay* ;
tendo, *I stretch* ;

Preterp.
pependi,
tetendi,

Supine.
pensum.
tensum.

(tamen) but,

findo, *I cleave* ;
scindo, *I cut* ;
fundo, *I pour* ;
tundo, *I hammer* ;
cudo, *I fashion* ;
cado, *I fall* ;
cædo, *I beat or kill* ;
ædo, *I eat* ;

fidi,
scildi,
fûdi,
tutûdi,
cudi,
ceclidi,
cecedi,
edi,

fissum.
scissum.
fûsum.
tusum.⁸
cusum.
casum.
cæsum.
æsum.

(2.) Abdo, *I hide* ; addo, *I add* ; condo, *I store up* ; credo, *I trust* ; obdo, *I block up* ; perdo, *I lose* ; reddo, *I restore* ; edo, *I utter* ; prodo, *I betray* ; trado, *I deliver* ; vendo, *I sell* ; dedo, *I give up* ; (quæ) which (composita sunt a do) are compounded of do, *I give* ; (-*didi*, -*ditum*, efferunt) form -*didi*, -*ditum* : (ut) as,

Present.
edo,
dedo,

Preterp.
edidi,
dedidi,

Supine.
editum.
deditum.

(d.)

To.

Present.
Flecto, *I bend* ;
necto, *I twine* ;
pecto, *I comb* ;
peto, *I seek* ;
meto, *I mow* ;
mitto, *I send* ;
verto, *I turn* ;

Preterp.
flexi,
nexi,
pexi⁹,
petivi,
messui,
misi,
verti,

Supine.
flexum.
nexum.
pexum.
petitum.
messum.
misum.
versum.¹⁰

(Verbum) A verb (quod fit a sisto) which is formed from sisto (sufficit) joins (Perfecto) to its Preterperfect -*stîti* : as,

Present.
desisto, *I leave off* ;

Preterp.
destiti,

Supine. .

§ 91. (e.)

So.

So, *sivi*, *situm* : (sic formatur) is thus formed :

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
arcesso, <i>I send for</i> ;	arcessivi,	arcessitum.
lacecco, <i>I provoke</i> ;	lacecivi,	laceccitum.
viso, <i>I visit</i> ;	visi,	—
pinso, <i>I pound</i> ;	pinsui,	pistum. ¹¹

§ 92. (*f.*)*Xo.*

Texo, *I weave*, (stat) stands (unum in *xo*) the only verb in *xo*, (quod conjugat) which forms texui, textum.

§ 93. (*g.*)*Lo*

Lo, lui, tum.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Consulo, <i>I consult</i> ;	consului,	consultum.
colo, <i>I cultivate</i> ;	colui,	cultum.
But,		
molo, <i>I grind</i> ;	molui,	molitum.

(A cello verba cellui) Verbs compounded from cello, *I impel*, make cellui : (sed) but,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
percello, <i>I strike</i> ;	perculi,	perculsum.
pello, <i>I drive</i> ;	pepŭli,	pulsum.
vello, <i>I pluck</i> ;	velli and vulsi,	vulsum.
fallo, <i>I deceive</i> ;	fefelli,	falsum.
psallo, <i>I sing or play</i> ;	psalli,	—
sallo, <i>I salt</i> ;	—	salsum.

Tollo, *I raise*, (formatum) formed in the Preterperfect sustuli, (fit) becomes (in Supino) in the Supine, sublatum.

(*h.*)*Mo.*

Mo, mui, mitum : (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
fremo, <i>I bellow</i> ;	fremui,	fremitum.
gemo, <i>I groan</i> ;	gemui,	gemitum.
tremo, <i>I tremble</i> ;	tremui,	—

(EXCEPTA) EXCEPTIONS.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
como, <i>I deck</i> ;	comsi,	cœntum.
promo, <i>I produce</i> ;	promsi,	promtum.
(Sic flectuntur) So are formed,		
sumo, <i>I take</i> ;	sumsi,	sumtum.
demo, <i>I take away</i> ;	demsī,	demtum.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
(Sed) But,		
emo, <i>I buy</i> ;	ēmi,	emtum.
premo, <i>I press</i> ;	pressi,	pressum.

(Latini) Latin writers (sæpè ponunt *p*) often interpose *p* (inter *m* et *s* vel *t*) between *m* and *s* or *t*. (Sic fiunt) Thus are formed sumpsi, dempsi, demptum, comptum, promptum, sumptum, emptum, &c.

(i.)

No.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
(1.) Cano, <i>I sing</i> ;	cecini,	cantum :
(composita) its compounds	make -cinsi, -centum.	
pono, <i>I place</i> ;	posui, ¹²	positum.
gigno, <i>I beget</i> ;	genui,	genitum.
temno, <i>I despise</i> ;	temsi, or tempai,	temtum, or temptum.
sterno, <i>I strew</i> ;	stravi,	stratum.
sperno, <i>I despise</i> ;	sprevi,	spretum.
cerno, <i>I discern</i> ;	crevi,	cretum.
lino, <i>I amoint</i> ;	lèvi,	lītum.
sino, <i>I allow</i> ;	sivi, ¹³	sītum.

(j.)

Ro.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Verro, <i>I brush</i> ;	verri,	versum.
curro, <i>I run</i> ;	cucurri,	cursum.
quæro, <i>I seek</i> ;	quæsivi,	quæsitum.
tero, <i>I rub</i> ;	trivi,	tritum.
uro, <i>I burn</i> ;	ussi,	ustum.
gero, <i>I carry on</i> ;	gesai,	gestum.
fero, <i>I bear</i> ;	tuli,	latum.
sero, <i>I sow or plant</i> ;	sevi,	sātum.
Sero, serui, sertum, (si stat) if it stands (cum vi nectendi) with the meaning of joining.		

§ 94. (k.)

Io.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Facio, <i>I make</i> ;	feci,	factum.
jacio, <i>I cast</i> ;	jeci,	jactum.
Compounds of lacio, <i>I tice</i> ; }	lexi,	lectum. ¹⁴
Compounds of specio, <i>I spy</i> ; }	spexi,	spectum.
fodio, <i>I dig</i> ;	fōdi,	fossam.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
fugio, <i>I fly</i> ;	fūgi,	fūgitum.
capio, <i>I take</i> ;	cēpi,	captum.
rapio, <i>I snatch</i> ;	rapui,	raptum.
pario, <i>I bring forth</i> ;	peperi,	partum. ¹⁵
cupio, <i>I desire</i> ;	cupivi,	cupitum.
quatio, <i>I shake</i> ;	—	quassum.
(Sed) But (in Compositis) in the Compounds (dat) it forms -cussum.		

§ 95. (L.)

Uo and vo.

(Uo format) Uo forms *ui*, *utum* : (ut) as,

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
tribuo, <i>I afford</i> ;	tribui,	tributum. ¹⁶

(Vo inflectit) Vo forms *vi* and *utum* : (ut) as,

solvo, <i>I loose or pay</i> ;	solvi,	solutum.
volvo, <i>I roll</i> ;	volvi,	volutum.

(EXCEPTA) EXCEPTIONS.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Fluo, <i>I flow</i> ;	fluxi,	fluxum.
struo, <i>I build</i> ;	struxi,	structum.
vivo, <i>I live</i> ;	vixi,	victum.
stinguo, <i>I quench</i> ;	stinxi,	stinctum. ¹⁷

[¹ Also, *cumbo, I lie down* ; *cubui, cubitum* ; and its Compounds.
lambo, I lick ; *lambi, —*

² The Compounds *agnosco, cognosco, recognosco*, take the Supines *agnitum, cognitum, recognitum*.

³ The Compound, *comparco*, has *comparsi*.

⁴ Among the Compounds of *Ago* (which take *egi, actum*) remark :
cogo, I collect or compel ; *coegi, coactum*.
dego, I live ; *degi, —*

⁵ The Compounds of *Pungo* make *punxi* in the Preterperfect.

⁶ The Compounds of *Lego, I gather*, take *lexi* ; *diligo, dilexi* ; *intelligo, intellexi* ; *negligo, neglexi*. The others, as also the Compounds of *Lego, I read*, keep *lēgi* ; as, *perlego, perlēgi, perlectum*.

⁷ As *defendo, I defend*, *defendi, defensum* : *expando, I expand, expandi, expansum*.

⁸ More usually *tunsum*.

⁹ Also *nexui, pexui*.

¹⁰ Add *sterto, I snore, stertui* and *sterti*.

¹¹ Also *pinsum*.

¹² *Posivi* is an old Preterperfect (from *po-sino*) used by *Catullus*.

¹³ The Compound *desino, I cease*, has *desivi* and *desii*.

¹⁴ As *allicio, illicio, pellicio* ; but *elicio, elicui, elicium*.

¹⁵ *Pario, Fut. Part. pariturus*.

¹⁶ *Ruo, I rush, Fut. Part. ruiturus*.

¹⁷ *Stinguo* is only known in its compounds *extinguo, distinguo*.]

§ 96. IV. (VERBORUM QUARTA CONJUGATIO) THE FOURTH CONJUGATION OF VERBS,

(cui terminatio) the termination of which is *io, is, ire*, (fit) becomes (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect Tense *ivi*, (Supino *itum* sufficit) and joins *itum* to its Supine.

(EXCEPTA) EXCEPTIONS.

Present.	Preterp.	Supine.
Sancio, <i>I ratify</i> ; (nec respuit) nor does it reject	sanxi, sancivi, sancitum. ¹	sanctum :
vincio, <i>I bind</i> ;	vinxi,	vinctum.
fulcio, <i>I prop</i> ;	fulsi,	fulctum.
sarcio, <i>I darn</i> ;	sarsi,	sartum.
farcio, <i>I stuff</i> ;	farsi,	fartum :
amicio, <i>I clothe</i> ;	amicui,	amictum :
salio, <i>I dance</i> ;	salui or salii, ²	saltum :
(composita) its compounds form - <i>silui, -sili, -sultum</i> .		
singultio, <i>I sob</i> ;	singultivi,	singultum.
sepelio, <i>I bury</i> ;	sepelivi,	sepultum.
venio, <i>I come</i> ;	vēni,	ventum.
vēneo, <i>I am sold</i> ;	vēnii,	— 3
sepio, <i>I fence in</i> ;	sepsi,	septum.
aperio, <i>I open</i> ;	aperui,	apertum. ⁴
comperio, <i>I find out</i> ;	comperi,	compertum.
reperio, <i>I find</i> ;	reperi, ⁵	repertum.
haurio, <i>I drain</i> ;	hausi,	haustum. ⁶
sentio, <i>I perceive</i> ;	sensi,	sensum.

[¹ Sanxi is more usual than sancivi ; but sancitum more usual than sanctum.

² Also salivi, and sometimes in the Compounds -silivi.

³ Veneo is compounded of vēnum eo, as vendo of vēnum do.

⁴ Operio, *I cover* ; operui, opertum.

⁵ Often written repperi.

⁶ Sometimes hausum.]

§ 97. (DE VERBORUM DEPONENTIUM PERFECTIS ET SUPINIS) ON THE PRETERPERFECTS AND SUPINES OF DEPONENT VERBS.

(Flexeris) You must form (Deponentia) Deponent Verbs (ex regulis) according to the rules (Activorum) of Active Verbs : (nam) for (Præteritum Passivum) the Preterperfect

Passive (est) is (Derivatum) a Derivative (Supini) of the Supine.¹

(EXCEPTA) EXCEPTIONS.

(SECUNDÆ CONJUGATIONIS) OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Present.	Preterp.
Reor, <i>I think</i> ;	ratus sum.
misereor, <i>I pity</i> ;	misertus sum.
fateor, <i>I confess</i> ;	fassus sum :
(flecte sis) form <i>-fessus</i> (in Compositis) in the Compounds.	

(TERTIÆ CONJUGATIONIS) OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Present.	Preterp.
Labor, <i>I glide or fall</i> ;	lapsus sum.
utor, <i>I use</i> ;	usus sum.
loquor, <i>I speak</i> ;	locutus sum.
sequor, <i>I follow</i> ;	secutus sum.
nitor, <i>I strive</i> ,	nisus, or nixus, sum.
irascor, <i>I am angry</i> ;	iratus sum.
queror, <i>I complain</i> ;	questus sum.
gradior, <i>I step</i> ;	gressus sum.
pator, <i>I suffer</i> ;	passus sum :
(et) and <i>-pessus</i> (in Compositis) in its Compounds.	
ulciscor, <i>I avenge</i> ;	ultus sum.
apiscor, <i>I acquire</i> ;	aptus sum.
adipiscor, <i>I acquire</i> ;	adeptus sum.
proficiscor, <i>I go</i> ;	profectus sum.
expergiscor, <i>I awake</i> ;	experrectus sum.
obliscor, <i>I forget</i> ;	oblitus sum.
comminiscor, <i>I imagine</i> ;	commentus sum.
nanciscor, <i>I find</i> ;	nactus sum.
paciscor, <i>I covenant</i> ;	pactus sum.
mori-or, <i>I die</i> ;	mortuus sum. ⁴
nascor, <i>I am born</i> ;	natus sum.
orior, <i>I arise</i> ;	ortus sum. ⁵

(Queis Futura) The Future Participles of which last three Verbs are moriturus, nasciturus, oriturus.

(QUARTÆ CONJUGATIONIS) OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Present.	Preterp.
Metior, <i>I measure</i> ;	mensus sum.
ordior, <i>I begin</i> ;	orsus sum.
exporior, <i>I try</i> ;	expertus sum.
opperior, <i>I wait for</i> ;	oppertus sum.

[¹ See § 43. IV. 3. This will appear from the following examples of each Conjugation : —

Present.	Supine.	Preterp.
1. Miror, <i>I wonder</i>	miratum, (§ 87.)	miratus sum.
2. Vereor, <i>I fear</i> ;	veritum, (§ 88.)	veritus sum.

- | Present. | Supine. | Preterp. |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| 3. Fungor, <i>I discharge</i> ; | functum, (§ 90. b.) | functus sum. |
| 4. Largior, <i>I bestow</i> ; | largitum, (§ 96.) | largitus sum. |
- ² Also miseritus sum.
³ Commiscescor, and reminiscor (which has no Supine), are Compounds of an obsolete verb *meniscor*.
⁴ Morior; Infin. *mori*, and sometimes *moriri*.
⁵ Orior is partly declined after the 3d Conjugation, partly after the 4th. Pres. Orior, oreris, oritur, orimur, &c. But Infin. Oriri; Imperf. Conj. Orirer. Adorior follows the 4th Conj.
 So Potior, *I enjoy*. Pres. Potior, potiris and poteris, potitur and potitur, &c. Imperf. Subj. Potirer and potèrer, potireris and potèreris, &c. Preterp. Potitus sum. Infin. Potiri.]

§ 98. (DE VERBORUM INCEPTIVORUM PERFECTIS ET SUPINIS) ON THE PRETERPERFECTS AND SUPINES OF INCEPTIVE VERBS.

(1.) (Flexeris) You must conjugate (Inceptiva) Inceptive Verbs (ducta a Verbis) derived from Verbs (ut Primitiva) as their Primitives.

Present.	Preterp.
exardesco, <i>I begin to blaze</i> ;	exarsi (from ex, ardeo).
obsolesco, <i>I grow out of date</i> ;	obsolevi (from obs, oleo).
tremisco, <i>I begin to tremble</i> ;	tremui (from tremo).
scisco, <i>I begin to know</i> ;	scivi (from scio).

(2.) (*Ui terminus*) *Ui* is the termination (Perfecto) to the Preterperfect (factorum) of those formed (ex Nominibus) from Nouns.

Present.	Preterp.
evanesco, <i>I vanish</i> ;	evanui (from e, vanus).
consanesco, <i>I get well</i> ;	consanui (from cum, sanus).

(Plurima) Very many (carent Supinis) have no Supines; (paucis) in a few (Perfecta) Preterperfects (non apparent) do not appear.

- [¹ The following are the only Inceptive Verbs which have Supines: — Abolesco, adolesco, obsolesco, exolesco, coalesco, congelasco, exardesco, concupisco, convalesco, indolesco, obdormisco, inveterasco, scisco, revivisco.

The following have neither Supine nor Preterperfect: —

Ægresco, arboresco, albesco, ditiesco, dulcesco, grandesco, hebesco, herbesco, ignesco, incurvesco, juvenesco, mitesco, mollesco, pinguesco, plumesco, puerasco, silvesco, sterileco, tenerasco, fatisco, augesco, hisco, labasco, renidesco.

Most of the others have Preterperfects, but no Supines.]

§ 99. (DE VERBORUM IMPERSONALIU PERFECTIS)
ON THE PRÆTERPERFECTS OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

(Flexeris) you must form (Impersonalia) Impersonal Verbs (ex regulis) according to the rules (Personalium) of Personals.

Present.	Præterp.
pudet, <i>it shames</i> ;	puduit. ¹
pœnitet, <i>it repents</i> ;	pœnituit.
But,	
miseret, <i>it affects with pity</i> ;	miseritum est. ²
libet ³ , <i>it pleases</i> ;	libuit and libitum est.
tædet, <i>it wearies</i> ;	pertæsum est and tæduit.
piget, <i>it irks</i> ;	pigitum est and piguit. ⁴

[¹ Or puditum est.

² Or miseritum est.

³ Also written lubet. Its compound is collibet, collibuit and collibitum est.

⁴ Add also licet, *it is lawful*, licuit and licitum est.

Obs. 1. — Pudet and Licet have the Active Future Participles, puditurus, liciturus. Pudet, Piget, Pœnitet, have Gerunds and Passive Future Participles, pudendi, &c., pigendi, &c., pœnitendi, &c.

Obs. 2. — Many Verbs have the 3d Person Singular used impersonally: as, delectat and juvat, *it delights* ; constat, *it is acknowledged* ; præstat, *it is better* ; restat, *it remains* ; apparet, *it appears* ; accidit, *contingit, it happens* ; sufficit, *it is enough* ; evenit, *it comes to pass* ; expedit, *it is expedient* ; tonat, *it thunders* ; pluit, *it rains* ; and numerous others.]

§ 100. (DE DEFECTU PERFECTORUM ET SUPINORUM)
CONCERNING THE WANT OF PRÆTERPERFECTS
AND SUPINES.

(In operibus Latinis) In Latin works (apparent) appear (lectitantibus) to readers (multa Verba) many Verbs (quæ carent Supinis) which have no Supines, (multa quæ Perfecto) and many which have no Præterperfect.¹

[¹ The Verbs which have no Supines are : —

The Compounds of nuo and gruo (as abnuo, ingruo) ; the Compounds of cado (except occido) ; Neuter Verbs in -veo ; Neuter Verbs in -eo, -us (except caleo, careo, doleo, jaceo, lateo, mereo, noceo, oleo, pareo, placeo, taceo, valeo) ; also, algeo, timeo, urgeo, lugeo, fulgeo, frigeo, turgeo, luceo, strideo, angio, clango, disco, posco, compesco, degeo, lambio, misceo, refello, metuo, psallo, respicio, tremo, sapio, gestio, ineptio, and some others.

The Verbs which have neither Preterperfect nor Supines, besides the Inceptives, are : —

Desiderativa in *-urio* (except *parturio*, *esurio*) ; also, *ægreo*, *flaveo*, *scateo*, *liveo*, *renideo*, *polleo*, *vegeo*, *humeo*, *aveo*, *lacteo*, *moreo*, *ambigo*, *furio*, *ferio*, *labo*, *vergo*, *plecto*, *vado*, *reminiscor*, *diffiteor*, *ringor*, *medeor*, *vescor*, *liquor*, *liquet*, and some others.]

§ 101. IV. (DE VERBORUM COMPOSITORUM MUTATIONIBUS) ON THE CHANGES OF COMPOUND VERBS.

(1.) (Converteris) You must change (*a* in *e*) *a* into *e* (horum in Compositis) in the Compounds of the following Verbs : *arceo*, *I exclude* ; *carpo*, *I crop* ; *damno*, *I condemn* ; *lacto*, *I entice* ; *fatiscor*, *I am weary* ; *fallo*, *I deceive* ; *farcio*, *I stuff* ; *jacto*, *I toss* or *boast* ; *gradior*, *I step* ; *patior*, *I suffer* ; *partior*, *I divide* ; *tracto*, *I treat* ; *pario*, *I bring forth* ; *patro*, *I perform* ; (atque) and *cando*, *I inflame* ; *sacro*, *I devote* ; *spargo*, *I sprinkle* ; (atque) and *scando*, *I climb*.¹

(2.) (Converteris) You must change (*a* in *i*) *a* into *i* (horum in Compositis) in the compounds of the following Verbs : *ago*, *I act* ; *cado*, *I fall* ; *cano*, *I sing* ; *frango*, *I break* ; *habeo*, *I have* ; *lateo*, *I lie hid* ; *fateor*, *I confess* ; *pango*, *I fasten* ; *salio*, *I dance* or *leap* ; *statuo*, *I decree* ; (atque) and *tango*, *I touch* ; *capio*, *I take* ; *rapio*, *I snatch* ; *sapio*, *I am wise* ; *facio*, *I do* ; *jacio*, *I cast* ; *lacio*, *I entice* ; *placeo*, *I please* ; *taceo*, *I am silent*.²

(Excepta) The following are excepted : *perago*, *I perform* ; *perplaceo*, *I please thoroughly* ; (et) and *facio*, *I do* ; (*mistum cum Adverbiis*) compounded with Adverbs.

(3.) (Convertito) Change (*a* in *u*) *a* into *u* (ex) in Verbs compounded of *calco*, *I tread* ; *salto*, *I dance* ; *quatio*, *I shake*.³

(4.) (Converteris) You must change (*e* in *i*) *e* into *i* (horum in Compositis) in the Compounds of the following Verbs : *ægeo*, *I want* ; *teneo*, *I hold* ; (atque) and *emo*, *I buy* ; *specio*, *I spy* ; *sedeo*, *I sit* ; (atque) and *premo*, *I press* ; (adde) add *dedi*, *I gave* ; (atque) and *lego*, *I read* or *gather* : (adde) add *steti*, *I stood* ; (atque) and *rego*, *I rule*.⁴

(Sunt excepta) The following are excepted : *relego*, *I*

read again ; per ego, *I read through* ; (et) and prælego, *I read publicly*.

(Nota) Note. (Si) If (mutato Simplici) the Simple Verb being changed (Composti Præsens) the Present Tense of the Compound Verb (sumsit *i*) has taken *i*, (sumet *ē*) it will take *ē* (in Perfecto) in the Preterperfect, (si) if (valet) it is able (fingere) to make the vowel (longam) long : (sic) thus,

Present.	Preterp.
deficio, <i>I fail</i> ;	defēci.
projicio, <i>I throw</i> ;	projēci.
conspicio, <i>I behold</i> ;	conspēxi.
dirigo, <i>I direct</i> ;	dirēxi.
pergo (per-rego), <i>I proceed</i> ;	perrēxi.
surgo (sus-rego), <i>I rise</i> ;	surrēxi.
porrigo (pro-rego), <i>I stretch</i> ;	porrēxi. ⁵

(5.) (Composta) The Compounds (a) from quæro, *I seek* ; cædo, *I beat or kill* ; (et) and (a) from lædo, *I hurt* ; (mutant) change (*æ* in *i*) *æ* into *i*.⁶

(6.) Plaudo, *I applaud*, (convertit) changes (*au* in *o*) *au* into *o* : claudo, *I shut*, (commutat) changes (*au* in *u*) *au* into *u* : obedio, *I obey*, (solummodo) only (ex audio) compounded from audio, *I hear*, (dat *au* in *e*) changes *au* into *e*.⁷

(7.) (Reduplicatio) The Reduplication (Simplicis) of the Simple Verb (exibit) will disappear (in Compositis) in the Compounds : (sic) thus (a) from pello, *I drive away*, pepuli, (fit) comes impello, *I impel*, impuli.

(Sed) But (Composta) the Compounds (a) from disco, *I learn* ; posco, *I require* ; do, *I give* ; (et) and (a) from sto, *I stand* ; (servant) keep the Reduplication.⁸

[¹ Arceo : comp. coerceo, exerceo.

Carpo . . . decerpo, excerpto, discerpo.

Damno . . . condemno.

Lacto . . . delecto, oblecto.

Fatiscor . . . defetiscor.

Fallo . . . refello.

Farcio . . . confercio, differcio, infercio, refercio.

Jacto . . . disjecto, objecto, &c.

Gradior . . . aggredior, congregior, egredior, ingredior, praegredior, progredior, transgredior, digredior.

Patior . . . perpetior.

Partior . . . dispertior, impertior.

Tracto . . . attrecto, contracto, detracto, obtrecto.

Pario . . . comperio, reperio.

Patro . . . impetro, perpetro.

Cando . . . accendo, incendo, succendo.

- Sacro : comp. consecro, desecro, exsecro, obsecro.
 Spargo . . . adspargo, conspergo, dispergo, inspergo, respergo.
 Scando . . . adscendo, conscendo, descendo, transcendo.
- ² Ago : comp. abigo, adigo, exigo, transigo, ambigo. But circumago, perago, satago.
- Cado . . . accido, concido, decido, excido, incido, occido, procido.
 Cano . . . accino, concino, occino, præcino, recino, succino.
 Frango . . . confringo, diffingo, effingo, infringo, perfringo, præfringo, refringo.
 Habeo . . . adhibeo, exhibeo, inhibeo, perhibeo, prohibeo. But posthabeo, *I hold inferior*.
 Lateo . . . deliteo.
 Fateor . . . confiteor, profiteor, diffiteor.
 Pango . . . compingo, oppingo. But repango.
 Salio . . . adsilio. So circumsilio, desilio, dissilio, exsilio, insilio, præsilio, prosilio, resilio, subsilio, transilio.
- Statuo . . . constituo, destituo, instituo, restituo, substituo.
 Tango . . . attingo, contingo, pertingo.
- ³ Capio . . . accipio, concipio, decipio, excipio, incipio, percipio, præcipio, recipio, suscipio.
 Rapio . . . abripio arripio, corripio, deripio, diripio, eripio, præripio, proripio, surripio.
 Sapio . . . desipio, insipio, resipisco
 Facio . . . afficio, conficio, deficio, efficio, inficio, perficio, præficio, proficio, reficio, sufficio. But benefacio, maleficio.
- Jacio . . . abjicio, adjicio, conjicio, disjicio, ejicio, injicio, objicio, projicio, rejicio, subjicio, transjicio.
 Lacio . . . allicio, elicio, illicio, pellicio.
 Placeo . . . displiceo. But perplaceo.
 Taceo . . . conticeo, reticeo.
- ⁵ Calco : comp. conculco, inculco, proculco.
 Salto . . . adsulto, exsulto, insulto, resulto.
 Quatio . . . decutio, discutio, excutio, inectio, percutio, recutio, succutio.
- ⁴ Egeo : comp. indigeo.
 Teneo . . . attineo, contineo, detineo, distineo, obtineo, pertineo, retineo, sustineo.
 Emo . . . adimo, dirimo, eximo, interimo, perimo, redimo. But coemo, dêmo (for de-imo).
 Specio . . . adspicio, concipio, despicio, dispicio, inspicio, perspicio, prospicio, respicio, suspicio.
 Sedeo . . . assideo, consideo, desideo, dissideo, insideo, obsideo, præsideo, resideo.
 Premo . . . comprimo, deprimio, exprimo, imprimo, opprimo, perprimio, reprimio, supprimo.
- Lego, *I gather* } . colligo, deligo, diligo, eligo, intelligo, negligo, seligo. The Compounds of Lego, *I read, keep &c.*
 Rego . . . corrigo, dirigo, erigo, &c.

⁵ On the contrary, when the Stem-vowel remains short in the Preter-perfect, *i* is kept; as, *decīdi*, *concinui*, *adhibui*, *delitui*, *constitui*.

⁶ Quæro : comp. acquiro, conquiro, disquiro, exquiro, inquiro, perquiro.

Cædo . . . accido, concido, decido, excido, incido, occido,
præcido, recido, succido.

Lædo . . . allido, collido, elido, illido.

(The *i* of these Compounds remains in the Preterperfect ; as, *acquisīvi, occīdi, elīsi.*)

⁷ **Plaudo** : comp. complodo, explodo, supplodo. But applaudo.

Claudo . . . concludo, discludo, excludo, includo, intercludo,
occludo, præcludo, recludo.

⁸ **Disco:** comp. addisco, condisco, dedisco, edisco; Preterp. -didici.

Posco . . . depono, expono, repono ; Preterp. -poposci.

Sto . . . adsto, consto, exsto, insto, praesto ; Preterp. -stīti :
circumsto, supersto ; Preterp. -steti.]

§ 102. (DE PRÆPOSITIONIBUS COMPOSITIS) ON
COMPOUND PREPOSITIONS.

(1.) (Præpositio *cum*) The Preposition *cum* (fit *con-*) becomes *con-* (quando stat compositum) when it appears in Composition.

(2.)¹ *Ambi, re, se, sus*, (et) and *dis* (stant tantum) appear only (in Compositis) in Compounds.

(3.) (Præpositio) A Preposition (sæpe mutat) often changes (terminantem consonantem) its final consonant (sic) in such a way (ut fiat) that it may become (similis) assimilated (consonanti Simplicis) to the first consonant of the Simple Verb : (ut) as,

ad-fero (fit) becomes affero.

in-lino . . . illino.

obpeto . . . oppeto.

(4.) (Convertite) Change (n in m) n into m (ante b vel ante p) before b or p : (ut) as,

con-bibo (fit) becomes combibo.

in-plico . . . **implico.**

(5.)² (*Alia aliæ transferunt*) Other Prepositions make other changes (*quæ*) which (*longa sunt relatu*) are long to recount. (Do) I give (*hoc unum*) this single thing (*notandum*) to be remarked :

ab-fero (fit) becomes aufero.

ab-fugio . . . **aufugio**.

[¹ *Ambi, around, about; re, again, back; se, apart; dis, in different parts or ways.* Some grammarians think *sus* to be put for *subs*, *under*: others form it from *susum*, for *sursum*, *up*; which is more suitable to the sense of the words in which it is found, though the Participle *sublatus*, from *sustuli*, affords an argument for the first opinion.

² The following are the changes of Prepositions in Composition: —

(1.) *A, ab, abs, from.* *A*, before *m* and *v*; *as*, *amitto*, *averto*. *Abs*, before *c* and *t*; *as*, *abscedo*, *absterreo*. *Ab*, before all other letters. But *note*, *aufero*, *aufugio*, *aspello*, *asporto*, *aspernor*.

(2.) *Ad, to.* Unchanged before vowels, and before *h, j, m, v*; *as*, *adeo*, *adhibeo*, *adjungo*, *admiror*, *advoco*. Becomes *ac* before *qu*; *as*, *acquirō*. Assimilated before the other consonants; *as*, *accedo*, *attero*: but may remain unchanged before most of them; *as*, *adfero* or *affero*, *adsumo* or *assumo*.

(3.) *Con, for cum, with.* Becomes *com-* before *b, m, p*; *as*, *combibo*, *commoveo*, *compono*. Assimilated before *l, n, r*; *as*, *colludo*, *conniveo*, *corrumpo*. Becomes *cō* before vowels and *h*; *as*, *coalesco*, *cohæreo*; except *comedo*. *N* is thrown out before *g*; *as*, *cognosco*. Unchanged before the other consonants; *as*, *concutio*, *convoco*.

(4.) *E, ex, out of.* *Ex*, before vowels, and before *c, p, q, s, t*; *as*, *exeo*, *excludo*, *expungo*, *exquiro*, *exsculpo*, *extraho*. Assimilated before *f*; *as*, *effundo*. *E* before the other consonants; *as*, *educo*, *eniteo*.

(5.) *In, in, into, towards, against.* Becomes *im* before *b, m, p*; *as*, *imbibo*, *immitto*, *impello*. Assimilated before *l* and *r*; *as*, *illudo*, *irruo*. *N* is thrown out before *g*; *as*, *ignosco*, *ignarus*. Unchanged before other letters; *as*, *ineo*, *incumbo*.

(6.) *Ob, over-against, on account of.* Assimilated before *c, f, g, p*; *as*, *occurro*, *offero*, *ogganō*, *oppono*: unchanged before other letters. But *note*, *obsolesco*, *ostendo*.

(7.) *Sub, under.* Assimilated before *c, f, g, m, p, r*; *as*, *succumbo*, *sufficio*, *suggero*, *summoveo*, *suppono*, *surripio*: but sometimes remains unchanged before these letters; *as*, *subrideo*, *subruo*. Unchanged before other vowels and the other consonants; *as*, *subeo*, *subtraho*. See Note 1.

(8.) *Trans, across, beyond.* Becomes *trā* in a few Verbs; *as*, *trado*, *trano*. *Tran* before *s*; *as*, *tran-scribo*. Unchanged before other letters.

(9.) *Ambi, around, about.* Becomes *amb* before vowels; *as*, *ambio*. *Am* before *p*; *as*, *amplector*. *An* before *c, q, f*; *as*, *anquiro*, *anfractus*.

(10.) *Dis, di, in different parts or ways.* *Dis* before *c, p, q, s, t*; *as*, *discumbo*, *displiceo*, *disquiro*, *disseco*, *distrabo*. Assimilated before *f*; *as*, *differo*. Before *j* sometimes *dis*; *as*, *disjicio*: sometimes *di*; *as*, *dijudico*. Before other consonants, *di*; *as*, *dimoveo*. But *dirumpo* and *dirumpo*.

(11.) *Re, again, back.* Unchanged before consonants; *as*, *requiro*. Becomes *red* before vowels; *as*, *redarguo*. Buttman considers *red* the original form of this Preposition; whence *reddo* for *re-do*; *re-ēdit* for *red-ēdit*; *rettuli*, *reppuli*. *repperi*, for *red-tuli*, *red-puli*, *red-peri*.

(12.) *Ante, before; circum, around; de, from, concerning; inter, among, between; per, through; prae, before; pro, for, instead of; post, after; præter, beside; subter, beneath; super, above; se, apart; sus, up,* are unchanged in Composition. Except the following instances; *anticipo*, *circuit*, *intelligo*, *pellicio*, *pelluceo*, *pejero*. Note, *prodeo* and *pro-digo* for *pro-eo* and *pro-ago*.]

EXCURSION D. ON DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

§ a. ON DERIVATION.

THE difference between a Root and a Stem has been noticed in former Excursions, and also the changes made in short Roots (by far the most numerous class) by Vowel-change, Lengthening of Vowel, Insertion of Consonants, sometimes by Reduplication. We have now to consider the Derivation of Words from Roots and Stems.

I. A word may be formed by a mere Flexional Ending appended to an unaltered Root; in which case the Root and Stem coincide; as,

reg-s=rex	} from Root <i>reg</i> .
reg-o	

II. A word may be formed by a mere Flexional Ending appended to an altered Root: in which case the Root and Stem differ; as, *tog-a*, from Root *teg*; *jung-o*, from Root *jug*.

III. Most Derivatives are formed by appending to the Root a derivative Suffix, which may be of one or more letters or syllables: and is generally, but not always, followed by a Flexional Ending; as,

tim-or	} Root, <i>tim</i> . Suffixes, -or, -e, -id, -iditat. Flexional Endings, -o, -us, -s.
tim-e-o	
tim-id-us	
tim-iditat-s=timiditas	
cru-or	} Root, <i>cru</i> Suffixes, -or, -id, -ideli, -idelitat. Flexional Endings, -us, -s.
cru-id-us=crūdus	
cru-ideli-s=crūdelis	
cru-idelitat-s=crūdelitas	

Obs.— Properly speaking, all words of the 1st and 2d Classes are *Primitiva*, Primitives; there being no more propriety in deriving *rego* from *rego*, *dux* from *duco*, *jugum* from *jungo*, &c., than in deriving *rego* from *rex*, &c. For convenience, however, it is usual to take some one (the simplest) of the cognate words without Suffixes, as the Primitive Form, and to rank the rest under it as *Derivativa*, Derivatives. The manner in which Derivatives grow out of each other is seen in the example of *cru-or*, *cru-dus*, *crudelis*, *crudelitas*, each of which is a Derivative from the form preceding it: so *jac-io*, *jac-t-o*, *jac-t-it-o*, *jac-t-it-ati-o*. Where *crudelitas*, *jactitatio*, are immediately derived from *crudelis*, *jactito*; though *ultimately* from the Roots *cru-*, *jac-*,

A. VERBS.

The number of Primitive Verbs is not large, and of these the greater number belong to the 3d Conjugation. Derived Verbs are either *Denominativa*, formed from Nouns, or *Verbalia*, formed from Verbs.

(a.) A large number of Verbs in the 1st, 2d, and 4th Conjugations are Denominativa, derived from Substantives or Adjectives; as, *coloro* from *color*, *floreo* from *flos*, *superbio* from *superbus*, *largior* from *largus*, &c. Most Denominatives of the 1st Conjugation are Transitive, of the 2d Neuter.

(b.) Concerning Verbs derived from Verbs, see § 60.

B. SUBSTANTIVES.

(Note. — We shall here only mention the words from which each Derivative is immediately formed. See *Obs.*)

(a.) VERBALIA (some Denominatives).

I. Personalia.

(1.) With the Suffix *o*, denoting a person who has, or does, or is engaged in, that which the Stem expresses. They are Verbal and Denominative; as, *nas-o*, a long-nosed person (*nas-us*); *err-o*, a vagabond (*err-are*); *ale-o*, a dicer (*ale-a*).

Obs. — *Lud-io*, a player (*lud-us*), has the Suffix *io*.

(2.) Nouns derived from the Supine-stem of Verbs, with the Suffix *-or*, denote the Man who performs the action expressed by the Verb; as, *amat-or*, *lect-or*, *adju-tor*, *curs-or*, *doct-or*, *audit-or*, *faut-or*, *mess-or*, *monit-or*, *vict-or*, *condit-or*, *cens-or*.

Obs. 1. — Many of these have feminine forms in *-trix*; as, *vict-rix*, *adju-trix*, *faut-rix*, and *expul-trix* from *expulsor*.

Obs. 2. — Some in *-tor* are Denominativa; as, *alea-tor* (*alea*), *jani-tor* (*janua*), *fundi-tor* (*funda*), *via-tor* (*via*), *oli-tor* (*olus*), *vin-i-tor* (*vinea*).

II. Realia.

(1.) Nouns with Suffix *-or* appended to the Root, especially of Intransitive Verbs, denote the Action or State of the Verb substantively; as, *am-or*, *tim-or*, *torp-or*, *clam-or*, *cal-or*, *splend-or*.

(2.) Nouns with Suffix *-io* and *-u* (ending *s*) (4th Decl.) appended to the Supine-stem, denote the Action or State of the Verb abstractly; as, *act-io*, *mot-io*, *consens-io*, *vis-io*, *concurs-io*, *act-us*, *mot-us*, *consens-us*, *vis-us*, *concurs-us*.

Obs. 1. — Both these forms are not always found from the same Stem: thus we have only *lect-io*, *ult-io*, *laudat-io*, and many more: only *ort-us*, *olfact-us*, *strepit-us*, and some more: the forms in *-io* being more numerous. Generally the forms in *-io* denote the action as *happening*; those in *-us* as *having happened*: but this distinction is not always maintained.

Obs. 2. — Some Verbals in *-io* are derived from the Present-stem; as, *leg-io*, *reg-io*, *opin-io*, *relig-io*, *obliv-io*, *suspici-io*.

Some are from Adjectives ; as, commun-io, perduell-io.

Obs. 3. — Denominativa in *-atus* (4th Decl.) denote the Office or Condition of the person expressed by the Stem ; as, consul-atus, *the consulship* (consul) ; tribun-atus, *the tribuneship* (tribunus).

(3.) Nouns with Suffix and Ending *-ur-a* appended to the Supine-stem denote the action or effect of the Verb ; as, pict-ura, *painting or a painting* (pingo) ; sepult-ura, *burial* (sepelio) ; cens-ura, *censure or the censorship* (censeo).

(4.) With Ending *-us* (Neut. 3d Decl.) denote the Effect of the Verb ; as, dec-us, *grace* (dec-eo) ; pond-us, *weight* (pend-o) ; frig-us, *cold* (frig-eo).

(5.) With Suffix and Ending *-i-um* denote the State or Permanence of the Verbal notion ; as, gaud-ium, *joy* (gaud-eo) ; od-ium *hatred* (odi) ; ædific-ium, *a building* (ædific-o) ; consil-ium, *counsel, design, &c.* (consulo).

Obs. — By a metonymy some of these words signify the place where the action occurs ; as, comit-ium, *the Assembly-ground* (cum-eo) ; refug-ium, *a resort* (refugio).

Some are Denominatives ; as, hospit-ium, *hospitality, a hotel* (hospes) ; minister-ium, *service* (minister).

A few have the Suffix *-it* before *-ium* ; as, serv-itium, *slavery* (servus).

(6.) With the Suffixes and Endings *-en*, *-men*, *-entum*, *-mentum*, signifying, generally, the Means for the attainment of that which the Verb expresses ; as, pect-en, *a comb* (pect-o) ; teg-men *covering* (teg-o) ; orna-mentum, *an ornament* (orn-o) ; monu-mentum, *memorial* (mon-eo).

Obs. — Some are Denominatives, as atramentum, *ink* (ater). Some have a Passive force ; as, certa-men, *a contest* (certo). In the formation euphonic changes often occur : as, exā-men for exāgi-men ; ful-men for fulg-men ; lu-men for luc-men ; subtē-men for subtex-men ; and vincular insertions, as teg-u-mentum.

(7.) With Suffix and Endings *moni-a*, *-moni-um*, (and vincular *i*.) Verbal and Denominative, denote a Permanence of the staminal notion ; as, quer-i-monia, *a (continued) complaint* (queror) ; pars-i-monia, *thrift* (parco) ; matr-i-monium, *matrimony* (mater).

(8.) With Suffixes and Endings *-i-a*, *iti-a*, *it-as*, *et-as*, from Adjectives and Participles, denote Quality in the abstract ; as, audac-ia, *boldness* (audax) ; potent-ia, *power* (potens) ; sæv-itia, *cruelty* (sævus) ; celer-itas, *swiftness* (celer) ; pi-etas, *piety* (pius).

Obs. — Sati-etas, *fulness* (satis). Some append *-tas* without *e* or *i* ; as, uber-tas, *facul-tas*, liber-tas, vetus-tas, simul-tas (simul). Some are formed from Substantives ; as, victor-ia, auctor-itas, civ-itas, hæred-itas, æ-tas for æv-itas, hones-tas, tempus-tas, venus-tas. Some from Verbs ; as, eges-tas, volun-tas, potes-tas.

(9.) With Suffix and Ending *tu-s*, from Substantives of which they denote the abstract Quality ; as, vir-tus, *valour, virtue* (vir) ; senec-tus, *old age* (senex) ; juven-tus, *youth* (juvenis).

(10.) With Suffix and Ending *-tud-o* and vincular *i*, from Adjectives, denote the Quality; as, *magn-i-tudo*, *greatness* (*magnus*); *fort-i-tudo*, *bravery* (*fortis*).

Obs.—Some are from Adverbs; as, *necessitudo* (*necesse*), *vicissitudo* (*vicissim*): some from Verbs; as, *valetudo* (*valeo*).

(11.) With Suffixes and Endings *-ēd-o*, *id-o*, from Verbs, denote a sensible Quality or Condition; as, *alb-edo*, *whiteness* (*albeo*); *dulc-edo*, *sweetness* (*dulceo*); *cup-ido*, *desire* (*cupio*).

Obs.—Of abstract Substantives there is often a variety of forms with the same meaning; as, *juven-tus*, *juven-tas*, *juven-ta*; *senec-tus*, *senecta*; *serv-i-tus*, *serv-i-tudo*, *serv-i-tium*; *amar-or*, *amar-itas*, *amar-itudo*, *amar-ities*.

(12.) With Suffixes and Ending *-ag-o*, *-ig-o*, *-ug-o*, Verbals and Denominatives, partly abstract, partly concrete; as, *vor-ago*, *an abyss* (*voro*); *farr-ago*, *a medley*, (*far*); *or-igo*, *origin* (*orior*); *lan-ugo*, *down* (*lana*).

(13.) With Suffix and Ending *-ēt-um*, from Substantives, denote the Place in which the Stem is found; as, *querc-ēt-um*, *an oak grove* (*quercus*); *ac-et-um*, *vinegar* (*ac-or*).

Obs.—Sometimes *e* falls out; as, *arbustum* for *arbo-setum* (*arboretum*).

(14.) With the Suffixes and Ending *cr-um*, *tr-um*, or *str-um*, Verbals signifying sometimes the Place, sometimes the Means or Implement, of the action; as, *lava-cr-um*, *a bath* (*lavo*); *sepul-cr-um*, *a tomb* (*sepelio*); *ful-cr-um*, *a prop* (*fulcio*); *claus-tr-um*, *a barrier* (*claudio*); *ros-tr-um*, *a beak* (*rodo*); *ara-tr-um*, *a plough* (*aro*).

Also in *-brum*, *-bra*; as, *delu-brum*, *a temple* (*de* and *luo*); *late-bra*, *a hiding-place* (*lateo*); *scalp-um* for *scalp-brum*, *a graving-tool* (*scalpo*).

(15.) With the Suffixes and Ending *-ul-um*, *-bul-um*, *-cul-um*, Verbals denoting generally the Instrument of the action, sometimes the Place; as, *vinc-ulum*, *a chain* (*vincio*); *cing-ulum*, *a belt* (*cing-o*); *vena-bulum*, *a hunting-spear* (*venor*); *pia-culum*, *a sin-offering* (*pio*).

And with vincular *i*: *vehi-culum*, *a vehicle* (*veho*); *cubi-culum*, *a bed-chamber* (*cubo*).

Obs.—Some few are Denominatives; as, *aceta-bulum*, *a vinegar crust* (*acetum*); *turi-bulum*, *a censer* (*tus*).

(16.) With Suffix and Ending *-ēl-a*, Verbals expressing the Agency of the Stem; as, *quer-ēla*, *complaint* (*queror*); *tut-ēla*, *guardianship* (*tueor*).

(b.) DENOMINATIVA.

(1.) Diminutive Endings *-lus*, *-la*, *-lum*, according to Gender.

These terminations are appended to the Stem in various ways, generally by a vincular *u*; as, *hort-u-lus* from *hort-us*, *cornic-u-la* from *cornix*, *scut-u-lum* from *scut-um*.

Sometimes *c* is inserted before *u*; as, *pisci-cu-lus* from *piscis*, *mulier-cu-la* from *mulier*, *os-cu-lum* from *os*, *homun-cu-lus* from *homo*, *pleb-cu-la* from *plebes*: and with vincular *i*; as, *art-i-culus* from *art-us*.

Sometimes a vincular *δ* is used ; as, fili-*δ*-lus from filius.

A liquid before *l* is often assimilated to it ; as, libellus for liber-lus from liber, catella for caten-la from catena. Sometimes with the insertion of *e* or *i* ; as, flagellum from flagrum, sigillum from signum. Sometimes with a Vowel-change ; as, pagella from pagina, asellus from asinus. So, also, ocellus from oculus, fabella from fabula.

Obs. 1.—Peculiar Diminutives are: equuleus from equus, aculeus from acus, homuncio from homo. Some are Diminutives of Diminutives ; as puellulus from puellus, oscillum from osculum.

Obs. 2.— Sometimes a Diminutive form changes the meaning of the Primitive ; as, avunculus, a *maternal uncle*, from avus, a *grandfather* ; osculum, a *kiss*, from os, a *mouth*.

Obs. 3.— Adjectives also have Diminutives ; as, misellus from miser, tantulus from tantus, bellus for ben-lus from bonus.

(2.) *Patronymica.* Substantives which denote the descendant, by derivation from the name of his father or ancestor.

(a.) Ending in *-ides*, from Stems in *-us* or *-or* ; as, Tantal-*ides*, son of Tantalus ; Agenor-*ides*, son of Agenor ; and some others ; as, Cecrop-*ides*, descendant of Cecrops.

(b.) In *ides*, from Stems in *-eus* ; as, Nel-*ides*, son of Neleus.

(c.) In *-ādes* or *-iādes*, from Stems in *-as*, *-es* (1st Decl.), or in *-ius* ; as, Æne-*ādes*, son of Æneas ; Laert-iādes son of Laertes ; Thest-iādes, son of Thestius.

Also from Stems in *-as* (*-antis*), *-o*, *-on* (*-onis* or *-ontis*) ; as, Atlant-iādes, son of Atlas ; Amphitryon-iādes, son of Amphitryon.

Obs. — The corresponding female *Patronymics* are : —

-is to <i>-ides</i> ;	as, Tantal- <i>is</i> , daughter of Tantalus.
-ēis to <i>-ides</i> ;	as, Nel-ēis, . . . Neleus.
-ās to <i>-ādes</i> ;	as, Thest-ias . . . Thestius.
sometimes <i>-is</i> ;	as, Æne- <i>is</i> , . . . Æneas.

The forms *-ine*, *-one*, are sometimes found ; as, Neptun-*ine*, daughter of Neptunus ; Acris-i-*one*, daughter of Acrisius.

(3.) *Gentilia.*

In most instances the name of a country is derived from that of its people ; as, Arabia from Arabs, Thracia from Thrax, Gallia from Gallus, &c. But many names of people are derived from the name of the country.

in <i>-ius</i> ;	as, Ægypt- <i>ius</i> , a native of Ægypt.
-ānus ;	as, Rom- <i>anus</i> , . . . Roma.
-inus ;	as, Lat- <i>inus</i> , . . . Latium.
-ēnus ;	as, Pergam- <i>enus</i> , . . . Pergamus.
-ensis ;	as, Athen-i- <i>ensis</i> , . . . Athenæ.
-as (<i>ātis</i>) ;	as, Arpin- <i>as</i> , . . . Arpinum.

with a few Greek Gentile names in *-tes* ; as, Spartiates, Epirotes.

C. ADJECTIVES.

(a.) VERBALIA.

(1.) *-ac-s* = *ax*, appended to the Root, denotes an Inclination, often a faulty one; as, *pugn-ax*, *rap-ax*, *ten-ax*, *loqu-ax*.

(2.) *-id-us*, appended to the Root, denotes its Quality in a high degree; chiefly from Neuter Verbs of 2d Conjug.; as, *av-idus*, *cal-idus*, *cup-idus*, *rap-idus*.

(3.) *-il-is*, *-bil-is*, denote, when appended to the Root, in general passive, sometimes active, Capability; as, *fac-ilis*, *doc-ilis*, *frag-ilis*, *ama-bilis*; and with vincular *i*, *terr-i-bilis*, *mov-i-bilis* = *mobilis*.

Some are derived from the Supine-stem, and have nearly the force of Passive Perfect Participles; as, *fict-ilis*, *coct-ilis*, *sect-ilis*, *flex-ilis*, *pens-ilis*.

(4.) *-ic-us*, *uc-us*, appended to the Root, denote its Quality; as, *am-icus*, *pud-icus*, *cad-ucus*, *apr-icus* for *aper-icus*.

So *-ict-us* appended to the Supine-stem; as, *advent-icius*, *conduct-icius*.

(5.) *-u-us* (= *-vus* after *r*), *-iv-us*, appended to the intransitive Roots, denote their Quality; as, *noc-uus* or *noc-ivus*, *vac-uus*, *contin-uus*, *proter-vus* (from *protero*).

Appended to the Supine-stem *-ivus* generally denotes a state resulting from a completed Action; as, *capt-ivus*, *fugit-ivus*, *nat-ivus*.

-ivus, appended to Nominal Stems, denotes a suitableness to the Stem; as, *tempest-ivus*, *æst-ivus*.

-uus, appended to transitive Verbal Roots, often has a Passive meaning; as, *irrig-uus*, *conspic-uus*.

(6.) *-bundus* expresses a fulness of the active Quality denoted by the Verb; as, *mira-bundus*, *fur-i-bundus*, *pud-i-bundus*.

(7.) *-cundus* denotes an abiding Quality; as, *fa-cundus*, *ira-cundus*, *vere-cundus*, *rub-i-cundus*, *juv-cundus* = *jucundus*.

(b.) DENOMINATIVA.

1. Adjectives which express "*belonging to*" end in:

(1.) *-ius*; as *orator-ius*, *reg-ius*, *Corinth-ius*.

(2.) *-icus*; as, *civ-icus*, *bell-icus*, *Belg-icus*.

(3.) *-anus*; as, *mont-anus*, *urb-anus*, *prætor-ianus*.

(4.) *-inus*, *enus*; as, *can-inus*, *mar-inus*, *terr-enus*.

(5.) *-ensis*; as, *for-ensis*, *castr-ensis*.

(6.) *-ilis*, *-alis*, *-aris*, *-elis*, *-ulis*; as, *scurr-ilis*, *let-alis*, *popul-aris*, *fid-elis*, *cur-ulis*.

Obs. — Some of these in the Neuter become Substantives; as, *ov-ile*, a *sheepfold*.

(7.) *-arius*; as, *auxili-arius*. Many become Masculine and Neuter Substantives; as, *statu-arius*, *ær-arium*.

2. Adjectives which signify "made of," "consisting of."

(1.) *-eus* ; as, *ferr-eus*, *ign-eus*.(2.) *-inus* ; as, *fag-ĭnus* ; *crystall-ĭnus* ; *querc-ĭnus* = *quernus*, also *querneus* ; *ebor-ĭnus* = *eburnus*, also *eburneus* ; *ilic-ĭnus* = *ilignus*, also *iligneus* ; *coryl-ĭnus* = *corulnus* = (by metathesis) *columnus*.(3.) *-icius*, *-aceus*, *-uceus* ; as, *later-icius*, *ros-aceus*, *pann-uceus*.*Obs.* — When the Stem is not "matter," the Endings *-eus*, *-nus*, &c., only denote "likeness or relation to;" as, *virgin-eus*, *pater-nus*, *patr-icius*.

3. Adjectives which signify "full of," "abounding in."

(1.) *-osus* ; as, *aren-osus*, *saltu-osus*, *imperi-osus*.(2.) *-olentus*, *-ulentus* ; as, *vi-olentus*, *tem-ulentus*.(3.) *-idus* ; as, *herb-idus*, *gel-idus*.

4. Adjectives which signify "endued with," "possessed of," "notable for."

-atus, *-itus*, *-utus* ; as, *tog-atus*, *al-atus*, *pell-itus*, *ast-utus*, *nas-utus*. Also in *-stus* ; *scel-e-stus*, *venu-stus*.

5. Adjectives signifying Place: "situated" or "placed in" or "on."

(1.) *-ster*, *-stris* ; as, *camp-e-ster*, *terr-e-stris*, *palu-stris*.(2.) *-timus* ; as, *fin-i-timus*, *mar-i-timus*.6. Diminutive Adjectives in *-ulus*, *-ellus*, &c. ; as, *frigid-ulus*, *misellus*. Some in *-ulus* are Verbals, signifying Propensity ; as, *cred-ulus*, *garr-ulus*.(c.) Some Adjectives are derived from PARTICLES ; as, *cras-tĭnus*, from *cras* ; *hesi-ternus* (for *hesi-ternus*), from *heri* (*hesi*). Also *superus*, *posterus*, &c.

D. PARTICLES.

(a.) ADVERBS are either Primitive or Derived.

Derived Adverbs in —

(1.) *-ē* come from Adjectives in *-us* or *-er*, *-a*, *-um*, by changing *i* of the Gen. into *ē* ; as, *durus*, *dur-i*, *dur-ē* ; *æger*, *ægr-i*, *ægr-ē* ; *miser*, *miser-i*, *miser-ē*.(2.) *-ter* come from Adjectives of the 3d Declension, by changing *s* into *ter* in the first case which ends in *s* ; as, *felix*, *felicis*, *feliciter* ; *celer*, *celeris*, *celeriter* ; *demens*, *dementer*.(3.) *-im* come from Participles Passive, or Nouns ; as, *divisim*, *passim*.(4.) *-itus* come from Nouns, by changing *i* or *is* of the Gen. into *itus* ; as, *funditus*, *antiquitus*.(5.) *-ō* are Ablatives Singular of Adjectives or Participles ; as, *tuto*, *merito*.(6.) *-um* or *-e* are Accusatives Neuter Singular of Adjectives ; as, *multum*, *facile*.

(b.) **PRÆPOSITIONS** are principally derived from Adverbs; and many Prepositions are also used as Adverbs; as, ante, circum, contra, post, supra, citra, infra, &c.; and these were originally cases of lost Nouns.

(c) **CONJUNCTIONS** are mainly derived from —

- (1.) Cases of $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (a.) \text{ The Relative Pronoun; as, quum, quam,} \\ \text{quia, quod, quippe, quo, \&c.; and compounded with} \\ \text{Prepositions, as, antequam, postquam, quocirca.} \\ (b.) \text{ Nouns; as, modo, quare; and compounded} \\ \text{with other Conjunctions, as, dummodo.} \end{array} \right.$
- (2.) Verbs; as, licet; and compounded with other Conjunctions, as, quamvis, quamlibet, &c.
- (3.) Adverbs; as, ut, sicut; and with Prepositions, as, præut, prout, and with Pronouns, as, quominus, quin.

(d.) **INTERJECTIONS** are mostly intended to represent the sounds instinctively uttered in various states of the mind, as: — (1.) In joy, io, evoe; (2.) In sorrow, hei, heu, eheu, vœ; (3.) In surprise, ah, o, ecce, en, hem.

§ b. ON COMPOSITION.

The Latin is not so rich in compounded words as the Greek, or even as the English language. Of the Elements of a compounded word, one is *fundamental*, the other *qualitative*. The *qualitative* precedes the *fundamental* word in Composition, and sometimes a short vincular vowel, e, i, o, is used to connect the two parts.

I. SUBSTANTIVA COMPOSITA.

- (a.) Compounded of two Substantives; as, agr-i-cultura (ager, cultura).
- (b.) . . . of a Substantive and Verb; as, agr-i-cola (ager, colo).
- (c.) . . . of a Preposition and Substantive; as, præ-nomen (præ, nomen).
- (d.) . . . of a Particle and Verb; as, se-d-itio (se, eo).
- (e.) . . . of a Particle or Numeral and Substantive; as, ne-g-otium (ne, otium), biduum (bis, dies), de-cem-vir.

Obs. 1. — Respublica, Gen. reipublicæ. Jusjurandum, Gen. jurisjurandi.

Obs. 2. — Observe Substantives in *-fex* from facio, as artifex; in *-jex* from jacio, as objex; in *-sex* from seco, as foenisex; in *-dex* from dico, as judex; in *-ceps* from capio, as municeps; in *-ses* from sedeo, as præses, in *-cus* from cudo, as incus; in *-spex* from specio, as auspex.

II. ADJECTIVA COMPOSITA.

- (a.) Compounded of two Substantives; as, ign-i-color (ignis, color).
- (b.) . . . of an Adjective and Substantive; as, mult-i-color (multus, color).

- (c.) . . . of an Adjective and Verb; as, *grandi-loquus* (*grandis, loquor*).
- (d.) . . . of a Preposition and Substantive; as, *de-color* (*de, color*).
- (e.) . . . of a Substantive and Verb; as, *arm-i-ger* (*arma, gero*).
- (f.) . . . of in (*not*) and an Adjective or Substantive; as, *in-felix, in-vius*.
- (g.) . . . of per and prae (*very*) and an Adjective; as, *per-difficilis, prae-dives*.
- (h.) . . . of sub (*rather*) and an Adjective; as, *sub-tristis*.
- (i.) . . . of dis- or di- and an Adjective or Substantive; as, *dis-similis, dis-sonus, di-lucidus*.
- (j.) . . . of ve- (= male) and an Adjective or Substantive; as, *ve-sanus, ve-cors*.
- (k.) . . . of sē- (*apart*) and an Adjective or Substantive; as, *sē-curus, sobrius* (for *se-ebrius*), *sōcors* (for *sē-cors*).
- (l.) . . . of bene or male and a Verb; as, *benevolus, malevolus*.

III. VERBA COMPOSITA.

- (a.) Compounded of Substantive and Verb; as, *æd-i-fico* (*ædes, facio*).
- (b.) . . . of Adjective and Verb; as, *ampl-i-fico* (*amplus, facio*).
- (c.) . . . of two Verbs; as, *valedico* (*valeo, dico*); *pat-e-facio* (*pateo, facio*).
- (d.) . . . of Adverb and Verb; as, *bene-facio, ne-scio*.
- (e.) . . . of Preposition and Verb; as, *abrogo, obrogo, irrogo, erogo*.

IV. PARTICULÆ COMPOSITÆ.

- (a.) Compounded of two Verbs; as, *scilicet* (*scire licet*).
- (b.) . . . of a Substantive and Adjective; as, *magn-opere*.
- (c.) . . . of a Pronoun and Preposition; as, *antea*.
- (d.) . . . of an Adverb and Preposition; as, *de-inde*.
- (e.) . . . of a Substantive and Adverb; as, *sæpenumero*.
- (f.) . . . of a Substantive and Preposition; as, *ex-templo*.
- (g.) . . . of two Particles; as, *et-ai, sic-ut*.

Note. — ETYMOLOGY is a very extensive subject, from which the foregoing pages give only an extract.

EXCURSION E. ON ORTHOGRAPHY.

THE Orthography of the Latin language is very unsettled, on account of the uncertain etymology of many words, and the changes which took place from time to time in the manner of speaking and writing.

The subjoined Table exhibits the preferable Orthography of some disputed words: —

Write

valētudo	rather than	validudo.
genitrix	.	genetrix.
deminutio	.	diminutio.
ceteri	.	cæteri.
frenum	.	frænum.
heres	.	hæres.
lêvis	.	lævis.
prælum	.	prælum.
fecundus	.	foecundus.
femina	.	fœmina.
fetus	.	foetus.
fenus	.	fœnus.
suboles	.	soboles.
hiems	.	hyems.
ocius	.	ocyus.
silva	.	sylva.
stilus	.	stylus.
Sulla	.	Sylla.
satira	.	satura.
clipeus	.	clypeus.

Write

lacrima	rather than	lacryma.
cæcus	.	cæcus.
mæreo	.	mœreo.
sollers	.	solers.
sollennis	.	solemmis.
Juppiter	.	Jupiter.
quattuor	.	quatuor.
rettuli	.	retuli.
conjux	.	conjunx.
have	.	ave.
ahenum	.	aenum.
exsul	.	exul.
letum	.	lethum.
sulfur	.	sulphur.
tus	.	thus.
ancora	.	anchora.
vicesimus	.	vigesimus.
Caius	.	Gaius.
Cnæus	.	Gnæus.
obsonor	.	opsonor.

Obs. — The doubled Consonant in reppuli and rettuli (sometimes also rettudi, reccidi) is probably referable to reduplication of their simples: re-te-tuli = rettuli. Hence reperio (repperi) is compounded of re and pario (peperi); but comperio, experior, are from the Greek *πεῖρα*.

EXCURSION F. ON THE DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

SYLLABLES, if possible, begin with a Consonant, and end with a Vowel. Hence —

1. A Consonant between two Vowels belongs to the latter syllable; as, *pa-ter, a-ma-tur.*

2. When two or three Consonants come between two Vowels, they all belong to the latter syllable, if they can begin a Latin word; as, *ma-gnus, a-gri, e-sca, po-stis, a-stra, A-bdera, pu-blicus, Ara-chne, Pa-phlago, rhy-thmus, scri-psi, a-sthma*: if not, they are divided between the two syllables; as, *an-nus, cur-ro, tel-lus, an-te, pun-ctum, ar-ctus, jux-ta.*

Obs. 1. — A compounded word is divided into the words which compose it; as, *ab-a-vus*: unless the first compound is a mutilated word, when it follows the general rule; as, *a-ni-mad-ver-to.*

Obs. 2. — An euphonic letter between the Compounds belongs to the former syllable; as, *prod-est.*

EXCURSION G. SIGLARIUM ROMANUM.

I. PRÆNOMINA.

A. Aulus.	K. Kæso.	P. Publius.	SEX. Sextus.
C. Caius.	L. Lucius.	Q. Quintus.	T. Titus.
CN. Cneius.	M. Marcus.	SER. Servius.	TI. Tiberius.
D. Decimus.	M' Manius.		

2. TITLES.

ÆD. CUR. Ædilis Curulis.	IMP. Imperator.
COS. CONSUL. Coss. Consules or Consulibus.	P. C. Patres Conscripti.
COS. DES. Consul Designatus.	P. M. Pontifex Maximus.
D. DIVUS.	PROC. Proconsul.
III. VIRI A. A. A. F. F. Triumviri auro, argento, ære fando feriundo.	S. P. Q. R. Senatus Populusque Romanus.
III. V. R. C. Triumvir reipublicæ constituendæ.	TR. PL. Tribunus Plebis.
	X. V. Decemvir.
	XV. V. S. F. Quindecimvir sacris faciundis.

3. IN VOTING ON TRIALS AND ELECTIONS.

A. Absolvo. C. Condemno.	A. P. Antiquam (legem) probō.
N. L. Non liquet.	V. R. Uti rogas.

4. ON TOMBS.

F. C. Faciendum curavit.	OB. Obiit.
H. C. E. Hic conditus est.	P. C. Poni curavit.
H. S. E. Hic situs est.	V. Vixit.

5. MISCELLANEOUS.

A. U. C. Anno Urbis Condite.	S. C. Senatus Consultum.
D. D. Dono dedit.	S. D. Salutem dicit.
D. D. D. Dat, dicat, dedicat.	S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit.
D. M. Diis Manibus.	S. V. B. E. E. Q. V. Si vales, bene est, ego quoque valeo.
D. O. M. Deo Optimo Maximo.	TR. POT. Tribuniâ Potestate.
F. Filius.	
F. F. F. Felix, faustum, fortunatum.	

6. MODERN.

A. B. Artium Baccalaureus.	Ictus. Jurisconsultus.
A. C. Anno Christi.	i. e. id est. i. q. idem quod.
A. D. Anno Domini.	L. or LIB. Liber.
A. M. Artium Magister. Anno Mundi.	L. B. Lectori benevolo.
a. C. n. ante Christum natum.	l. c. loco citato. l. l. loco laudato.
p. C. n. post Christum natum.	leg. lege or legatur.
C. P. P. C. Collatis pecuniis poni curaverunt.	LL. D. Legum Doctor.
Cet. Cetera.	M. D. Medicinæ Doctor.
Cf. Confer or Conferatur.	N. B. Nota bene.
Coll. Collato or Collatis.	N. T. Novum Testamentum.
Cod. Codex. Codd. Codices.	Obs. Observe or observetur.
D. Doctor.	P. S. Postscriptum. [fessor.
Del. Dele or Deleatur.	S. T. P. Sanctæ Theologiæ Professor. scilicet.
Ed. Editio. Edd. Editiones.	vid. vide or videatur.
Etc. Etcetera.	viz. videlicet.
h. e. hoc est.	V. Cel. Vir celeberrimus.
I. C. Jesus Christus.	V. Cl. Vir Clarissimus.
	V. T. Vetus Testamentum.

COMPENDIUM OF LATIN SYNTAX.

PART I. OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

I. SYNTAX OF AGREEMENT.

I. FIRST AGREEMENT.

OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 102. *General Rule.*—Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns, whether they are used as Epithets or are used as Predicates, agree with their Substantives in gender, number, and case : as, *As long as thou shalt be fortunate, thou wilt reckon many friends ; no friend will go to lost wealth.*¹

Obs. 1. The Substantive often is understood by Ellipse : as, *Most shun toil.* (supply *men.*) *The crow chants from the left, the raven from the right.* (supply *hand.*)²

Obs. 2. Neuter Adjectives put abstractly, perform the office of Substantives : as, *Death is last of all things.—Honour and advantage seem sometimes to clash.—We relax serious occupations by a modest meal.*³

[*Notes.* ¹ Also Substantives called *Mobilia*, having a masculine and feminine form, agree with the Subject, as far as they can, in gender also ; as, *Stilus optimus dicendi magister est.*—CIC. *Vita rustica parsimonie magistra est.*—CIC. Such Substantives are sometimes used as Epithets, especially by the poets : as, *Populum latè regem.*—VIRG. *Regina pecunia.*—HOR.

² Some grammarians do not explain all these constructions by the ellipse of a Substantive ; but say that the Adjective is sometimes raised to the power of a Substantive in the Masculine and Feminine, as it is in the Neuter Gender. Among the most notable ellipses of the Substantive after an Adjective are, *frigida, gelida, calida* (aqua) ; *cani* (capilli) ; *æstiva, hiberna, stativa* (castra) ; *dextra, læva, sinistra* (manus) ; *Latinæ* (feriæ) ; *Circenses* (ludi) ; *biremis, triremis, &c.* (navis) ; *repetundarum* (pecuniarum) ; *prætecta* (toga) ; *primæ, secundæ* (partes) ; *ferina* (caro) ; &c.

³ Pronouns are still more frequently thus used : as, *Hoc tunc Veti fuere.*—FLOB. *Quod ego fui ad Trasimenum, ad Cannas, id tu hodie es.*—LIV. *Nunc scio quid sit amor.*—VIRG. *Ego quoque aliquid sum.*—CIC.]

II. SECOND AGREEMENT.

OF-THE-VERB WITH THE-NOMINATIVE OF-THE-SUBJECT.

§ 103. *G. R.*—A-Verb Personal agrees with the-Nominative of-its-Subject in-number and person: as, *All vices war against nature.*—*To-morrow's life is too late.*

Obs. Sometimes an-Infinitive, or a-prolonged Phrase, or an-Adverb with a-Genitive, is-put for the-Nominative of-the-Subject: as, *To-fib is not mine.*—*How long the-life of-each of-us is going-to-be, is uncertain.*—*Little of-spirit was-supposed to-be in him.*

A. ON THE-ELLIPSE OF-THE-NOMINATIVE.

§ 104. *Obs.* 1. The-Nominative of-Pronoun-Subjects is-expressed seldom: as, *We-lean always towards the-forbidden, and we-desire things-denied.*

(*Obs.*) Unless it-avail for-distinction or emphasis: as, *I expelled kings; ye bring-in tyrants.*

Obs. 2. Verbs of-saying, relating, and calling, of-the-third person plural, often have the-Nominative *homines* (men) understood: as, *I-hold by-the-ears a-wolf, as men-say.*

Obs. 3. Impersonal-Verbs have not a-Nominative expressed: as, *It-irks and earnestly repents himself.*

(*Obs.*) But many-Verbs, which are-called Impersonal, have some Nominative understood: as, *Already it-grows-towards-evening.* (supply *the day.*)

B. ON THE-ELLIPSE OF-THE-VERB.

§ 105. *Obs.* 1. The-Persons of-the-Present-Tense of-the-Verb *sum* (I am), often are-understood: as, *Nothing (is) good except what (is) honourable.*

Obs. 2. The-Infinitive sometimes is-put-after the-Nominative: as, *Then pious Æneas began-to-tear-off the-robe from-his-shoulders.*¹

(*Obs.*) But the-Infinitive generally is-put-after the-Accusative, a-finite Verb going-before: as, *Men-report that-Homer was blind.*²

[This construction is called *Infinitivus Historicus*, being especially used by writers of history; as *Livy*, *Cæsar*, *Sallust*, *Tacitus*. It probably rests upon the same principle as the omission of the *Copula*, where the connexion of the Subject and Predicate admits of no doubt; and the animation of the narrative is thus promoted. Certainly the verb of *beginning* will not always suit the sense, if supplied; as in the following passage: *Ingenium ejus haud absurdum; posse versus facere, jocum movere.*—*SALL.*

² The construction of the Accusative and Infinitive Mood belongs to the doctrine of Subordinate Sentences, and will be found in its proper place (§ 180). It is here incidentally mentioned, as being of common occurrence, that the young learner may be familiar with it in practice, before he is advanced enough to comprehend its theory.]

III. THIRD AGREEMENT.

OF THE RELATIVE WITH THE ANTECEDENT.

§ 106. *G. R.*—The Relative agrees with the Antecedent in gender, number, and person, but in case it is construed with its own sentence: as, *That is the pleasantest friendship, which resemblance of characters has coupled.*¹

[Here *quam* agrees with its Antecedent *amicitia* in being of the Feminine Gender, Singular Number, and Third Person; but, as to case, is Accusative governed by the Transitive Verb *conjugavit*.]

Obs. 1. If a Sentence is put for Antecedent, the Relative will be in the Neuter Gender: as, *I came to her in season, which of all things is the chief.*

Obs. 2. Sometimes the Antecedent is included in a Possessive Pronoun: as, *All persons began to commend my fortunes, who had a son endued with such a character.* (that is to say, *the fortunes of me who.*)

§ 107. *Note.* The Relative *qui, quæ, quod*, (*who or which*), ought generally to be considered as if placed between two cases of one Substantive, either expressed or understood: it will agree with the former in gender and number; with the latter also in case, as an Adjective with a Substantive.²

Obs. 1. Both cases sometimes are expressed: as, *There were two roads, by which roads they might go out.*

Obs. 2. Generally the latter case is understood: as, *Rule the temper, which, unless it obeys, commands.* (that is to say, *which temper.*)

Obs. 3. Sometimes the former: as *So (may) the nymphs give to thee what water may relieve thirst.* (that is to say, *water which water.*)

Obs. 4. Sometimes both: as, *There are to whom I seem too keen in satire.* (that is to say, *men to which men.*)

[¹ Examples of *qui* in other persons are:—*Ego, qui te confirmo, ipse me non possum.*—CIC. *Tu es qui me orndisti.*—CIC. *Nobis, qui te amamus, erit gratum.*—*Adestote omnes animis, qui adestis corporibus.*—CIC.

The doctrine of the Relative properly belongs to a later chapter of Grammar, that on Subordinate Sentences; but a portion of it is introduced here, on account of the frequency of the Relative, and its adjectival agreement with its Antecedent.

² It sometimes, but rarely, happens that, as in Greek, the Relative is attracted to the case of its Antecedent: as, *Judice, quo nōsti, populo.*—HOR. Such constructions as *Urbem quam statuo, vestra est*, (VING.) are equally rare, excepting in Comedy.

Sometimes, by the ellipse of the Antecedent, a Relative Sentence follows a Preposition: as, *Nullas adhuc (litteras) acceperam, præter quæ mihi binæ in Trebulano reddite sunt.*—CIC.

Qualis (such as), and *quantus* (as great as), follow the same rule as *qui*, only when they are placed between two Cases (expressed or under-

stood) of the same person or thing: as, *Non sum qualis eram.*—HOB. *Crocodilus parit ova quanta anseres.*—PLIN. But if they are used to compare two different Nouns, they agree in Gender, Number, and Case with the latter; while their Demonstratives (*talīs, tantus*) agree with the former: as, *Quales sunt summi civitatis viri, talis est civitas.*—CIC. *Diri tantā contentione quantum forum est.*—CIC.]

SUPPLEMENT TO THE CONCORDS.

A. ON SYNESIS.

§ 108. Synesis is that mode of-construction, which looks to the meaning of-words, not to the-form.

G. R. I.—A-Substantive, Singular in-form but not in-meaning, often has a-Verb, an-Adjective, or a-Relative, plural: as, *Part load the-tables with-viands.—Thence (arose) shouting of-the-populace, wondering what (sort) of-thing it-was:* [that is, *what was the matter.*]—*Cæsar sends-forward cavalry, who may-watch the-enemy.*¹

G. R. II.—A-Substantive, Neuter or Feminine in-form but not in-meaning, often has an-Adjective or Relative of a-different Gender: as *The-heads of-the-conspiracy were struck with-the-axe.* (that is, *beheaded.*)—*Where is that villain who has-ruined me?*—*The-Tegeatan youth come-up slow to-the-succour.*²

[¹ The distributive words and phrases *quisque, uterque, alter alterum, virum, &c.*, are apparently used as Subjects to plural Verbs, but really in apposition to the Subjects understood: as, *Pro se quisque cædunt obvios.*—LIV. *Uterque eorum exercitum educunt.*—CÆS. *Alter alterum videbamus.*—CIC. *Vir virum legebant.*—LIV.]

² A Neuter Relative sometimes follows *res* and other Feminine Nouns of abstract signification: as, *Sumtui ne parcas ullā in re, quod ad valetudinem opus sit.*—CIC.]

B. ON SEVERAL NOUNS IN-THE-SUBJECT.

§ 109. G. R. I.—Two or more singular Nouns united in the-Subject, generally have an-Adjective, Verb, or Relative, plural: as, *Hannibal and Philopæmen were taken-off by-poison.*¹

§ 110. G. R. II.—If those singular Nouns are of-different Persons or Genders, the-plural Verb will-agree generally with the-Nominative-of-the-worthier Person: but the-Adjective or Relative with the-Noun of-the-worthier Gender.

(a.) The-First Person is worthier than the-Second, the-Second than the-Third: as, *If thou and Tullia are-well, I and Cicero are-well.*

(b.) In things having-life the-Masculine Gender is worthier than the-Feminine: as, *My (literally, to-me) father and mother are dead.*

(c.) But in things without-life, the-Adjective or Relative will-be most-frequently in the-Neuter Gender: as, *Riches, honour, glory, are placed within your-view.* (literally, *eyes.*)

(Obs.) The-Verb or Adjective not unfrequently agrees with the nearer Substantive: as, (*Let*) *religion and honour be-preferred to friendship.*—*Messalina was convicted and Silius.*²

[¹ This rule holds good, whether the Subjects are united by Copulative Conjunctions, *et, ac, que, &c.*; or without Conjunctions, by *Asyndeton*; as, *Pompeius, Lentulus, Scipio fœdè perierunt.*—(CIC.); or by means of the Preposition *cum*: as *Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt.*—VIRG. When they are united by the Particles, *aut, nec*, the Verb is generally singular: as, *Si Socrates aut Antisthenes diceret.*—CIC. Q. *Catulum neque periculi tempestas, neque hominis aura, potuit unquam de suo cursu vitæ demovere.*—CIC. But sometimes the Verb is plural: as, *Sulpicius aut Cotta plus quàm ego apud te valere videntur.*—CIC. *Hæc neque ego neque tu fecimus.*—TER.

² Agreement with the nearer Noun takes place when either the several Subjects form one idea, as in the first example, and in this, *Senatus populusque Romanus intelligit* (CIC.); or when one of the Subjects is so much more important in the sentence as to obscure the others, as in the second example, and in this, *Nunc mihi nihil libri, nihil literæ, nihil doctrina prodest.*—CIC. In the case of Pronoun Subjects also, the Verb sometimes agrees with the nearest: as, *Ego in tuto, et ille in periculo esse capit.*—NEP.]

C. ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF COPULATIVE VERBS.

[EXCURSION I. ON COPULATIVE VERBS.]

We venture to give the name of Copulative to those Verbs which, like the Copula *sum*, are not in general able to form a complete proposition, without a Predicate following them. We say in general, because *sum* itself may, in its meaning of *existence*, form a complete proposition; as, *Deus est*, God exists; *fuertunt*, they have existed (i. e. exist no longer): and so may these Verbs in some senses; as, *Poeta nascitur, non fit* (a poet is born, but is not made.) But, in general, these Verbs require a Predicate Nominative (or its equivalent) to complete a simple Sentence. Thus, *nemo nascitur, puer fit, Cicero declaratur*, have little meaning until we complete the sentences: *Nemo nascitur sapiens* (or *sine vitiis*), *Puer fit eruditus* (or *miles*), *Cicero declaratur consul*. These Verbs therefore contain the Copula *sum* with an additional notion, which can, however, only form part of the Predicate, as *nominor* contains *sum nomine*; while all other Verbs (which we would therefore call Prædicativa) contain the Copula with a complete Predicate. The Copulative Verbs are (1) Neuter and Passive Verbs of *being* and *doing*: as, *sum, existo, forem, maneo, nascor, gignor, fio, venio, sto, efficior, incedo, præstor, reddor, evado*, (I-turn-out-to-be) *vivo, sedeo*. (2.) Passive and Neuter Verbs of *calling*: as, *appellor, vocor, nominor, usurpor, dicor, nuncupor, salutor, trador, prædicor, inscribor, feror, audio*. (3.) Passive Verbs of *choosing*: as, *designor, legor, eligor, cooptor, creor, capior, constituor, institutor, declaror, renuntior*. (4.) Passive and Neuter Verbs of *deeming* and *appearing*: as, *existimor, numeror, cognoscor, credor, censeor, agnoscor, putor, judicor, ducor, habeor, perhibeor, ostendor, monstror, exhibeor, reperior, invenior, præbeor, appareo, videor, indicor,prehendor, arguor, evincor, convincor, probor*].

G. R.—Copulative Verbs, whether of a-Finite or Infinitive Mood, have the same case of-Subject and Predicate: as, *If hope is the expectation of-good, it-is necessary (for) fear to-be the expectation of-evil.*—*A-long syllable placed-after a-short, is-called Iambus.*—*I-am-acknowledged a-royal boy by established tokens.*—*It-is-allowed you to-be happy!*

§ 112. *Obs. 1.* If in the-Predicate is a-Substantive, differing from the-Subject in-Number or Gender, sometimes the-Copulative Verb agrees with the-Predicate: as, *The-quarrels of-lovers are the-renewal of-love.*—*Not every error is to-be-called folly.*²

Obs. 2. If a-Copulative Verb with a-Substantive of-the-Predicate is-put-after a-Relative, the-Relative not unfrequently agrees with the-following Substantive: as, *The-animal full of-reason, whom we-call man.*—*Thebes, which is the-capital of-Bœotia.*

[If an Infinitive immediately follow a Finite Verb, both have the same Nominative Subject; and the Predicate Noun, if any, must also be in the Nominative, as, *Socrates parens philosophiæ jure dici potest.*—CIC.

If an Accusative Case come between a Finite and Infinitive Verb, it is the Subject of the latter; and its Predicate Noun, if any, must also be in the Accusative: as, *Principem se esse mavult quàm videri.*—CIC.

If a Dative come between the Finite and Infinitive Verb, it is sometimes treated as the Subject of the Infinitive, and a Predicate Dative follows; as *Tibi maximo et civi et duci evadere contigit.*—LIV. But sometimes an Accusative Pronoun understood is regarded as the Subject, and a Predicate Accusative follows: as, *Medios esse nobis jam non licebit.*—CIC.

The Subject, and therefore the Predicate, can never be a Genitive, or Ablative Case, except when a Proposition is changed into a Participial Clause: as, *Catilina, Cicerone creato consule, acrius exarsit.*—SALL. Under such circumstances a Vocative may stand as a Predicate: as, *Rufe, mihi nequicquam credite amice.*—CATULL. But usually a Nominative follows a Vocative Participle: as, *Vetito nudus jaciture sepulchro.*—STAT.

Many Copulative Verbs can be followed immediately by an Infinitive Mood instead of a Predicate Noun; especially Class (4.): as, *Aristæus inventor olei esse dicitur.*—CIC. *Luna solis lumine collustrari putatur.*—CIC. *Tu, lupe, non videris perdidisse quod petis.*—PHÆD. See § 179 D. (c.) 4.

After *sum*, *habeor*, *videor*, and a few others of like meaning, we sometimes find, instead of the usual Predicates, the Prepositions *pro*, *in*, with an Ablative Case, or the words *loco*, *numero*, &c., with a Genitive: as, *Summa ratio sapientibus pro necessitate est.*—PLIN. *Prætorem quæstori suo parentis loco esse oportet.*—CIC. *Fannius in mediocribus oratoribus habitus est.*—CIC. *Verre prætoris, socii fidelissimi in hostium numero existimati sunt.*—CIC. The same constructions may follow Verbs Transitive of *thinking*, *esteeming*, &c., in the Active Voice.

After Verbs of *becoming*, *making*, &c., that from which the Subject is changed is expressed in the Ablative with the Prepositions *ex* or *de*: as, *Ex oratore arator factus est.*—CIC. *Fies de rhetore consul.*—JUV.

² The Verb agrees with the Predicate only when the Predicate is the more important word, and the Verb is at least as near to it as to the Subject. In the two examples cited it is nearer to the Predicate.]

D. ON APPPOSITION.

§ 113. *G. R.*—To a Substantive, Pronoun, and sometimes to a Sentence, a Substantive of the same thing may be put in Apposition in the same case: as, *Riches, incentives of evils, are dug out (of the earth).*—*We consuls are wanting.*—*Let him reflect (that) an orator is being formed, a difficult matter.*¹

[¹ By a Substantive of the same thing is meant one which expresses the same person or thing in another character or capacity, or, generally, by another title. Among various modes of Apposition may be noticed: (1.) That which limits the agency of the Subject in respect of *time, age, office, capacity, &c.*, where the English language uses the Conjunctions, *when or as*: so, *Cato senex scribere historiam instituit.*—*SUET.* *C. Junius adem salutis, quam consul voverat, censor locaverat, dictator dedicavit.*—*LIV.* Under this head may be placed such phrases as, *ante me consulem, post me quaestorem, &c.* (2.) Apposition to a Pronoun Subject understood: as, *Hannibal peto pacem.*—*LIV.* *Qualis artifex pereo!*—*SUET.* (3.) Apposition of the Part to the Whole: as, *Galli Ruscinonem, aliquot populi, conveniunt.*—*LIV.* (4.) Apposition of the Proper Names of one Person; as, *P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Æmilianus*; where *P.* (or *Publius*) is the *Prænomen* designating the individual; *Cornelius*, the *Nomen*, indicates his Gens (*Cornelia*); *Scipio*, the *Cognomen*, shews his Familia (*Scipionum*); while the two last are *Agnomina*, the one of honour (from victories in Africa), the other showing that the person so named had been adopted from the Gens *Æmilia* into another Gens.

Sometimes another rule of Syntax requires the Noun in Apposition to stand in a different case: as, *Archias natus est Antiochiæ, celebri quondam urbe.*—*CIC.*

Adjectives may stand in Apposition, if they are used Substantively: as, *Patres et plebem, invalida et inermia, ludificatur.*—*TAC.*

An Apposition may be introduced by Conjunctions, such as *ut, velut, quasi ceu, tanquam, quamvis*: as, *Ægyptii canem et fœlem ut deos colunt.*—*CIC.* *Herodotus quasi sedatus amnis fluit.*—*CIC.* *Ficta omnia celeriter, tanquam flosculi, decidunt.*—*CIC.* *Manlius filium suum, quamvis victorem, occidit.*—*FLOR.*

Words in Apposition generally, but not always, agree with each other in number also: as, *Athenæ omnium doctrinarum inventrices.*—*CIC.* Substantiva Mobilia agree as far as may be in Gender with the word to which they are in apposition: as, *Usus magister egregius.*—*PLIN.* *Multarum artium ministræ manus sunt.*—*CIC.* Two or more singular Substantives have a plural Apposition: as, *Eupolis atque Cratinus Aristophanesque poetæ.*—*HOR.* So in Proper Names: as, *Caius et Lucius Memmii.*—*CIC.*

Another kind of Apposition is that which requires a Noun answering a question to be in the same case as the Noun which it answers: as, *Quone malo mentem concussa?*—*Timore Deorum.*—*HOR.* But here, too, Syntax sometimes requires the cases to differ: as *Quanti emptum?*—*Octussibus.*—*HOR.*]

II. SYNTAX OF-GOVERNMENT.

GOVERNMENT OF-THE-CASES.

[The Rules for the Accusative and Dative are placed first in the Syntax of of Government, these being the Object-Cases, and the Object being naturally the most important Member of a sentence after the Subject and Predicate.]

THE-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 114. The-Accusative is the-Case of-the-nearer Object.

G. R.—Verbs Transitive govern an-Accusative of-the-nearer Object: as, *Despise pleasures.*—*In-the-first-place worship God.*—*Shun an-inquisitive-person.*¹

Obs. Some Neuter and Passive Verbs admit an-Accusative of their-own operation: as, *He-serves a-hard slavery.*²

§ 115. Those-Transitive Verbs which in-the-Passive Voice become Copulative, have a-double Accusative, one Objective, the other Predicative: as, *The-people declared Cicero consul.*—*Hannibal rendered Philip an-enemy to-the-Romans.*

§ 116. Some Verbs of *asking* and *teaching* have a-double Accusative, one of-the-person, but the-other of-the-thing: as, *We-all demand of-thee peace.*—*Why now should-I-teach thee letters, O-ass?*—And sometimes *celo*, I hide: as, *I-have-accustomed my-son not to-hide those-things from-me.*³

(*Obs.*) The-same Verbs keep the-Accusative of-the-thing in the-Passive Voice: as, *He first was asked his-opinion.*—*She-delights to-be-taught Ionic movements.*

§ 117. The-Accusative of-limitation in-the-Greek manner is placed-after Neuter and Passive Verbs as-well as Adjectives: as, *He-quivers with-his-ears and trembles in-his-limbs.*—(*She is*) *all dyed with-redness in-her-tender cheeks.*—*The-women of-the-Germans are naked as-to-their-lower-arms and upper-arms.*⁴

§ 118. These Prepositions govern an-Accusative: *Ante* (before) *apud* (at, with, among,) *ad*, (to, at) *adversus* (over-against, towards) *circum* (around) *circa* (around, about) *citra*; *cis* (on-the-near side-of) *contra* (against, over-against) *inter* (between, among) *erga* (towards) *extra* (out-of) *infra* (beneath) *intra* (within) *juxta* (near) *ob* (on-account-of, before) *penes* (in-the-power-of) *pone* (behind) *post* (behind, after, since) *præter* (beside, beyond, except) *prope* (near) *propter* (on-account-of, nigh) *per* (through, by) *secundum* (along, after, according to) *supra*, (above) *versus* (towards) *ultra* (beyond) *trans* (across). To-these add *super* (above, over) *subter*, (beneath) and *in* (into, towards, to, upon, against, &c.) *sub* (under, about) if motion takes-place.

Obs. Many of these Prepositions in Composition also govern an-Accusative: as, *Thee now I-address, O-Africanus.*⁵

§ 119. The Interjections *en* and *ecce* (lo!) govern the-Accusative and the-Nominative; *O, ah, heu hem, proh*, the-Accusative, the-Nominative, and the-Vocative: as, *Lo a-wretched man!*—*Lo a-new disturbance and quarrel!*—*Alas pitiable boy!*—*Alas (for) human emptiness!*—*The-honour of-gods and men forfend!*—*Holy Jupiter attend!*⁶

Obs. *Hei* and *væ* (alas!) govern a Dative: as, *Alas me wretched!*—*Woe to-thee, pleader!*⁷

[¹ A. Verbs Transitive are those which require an Accusative Case of the nearer Object: of which Verbs there are two sorts: (a.) Transitives Non-transmissive, which have no remoter Object: as, *sperno* (te); *veneror* (Deum). (b.) Transitives Transmissive, which, together with the nearer Object, admit also a remoter Object: as *do* (librum puero); *rogo* (te sententiam.)

B. Verbs Neuter or Intransitive, are those which stand without a nearer Object: of which Verbs also there are two sorts: (a.) Neuters Non-transmissive, which take no Object: as, *sedeo, labor*: (b.) Neuters Transmissive, which admit a remoter Object: as, *miserescor* (tui), *irascor* (tibi).

C. Verbs Neutro-transitive are those which are sometimes used as Transitive, sometimes as Neuter. That is to say, a Transitive Verb is sometimes Neuter, when it is not considered in its effect on its patient; and a Neuter Verb sometimes has a Transitive force, when its effect in regard to some thing or person is considered. Among Neutro-Transitives we find many Verbs which primarily are Neuter only, and express a state; but subsequently become Transitive, and govern a Case of the Object which is referred to as the cause or motive of the state. Such are: *horreo*, (I shudder, I shudder at) *ardeo*, (I am inflamed, I am inflamed with love of) *sitio*, (I am thirsty, I thirst for) *redoleo*, (I smell (Neut.), I smell of) *sapio*, (I taste (Neut.), I taste of) *gemo*, (I groan, I lament with groaning) *lateo*, (I lie hid, I am hid from) *maneo*, (I remain, I wait for), &c. So *tremo*, *palleo*, *paveo*, *fleo*, *laboro*, *annuo*, *abnuo*, *calleo*, *lutro*, *sibilo*, *depereo*, &c. &c. (See *Ruddimanni Institutiones Grammaticæ Latinæ*, ed. Stallbaum, Pars II., p. 160.) The Subject itself may become the Object of Transitive Verbs: *moveo*, (I move) *moveo me*, (I move myself). In some instances, by the customary Ellipsis of this Pronoun, the Verb becomes intransitive. The Passive has in many words not only a properly *passive*, but also a reflexive sense; as, *pascor*, (I feed myself). Upon the same principle many Deponent Verbs may be explained: as, *glorior*, (I boast myself). None but Verbs Transitive have a Passive Voice of all persons. For the Passive Constructions see § 162. N. 2, 3. § 164.

Plautus has an Accusative after Substantives derived from Transitive Verbs; as, *Quid tibi hanc notio est?* Livy after Verbals in *bundus*: as, *Hanno, vitabundus consules, Benevento appropinquabat*. Poets and the later historians, after *exosus*, *perosus*, *pertæsus*: as, *Antonius, exosus arma, in otio agebat*.—FLOP. *Cæsar ingenuit, pertæsus ignaviam suam*.—SURT.

Sometimes an Ellipse of the Accusative occurs: as *Cæsar dimisit*

(i.e. *exercitum*).—CÆS. Sometimes the Verb is left to be understood: as, *Quid multa?* (und. *dicam*).—CIC. *Dii meliora piis* (und. *dent*).—VING. Such Ellipses happen when there can be no doubt of the word to be supplied.

2 This is called the Cognate Accusative, and is much more largely used in Greek than in Latin. In some instances the Accusative is added to the Verb in a looser way, like an Adverb. So: *Quum Xerxes mare ambulavisset, terram navigasset* (CIC.), instead of *in mari, in terra*. The Neuters of Pronouns, in particular, are united in this way to Verbs Intransitive; *hoc letor, hoc non dubito, id stomachor, id tibi assentior, multa alia peccans*; where the Accusative of a Substantive could not have stood: so, *quid, aliquid, illud, alia, cætera, omnia, utrumque*: as, *Scio quid erres*.—PLAUT. *Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achivi*.—HOR. *Parebimus omnia matri*.—STAT. In such phrases as, *dormio totam hiemem, tertiam ætatem vivit, noctes vigilat*, the Accusative expresses the duration of time. We may also notice such phrases as *jurare Jovem*; that is, *obtestando Jovem jussurandum facere*.

3 The Verbs which admit a double Accusative are, *doceo*, and its compounds *edoceo, dedoceo*; *erudio* (in poetry), *rogo, interrogo, oro, exoro, posco, reposco, flagito, percontor*, and, in Horace, *laccio*. *Consulo* with a double Accusative is rare.

Moneo and its compounds, as well as some other Verbs, may have this construction when the Accusative of the thing is a Neuter Pronoun: as, *Illud me præclarè admones*.—CIC. And this is also the most common Accusative after Verbs of asking.

Verbs of informing, warning, enquiring, concealing, also take an Ablative of the thing with *de*; as, *De itinere hostium senatum edocet*.—SALL.

Peto takes an Ablative of the person with *a, ab*, which may also follow *rogo, oro, exoro, posco, postulo, flagito*: as, *Hoc a te peto*.—CIC. *Quo facilius id a te exigam, nihil tibi a me postulanti recusabo*.—CIC.

Quæro, scitor, sciscitor, percontor, exigo, take an Ablative of the person with either *ab* or *ex*: as, *Zeuxis quæsit ab iis, quasnam virgines formosas haberent*.—CIC. *Epicuri e Velleio scitabar sententiam*.—CIC.

4 This Accusative is also called *Accusativus Partis*, because it defines more exactly the part to which the meaning of the Verb or Adjective refers. It has been usual (but not necessary) to explain it by supposing an Ellipse of the Preposition *secundum*.

To this rule may be referred the Accusatives *magnam partem, maximam partem, vicem, id genus, omne genus, id, illud, hoc (ætatis), summum, minimum, cætera*, and in like manner *nihil, aliquid*, and other Neuter Pronouns: as, *Magnam partem ex iambis nostra constat oratio*.—CIC. *Orationes, aut aliquid id genus, scribere soleo*.—CIC. *Id oneris nobis, hominibus id ætatis, imponitur*.—CIC. *A te bis terve summum literas accepi*.—CIC. *Cætera assentior Crasso*.—CIC. *Thebani nihil moti sunt*.—LIV. *Idne estis auctores mihi?*—TER.

5 Hence many Neuter Verbs become Transitive in composition, especially those which imply motion, as the compounds of *eo*; *adeo, anteo, circumeo, obo, prætereo, transeo, in eo, subeo*: of *gradior*; *aggredior, circumgredior, prætergredior, transgredior, ingredior*: of *venio*; *circumvenio*,

invenio: so *invado*, *pervado*, *percurro*, &c. These Compounds thus obtain a regular Passive Voice: as, *Tamesis uno loco pedibus transiri potest*.—CÆS. *Circumsedemur copiis omnibus*.—CIC.

Sometimes the Preposition is repeated after Compound Verbs, or another introduced: as, *Sextius ad urbem advolavit*.—CIC. *Orator peragrat per animos hominum*.—CIC. *Pittacus accedere quoniam vetat in funus aliorum*.—CIC. Hence also some Compound Verbs, the Primitives of which are Transitive, have a double Accusative: as, *Transadigit costas ense*.—VIRG. One of these Accusatives is governed by the Simple Verb, the other by the Preposition. The Prepositions admitting this construction, besides *trans*, are, *ad*, *circum*, *præter*: as, *Petreiis jusjurandum adigit Afranium*.—CÆS. *Allobroges Pompeius sua præsidia circumduxit*.—CÆS. *Scopulos prætervecta videtur oratio mea*.—CIC. Some Verbs, compounded with Prepositions governing an Ablative, are nevertheless Transitive, and take an Accusative, as *Amicos convenire aseo*.—CIC. *Aufidus, qui regna Dauni præfuit Appuli*.—HOR.

⁶ *En* and *ecce* govern the Nominative oftener than the Accusative, excepting in the comic phrases, *eccum* (for *ecce eum*), *eccillum* (for *ecce illum*), &c. The Nominative is rare after the other Interjections; and perhaps, wherever it appears, it may be regarded as the Subject of a sentence.

In regard to exclamations, we may here observe that *mehercule* or *mehercules* (derived from the Greek) was the common conversational oath of Roman men, as *mecastor* or *ecastor* was of the women. Another form (which seems to have been equivalent to *mehercule*) was *medius fidius* (for which see *Facciolati's Lexicon*): as, *Mihi mehercule magnæ curæ est adilitas tua*.—CIC. *Certò mecastor id fuit nomen tibi*.—PLAUT. *Spero ecastor*.—PLAUT. *Edepol* was also a female oath originally, but became common to both sexes: as, *Salve mecastor, Parmeno*.—*Et tu, edepol, Syra*.—TER. For the etymology of these words, and of *eccere* (by *Ceres*), see *Facciolati's Lexicon*, s. vo.

⁷ An Accusative or Dative follows the adverb *benè* put for an Interjection: as, *Sed benè Messalam, sua quisque ad pocula dicat*.—*Benè mihi, benè vobis, benè omnibus nobis*.—PLAUT.

The Interjection is often understood: as, *Operam tuam multam, qui hæc cures*.—CIC. *Me cæcum, qui hæc non viderim*.—CIC.]

THE-DATIVE.

§ 120. The-Dative is the-Case of-the-remoter Object: sometimes it-signifies the-agent, sometimes the-thing designed.

A. DATIVE OF-THE-OBJECT.

G. R. I.—Almost all Adjectives and Verbs, also Adverbs, sometimes also Substantives, govern a-Dative of-that person or thing for-which is-acquired, or (from which) is-taken-away, or for-the-sake of-which is-done something: as, *We-wish to-be rich not only for-ourselves*.—*He-is liberal, who withdraws-from himself what he-gives*

to-another.—*Numa chose virgins for-Vesta.—He-is a-father for-the-city, and for-the-city a-husband.*¹

Obs. 1. Accordingly *sum* signifying possessively has a-Dative of-the-possessor: as, *For there-is to-me* (i.e. *I have*) *a-father at-home*; *there-is* (i.e. *I have*) *a-cruel stepmother.*²

Obs. 2. The-Dative (is) elegantly redundant: as, *What (is) my-friend (mihi) Celsus doing?*—*I kill this-man with his-own very (sibi) sword.*³

§ 121. *G. R. II.*—Very-many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs govern a-Dative, sometimes even Substantives, by which is-signified advantage, communion, comparison, consecration, help and habit, ease and fitness, kindness, nearness, pleasantness, affinity, delivery, indulgence, demonstration, promise, faith, and narration, compliance, command, and whatever (is) contrary to-these; together with *nubo*, (*I-marry*) *vaco*, (*I-am-at-leisure-for*); other-instances will-stand under the-First Rule. (1.) Adjectives: as, *Let-him-be serviceable to-his-country, useful for-war.—Nothing ever was so unlike itself.—A-poet is bordering-on an-orator.—A-multitude burdensome to-peace, and hostile to-quiet rest.—The-horse and the-dog are most-faithful to-man.* 2. Adverbs: as, *It-is proper-to-live agreeably to-nature. It-can be well for-no dishonest and sluggish (person.)* (i.e. *no dishonest, &c., can be well off*).—(3.) Verbs: (a.) Transitive: as, *He-lends a-patient ear to-cultivation.—Compare present-things with-past.—I-dedicate this grove to-thee, O-Priapus.—(He) not only assured this to-me, but also persuaded (me of it).—Fortune guarantees safety to-us.—(b.) Intransitive: as, Nor (let) the-ability injure me, which always profited you, O-Greeks.—Philosophy heals minds.—We-favour thee.—I-am-wroth-with thee.—The-conquering side pleased the-Gods, but the-conquered (pleased) Cato.—Spare a-pious race.—A-snake appeared to-Sylla sacrificing.—O beautiful boy, trust not too-much to-complexion.—Amassed money rules or serves each-man.—Wilt-thou-combat even a-love which-has-pleased?—Venus married Vulcan.—I-give-my-leisure always to-philosophy.—(4.) Substantives: as, *(There is) no trusting to-partners of-sovereignty.—Justice is obedience to-laws and institutions.*⁴*

§ 122. *Obs.* 1. *Æqualis* (equal) *proprius* (peculiar) *communis* (common) *par* (equal) *alienus* (foreign) *dissimilis* (unlike) *similis* (like) *dispar* (unequal) *consors* (sharing) and *socius* (allied) *conscius* (conscious) *affinis* (akin-by-marriage) *sacer* (sacred) *amulus* (rivaling) and *superstes* (surviving), and more-Adjectives, sometimes prefer a-Dative, sometimes a-Genitive: as, *Middle-things are likeliest to-true.—Thinkest-thou, (that) the-Gods are like thyself?—Activity and industry of-mind is natural to-us.—To-speak ornamentally is the-property of-an-orator.*⁵

(*Obs.*) A-Preposition with its Case also follows the-same Adjectives for-the-most-part, likewise Verbs and Substantives of-the-same signification: as, *These-men are equal and like one-to-the-other* (inter

se).—*These things are common to the rich with the populace.*—*I am a man : I think nothing human foreign from me.*—*There is to-man* (i.e. man has) *a resemblance to God.*—*The Senones imparted their designs to the Carnutes.*

§ 123. *Obs. 2.* Of Adjectives which denote an affection of the mind, many take the Prepositions *in*, *erga*, *adversus*, with an Accusative: as, *Fierce towards the enemy.*—*I was kind towards you.*⁵

Obs. 3. *Natus*, (born;) *aptus*, (fit;) *utilis*, (useful;) with other Adjective of advantage and fitness, (are) often joined to an Accusative with the Preposition *ad*: as, *We are born to praise and to glory.*—*There is to-Thracians* (i.e. Thracians have) *a spirit ready for death.*⁷

§ 124. *Obs. 4.* *Delecto*, (I delight;) *juvo*, (I help or please;) *jubeo*, (I order;); *rego*, (I rule;); *lædo*, (I hurt;); *guberno*, (I govern;) and certain other Verbs, are joined to an Accusative against the Rule: as, *The camp pleases many.*—*Thou, O-Roman, remember to-rule the nations with thy sway.*

Obs. 5. *Tempero* and *moderor*, (I govern or restrain,) sometimes have a Dative, sometimes an Accusative: as, *A harmless woman governs stepchildren.*—*He governs mouths with the bit.*—*This person restrains horses, who (will) not restrain his anger.*

§ 125. *G. R. III.*—Verbs compounded with the Adverbs *bene*, (well;) *satis*, (enough;) *male*, (ill;) and with Prepositions, especially these, *ad*, *ante*, *ab*, *in*, *inter*, *de*, *sub*, *super*, *ob*, *con*, *post*, and *præ*, generally govern a Dative. (1.) Transitive Verbs: as, *The giants waged war upon the Gods.*—(*We*) *often put under hens the eggs of ducks.*—*God has set over the body the soul as its master.*—(2.) Neuter Verbs: as, *I satisfy the rest always; never myself* (*mibi ipsi*).—*Sicily formerly was contiguous to Italy.*—*My husband always is absent from me.*—*Divers kinds of death hang over men.*—*Red gold gleams between the scales.*—*Many things are wanting to those seeking many things.*—*Lucumo survived his father.*—*Vices steal upon us under the name of virtues.*⁸

Obs. Many of these vary their construction: as, *Heir succeeds heir, as wave wave.*—*The Helvetii surpass the remaining Gauls in valour.*—*These faults exist in love.*

[¹ This Rule is the most general for the Dative Case; under it the Dative is usually called *Dativus Commodi et Incommodi*. Among the examples of its use we may notice *metuo*, *timeo*, *verecor*, *alicui* (I am alarmed for some one); *caveo alicui* (I take precaution for some one); *consulo*, *prospicio*, *alicui* (I provide for some one's interest): as, *Cæsar veritus est navibus.*—*CÆS. Scabiem pecori caveto.*—*CATO. Deus consulit rebus humanis.*—*CIC. Consulite vobis, prospicite patriæ.*—*CIC.*

² *Est mihi, sunt mihi, est tibi, sunt tibi, &c.*, are rendered in English, I have, thou hast, &c. The compounds of *sum*, except *possum*, also govern a Dative.

³ Though this Dative is said to be redundant, it generally implies that the Person whom it indicates is remotely interested in the Subject: some grammarians call it *Dativus Ethicus*; others the Dative of Reference.

⁴ The Dative under G. R. II. and III. may be called the Dative of the Remoter Object, or the Transmissive Dative, though many of the examples might with equal fitness be referred to G. R. I., or Dativus Commodi et Incommodi. Among the Adjectives followed by a Dative are:—Advantage and Disadvantage: *bonus, fructuosus, prosper, salutaris, utilis, &c.*; *calamitosus, damnosus, exitialis, funestus, inutilis, malus, noxius, periculosus, &c.* Communion and Separation: *communis, consors*, and many compounded with *con*; *discordans, dissonus*, and many compounded with *dis*. Comparison: *æqualis, æmulus, par, similis, &c.*; *dissimilis, dispar, impar, inæqualis, &c.* Ease and Difficulty: *expeditus, facilis, levis, obvius, pervius, pronus, proclivis, &c.*; *arduus, difficilis, gravis, inivus, laboriosus, &c.* Fitness and Unfitness: *aptus, accommodatus, commodus, decorus, habilis, honestus, idoneus, necessarius, natus, opportunus, proprius, &c.*; *incommodus, indecorus, turpis, &c.* Kindness and Unkindness: *amicus, æquus, benignus, blandus, clemens, dexter, lenis, mitis, propitius, secundus, &c.*; *asper, adversus, crudelis, hostilis, infensus, infestus, iniquus, inimicus, iratus, lævus, &c.* Nearness and Remoteness: *contiguus, finitimus, propinquus, propior, proximus, vicinus, &c.*; *contrarius, diversus, &c.* Pleasantness and Unpleasantness: *acceptus, carus, dulcis, gratus, jucundus, suavis, &c.*; *amarus, ingratus, molestus, odiosus, &c.*; Affinity and Non-Affinity: *affinis, cognatus, &c.*; *alienus, &c.*; Demonstration and Obscurity: *apertus, certus, cognitus, compertus, conspicuus, liquidus, manifestus, notus, &c.*; *ambiguus, dubius, cæcus, ignotus, incertus, obscurus, &c.* Faith and Faithlessness: *credulus, fidus, fidelis, &c.*; *infidus, infidelis, &c.* Obedience and Disobedience: *obnoxius, obsequiosus, submissus, supplex, &c.*; *contumax, rebellis, &c.*: with some few which cannot be classed; as, *superstes*..

The Adverbs and Substantives followed by a Dative have, in general, meanings akin to those of the Adjectives: as, *obviam, præstò, &c.*; *comes, hostis, &c.*

Among the Verbs followed by a Dative are:—Advantage and Disadvantage: *commodo, prosum, proficio, &c.*; *incommodo, noceo, officio, obsum, &c.* Communion and Separation: *communico* (and many others compounded with *con*), *hæreo, jungo, misceo, &c.*; *disto, disjungo*, and many compounded with *dis*. Consecration: *consecro, dedico, dico, devoteo, sacro, &c.* Help: *auxilior, medeor, opitutor, succurro, subvenio, &c.* Habit: *assuefacio, assuesco, consuesco, &c.* Kindness and Unkindness: *suaveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, patrocinator, plaudo, secundo, studeo, &c.*; *calumnior, convicior, invideo, insidior, &c.* Pleasantness and Unpleasantness: *arrideo, placeo, &c.*; *displiceo, &c.* Delivery: *cedo, do, dono, dedo, largior, mitto, præbeo, prodo, suppedito, tradeo, &c.* Indulgence and Resentment: *condono, indulgeo, ignosco, parco, &c.*; *irascor, minor, stomachor, succenseo, &c.* Demonstration and Obscurity: *appareo, declaro, demonstro, innotesco, monstro, persuadeo, pateo, probo, suadeo, videor, &c.*; *lateo, &c.* Promise: *polliceor, promitto, recipio, spondeo, voveo, &c.* Faith and Mistrust: *credo, confido, committo, fido, permitto, &c.*; *diffido, &c.* Narration: *aiò, affirmo, dico, narro, nuntio, respondeo, renuntio, scribo, &c.* Compliance and Repugnance: *adstipulor, assentor, assentior, adulor, ausculto, blandior, morigeror, obsequor, obtempero, obedio, pareo, suffragor, &c.*; *adversor, æmulor, discrepo, dissideo, differo, dissentio, dissentior, obsto, obliuctor, obrecto, reductor, remitor, resisto, repugno, &c.*; and, in poetry, *beilo, certo, contendo, pugno* (which in prose take *cum* with Ablatives.) Command and Subservience: *dominor, impero, mando, præcipio, regno,*

&c. ; *ancillor, famulor, ministro, servio, supplico*, &c. But many of these Verbs, as well as of those afterwards mentioned, vary their constructions, sometimes without a change of meaning, sometimes with one. Thus we may say, *dono tibi munus, or dono te munere*, in the same sense : *amulor tibi*, I rival you ; *amulor te*, I imitate you. On the various constructions of Latin Verbs a volume might be written ; but the student will best acquire them from reading, observation, and practice.

⁵ Of the Adjectives here mentioned, *æqualis, proprius, affinis, sacer, æmulus*, and *superstes*, are followed sometimes by a Dative, sometimes by a Genitive : *communis* by Dative, Genitive, and *apud, inter, cum*, with their Cases ; *par* by Dative, Genitive, Ablative, and *cum* with its Case ; *alienus* by Dative, Genitive, Ablative, and *a* and *ab* with their Case ; *dissimilis, similis, dispar*, by Dative, Genitive, and *inter* with its Case ; *consors* by Genitive or Dative of person, and Genitive of thing : *socius* by Dative, Genitive, and *cum* with its Case ; *conscius* by Dative of person, Genitive and Dative of thing, and *de* with its Case. The construction of Verbs of Communication and Comparison (*comparo, confero*, &c.) is with Dative, *cum* and Ablative, or *inter* and Accusative.

⁶ For the construction of these Adjectives usage must be carefully observed : some taking a Dative only, as, *arrogans, asper, dexter, ferus*, &c. (*alicui*) : others a Dative or Accusative with Preposition, as, *durus, gravis, iniquus, sævus*, &c. (*alicui vel in aliquem*) ; *benignus, benevolus, molestus*, &c. (*alicui vel erga aliquem*) ; *mitis, comis* (*alicui, vel in, erga aliquem*) ; *gratus* (*alicui, vel in, erga, adversus aliquem*) : others only an Accusative with Preposition, as, *acer, beneficus, pius, severus, vehemens*, &c. (*in aliquem*) . See Stallbaum's *Ruddiman*, Pars II. p. 89. The phrase *in vulgus* is elegantly used after such Adjectives as *gratus, acceptus, ignotus*, &c. ; as, *Id in vulgus gratum esse sentimus*.—CIC.

⁷ So *accommodatus, commodus, conveniens, habilis, idoneus, opportunus, ineptus, inhabilis, necessarius, salutaris*, &c. ; *alacer, audax, celer, firmus, fortis, imbecillus, ingeniosus, intentus, piger, proclivis, paratus, rudis, tardus*, &c. ; with many more. See Stallbaum's *Ruddiman*, Pars II. pp. 95, 96. With some *in* is used as well as *ad*.

⁸ Among Compound Verbs governing a Dative are :—(1.) Transitive : *addico, adjudico, affingo, annumero, adhibeo, adjicio, admoveo, adnecto, applico, affero, appuro, antefero, antepono, committo, derogo, defero, injungo, impono, imprimo, insero, injicio, ingero, inuro, infero, insinuo, interjicio, interpono, objicio, effundo, oppono, offero, obdo, obduco, posthabeo, postpono, præfero, præficio, præpono, præmitto, prætendo, prætexo, præopto, subjicio, suggero, submitto, suppono, subscribo, subdo, substerno, substruo, superstruo*. (2.) Intransitive : *accedo, acclamo, accumbo, alludo, annuo, adsideo, adspiro, adrepo, adsto, adsisto, assurgo, antecello, anteverto, anteo, colludo, convivio, consono, benedico, excello, incumbo, indormio, inhio, impendeo, insideo, insto, insisto, insudo, insulto, invigilo, illucrymo, immineo, immorior, immoror, intervenio, maledico, obrepo, observor, occurro, obstrepo, præluceo, præniteo, præsto, satisdo, satisfacio, succedo, succumbo, sufficio, suberesco, subjaceo, subrepo, supervenio, supercurro, supersto*. (See Stallbaum's *Ruddiman*, Pars II. p. 134. &c., for the various constructions of Compound Verbs and others.) Many Verbs which in the simple form are Neuter obtain a purely Transitive force in composition, and always govern an Accusative ; as, *aggredior*,

adeo, invado, in eo, præcedo, præfluo, obo, oppugno, &c. Words compounded with *circum, præter, trans*, as well as some others, govern, for the most part, an Accusative by force of the Preposition. Others, as, *allatro, attendo, antecedo, præco, &c.*, govern both Dative and Accusative; others Dative or a Preposition with its Case: as, *insum, incumbo*, and Verbs of Comparison.]

B. DATIVE OF-THE-AGENT.

§ 126. *G. R.*—The-Dative of-the-Agent follows Verbal-Adjectives in *bilis*; the-Gerund in *dum*, and the-Gerundive in *dus*; more-rarely Perfect Participles, most-rarely Verbs: as, *He died lamented by-many good-men.*—*Chremes remains, who is to-be-entreated by-me.*—*A-great citizen died and dreaded by-Otho.*—*Here I am a-barbarian, because I-am-understood not by-any-one.*

Obs. Passive Verbs and Participles generally have an-Ablative of-the-Agent with the-Preposition *a* or *ab*: as, *He-is-praised by these, he-is-blamed by those.*—*The-death of-Crassus was bewailed by many.*

C. DATIVE OF-THE-THING DESIGNED.

§ 127. *G. R.*—The-Dative of-the-thing designed is-added to-the-Verb *sum* and many others, either for a-Nominative or for an-Accusative: as, *The-ant is for-a-pattern of-great toil.*—*I-have-lost the-kernel: he-has-left the-shells for-pawn.*¹

Obs. Often also a-double Dative is-admitted, one of-the-object, but the-other of-the-thing designed: as, *The-greedy sea is a-destruction to-sailors.*—*Pausanias came as-an-aid to-the-Athenians.*²

[¹ Among the phrases under this Rule remark *dono dare, muneri dare, dono accipere, fœnori dare, pignori opponere, ire subsidio, receptui canere, laudi dare, vitio dare, vitio vertere, &c.*

² The Predicate Proper Name following such an expression as *est mihi nomen, datur mihi nomen, &c.*, may stand in the Nominative or Dative Case: as, *Huic fontis nomen Arethusa est.*—*CIC. Ascanius, cui nunc cognomen Iulo additur.*—*VIRG.*]

THE-GENITIVE.

§ 128. The-Genitive is either Subjective or Objective. A. Subjective: as, *Crassus's defence.* (that-is, *the-speech in-which Crassus defended.*) B. Objective: as, *The-defence of-Gabinus.* (that is, *the-speech in-which Gabinus was defended.*) Sometimes both Genitives depend on the-same Substantive: as, *Crassus's defence of-Gabinus was sudden.* (that is, *the-speech in-which Crassus defended Gabinus.*) So, *the-fear of-the-enemy, the-love of-God*, and the-like, may be-spoken in-a-twofold sense.

§ 129. A. The-Subjective Genitive shows in the-first-place the-author, and the-possessor; also quality, distribution.

(a.) *G. R. I.*—The-Genitive of-the-author and of-the-possessor follows almost all Substantives, likewise the-Verbs *sum*, (I am;) *facio*, (I make;) *fiō*, (I become;) by the-Ellipse of-a-Substantive: as, *The-statues of-Polycletus are quite perfect.*—*The-properties of-individuals are the-riches of-the-state.*—*All-things which were the-woman's become the-man's.*—*Scipio made Spain of-Roman dominion.*¹

§ 130. *Obs. 1.* *Est* Impersonal is-put-before a-Genitive, if *nature*, *token*, *office*, or *duty*, is-understood: as, *It-is (the-nature) of-any man to-err.*—*It-is (the token) of-a-dishonest man to-deceive by-a-lie.*—*It-is (the-office) of-the-most-exalted dignity to-defend the-wretched.*—*It-is (the-duty) of-a-young-man to-reverence (his) elders (maiores natu.)*²

Obs. 2. An-Ellipse of-other Nouns also happens before a-Genitive: as *Hector's Andromache.* (supply *wife*.)—*Glaucus's Deiphobe.* (supply *daughter*.)—*We-had-come to Vesta's.* (supply *temple*.)—*I see this-man's Byrrhia.* (supply *slave*.)³

Obs. 3. The Genitives, *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, are-used Objectively alone; the Possessives *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, are-put Subjectively: as, *If thou-hast (tibi est) care of-me, have (sit tibi) care of-thyself.*—*Whither (has) thy (tibi) care of-me departed?*—*The-boy, my greatest care, prepares to-go a-hunting.*—*Nicias (is) exceedingly delighted with-thy remembrance of-him.*⁴

(*Obs. 1.*) The-Personal Genitive contained in the-Possessive often takes another Genitive agreeing-with or in-apposition-to itself: as, *The-commonwealth was preserved by-the-exertion of-me alone.*—*The-fault of-me alone can not be-amended.*—*Birds intrust their-fledged young to-their own confidence.*—*You-saw the-eyes of-me weeping.*—*I-discerned the-zeal of-thee a-young-man.*

(*Obs. 2.*) *Nostri*, *vestri*, are-put Objectively; *nostrum*, *vestrum*, Partitively.

§ 132. (b.) *G. R. II.* The-Genitive of-Quality follows Substantives and Copulative Verbs: as, *A-boy of-ingenuous countenance and ingenuous modesty.*—*Claudius was (a-man) of-very-short slumber.*

Obs. Quality is-put also in the-Ablative: as, *An-old-man with-long beard, with-rough hair.*⁵

§ 133. (c.) The-Genitive of-Distribution follows Adjectives, Pronouns, Adverbs, and Substantives.

G. R. III. Partitive words, Numerals, Comparatives, and Superlatives, govern a-Genitive of-the-thing distributed.

Note.—The-Adjective or Pronoun will-be generally in the-same Gender with the-Genitive: the Genitive will-be in-the Plural Number, unless it-be a-collective Noun.

1. Adjectives and Partitive Pronouns: *alius*, (another) *alter*, (the-other, one of two); *uter*, (which of two); *ullus*, (any); *plurique*, (most); *pauci*, (few); *multi*, (many); *nullus*, (none); *solus*,

(alone;) and *singuli*, (each;) *cæteri*, (the-rest;) and *reliqui*, (the-remainder;) *hic*, (this;) *is, ille*, (he or that:;) *qui*, (who;) and *quis*, (who?) *tot*, (so-many;) *quot*, (how-many;) with their-compounds; and what-ever other Adjective acquires a-Partitive meaning: as, *Of virtues one-man excels in one* (another in another.)—*Many of these trees were planted by-my own hand.*—*Of-beasts, none is more-sagacious than-the-elephant.*—*Which of-fools (is) blessed?*—*I-am-charmed with-each of-you.*—*Chosen youths.*—*We-follow thee, holy-one of-gods.*

2. Numerals, whether Cardinal or Ordinal: also *princeps*, (chief;) *medius*, (middle;) as, *To-man alone of-animals sorrow has-been given.* *Sylla lost a-hundred and-twenty of-his-men.*—*Sicily first of-all nations was called a-province.*—*Now chief of-youths, next about-to-be of-men.*—*Rome is the-middle of-the-districts of-Italy.*

3. Comparatives and Superlatives: as, *The-elder of-the-Neros.*—*The-Belgæ are bravest of-the-Gauls.*⁶

4. Superlative Adverbs: as, *This belongs to thee least of-all-men.*

5. Substantives Partitive and put Partitively: as, *Of-mortals nobody is-wise at-all hours.*—*Of-fishes the-females (are) larger than the-males.*⁷

§ 134. *Obs.* These Genitives, *loci, locorum, gentium, terrarum*, follow Adverbs of Place, *ed* (thither) *quò* (whither) *ubi* (where) *usquam* (anywhere) *longè* (afar) and the-like: as, *I-think we-must-migrate to-some-quarter of-the-world.*—*A-good man shall-be-loved by us, wherever in-the-world he-shall-be.*—*Perseus says (that) he has (sibi esse) a-refuge nowhere in-the-world.*⁸

§ 135. *G. R. IV.*—Substantives, Adverbs, also Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns signifying Quantity, govern a-Genitive of-the-thing distributed: as, *Justice claims no reward.*—*Enough of-eloquence, too-little of-wisdom.*—*God gives to-one-man one advantage (to another.)*—*He-has half done who has-begun well.*—*As-much of-credit as of-money.*⁹

§ 136. *Note.*—The-Prepositions *ex, in, inter, ante, de*, also effect distribution; as, *Nought of these-things, which we-see, remains.*—*Thales was wisest among the-seven.*—*The-Dnieper (is) pleasantest among the-rivers of-Scythia.*—*Turnus most-beautiful before all.*—*One sister from many was gloriously false towards her-father.*

§ 137. *B.* The-Objective Genitive follows very-many Substantives and Adjectives, likewise some Verbs.

G. R. I.—Many Substantives, in which is a-certain Transitive force, govern an-Objective Genitive: as, *Love of-knowledge is implanted-in the-mind.*

Obs. This Genitive sometimes is-put for a-Preposition with its-Case: as, *The-war of-the-Helvetians.* (that is, *with the-Helvetians.*)

§ 138. (These) govern a-Genitive of-the-Object; Verbal-Adjectives in *az*, some Participles put Adjectively, and Adjectives signifying knowledge, desire, memory, fear, power, care, accusation, want, and those which stand in-a-contrary sense; the-poets give many others: as, *Time devourer of-things*.—*A-mind covetous of-another's property, lavish of-his-own*.—*The mind of-men is ignorant of-fate*.—*All-men hate one-forgetful of-a-benefit*.—*O late in-your-studies*.¹⁰

§ 139. *G. R. III*.—Certain Verbs of-accusing, convicting, acquitting, condemning, govern, with an-Accusative of-the-person, a-Genitive of-the-charge, or sometimes of-the-punishment: as, *Cicero accuses Verres of-avarice*.—*We condemn soothsayers (as guilty) of-folly*.—*Do-not summon any innocent-man on-a-capital-charge*.

Obs. 1. For this Genitive a-Preposition, especially *de*, with its Case (is) often put: as, *He-is-accused of stabbing* (lit. *among stabbing*), and *of poisoning*.

Obs. 2. These Ablatives, *crimine, nomine, lege, scelere, capite*, and some others, are-used without a-Preposition: as, *Themistocles was condemned in-his-absence on-a-charge of-treachery*.—*Having-been-questioned under-the-laws of-bribery he-suffered punishment*.—*They bawl-out that-Fulvius must-be-impeached for-his-life*.¹¹

Obs. 3. In-like-manner Verbs of reminding, with an-Accusative of-the-person, govern a-Genitive of-the-thing: as, *Adverse circumstances remind us of-religious-duties*.

(*Obs.*) Or an-Ablative with the-Preposition *de*: as, *Remind Terentia of the-will*.

§ 140. *G. R. IV*.—*Memini* (I-remember) *recordor, reminiscor* (I-recollect) *obliviscor* (I-forget) govern sometimes a-Genitive, sometimes an-Accusative Case: as, *God commands thee to-remember death*.—*Dying he-remembers sweet Argi*.¹²

§ 141. *Misereor, miserescor* (I-pity) are-joined to-a-Genitive; *miseror, commiseror* (I-compassionate) to-an-Accusative: as, *Thou-pitiest us not-at-all*.—*Pity, I-beseech, the-Arcadian king*.—*Agesilaus compassionated the-fortune of-Greece*.

§ 142. *Not. 1.* The-Genitive is sometimes put after Verbs of-ceasing, freeing, filling, wanting; but after *egeo* and *indigeo* (I need) the-use of-the-Genitive is more-customary: as, *Cease at-length from-effeminate complaints*.—*These things surfeit me of-life*.—*Virtue needs abundant exercise*.

Not. 2. Also after Verbs of-power; *potior* (I-gain) *adipiscor* (I-acquire) *regno* (I-reign-over); as, *The-Romans gained the-standards and arms*.—*Galba acquired the-government by-arms*.—*Daunus reigned-over rural tribes*.¹³

[¹ The Possessive or Subjective Genitive is sometimes called Attributive, because it is often equivalent to an Epithet. Thus it is the same thing to say *Polycleti signa* or *Polycletea signa*; *patris amor* (in filium) or *paternus amor*. See N. 4.

The Dativus Commodi is often substituted for the Possessive Genitive: as, *Romulus in Palatio prima urbi fundamenta jecit*.—LIV. *Naturā tu illi pater es, consiliis ego*.—TER. So, *præfectus* and *legatus*, which are properly Participles, sometimes have a Genitive, sometimes a Dative: as, *præfectus castrorum* and *præfectus castris*.—TAC.

² To these we may add *proprium*, property. All these words are occasionally found before the Genitive: as, *Id viri est officium*.—CIC. *Principum munus est resistere levitati multitudinis*.—CIC. *Sapientis est proprium, nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facere*.—CIC.

The same Genitive follows Verbs of *thinking* by an ellipse of the Infinitive *esse*: as, *Tempori cedere habetur sapientis*.—CIC. For this Genitive are put Possessive Pronouns and other Adjectives: as, *Nostrum est ferre modicæ populi voluntates*.—CIC. *Et agere et pati fortia, Romanum est*.—LIV.

We may here notice the phrases, *moris esse, consuetudinis esse, tutelæ esse, arbitrii esse, juris esse, lucri facere*, &c.: as, *Hoc moris est Græcorum*.—CIC. *Erat hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis*.—CÆS. *Victos tutelæ nostræ esse diximus*.—LIV. *A Verre omnem illam pecuniam lucri factam videtis*.—CIC.

³ Another Ellipse of the governing Noun before the Genitive is, when that Noun is found in a previous part of the sentence, whether in the same or in a different case: as, *Meo judicio stare malo, quàm omnium reliquorum*.—CIC. *Quis est qui possit conferre vitam Trebonii cum Dolabellæ?*—CIC. This takes place when two different species of the same generic idea are spoken of; but where one species is compared with the whole generic idea itself, the Noun is repeated or an emphatic Pronoun (*hic* or *ille*) put for it: as, *Nulla est celeritas, quæ possit cum animi celeritate contendere*.—CIC. *Cum omnis arrogantia odiosa est, tum illa ingenii atque eloquentiæ multo molestissima*.—CIC.

Gratiâ, causâ, ergo, more, modo, ritu, vice, instar, govern a Genitive: of which words the three first always follow the Genitive they govern; as, *Bestiæ hominum gratiâ generatæ sunt*.—CIC. *Instar montis equus*.—VIRG.

⁴ The Possessive Pronouns are sometimes used for the Objective Genitive: as, *Desiderium vestrum ferre non possum*.—CIC.

The Genitives *mei, tui, sui*, may follow the Partitive words *pars, nihil, dimidium*, &c.: as, *Magna pars mei vitabit Libitinam*.—HOR.

Adjectives derived from Nouns are often used attributively instead of the Genitive of their Primitives; commonly instead of the Subjective Genitive; as, *Sullanus exercitus* for *Sullæ exercitus*, *flamen Martialis* for *flamen Martis*: sometimes for the Objective Genitive; as, *bellum regium* for *bellum contra regem*, *timor externus* for *timor exterorum*. 'Native of a place' is almost always expressed by an Adjective derived from the place: as, *Dionysius Halicarnassæus* for *Dionysius Halicarnassii natus*.

⁵ The Genitive of Quality generally implies the permanence of that quality, the Ablative a temporary state; but the distinction is not always observed. The Genitive or Ablative of Quality is always accompanied with an attributive Adjective.

Here belong the Genitives of value, measure, number, age, material, as, *Bibliotheca multorum nummorum*.—CIC. *Quatuor jugerum ager*.—LIV. *Classis septuaginta navium*.—NEP. *Filius annorum novem*.—NEP. *Odoratum lauri nemus*.—VIRG. *Ager quatuor jugerum*, and *quatuor jugera agri*, may be used indifferently.

In monumental inscriptions we find the person's tribe expressed by the Ablative of the Adjective, understanding *tribu*: as, *Ser. Sulpicius Q. F. Lemonid Rufus*; that is, *Servius Sulpicius Rufus, Quinti filius, Lemonid tribu*.

⁶ The Comparative distributes two things; the Superlative more. In such expressions as, *avium loquaciores* (PLIN.), the Subject, "birds," is distributed in two classes.

Partitives sometimes differ in gender from the Genitive: as, *Indus est omnium fluminum maximus*.—CIC. *Dulcissime rerum*.—HOR.

Partitives sometimes govern a Genitive of a Collective Noun: as, *Plato totius Græciæ doctissimus fuit*.—CIC. *Princeps senatus*.—CIC.

⁷ The Distributive and the thing distributed often agree in case: as, *Nostri septuaginta ceciderunt*.—CÆS. This occurs when Pronouns Personal, Possessive, Relative, or Demonstrative, are followed by a Numeral, or by *pauci*, *nulli*, *multi*, *plures*, *plurimi*, &c., denoting, not a part, but the whole. The English idiom, using *of*, differs from the Latin.

⁸ The other Adverbs so used are, *eodem*, *quoquò*, *quovis*, *aliquo*, *ubinam*, *ubivis*, *ubicunque*, *ubique*, *unde*, *huc*, *hucine*, *ibidem*, *nusquam*, &c. Other Genitives are found with them, but not in Cicero: as, *Hucine rerum venimus?*—PEBS. *Eò deliciarum pervenimus, ut nisi gemmas calcare nolumus*.—SEN. *Tum (tunc) temporis* occurs in Justin: *interea loci* (meanwhile) in the Comic poets; also *minimè gentium* (least in the world, by no means).

Here belongs the Ciceronian phrase *quoad ejus*: as, *Ne intermittas, quoad ejus facere poteris, scribere ad me*.—CIC. Also note the expressions *pridie ejus diei*, *postridie ejus diei*.

⁹ Among the words thus governing a Genitive are *nil*, *satis*, *affatim*, *abundè*, *nimis*, *partim*, *parum*, *aliud*, *id*, *illud*, *hoc*, *idem*, *quod*, *quid*, *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *nimum*, *dimidium*. They may also be followed by the Genitive of an Adjective of the 1st or 2nd Declension: but an Adjective of the 3rd is commonly put in the same case with the word of Quantity: as, *Ne quid falsi dicere audeas, ne quid veri non audeas*.—CIC. *Nec viget quicquam simile aut secundum*.—HOR. *Id ætatis* is elegantly put for *æd ætate*; *id temporis* for *eo tempore*.

Hence the Verb *satago* (I-am-busy) being compounded of *sat* and *ago*, takes a Genitive: as, *Clinia rerum suarum satagit*.—TER. *Nunc agitas sat tute suarum rerum*.—PLAUT.

Neuter Adjectives of either Number, which are put abstractly for Substantives, sometimes govern a Genitive: as, *Serum est diei*.—LIV. *Adolescens in lubrico ætatis est*.—PLIN. *Incerta casuum reputa*.—LIV. *Occulta saltuum*.—TAC. *Opaca locorum*.—VIRG. These constructions are not found in Cicero; but they occur in Livy, and abound in Tacitus. In poetry they are frequent.

¹⁰ Among the words which govern a Genitive by this Rule are:—Verbal Adjectives in *az*: *capax, edax, ferax, fugax, pertinax, rapax, sagax, tenax, vorax*. Participles put Adjectively: *amans, appetens, contemnens, colens, cupiens, despiciens, diligens, efficiens, experiens, fugiens, intelligens, metuens, negligens, observans, patiens, proferens, sciens, sitiens, timens, tolerans, bene gerens, servantissimus*. Adjectives of Knowledge and Ignorance: *assuetus, callidus, certus, certior, conscius, consultus, docilis, doctus, expertus, gnarus, peritus, præsciens, præsagus, providus, scilus, solers, prudens; ambiguus, dubius, inscius, incertus, inexpertus, ignarus, imperitus, improvidus, imprudens, indoctus, insolens, insuetus, nescius, rudis*: Desire and Dislike: *avarus, avidus, cupidus; fastidiosus*; Memory and Forgetfulness: *memor: immemor, oblitus*. Fear and Fearlessness: *anxius, formidolosus, pavidus, sollicitus, timidus, trepidus; impavidus, intrepidus, interritus*. Power and Impotence: *consors, compos, particeps, potens; expers, exsors, impos, impotens*. Care and Carelessness: *curiosus, diligens, studiosus; incuriosus, incautus, negligens, securus*. Accusation, Criminality and Innocence: *compertus, manifestus, reus, notius, suspectus; insons, innocens, innoxius*. Want and Abundance: *egenus, indigus, inops, immunis, inanis, inexplētus, jejunus, liber, modicus, nudus, orbis, pauper, purus, sterilis, truncus, viciuus, viduus; abundans, beatus, benignus, copiosus, dives, felix, ferax, fertilis, fecundus, fetus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, lætus, immodicus, largus, prælargus, liberalis, locuples, nimius, onustus, opulentus, plenus, prodigius, refertus, satur, tumidus, uber*; most of which govern also (and in prose usually, except *plenus, egenus, pauper, indigus*, and the Adjectives compounded with *in*,) an Ablative Case. *Plenus* almost always has a Genitive in Cicero.

Many Adjectives above-mentioned are also constructed with Prepositions; as, *Callidus ad fraudem*.—CIC. *Prudens in jure*.—CIC. *Securus de bello Romano*.—LIV. Some with other Cases; as, *Peritus bello*—PATERC. *Dulces docta modos*.—HOB.

A list of other Adjectives found with a Genitive Case after them is given in Stallbaum's *Ruddiman*, Pars. II. p. 73. None of the instances occur in Cicero but *invidus laudis*; a few only in Livy, many in Tacitus. Among the poets, Virgil has *fessus rerum; fidissima tui regina; integer ævi; maturus ævi; vanus veri*, &c.: Horace, *lassus maris; medius pacis et belli; integer vitæ; divina avis imbrum; prospera frugum; exsul patriæ*, &c.; but most of the examples are taken from poets of a less pure age, Statius, Silius, Claudian, &c. Here, as every where else, the student must carefully distinguish between prosaic and poetical idioms; and, in writing Latin prose, he must seldom use a construction for which he cannot adduce the authority of Cicero, Livy, Cæsar, or Nepos.

¹¹ Among these Verbs are:—Accusation: *accuso, arguo, appello, anquiro, arcesso, capto, compello, cito, defero, incuso, insimulo, interrogo, postulo, reum ago*, and *reum facio*. Conviction: *alligo, astringo, convinco, obligo*,

obstringo, prehendo, deprehendo, teneo. Acquittal: *absolvo, libero, purgo.* Condemnation: *damno, condemno, infamo, noto*; also *judico, plecto.* Most Verbs of extra-judicial accusation do not govern a Genitive, but an Accusative only; as, *carpo, criminor, culpo*, &c.: and the first-named Verbs, when used of extra-judicial accusation, generally take an Accusative; as, *Samnites ultro incusabant injurias Romanorum.*—LIV. *Capitis* follows *accuso, arcesso*, and *absolvo*; *capitis* or *capite* may be used with *anquiro* (said of an impeachment by the Tribunes, who determined the punishment beforehand), *damno, condemno.* So *anquirere pecuniâ, damnare quindecim millibus* (LIV.), *damnare octupli.*—CIC. The Dative, and *ad* with the Accusative, are also used after *damno* and *condemno* by poets and later writers: as *Morti damnatus.*—LUCR. *Caligula multos honesti ordinis ad metalla et munitiones viarum, aut ad bestias condemnnavit.*—SUET.

Damnare voti means to adjudge a person to the payment of a vow, by granting to him the object of the vow.

The Genitive remains after these Verbs in the Passive voice.

¹² Verbs of remembering sometimes are followed by *de* and its Case: as, *De Clodio ne meminisse quidem volo.*—CIC. The phrase *venit in mentem* is used either with a Genitive, or with a Nominative, or with the Preposition *de* and an Ablative: as, *Non dubito, Verres, quin tuarum tibi scelerum veniat in mentem.*—CIC. *Non venit in mentem pugna apud Regillum lacum?*—LIV. *Astutè venit ei in mentem de speculo.*—PLAUT.

¹³ To these rarer instances may be added the following:—

(1.) The Genitive of the part affected; as, *Animi pendeo.*—CIC. *Consolantur Lucretiam ægram animi.*—LIV.

(2.) The Genitive of cause; as, *Laudabat leti juvenem.*—SIL. *Miser morum.*—STAT. *Notus in fratres animi paterni.*—HOR. This is a Greek construction, and used almost solely by poets, except when the Gerundive accompanies the Genitive; as *Regium imperium libertatis conservandæ fuit.*—SALL. (See Stallbaum's *Ruddiman*, Pars. II. p. 73.)

(3.) The distributed Genitive after Verbs: as, *Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium.*—HOR.

(4.) The elliptic Genitive of drinking toasts: as, *De lunæ properè novæ; da noctis mediæ* (i.e. *cyathum.*)—HOR.]

THE-ABLATIVE.

§ 143. The-Ablative is the-Case which defines the-circumstances of-the-Action.

G. R.—Adjectives, Verbs, and sometimes Substantives, admit an-Ablative signifying the-cause, or instrument, or manner, or material, or any-soever limitation of-a-thing or action.

A. The-Ablative of-cause follows Adjectives, Verbs, and especially Participles: as, *Dido wild with-horrid purposes.*—*The-good hate to-sin from-love of-virtue; the-bad hate to-sin from-fear of-punishment.*—*A-mind overcome by-vicious lusts is-ruined.*¹

§ 144. *Obs.* To this Rule must be referred the Ablative after Verbs and Participles of origin : as, *Atræus grandson of Tantalus, son of Pelops.—O thou sprung from the blood of gods.—O thou sprung from Saturn.*²

§ 145. B. The Ablative of the instrument follows Verbs, more rarely Adjectives : as, *The wolf attacks with his tooth, the bull with his horn.*

C. The Ablative of manner generally follows Verbs : as, *Wrong is done in two manners, by violence or deceit.*

Obs. Sometimes it takes the Preposition *cum* : as, *He wrote with great care and diligence.—Whoever thou art, mind thou readest those things with indulgence.*³

§ 146. D. (a.) The Ablative of matter follows Verbs of constructing, consisting, and the like : as, *We consist of soul and body.*

Obs. Or with the Preposition *ex* : as, *A happy life consists of good actions.*⁴

§ 147. (b.) *Fungor* (I-discharge) *frutor* (I-enjoy) *utor* (I-use) *vescor* (I-eat) *potior* (I-gain) govern an Ablative : as, *I will discharge the office of a whetstone.—When he was able to use his victory, he chose rather to enjoy (it).—The Numidians feed on wild flesh.—He gains the gold by force.*

Obs. These Verbs sometimes have an Accusative : as, *He discharged the duty of a good man.*

§ 148. (c.) Adjectives and Verbs of *abounding, filling, loading*, and the opposite to these, are joined to an Ablative : as, *Love is very fruitful both in honey and gall.—The soul is never void of thought and motion.—It is shameful to be dissolved in luxury.—To be free from blame is a very great comfort.*⁵

§ 149. (d.) *Opus* and *usus*, (need,) govern an Ablative : as, *Where evidences of facts are at hand, what need is there of words?*—*My son has need of twenty minas.*⁶

(e.) *Dignus* (worthy) *indignus* (unworthy) *præditus* (endued) *fre-tus* (relying), also the Verb *dignor* (I-deem worthy) govern an Ablative : as, *The Muse forbids the man worthy of praise to die.—Lentulus is endued with uncommon modesty.—I indeed deem not myself worthy of such an honour.*⁷

§ 150. The Ablative of limitation extends widely.

(a.) The Ablative of respect is joined especially to Adjectives, also to Verbs and Substantives : as, *Ennius mightiest in genius, untrained in art.—Moles shorn of eyes have dug burrows.—Agesilaus was lame in one foot.—He trembles both in heart and knees.*

Obs. To this rule are referred those Ablatives, *domo, natione, numero*, and the like ; also *ætate* and *natu* : as, *They are Carthaginians by family.—Mardonius a Mede by nation.—He is not aged (grandis natu), but yet already advanced in life.—Ennius was older (major natu) than Plautus and Nævius.*⁸

§ 151. (b.) The-Ablative of-price follows Verbs and Adjectives, signifying purchase, sale, or valuation : as, *I buy not hope at-a-price.*—*Many an-honour is-sold for-gold.*—*He-bids-for a-hundred Greeks at-a-short hundred-as-piece.*—*The-victory cost the-blood of-many.*—*The-soul and body of-the-soldiers are-valued at-ten asses a day.*—*What is not needful, is dear at-a-penny.*

Obs. 1. These Ablatives, *vili, parvo, minimo, nimio, magno, plurimo, duplo*, and *dimidio*, are-used by Ellipse, the-word *pretio* being-understood : as, *Hunger costs little, daintiness a-great-deal.*

Obs. 2. The-value of-a-thing generally has a-Genitive, especially those elliptical (Genitives) *parvi, minimi, magni, plurimi*, (and) the like : as, *A-wise-man deems pain of-no-account.*—*Virtue holds pleasure of-very-little-worth.*—*One eye-witness is of-more-value than ten hearsay-(witnesses).*

(Obs.) *Pluris, minoris, tanti, quanti, maximi*, signify price as-well as value : as, *He-bought the-pleasure-garden at-as-large-a-price as Pythius wished.*⁹

§ 152. (c.) The-Ablative of-excess or deficiency is-joined to-Comparative and Superlative Adjectives, also to-Verbs implying comparison : as, *The-sun is by-many times larger than the-moon.*—*Thy dogmas, O-Zeno, differ from the-Cynics by-a-tunic.*

(Obs.) Especially the-elliptic Ablatives: *altero* (by-as-much-more) *hoc* (by-this-much) *eo* (by-that-much) *quo* (by-how-much) *nililo* (by-nothing) and *nimio* (by-too-much) *dimidio* (by-half) *duplo* (by-twice-as-much) *quanto* (by-how-much) *tanto* (by-so-much) *paulo* (by-a-little) *multo* (by-much) *aliquanto* (by-a-good-deal) as, *Regret is so-much heavier as the-fault is greater.*—*By-so-much the-worst poet of-all as thou (art) the-best patron of-all.*¹⁰

§ 153. (d.) The-Ablative of-comparison is-governed by Comparatives, whether Adjectives or Adverbs.

Note.—This Ablative is-put for the-Conjunction *quàm* (than) with a-Nominative or Accusative.

(1.) For *quàm* with a-Nominative : as, *Nothing is more-amiable than-virtue.*—*Silver is poorer than-gold, gold than-virtues.*

(2.) For *quàm* with an-Accusative : as, *I-think death lighter than-disgrace.*—*Lacedæmon produced no-man more-serviceable than-Lycurgus.*¹¹

Obs. 1. *Quàm* (is) elegantly placed-between two Comparatives : as, *The-triumph of-Camillus was more-brilliant than popular.*

Obs. 2. *Quàm* (is) elegantly omitted after the-Comparatives *plus, amplius, minus* : as, *He-inflicted on-me more (than) 500 blows.*¹¹

Obs. 3. The-Prepositions *ante, præter, supra, præ*, also serve for-comparison : as, *Pygmalion more-monstrous in-wickedness than* (lit.

before) all others.—*Galba ordered a-cross to-be-erected much higher than (lit. beyond) the-rest.—He-was of-form more-august than (lit. above) man.—Thou art blessed before us.*

§ 154. *G. R.*—These Prepositions govern an-Ablative: *a, ab (abs)* (from, after, by, on-the-side-of, in-point-of) *absque* (without) *coram* (in-the-presence-of) *de* (from, of, concerning) *palam* (in-the-sight-of, with-the-knowledge-of) *clam* (without-the-knowledge-of) *cum* (together-with, with) *ex, e* (out-of, of, after, agreeably-to, on-the-side-of) *sine* (without) *tenus* (as-far-as) *pro* (before, instead-of, in-behalf-of, agreeably to, according-to) *præ* (before, in-comparison-with, in-consequence-of): to these add, *subter* (under) *super* (upon, concerning) and *in*, (in, upon, among) *sub* (under, just-at) if station occurs.¹²

Obs. 1. A-Preposition also in composition sometimes governs an-Ablative: as, *Seest-thou how pale every-one rises-from a-supper of-many-viands (dubiâ).—Cæsar resolves to-dispense-with an-engagement.*¹³

Obs. 2. The same Preposition (is) elegantly repeated: as, *The-soul departs out-of the-body.*

(*Obs.*) Or a-new-one is-introduced: as, *Pestilence streamed-down from the-lofty sky.*

Obs. 3. Verbs of-departing, separating, repelling, removing, and the-like, govern an-Ablative, even omitting the-Preposition (*ab, ex, de*): as, *Thou-wilt-retire from-thy-wide-purchased parks and mansion.—The-Athenian people drove Phocion from-his-country.*¹⁴

Obs. 4. *Tenus* governs either a-Genitive Plural or an-Ablative, and is-placed after its Case: as, *The-dewlaps hang from the-chin as-far-as the-legs. Antiochus was commanded to-reign as-far-as Taurus.*

Obs. 5. *Cum* is-subjoined to-the-(Ablative)-Cases of-Personal Pronouns, and generally of-the-Relative, so that of two words is-made one: as, *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum* for *quocum, quibuscum.*¹⁵

[¹ The Cause is also expressed by the prepositions *ob, propter, præ, per*, and others.

We may remark the Ablative of Cause after Verbs and Adjectives of rejoicing, grieving, being proud, relying, and the like; *gaudeo, letor, exulto, delector, doleo, mereo, laboro, glorior, superbio, floreo, nitor*:—*contentus, lætus, mæstus, superbus, fretus, &c.*; as, *Delicto dolere, correctione gaudere oportet.*—*CIC. Virtute decet, non sanguine niti.*—*CLAUD. Parvo est natura contenta.*—*CIC.*

² Verbs and Participles of origin are also followed by the prepositions *ab, de, ex*, and their Case: as, *Prisco natus ab Inacho.*—*HOR. Ilia cum Lauso de Numitore sati.*—*OV.*

³ The Ablative of manner, without a preposition, is always joined with an epithet, excepting in a few phrases, such as *vi, fraude, jure, injuriâ, merito, ritu, &c.* Thus the English "I departed with grief," must not be

translated *dolore discessi*, but *cum dolore discessi*, or *dolens discessi*: "he reads with diligence," not *diligentiâ legit*, but, *cum diligentiâ legit*, or *diligenter legit*. The Agent, Instrument, or Manner, may also be expressed by the preposition *per* with the Accusative.

⁴ Substantives are also joined with an Ablative of matter: as, *Ære cavo clypeus*.—VIRG. Or with the Preposition *ex* or *de*; as, *De marmore templum*.—VIRG.

Verbs of sacrificing sometimes take an Ablative of the matter: as, *Romulus lacte, non vino, libavit*.—CIC. But oftener an Accusative.

⁵ Among the Verbs are: *abundo, affluo, augeo, cumulo, compleo, circumfluo, confercio, dilo, diffluo, differcio, egeo, indigeo, expleo, exuberio, farcio, locupletio, mano, onero, opulento, oppleo, opprimo, obruo, promo, repleo, redundo, refercio, stillo, satio, saturo, scateo, &c.*; *careo, destituo, exsolvo, expedio, emungo, exonero, fraudo, levo, libero, laxo, nudo, orbo, privo, solvo, spolio, vaco, vacuo, viduo, &c.* A list of Adjectives of want and abundance has been given in Note 48. We may here notice the Vocatives *macte* (magis aucte), *macti*, which usually govern an Ablative, rarely a Genitive: as, *Macte virtute, T. Manli, esto*.—LIV. *Macti virtute, milites Romani, este*.—LIV. To these may be added such Verbs as *afficio, amicio, alo, cingo, decoro, exorno, formo, honesto, instruo, imbuo, instituo, informo, induo, munio, vestio, &c.*: and others; as, *valeo, polleo, mactio, mulcto, punio, &c.*

⁶ *Opus* is elegantly constructed with Passive Participles and Supines in *u*; as, *Præquam incipias, consulto opus est*.—SALL. *Ita dictu opus est*.—CIC. *Opus* may also be used as a Predicate: as, *Dir nobis et auctor opus est*.—CIC.

⁷ *Dignus, indignus*, are sometimes followed by a Genitive in poetry: as, *Descendam magnorum haud unquam indignus avorum*.—VIRG.

⁸ We may here add the Ablative of Condition: as, *Pace tuâ cum Thaïde colloquar*.—TER.

⁹ Verbs of purchase and sale are, *emo, paro, redimo, mercor, vendo, veneo, liceo, liceor, conduco, loco, mutuor, opsonor*. Verbs of valuing are: *æstimo, existimo, duco, facio, fio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo, sum, valeo, sto*. Adjectives, *carus, vilis, venalis, parabilis, &c.*

To the Genitives here mentioned add *assis, hujus, flocci, nauci, nihili, pensi, pili, teruncii*, which are chiefly used by the Comic poets. Notice also the phrases *pro nihilo habere, ducere*; and *æqui bonique facere; æqui consulere, boni consulere*.

To the Ablative of price is allied the Ablative of measurement after the Verbs *definio, describo, dirigo, expendo, finio, metior, pondero, &c.*: as, *Magnos homines virtute metimur non fortunâ*.—NEP. *Non potes, voluptate omnia dirigens, retinere virtutem*.—CIC. *Non numero hæc judicantur, sed pondere*.—CIC.

¹⁰ The Adverbs *etiam, adhuc, longè*, are used to increase the force of Comparatives: as, *Multò etiam longius abfuit*.—CIC. *Punctum est quod vivimus, et adhuc puncto minus*.—SEN.

¹¹ In comparing the other Cases *quàm* must be used, as, *Nulli flebilior quàm tibi Virgili*.—HOR. Also for the sake of perspicuity: as, *Segnius homines bona quàm mala sentiunt*.—LIV. If the Comparative itself is in the Genitive or Dative, *quàm* with a sentence generally follows: as, *Hæc sunt verba Varronis doctioris quàm fuit Claudius*.—CIC.

¹¹ *Pro* (in proportion to) with its Case elegantly follows a Comparative and *quàm*: as, *Prælium atrocius quàm pro numero pugnantium editur.*—LIV.

Sometimes the Comparative is contained in the Verb: as, *Accipere præstat quàm facere injuriam.*—CIC.

The Ablatives *æquo, justo, dicto, solito, spe, opinione*, often follow Comparatives: as, *Flagrantior æquo non debet dolor esse viri.*—JUV. *Cæsar opinione omaium celeris venturus est.*—CIC.

This Ablative elegantly falls out: as, *Liberiàs vivebat* (i.e. *justo*).—NEP.

¹² *Palam* and *clam* are properly Adverbs, followed by an Ablative of respect, § 151. (a.) The Comic poets use *clam* also with an Accusative, Dative, and Genitive.

Procul and *simul*, are followed by an Ablative Case; *procul* as containing the signification of *a* or *ab*, *simul* that of *cum*.

¹³ The Prepositions which in composition govern an Ablative are *a, de, ex*; rarely *super*.

¹⁴ The usage of these Verbs must be carefully observed, some of them taking or omitting the Preposition in prose; as, *arceo, moveo, pello, prohibeo, summoveo, removeo*; others requiring a Preposition in prose, but not in poetry; as, *alieno, cedo, discedo, dijungo, dispello, divello, repello, segrego, secerno, separo, &c.* *Interdicere alicui igni et aqua*, in Roman jurisprudence, meant "to forbid a person the use of fire and water" (in Italy); that is, "to banish from Italy."

¹⁵ Prepositions of two syllables sometimes follow their cases: as, *Vitiis nemo sine nascitur.*—HOB. Rarely others.]

A. ON THE-ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 155. *G. R.*—A-Substantive with a-Participle, limiting the principal Sentence, but not depending upon it, are placed in the Ablative, which they call Absolute: as, *Kings having-been-expelled consuls were appointed.*—*Cæsar being-on-the-point-of-coming, O-morning-star, restore the-day.*

Obs. 1. A-Substantive is-put also absolutely with a-Substantive or Adjective, where the-Participle of-being is-understood: as, *Nothing must-be despaired, Teucer being-leader and Teucer omen-giver.*—*And now Hector was dust, his-brothers being-alive.*

Obs. 2. Sometimes, with an-Ablative of-a-Participle, a-lengthened phrase is-put absolutely instead-of the Ablative of-a-Substantive: as, *Cheerful in-other-respects, excepting that you-were not with-me.*¹

[The Ablative Absolute is in general an abbreviated Adverbial Sentence, either Temporal, Causal, Conditional, or Concessive; and the Participle may therefore be transformed into a Finite Verb with a Conjunction. Thus, in the examples to the general Rule, *regibus exactis*=*postquàm reges exacti sunt*; *Cæsare venturo*=*quando (or quia) Cæsar venturus est*. And in the following: *Perditis rebus omnibus, tamen ipsa virtus se sustentare potest* (CIC.); *perditis rebus omnibus*=*etsi perditæ sint res omnes*.

Sometimes the Absolute Participle seems to stand for the Gerund in *do* or Ablative of manner: as, *Tarquinius Turnum oblato falso crimine oppressit.*

—LIV. *Aruns Tarquinius et Tullia minor junguntur nuptiis, magis non prohibente Servio quàm approbante.*—LIV. An impersonal Participle some times stands absolutely: as, *Mihi, errato, nulla venia, rectè facto, exigua laus proponitur.*—CIC. Where *errato*=*quum erratum est a me*: and *rectè facto*=*quum rectè factum est a me*.

The most common instance of two or more absolute Substantives is that in which *consule* or *consulibus* is used: as, *Natus est Augustus Cicerone et Antonio consulibus.*—SUET. *Caninio consule scito neminem prandisse.*—CIC.

When it is said in the Rule that the Ablative Absolute does not *depend* upon the principal sentence, it is only meant that it is not immediately governed by the Verb of the Sentence, for it has the dependence of a subordinate sentence on its principal.

The Ablative Absolute is called by some grammarians *Ablativus Consequentis*, by others *Ablativus Convenientis*.]

B. ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF TIME.

§ 156. *G. R. I.*—Definition of-time is-put in the-Ablative, if (the question) *when*, or *within what time*, is-asked: as, *All wars rest in-winter.*—*Whatever befalls, we-shall-know in-two-days.*

Obs. 1. The-use of-Prepositions in defining time is frequent: as, *The-sun makes two turnings-round in each year.*—*De die* (that is, *before the-close of-day*).—*De nocte* (that-is, *before-the-close of-night*).—*De multà nocte* (that is, *much before the-close of-night*).—*Sub vespereum* (that is, *on-the-approach-of evening*).—*I-wait day after day.*

Obs. 2. *How-long a-time ago, before, or after*, is-stated sometimes by the-Ablative, sometimes by the-Accusative: as, *The-assembly had-been held already thirty days ago.*—*This was done almost two-years ago.*²

G. R. II.—Duration of-time, when (the question) *how-long* is asked, is-put far most-commonly in the-Accusative, less-usually in the-Ablative: as, *Pericles presided-over Athens 40 years.*—*The-Assyrians held empire 1300 years.*³

[¹ *In* is always prefixed to an Ablative of time when a numeral Adverb is annexed: as, *Quidam oves in anno bis tondent.*—VARR. We may remark also the following uses of Prepositions in determining time:

Ad, (at:) as, *Heri veni ad vespereum.*—CIC. *Ad*, (up to:) as, *Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragædias fecit.*—CIC. *Ad tempus*, (for a time); as, *Coluntur tyranni simulatione amicitie duntaxat ad tempus* (CIC.): (in the nick of time); as, *Consul ad tempus venit* (LIV.): (according to circumstances); as, *Ad tempus consilium capiam.*—CIC.

In, with Accusative, expressing a term of future time; as, *Solis et lune defectiones prædicuntur in multos annos* (CIC.): so, *in dies*, (daily); *in* (or *ad*) *præsens*, (for the present); *in æternum*, (for ever); or an appointed future time; as, *Auctio constituta est in mensem Januarium.*—CIC. In some

writers, but not in Cicero, are found the phrases in *præsentiarum*, *impræsentiarum*, for *in præsentia rerum*; and *depræsentiarum* for *de præsentia rerum*: as, *Nero, quid in præsentiarum conduceret, oblitus est.*—TAC.

Apud, (in the time of) as, *Fuit vir eruditus apud patres nostros, Q. Tubero.*—CIC.

Circa, circiter, (about) as, *Otho circa lucem expergefactus uno se trajecit ictu.*—SUET.

* The English, "I saw him three days before he died," may be rendered by any of the following phrases:—

Vidi eum tribus diebus (or triduo) antequàm mortuus erat.

Vidi eum ante tres dies (or ante triduum) quàm mortuus erat.

Vidi eum ante tertium diem mortuus erat.

Vidi eum tertio die antequàm mortuus erat.

Likewise, "He died four years after I saw him," may be rendered by any of the following:—

Mortuus est quatuor annis (or quadriennio) postquàm eum videram.

Mortuus est post quatuor annos (or post quadriennium) quàm eum videram.

Mortuus est post quartum annum quàm eum videram.

Mortuus est quarto anno postquàm eum videram.

Mortuus est quarto anno quàm eum videram.

We find also, *quum, quo, quibus*, for *postquàm*: as, *Collegam triduo quum has dabum literas, expectabam.*—CIC. *Biديو quo hæc gesta sunt.*—CÆS.

* *Per* is used to express duration of time: as, *Dies festus Dianæ Syracusis per triduum agitur.*—LIV.

To Duration of time belongs the Accusative of age: as, *Cato quinque et octoginta annos natus excessit e vitâ.*—CIC. The Genitive of age has been mentioned § 132. *Obs.* 1. "More than twenty years old," is, in Latin, *Major annis viginti*; "less than forty years old," *Minor annis quadraginta*: *natu* may be added or not. Sometimes the Genitive or Accusative of age follows *major* and *minor* by an ellipse of *quàm*. See § 154. *Obs.* 2.]

[EXCURSION II. ON THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

The Roman Calendar agrees with the English, except in the manner of naming the days of the month. Every Roman month had three chief days; *Calendæ* (Calends), *Nonæ* (Nones), *Idus* (Ides.) The Calends were always the 1st day of the month: the Nones were on the 5th: the Ides on the 13th, except in March, May, July, and October, in which months the Nones were on the 7th, the Ides on the 15th.

Martius, October, cum Maio Julius, exstant,

Quindecima in quæ luxfacit Idus, septima Nonas.

These three days, the Calends, Nones, and Ides, were taken as points, from which the other days were counted backwards. That is, the Romans did not say, such and such a day *after*, &c., but such and such a day *before* the Calends, or Nones, or Ides.

If we take the month of January as a sample, the 1st day was *Calendæ Januariæ*. The 2nd must be reckoned backwards from the Nones, which in January fell on the 5th, *Nonæ Januariæ*. But in this reckoning the day of the Nones itself must be included. Therefore our 4th of January was the 2nd day before the Nones, called *pridie (ante) Nonas Januariæ*. The 3rd of January was *tertio (ante) Nonas Januariæ*; the 2nd, *quarto (ante) Nonas Januariæ*; or, abbreviated, III. Non. Jan., IV. Non. Jan. To obtain the Roman name for the 6th of January, we must begin to count backwards from the Ides, which fell on the 13th, *Idus Januariæ*. Thus, the 12th was *pridie Id. Jan.*; the 11th, III. *Id. Jan.*; the 10th, IV. *Id. Jan.*, &c.; the 6th was therefore VIII. *Id. Jan.* To obtain the name for the 14th of January, we must count back from the Calends of the next month, February, *Calendæ Februariæ*. Thus, January 31 was *pridie Cal. Feb.*; January 30th, III. *Cal. Feb.*, &c., &c. January 14th was, therefore, XIX. *Cal. Feb.*

From these observations it appears that we may find the Roman name for any given English day by the following Rules:—

- (1.) If the given day is between the Calends and Nones of the Roman month, subtract its English number from the English number of the day on which the Nones fall, increased by one; the remainder will give that number before the Nones by which the day is called in Latin.
- (2.) Similarly, if the given day is between the Nones and Ides of the Roman month, subtract its English number from the English number of the day on which the Ides fall, increased by one: the remainder will give that number before the Ides by which the day is called in Latin.

Thus, to find the Roman name for the 4th of June, the Nones of June falling on the 5th, subtract 4 from 5+1, or 6; the remainder is 2 (*pridie*); therefore, the 4th of June is *pridie Non. Jun.* Again; to find the Roman name for the 10th of May, the Ides of May falling on the 15th, subtract 10 from 15+1, or 16; the remainder being 6, the 10th of May is called VI. *Id. Mai.*

- (3.) But, if the given day is between the Ides of the given month and the Calends of the next, then subtract its English number from the total number of days in the given month, increased by two: the remainder will give that number before the Calends of the next month by which the day is called in Latin.

Thus, to find the Roman name for the 18th of August: subtract 18 from 31+2, or 33, the remainder is 15, and August 18th is called XV. *Cal. Sept.* For April 21st, subtract 21 from 30+2, or 32, there remains 11; and April 21st is called XI. *Cal. Mai.* For February 25th, subtract 25 from 28+2, or 30, there remains 5; and February 25th is called V. *Cal. Mart.*

As regards Construction, *Calendis, Nonis, Idibus* are used as Ablatives of time; and when *tertio, quarto, &c., Calendæ, &c.*, are used, the words *die ante* are understood. But Cicero does not use these latter phrases: he writes (for instance) *ante diem tertium Calendæ Januariæ*, or, abbreviated, *a.d. III. Cal. Jan.*, to express December 30th; and so in every case.*

* This notation is used in the subjoined comparative Table of the English and Roman Calendars.

Days of English Month.	Martius, Maius, Julius, October, 31 Days.	Januarius, Augustus, December, 31 Days.	Aprilis, Junius, September, November, 30 Days.	Februarius, 28 Days — in every fourth Year 29.
1	Calendis	Calendis	Calendis	Calendis
2	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
3	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
4	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
5	a.d. III.	Nonis	Nonis	Nonis
6	Pridie	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.
7	Nonis	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.
8	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.
9	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.
10	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
11	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
12	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
13	a.d. III.	Idibus	Idibus	Idibus
14	Pridie	a.d. XIX.	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVI.
15	Idibus	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XV.
16	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XIV.
17	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIII.
18	a.d. XV.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XII.
19	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XI.
20	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. X.
21	a.d. XII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. XI.	a.d. IX.
22	a.d. XI.	a.d. XI.	a.d. X.	a.d. VIII.
23	a.d. X.	a.d. X.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VII.
24	a.d. IX.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.
25	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.
26	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.
27	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. V.	a.d. III.
28	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. IV.	Pridie
29	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. III.	
30	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	Pridie	
31	Pridie	Pridie		

[In Leap-year, Feb. 24th (a.d. VI. Cal. Mart.) was twice reckoned, — hence this day was called **DIES BISSEXTUS**. and Leap-year itself **ANNUS BISSEXTUS**]

Here the Preposition *ante* has, by a corruption of custom, quitted its proper place before *Calendas*, to stand before *diem* which it does not govern. So merely idiomatic is this mode of expression that we find it used in dependence on Prepositions: as, *Consul Latinus in ante diem tertium Idus Sextiles edixit.*—LIV. *De Quinto fratre nuntii nobis tristes venerant ex ante diem Non. Jun. usque ad pridie Cal. Sept.*

The names of the months are Adjectives, agreeing with *mensis* understood: *Januarius*, *Februarius*, *Martius*, *Aprilis*, *Maius*, *Junius*, *Julius* (so called from Julius Cæsar, but before his time *Quintilis*); *Augustus* (so called from Augustus Cæsar, but before his time *Sextilis*); *September*, *October*, *November*, *December*. With the words *Calendæ*, *Nonæ*, *Idus*, they are always used attributively, never as Possessive Genitives: as, *Natus est Augustus IX. Calendas Octobres.*—SUET. *Memoriâ tenent, me a.d. XIII. Calendas Januarias principem revocandæ libertatis fuisse.*—CIC. *Capuam venire jussi sumus ad Nonas Februarias.*—CIC. VII. *Idus Maias æstatis initium.*—COLUM.]

C. ON THE CONSTRUCTIONS OF PLACE AND SPACE.

§ 157. *G. R. I.*—The place in which something is or is done is put in the Ablative, either without a Preposition or far more commonly with the Preposition *in*: as, *I (call) a dweller in the country, you call (a dweller) in the city, happy.*¹

G. R. II.—The name of a town, signifying the place in which something is or is done, is put in the Ablative, provided it be either of the third Declension or of the Plural Number: as, *Alexander died at Babylon—Philippus is at Naples, Lentulus at Pozzuoli.—Bred at Thebes or at Argi.*

G. R. III.—But it is put in the Genitive, if it be both of the first or second Declension, and of the singular Number: as, *What can I do at Rome? I know not (how) to tell a lie.—He dwells at Miletus.*²

G. R. IV.—The name of a town, signifying the place to which one goes, is put in the Accusative: as, *Regulus returned to Carthage.*

G. R. V.—The name of a town, signifying the place from which one goes, is put in the Ablative: as, *Demaratus fled from Corinth to Tarquinii.*

§ 158. *Obs.* *Humus, domus, and rus* imitate the construction of towns: as, *Cadmus scatters on the ground the teeth, mortal seeds.—Arms abroad are of little worth, unless there is safe counsel at home.—I see the old man returning from the country.*³

§ 159. *G. R. VI.*—A Preposition (is) generally set before names of countries: as, *He marries a wife in Lemnos.*⁴

G. R. VII.—The way by which or over which one goes (is) often put in the Ablative: as, *By chance I was walking along the Sacred Road. They entered the city by the Colline gate, and proceeded to the Aventine by the mid city.*

§ 160. *G. R. I.*—The space of distance between two places is put more commonly in the Accusative, sometimes in the Ablative: as, *I was distant from Amānus one day's journey.—The temple of Esculapius is distant from Epidaurus five thousand paces (i.e. five Roman miles).*⁵

G. R. II.—The space of progression is put in the Accusative: as, *Then having dined we crawl three miles.*

G. R. III.—The space of dimension is put most commonly in the Accusative, sometimes in the Ablative, sometimes in the Genitive: as, *The walls of Babylon were 200 feet high.—A foot and a half long, a foot wide.—Make floors 10 feet broad.*⁶

[¹ In this example the Ablative *rure* is really governed by the Preposition *in*, reflected from the following *in urbe*, according to the Ellipsis so common

in Greek poetry, called *Schema Pindaricum*. Otherwise we should find the locative form *ruri*.

In is omitted in certain phrases; as, *loco* (in the stead), *terrâ marique*, &c.: and where *totus* is used; as, *totâ urbe*, *totâ Asiâ*. The poets are more free in the omission of this Preposition; as, *Silvisque agrisque viisque corpora fœda jacent* (Ov.): but this license is often abused by modern Latin poets, and great discrimination is required in its use.

² That this apparent Genitive of place in the 1st and 2d Declensions is not strictly a Genitive Case, was perceived by the ancient grammarians, Priscian, Donatus, and Servius, who call it an Adverb. But if we notice that it ends in *i*, *Romai* (*Romæ*), *Mileti*, *domi*, *humi*, *belli*; and if we compare the old forms of place in the 3d Declension ending in *i*, *ruri*, *Lacedæmoni* (NEP.), *Carthagini* (LIV.), *Tiburi* (CIC.), &c.; we can hardly doubt the original existence of a Locative Case ending in *i* (Sing.) in the Latin language, as we find it in the Sanscrit. See Bopp. *Gramm. Sanskr.* 131.: Donaldson, *New Cratylus*, book iii. ch. 2. Compare with these the phrases *die septimi* (PLAUT.), *die crastini* (GELL.), *heri vesperi*.—CIC.

³ *Domi* admits the epithets *meæ*, *tuæ*, *sua*, *alienæ*, also a Genitive of the possessor: as, *Nonne mavis sine periculo domi tuæ esse, quàm cum periculo alienæ?*—CIC. *Clodius deprehensus est domi Cæsaris*.—CIC. *Militiæ belli*, *terræ* are also used locatively: as, *Augusti virtus belli spectata domique*.—HOB. *Procubuit terræ*.—OV.

⁴ Names of countries sometimes imitate the construction of towns: as, *Cæsar audivit Pompeium Cypri visum*.—CÆS. *Ipsa Paphum sublimis abit*.—VIRG.

On the other hand Prepositions are much used with names of towns: as, *In Epheso est*.—*In Ephesum abii*.—*Ex Epheso huc literas misi*.—PLAUT. So, *a*, *ad*, *de*, *apud*.—*Versus* follows the names of places with or without *ad* or *in*: as, *Ad Oceanum versus proficisci jubet*.—CÆS. *Amanum versus profecti sumus*.—CIC. *Usque* is joined to names of places with the prepositions, *ad*, *ab*, *de*, *trans*, or without a preposition: as, *Ab Æthiopiâ est usque hæc*.—TER. *Usque Ennam profecti sunt*.—CIC.

⁵ An Ellipse of the word *iter* is sometimes found: as, *Nos in castra properabamus, quæ aberant bidui*.—CIC.

⁶ Note the proverb *transversum digitum discedere*, (to stir a finger's breadth) as, *Ab hac regulâ mihi non licet transversum, at aiunt, digitum discedere*.—CIC.]

ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 161. *G. R. I.*—*Libet* (it-pleaseth) *licet* (it-is-lawful) *liquet* (it-is-clear) and most Impersonal-Verbs, govern a-Dative: as, (*Let*) *not (that) please thee which (is) not lawful*.—*Savage bears agree among themselves*. (lit. *it-is-agreed-to-savage bears*.)¹

G. R. II.—*Piget* (it irketh) *pudet* (it-shameth) *pœnitet* (it-repenteth) *tædet* (it wearieeth) and *miseret* (it pitieth) govern an-Accusative of-the-person, with a-Genitive of-the-thing, or with an-

Infinitive : as, *Thou pitiest others ; for-thyself thou (hast) neither pity nor shame.* (lit. *It-pitieth nor shameth thee.*)—*I am-sorrowed and wearied of-the-morals of-the-state.—It-repenteth them partly of-their-crimes, partly of-their-follies.—(He) whom it-repenteth to-have-sinned is almost innocent.*

G. R. III.—*Delectat* (it-delighteth) *juvat* (it-pleaseth) *deceat* (it-beseemeth) *dedecet* (it-misbeseemeth) put impersonally, require an-Accusative with an-Infinitive : as, *Least-of-all does-it-beseem an-orator to-be-angry.—It-delighteth me to-have-cultivated Helicon in earliest youth.*

G. R. IV.—*Oportet* (it behoveth) governs either an-Accusative with-an-Infinitive, or a-Nominative with a-Subjunctive, the Conjunction *ut* being-omitted : as, *It-behoveth a-law to-be brief.—It-behoveth that-thou-love me myself, not my-possession.*

G. R. V.—*Pertinet, attinet* (it-belongeth, relateth, or concerneth) take the-Preposition *ad* with an-Accusative : as, *It-concerneth the-commonwealth, that-I be-preserved.—Let-him-squander, waste, be-ruined, it-concerneth me nought.*

G. R. VI.—*Interest* (it-imports or concerns) *refert* (it-matters or concerns) admit a-Genitive : as, *It-imports all-men to-act rightly.—It-matters-in composition, what-things you-place-before what.*

Obs. 1. With these Verbs are-joined instead of-Personal Pronouns, the-Feminine Ablatives, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*, the word *re* being-understood : as, *It-concerns both me and thee, (that) thou be-well.—What matters-it to-me, whom I-am-a-slave-to ?*

Obs. 2. To-these Verbs are-joined the-Genitives of-value ; *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris* : as, *(It) greatly importeth each of-us, that I-should-see you.—This avails not more, than if you-should-carry water into a-sieve.*²

Not. 1.—Neuter Verbs are-used Impersonally in the-Passive Voice for any persons, an-Ablative of-the-person with the-Preposition *ab* (being) either expressed or understood : as, *A-shout-of-dissent-was-uttered by all* (that is to say, *all shouted-dissent.*)—*What is-doing ? there-is-a-standing-still.* (that is to say, *there-is-a-standing-still by them, or they-stand-still.*)

Not. 2.—*Cæpit* (it-beginneth) *debet* (it-ought) *desinit* (it-ceaseth) *potest* (it-can) *solet* (it-is-wont) *incipit* (it-beginneth) placed-before the-Infinitives of-Impersonals, become Impersonals themselves : as, *It-began to-repent him of-the-deed.—There-can (be) no arriving at the-highest-things except from beginnings.*

[¹ It may be doubted whether any Finite Verb is strictly Impersonal, that is, without a Subject expressed or understood. Those which approach most nearly to this condition are, *miseret, piget, pænitet, pudet, tædet*. But even before these we may understand their cognate Nominatives. Thus, *Miseret me tui*, may be supplied by *Misericordia tui miseret me ;*

puđet eum facti, by *pudor facti eum puđet*, &c. In many instances, an Infinitive or a series of words is the Subject of the (so called) Impersonal Verb, as in the examples to *G.R.* III., V., VI.

Again, some of the Verbs called Impersonal are only found in the third Persons Singular, and in the Infinitive Mood: as, *oportet*, *tędet*. Some have also Gerunds and Participles: as, *pięet*, *pęnitet*, *puđet*. Some are occasionally found in the third Persons Plural: as, *decet*, *libet*, *licet*, *puđet*. Indeed there is no Impersonal Verb, except perhaps *oportet*, which is not sometimes found personally used.

A great number of Verbs are used Impersonally (as it is called) in the third Person, and in the other forms Personally, but with some difference of meaning. Such are, *accidit*, *attinet*, *apparet*, *contingit*, *convenit*, *conducit*, *constat*, *delectat*, *dolet*, *evenit*, *expedit*, *est*, *fit*, *fugit*, *fallit*, *juvat*, *latet*, *patet*, *placet*, *pręterit*, *pręstat*, *restat*, *sedet*, *slat*, *subit*, *sufficit*, *suppetit*, *superest*, *succurrit*, *vacat*. Of these, all not otherwise mentioned in the Rules govern a Dative, except *fugit*, *fallit*, *pręterit*, which have an Accusative. *Conducit* may also be followed by *ad* or *in* with an Accusative. *Latet* governs a Dative or Accusative. *Constat* is often followed by *inter* and its Case: as, *Constat inter omnes*, &c. (All are agreed that, &c.)—NEP.

Words which denote changes of weather: as, *pluit*, *tonat*, *lucescit*, &c., are explained by an Ellipse of *cęlum*, *dies*, &c.

² *Interest* and *refert*, when they imply profit, are also followed sometimes by *ad* with Accusative, sometimes by a Dative: as, *Ad honorem nostrum interest quęm primum ad urbem me venire*.—CIC. *Dic quid ręferat intra Naturę fines viventi jugera centum an mille arēt*.—HOR. Sometimes they are found without case: as, *Neque enim numero comprehendere refert*.—VIRG. That the Pronominal forms, *mea*, *tua*, &c. (to which add *cujus*), which follow these Verbs, are Ablatives Singular (according to Priscian, Valla, and others), and not Accusatives Plural (according to Donatus, Scaliger, Sanctius, Scioppius, Perizonius; and Ruddiman), seems clear from the long *ā* of these words in Terence. *Interest* is probably corrupted from *in re est*; and *refert* (not from *řfero*) is compounded of *rę* and *fert*; and with this Ablative *rę* the Pronouns *mea*, &c., agree.

These Verbs may also be qualified by *nihil*, *multum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *quid*, *parum*, &c., and by such adverbs as *maximę*, *minimę*, *vehementer*, &c.]

ON THE-CONSTRUCTION OF-PASSIVE VERBS.

§ 162. *G. R. I.*—Almost every Active Sentence may be changed into a-Passive (sentence), so that the-Subject of the-Active Sentence shall-become in the-Passive an-Ablative of-the-Agent.

A. If the-Verb of-the-Active Sentence has an-Accusative of-the-nearer Object, the-Verb in-the-Passive will-be Personal; the-Object of-the-Active passing into the-Subject of-the-Passive: as,

ACT. *The-consul managed the-affair admirably.*

PASS. *The-affair was-managed admirably by the-consul.*

B. If not, the-Verb of-the-Passive-Sentence will-be Impersonal, and either will-stand without a-case, or will-govern the-same case which it-governed in the-Active : as,

ACT. *The-enemy fought steadily.*

PASS. *(There was) steady fighting by the-enemy.*

ACT. *We need medicine.*

PASS. *There-is-a-need by us of-medicine.*

ACT. *Those-persons can not hurt me.*

PASS. *Hurt can not (be done) to-me by those-persons.*

ACT. *It-is right for-you to-dispense-with strifes and wranglings.*

PASS. *It-is right that-there-be-a-dispensing-with strifes and wranglings by you.*

Obs. Where there-can be no ambiguity, the-Ablative of-the-Agent is-suppressed after Passive Impersonals: as, *They-go* (itur ab illis) *into an-ancient forest.*—(*Life*) *cannot be-spent pleasantly (by men) unless it-be-spent with virtue.*

G. R. II.—Hence it-appears that-the-same Cases are-governed by Passive Verbs as by Active, except only the-Accusative of-the-nearer Object.

Not.—Of Neuter Verbs some-are-constructed occasionally in-Passive sense with an-Ablative of-the-Agent: as, *The-witness was-beaten with-a-stick by the-defendant.*—*I-had-rather be-plundered by a-citizen than be-sold by an-enemy.*—*I-am-tortured, lest my-husband fall by an-incensed enemy.*¹

[¹ These Verbs are *vapulo* (I-am-beaten) *veneo* (I-am-sold) *liceo* (I-am-bid-for) *exulo* (I-am-banished) *fio* (I-am-made): and are usually called Neutra Passiva. Neuter Verbs are sometimes, but very rarely, found Personally used in the Passive Voice: as, *Quidam oratores si arriderentur, esset id ipsum Atticorum.*—CIC. In poetry oftener: as, *Hæc ego procurare impetor.*—HOR. *Invidetur.*—HOR. *Tota mihi dormitur hyems.*—MART. *Noctes vigilantur amare.*—OV. *Tertia vivitur ætas.*—OV. *Multo pisce natantur aquæ.*—OV. *Videor*, I seem (from *video*), is used as a Deponent, excepting in the Participial forms, *visus*, *videndus*, which are used Passively. The following Active Verbs are used both Transitivity and Intransitivity: *æquo*, *abstineo*, *augeo*, *emergeo*, *erumpo*, *flecto*, *deflecto*, *inclino*, *insinuo*, *lavo*, *minuo*, *moveo*, *muto*, *precipito*, *remitto*, *ruo*, *vergo*, *verto*, *vibro*, *volvo*. The following Passive forms are used reciprocally, like the Greek Middle Verb: *congregor*, *delector*, *effundor*, *exerceor*, *fallor*, *feror*, *labor*, *moveor*, *nutor*, *pascor*, *versor*, *volvor*, and others.

On the construction of Passive Verbs the student may also consult Crombie's *Gymnasium*, I. 297. &c., do. 334.]

ON THE-CONSTRUCTION OF-PARTICIPLES.

§ 163. *G. R.*—Participles, which are Verbal Adjectives, (are) both used-as-Attributives-to-Substantives, and also govern the-Cases of-the-Verbs from which they-come, Active (Participles) of-Active (Verbs), Deponent of-Deponent, Passive of-Passive.

[*Obs. 1.*] The-use-of-the-Preterite Participle in Passive, and (that) in Deponent Verbs, must-be carefully distinguished: for in Passive-Verbs it-can never be-used Actively; in most Deponents (it is) only used Actively; yet of Transitive Deponents there-are many, whose Preterite Participles (have) a-Passive as-well as Active signification.

(*Obs. 2.*) *Cenatus* (having-supped) *pransus* (having-dined) *fius* (having-trusted) *juratus* (having-sworn) and *ausus* (having-dared) *gavisus* (having-rejoiced) *solitus* (being-accustomed) (we) rightly construe as Deponents, although coming from-Active Verbs. To-these add also *exosus* (having-detested) *pertæsus* (being-wearied) and *perosus* (having-hated).

(*Obs. 3.*) The-Participle of-the-Future in *dus* always (has) a-Passive signification.]

as, *We-see the-stars go obeying their limits.*—*A-virgin about-to-exhibit neatly-arranged hair.*—*Cloud-capped mountains and rocks threatening heaven.*—*We-confess (that) nothing will-arise, nothing has-arisen elsewhere such (as thou art.)*—*We-will-sing chiefs who-have-finished a-valorous-life.*—*All having-dared monstrous wickedness, and achieved their-daring.*—*All-things had-been schemed, conned, watchfully-arranged by-him.*—*Ill gotten (gains) ill go.*—*We-give to-boys sentences to-be-learnt-by-rote.*—*Life was given to-be-used, it-is-given to-us in-loan without interest, and-not to-be-paid on-a-fixed day.*

[EXCURSION III. ON THE PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION.

[*Not. (1.)* Personal Verbs Active have two Participles, one of the Present, the other of the Future in *rus*: as *laudo, laudans, laudaturus*.

(2.) Personal Verbs Passive have two Participles, one of the Preterite, the other of the Future in *dus*: as, *laudor, laudatus, laudandus*.

(3.) Deponent Verbs Neuter have three Participles, the first of the Present, the second of the Preterite, the third of the Future in *rus*: as, *labor, labens, lapsus, lapsurus*.

(4.) Deponent Verbs Transitive have four Participles, the first of the Present, the second of the Preterite, the third of the Future in *rus*, the fourth of the Future in *dus*: as, *miror, mirans, miratus, miraturus, mirandus*.

The Participial Construction may be considered as an abbreviation of an Adverbial or Adjectival Sentence. It is of two kinds:—

I. Attributive, when the Subject of the sentence to be abbreviated is contained (whether expressed or understood) in the principal Sentence,

and the Participle agrees with that Subject in Gender, Number, and Case: as, *Alexander moriens annulum suum dederat Perdiccæ*.—NKP. *Spreta in tempus gloria interdum cumulator redit*.—LIV. *Animo nobis opus est non abhorrente a quietis consiliis*.—LIV. *Servilius Ahala Spurium Malium, regnum appetentem, interemit*.—CIC.

II. Absolute (already treated of, § 155.), when the Subject of the Sentence to be abbreviated is not contained in the principal Sentence, but is placed, together with the Participle, in the Ablative Case. See Examples under the Rule, § 155.

It appears therefore that the Ablative Absolute must not be used when a Subject for the Participle can be found in the principal Sentence. For instance, we must not write, *Nostra te legente, utere tuo iudicio*; but, *nostra legens utere tuo iudicio*.—CIC. Not, *Curio ad focum sedente, ei magnum auri pondus Samnites attulerunt*; but *Curio, ad focum sedenti, magnum auri pondus Samnites attulerunt*.—CIC. Not, *Catonem vidi, eo in bibliothecā sedente*; but, *Catonem vidi in bibliothecā sedentem* (CIC.), &c. This rule is sometimes, but very rarely, violated, and then for the sake of some peculiar emphasis. See Crombie's *Gymnasium*, I. 87, &c., 333, &c.

The Participial Construction is used to abbreviate:

A. Adverbial Sentences:

(a.) Final Sentences may be abbreviated by the Future Participle in *rus*: as, *Catilina ad exercitum profiscitur, signa illaturus urbi*.—FLOP. *Alexander Hephæstionem in regionem Bactrianam misit, commeatus in hiemem paraturum*.—CURT. (Where *illaturus*=*ut inferat*: *paraturum*=*ut pararet*).

The student may here observe the various ways of constructing a Final Sentence such as the last cited:

1. *Alexander Hephæstionem misit, ut, commeatus pararet.*
2. *Alexander Hephæstionem misit, qui commeatus pararet.*
3. *Alexander Hephæstionem misit, commeatus paraturum.*
4. *Alexander Hephæstionem misit ad commeatus parandos.*
5. *Alexander Hephæstionem misit commeatum parandorum causā.*
6. *Alexander Hephæstionem misit paratum commeatus.*

Of these constructions the 3rd and 6th are least Ciceronian.

(b.) Consecutive Sentences: as, *Sapientis est, nihil contra mores, leges, instituta facientem, habere rationem rei familiaris*.—CIC. (where *nihil facientem*=*ita ut nihil faciat*). *Jure interfectum Clitum Macedones decernunt, sepulturā quoque prohibitori, ni rex humari jussisset*.—CURT. (where *prohibitori*=*ita ut prohibitori fuerint*.) *Iterum mutatur forma civitatis, ab consulibus ad decemviros translato imperio*.—CIC. (where *translato imperio*=*ita ut translatus sit imperium*.)

(c.) Causal Sentences: as, *Nihil affirmo mihi ipse diffidens*.—CIC. (*diffidens*=*quia diffido*.) *Flaminius Cælius religione neglectā cecidisse apud Trasimenum scribit*.—CIC. (i.e. *quod religionem neglexisset*.)

(d.) Temporal Sentences: as, *Herculem Germani, ituri in prælia, canunt*.—TAC. (i.e. *quum ituri sunt*.) *Jove tonante cum populo agi non est fas*.—CIC. (i.e. *quum Jupiter tonat*.)

- (e.) Conditional Sentences: as, *Epistolæ offendunt, non loco redditæ.*—CIC. (i.e. *si non redduntur.*) *Nihil, me sciente, frustra voles.*—SALL. (i.e. *dummodò ego sciam.*)
- (f.) Concessive Sentences: as, *Scripta tua jam diu expectans, non audeo tamen flagitare.*—CIC. (i.e. *etsi expecto.*) *Perditi rebus omnibus, tamen ipsa se virtus sustentare potest.*—CIC. (i.e. *quavis perditæ sint.*)
- (g.) In Comparative Participial Constructions the Comparative Particles are prefixed to the Participle: as, *Græcas literas senex didici, quas quidem sic avidè arripui, quasi diuturnam sitim explere cupiens.*—CIC. *Antiochus securus de bello Romano erat, tanquam non transiturus in Italiam Romanis.*—LIV.

B. Adjectival or Relative Sentences: as, *Peloponnesus est peninsula, angustis Isthmi faucibus continenti adhærens.*—LIV. *Sunt divitiæ certæ, in quâcunque sortis humanæ levitate permansuræ.*—SEN. *Pisistratus Homeri libros, confusos antea, disposuit.*—CIC. (Where *adhærens=quæ adhæret*; *permansuræ=quæ permansuræ sunt*; *confusos=qui confusi erant.*)

Not. 1.—The Participle Perfect Passive is used to express a past action continuing in its consequences, after such Verbs as *habeo, teneo, possideo*, &c.; as, *Illud exploratum habeto, nihil fieri potuisse sine causâ.*—CIC. *Hoc tibi persuasum habe.*—CIC. *Hoc cognitum comprehensumque habeo.*—CIC.

It is used in older Latin with the Verbs *do, reddo, curo*, by way of Periphrasis: as, *Stratas legiones Latinorum dabo.*—LIV. *Hoc tibi effectum reddam.*—TER. *Inventum tibi curabo et mecum adductum Pamphilum.*—TER. It is also elegantly used after *volo, nolo, cupio, oportet*, for the Infinitive Passive: as, *Domesticâ curâ te levatum volo.*—CIC. *Patres ordinem publicanorum offensum nolebant.*—LIV. *Quis nominat me? Qui te consentum cupit.*—TER. *Rem integram servatam oportuit.*—CIC. To the same idiom belong the phrases *missum facere* and *fieri*: as, *Si qui voluptatibus ducuntur, missos faciant honores.*—CIC. *Legiones bello confecto missas fieri placet.*—CIC.

Not. 2.—The same Participle is sometimes used, like the Gerundive, to supply the place of a Substantive expressing the action of the Verb: as, *Prusiam regem suspectum Romanis, et receptus Hannibal et bellum adversus Eumenem motum faciebat.* ("Both the reception of Hannibal and the commencement of war against Eumenes made King Prusias an object of suspicion to the Romans.")—LIV. *Labeo malè administratæ provinciæ arguebatur.*—TAC.

Not. 3.—Livy, Tacitus, and Lucan use the Participle Perfect Passive to express the Substantival notion of the Passive Verb, which the Greeks expressed by the Article and Infinitive: as, *Diu non perlitatum tenuerat dictatorem ne ante meridiem signum dare posset.*—LIV.

Not. 4.—A Participle and Verb are often best translated by two Verbs: as, *Cæsar scribit, se cum legionibus profectum celeriter affore.* ("Cæsar writes word that he has set out with his legions and will soon arrive.")—CÆS.

Not. 5.—Verbals in *bundus* derived from Transitive Verbs sometimes have a Participial Force: as, *Vitabundus castra hostium profectus est.*—LIV.

On the distinction of the Preterite Participle in Passive and Deponent Verbs, see Crombie's *Gymnasium*, I. 21. *Exosus* and *perosus* are used both transitively and passively.

Not. 6.—The want of a Preterite Participle Active is supplied by Ablatives Absolute of a Passive form, or by the particles *quum*, *ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*, with a finite Verb: as, *Pompeius, captis Hierosolymis, victor ex illo fano nihil attigit.*—CIC. *Alexander, quum interemisset Clitum, vix a se manum abstinuit.*—CIC.]

ON THE-INFINITIVE PUT SUBSTANTIVELY, AND ON-THE CONSTRUCTIONS OF-THE- GERUNDS, GERUNDIVE, AND SUPINES.

§ 164. The-Infinite with the-Gerunds and Supines forms the-Substantive of-the-Verb.

G. R. I.—The-Infinite is-put for a-Substantive in-such-way, that (it) often becomes the-Subject or Object of-a-Finite Verb; that sometimes, but more-rarely, it-has Neuter Adjectives attributively-joined to-it; that occasionally, but very-rarely, it-is-governed by Prepositions: as, *To-envy occurs not to a-wise-man.*—*To-die for country is sweet and glorious.*—*To-each is his-own wish.*—*No wise-man will-call dying miserable.*—*This my laughing, so worthless, I-sell thee for-no Iliad.*—*(There is) much difference between giving and receiving.*

§ 165. G. R. II.—The-Gerunds are-put for Cases of-the-Infinite, and themselves govern the-Cases of-their Verbs: but more-often appear without an-Object.

A. For the-Accusative of-the-Infinite the-Gerund in *dum* is-put after the-Prepositions *ad*, *inter*; more-seldom after *ob*, *in*, *ante*; as, *A-short time is long enough for living well.*—*The-characters of-boys reveal themselves more-undisguisedly in playing.*

B. For the-Genitive of-the-Infinite the-Gerund in *di* is-put after Adjectives governing a-Genitive and after many Substantives: as, *Epaminondas was fond of-listening.*—*I-am desirous of-satisfying the-republic.*—*Thucydides surpasses all in-skill of-language.*—*Sense is both the-origin and source (of) good writing.*¹

C. For the-Dative of-the-Infinite the-Gerund in *do* is-put after Adjectives of-advantage and agreement, also after some Verbs: as, *Crassus could not be a-match for-the-argument.*—*I-will-devote my-labour to-seeking Epidicus.*²

D. For the-Ablative of-the-Infinite the-Gerund in *do* is-put signifying Cause, Instrument, or Manner, or with the-Prepositions *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *in*: as, *By-doing nothing men learn to-do ill.*—*Publius Scipio was equal to-any-one (in) Latin speaking.*—*Jove we-name from helping.*—*Many-things were argued by Plato concerning living well and happily.*

§ 166. *Note.*—Gerunds (have) an-Active signification ; but if they-are Transitive, their construction may be-represented, indeed (is) oftener represented by the-Participle in *du*, which thence receives the-name of-Gerundive.

G. R. III.—The-Gerundive Construction is of-this-kind, that the-Substantive is-drawn into the-Case of-the-Gerund, with which (Case) the-Gerundive will-agree : as, *We-extract from-the-earth fire for agriculture.*—*It-seemed an-opportunity for a-revolution.*—*Tarquin urged, that comitia for-electing a-king should-be-held.*—*Marcus Antonius was a-triumvir for-settling the-commonwealth.*—*Memory must-be exercised in-learning-off the-writings of-the-ancients.*—*Brutus was killed in liberating his-country.*

§ 167. *G. R. IV.*—For signifying Necessity Passively, the-Gerundive is-used Impersonally in the-Neuter Gender, so that, together-with a-Dative or Ablative of-the-Agent, either expressed or understood, it-has also the-construction of-its Verb : as, *Each must use his-own judgment.*—*You must consult for-the-properties of-the-citizens.*—*(We) must pray that (there) be a-sound mind in a-sound body.*—*Eudoxus thinks that (we) must trust the-Chaldeans (i. e. astrologers) very-little.*

(*Obs.*) In Transitive Verbs the-Impersonal Construction is rarer ; but sometimes it-occurs : as, *Since in death (we) must-fear eternal punishment.*

But the-Gerundive itself put Adjectively, expresses necessity by its-own force : as, *God is both to-be-loved and feared.*—*The-divine blessings are to-be-acknowledged and embraced.*³

§ 168. *G. R. V.*—The-Supine in *um*, endued with-an-Active force, governs the-Case of-its-own Verb : but, like an-Accusative, is-put-after Verbs signifying motion, and some others, to mark the-purpose of-an-action : as, *But I (will) not go to-be-a-slave to-Greek matrons.*—*Coriolanus departed into-exile to the-Volsicians.*—*They-come to-see, they-come that they-may-be-seen themselves.*—*We-send to-learn-of the-oracles of-Phæbus.*

(*Obs.*) From the-Supine in *um* and the-Impersonal Infinitive *iri* is-formed the-Future of-the-Infinitive Passive : as, *He-had-heard that (they were) not going to-give a-wife to-his son.*

G. R. VI.—The-Supine in *u*, endued with-a-Passive force, is-put, like an-Ablative of-respect, both (after) many Adjectives, and also (after) the-Substantives, *fas*, *nefas*, *opus* ; as, *(Let) nothing shameful to-be-spoken and seen approach these doors, within which is a-boy.*—*Lo ! (ill-omened sight), a-serpent issues-from the-altars.*

Not.—Supines have the-form of-Substantives of-the-fourth Declension.

[¹ The Adjectives which the Gerund in *di* follows are some of those mentioned in § 138 : as, *avidus*, *cupidus*, *peritus*, *ignarus*, *studiosus*, &c. Among the Substantives are, *ars*, *artificium*, *amor*, *ardor*, *causa*, *copia*,

consuetudo, cura, cupiditas, consilium, desiderium, finis, forma, facultas, difficultas, genus, jus, initium, laus, libertas, locus, licentia, libido, materia, mos, modus, mora, occasio, ordo, potestas, ratio, sors, spatium, spes, studium, tempus, vis, voluntas, venia, usus, &c., &c.

The Gerund in *di* is sometimes found with a Genitive Plural instead of an Accusative after it : as, *Ex magnâ copîâ nobis fuit exemplorum eligendi potestas*.—CIC. The true explanation of this license is, however, that both the Genitive and the Gerund in *di* (by Epexegetis) depend on the governing word, as on *copîâ* in the foregoing example.

The Gerundive Genitive is sometimes put with an Ellipse of *causâ* : as *Regium imperium conservandæ libertatis fuerat*.—SALL. A stranger Ellipse is found in Tacitus : as, *Vologesi vetus et penitus infixum erut arna Romana vitandi*. (supply *studium*.)

² The Dative Gerund in *do* is not of frequent usage ; but, when it does occur, it is generally after the words mentioned in the Rule, and such expressions as *esse* (understanding *par*), *operam dare*, *tempus impendere*, &c. So the Gerundive Dative ; which is also used after Substantives expressing office, as, *triumvir, septemvir* ; and after *dies, locus, &c.* As, *Solvendo civitates non erant*.—CIC. *Tiberius Gracchus triumvir dividendis agris creatus est*.—FLOB.—*Galli locum oppido condendo ceperunt*.—LIV. In most instances this Dative is a *Dativus commodi*.

The Gerund is sometimes, but very rarely, found in a Passive signification : as, *Hæc frequentia totius Italiæ Romam convenit censendi causâ*.—CIC.

³ The grammatical character of the Gerunds and Gerundive has been much disputed by grammarians : Zumpt's account of them is as follows :

"The Gerund is nothing else than the four oblique Cases of the Neuter of the Participle in *dus*. It governs the Case of its Verb, and in respect to signification supplies the place of a declinable Infinitive of the Present Active, since it expresses the action or state of the Verb, as a Verbal Substantive.

"The relation of the Gerund to the real Participle in *dus* is the following. As the Gerund has an Active sense, e. gr. *consilium scribendi*, the design of writing or to write, when the Verb has a dependent Accusative, e. gr. *consilium scribendi epistolam*, this Active construction may, without any alteration of sense, be changed to Passive ; *consilium scribendæ epistolæ*, i.e. the design of a letter to be written, or that a letter be written. What is the Accusative in the Active construction is in the Passive put in the Case in which the Gerund stood, and the Participle agrees with it ; e. gr. *in scribendo epistolam* becomes *in scribendâ epistolâ* ; *ad scribendum epistolam* becomes *ad scribendam epistolam*. This change should not be made when the Accusative which the Gerund governs is the Neuter of a Pronoun or an Adjective ; for example, we should say, *studium illud efficiendi*, not *illius* ; *cupido plura cognoscendi*, not *plurium cognoscendorum*." (Kenrick's Translation, § 80.)

Dr. Crombie, in his learned and useful work on Latinity (*Gymnasium*, II. 173), has endeavoured to show that the Participle in *dus* is always a Present Participle Passive ; that it never has a Future sense except by accident, nor the sense of duty or necessity, except by virtue of the Verb with which it is joined. We agree with Dr. Crombie in thinking that this

Participle is improperly called Future, and that it often has a Present Passive sense; but we cannot go to the full length of his views. We prefer the modified statement of Zumpt on this subject:—"The Participle Passive in *dus* has in the Nominative Case (and, in the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive, in the Accusative also) the signification of necessity (or propriety), less frequently of possibility; *laudandus* is one who must be praised, or ought to be praised."—"In the Latin authors of the best age, the Participle in *dus* is not generally used to denote possibility."—"In the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative this Participle has occasionally the sense of necessity or duty; but much more frequently it supplies the place of a Participle Present Passive, i.e. of a continued Passive state:" as, *Quis philosophum se dicere audeat nullis officiorum præceptis tradendis?* (while he delivers)—CIC. "A Future sense may sometimes be implied; but it is derived from the connexion, not from the Participle itself." (Kenrick's Translation, § 79.) One of the commonest uses of the Gerundive is after *do*, *trado*, *accipio*, *suscipio*, *habeo*, *conduco*, *loco*, *propono*, *curo*, &c., to express the purpose of the action: as, *Antigonus Eumenem sepeliendum tradidit*.—NEP. *Scriba quidam Cneius Flavius ediscendos fastos populo proposuit*.—CIC. *Conon muros Athenarum reficiendos curat*.—NEP.

4 *Perditum ire* is used for *perdere*: so *raptum ire*, *ultum ire*, &c. The following are examples of the Supine in *um* after Verbs in which motion is rather implied than expressed: *Coctum ego, non vapulatum conductus sum*.—PLAUT. *Augustus filiam Juliam primum Marcello, mox Agrippæ nuptum dedit*.—SUET.

5 The Adjectives after which the Supine in *u* is used are those which signify good or evil, pleasantness or unpleasantness, fitness or unfitness, ease or difficulty, and some others. But after some of these, as *facilis*, *difficilis*, *ad* with the Gerund in *dum* is a more elegant construction: as, *Cibus facillimus ad concoquendum*.—CIC. *Dignus* is used with the Supine or with the Infinitive, most elegantly with *qui* and the Subjunctive: but sometimes with *ut* and the Subjunctive: as, *Dignus es amari*—*dignus es amari*—*dignus es qui ameris*—*dignus es ut ameris*.

The Supine in *u* is sometimes, but rarely, found after Verbs: as, *Pudet dictu*.—TAC. *Primus cubitu surgat villicus, postremus cubitum eat*.—CATO.]

ON THE USE OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 169. (a.) *Primus* (first) and *extremus* (outermost or last) *postremus* (hindmost or last) and *ultimus* (farthest or last) *imus* (lowest) *intimus* (inmost) and *medius* (midst); so *summus* (highest) and *infimus* (lowest) and *cæterus* and *reliquus* (remaining) are used as Attributives in a Partitive sense: as, *At break of day the top of the mountain was occupied by Labienus*.

(b.) Neuter Adjectives of both Numbers are sometimes put Adverbially, especially in the writings of the poets: as, *He will be a slave for ever who shall know not how to use a little*.—*He retires back stern, looking bitterly*.

(c.) An Adjective is often so used as an Attributive, that it must

be rendered in English by an Adverb: *Then do you stand boldly on the walls.—He kept himself timidly in his camp.*¹

§ 170. The Superlative is so used as to designate not only the highest degree of all, but also any degree preeminently high: as, *I am more wretched than you, who are extremely wretched.*²

Obs. The Pronoun *quisque*, every one, is employed for the distributive application of the Superlative: as, *Every man of most learning despises the Epicureans.—In every highest fortune we should confide least.*³

[¹ Two or more Adjectives are not usually joined as Attributives to the same Substantive without an intervening Conjunction, unless one or more of them are so united with the Substantive as to form one complex idea, as in the following examples: *Propter Ennam est spelunca quadam, ubi Syracusani festos dies anniversarios agunt.*—CIC. *Columna aurea solida sacrata est.*—LIV. *Verri apud Mumertinos privata navis oneraria maxima publicè est ædificata.*—CIC. Here *festos dies, columna aurea, navis oneraria maxima*, are expressions which may be said each to constitute one complex idea. Usually a Conjunction unites the epithets: as, *Cum Tigra-ne grave bellum diuturnumque gessimus.*—CIC. But, when the Adjectives follow the Substantive, they often stand without a Conjunction by Asyndeton, or in the way of Apposition: as, *Animal hoc providum, sagax, multiplex, acutum, memor, plenum rationis ac consilii, quem vocamus Hominem.*—CIC. Sometimes the Conjunction is dropped for the sake of Emphasis: as, *Res ipsa tot tam claris argumentis signisque lucet.*—CIC.

To the Adverbial use of the Adjective may be referred the elegant construction of *nullus*: as, *Judex, qui nullus est.*—CIC. *Philotimus nullus venit.*—CIC. *Nullus dubito.*—CIC. *Unus, primus, prior, princeps, solus, supremus, postremus, ultimus, proximus* are used with a Predicative force: as, *Hannibal princeps in prælium ibat, ultimus conserto prælio excedebat.*—LIV. *Omnem crede diem tibi diluxisse supremum.*—HOR. Thus where the English language generally uses a Relative Pronoun, as, *He was the last who came*, the Latin more concisely says *Ultimus venit*.

² The force of the Superlative is increased by (a) the Adverbs *longè, multo, quàm, sanè, facile*: as, *Ex Britannis omnibus longè humanissimi sunt, qui Cantium incolunt.*—CÆS. *Alcibiades fuit omnium ætatis suæ multo formosissimus.*—NEP. *Definitio quid sit id, de quo agitur, ostendit quàm brevissimè.*—CIC. *In fidibus musicorum aures vel minima sentiunt.*—CIC. *Bellum sanè difficillimum gessit.*—SUET. *Plato Græcorum facile doctissimus.*—CIC. (b.) *Quàm, quantus*, and *ut* with the Verb *possum*.—VIRG. *Aves quàm possunt mollissimè nidos substernunt.*—CIC. *Hannibal quantum maximam potest vastitatem ostendit.*—LIV. *Sic Cæsari te commendavi ut gravissimè diligentissimèque potui.*—CIC. (c.) *Tam quàm qui, tantum quantum qui, ut qui, qui qui, ut cum, cum*; as, *Tam sum mihi quàm qui lenissimus.*—CIC. *Commendationi meæ tantum tribue, quantum cui plurimum.*—CIC. *Grata ea res, ut quæ maximè senatui unquam, fuit.*—LIV. *Cæsar sit pro prætore eo jure, quo qui optimo.*—CIC. *Domus celebratur ita ut cum maximè.*—CIC. *Mater nunc cum maximè filium interfectum cupit.*—CIC.

We may here remark the idioms (imitated from the Greek) *mirum quantum, nimium quantum*, &c.: as, *Id mirum quantum profuit ad con-*

cordiam civitatis.—LIV. *Sales in dicendo nimium quantum valent.*—CIC. *So, Immane quantum.*—HOR.

² *Ut quisque* is used with one Superlative, *ita* following with another: as, *Ut quisque maxime opis indiget, ita ei potissimum opitulandum est.*—CIC. *Præcipue, summe, perquam, valde, vehementer, admodum, ap-primè, imprimis, sanè, egregie, oppido, enixe, perfecte,* and similar Adverbs, give a Superlative force to a Positive Adjective and Adverb: as, *Præcipue sanus.*—HOR. *Perquam breviter.*—PLIN.

Quàm is likewise used to strengthen the Positive: as, *Rami quàm latè diffunduntur.*—CÆS. It is also used for *quantum*: as, *Hic, quàm volet, Epicurus jocetur.*—CIC.]

ON THE USE OF NUMERALS.

§ 171. (A.) Cardinals.

(a.) *Unus* (one) is not used except with emphasis: as, *The matrons mourned a year for Brutus, as for a parent.—The force of friendship consists in this, that one mind (as it were) is made out of more than one.*

Obs. Unus often has a Superlative force, often increases the force of Superlatives: as, *Demosthenes is singularly eminent among all in every kind of speaking.—Publius Nigidius, of all men the one most learned.*¹

(b.) *Mille* (thousand) is used sometimes as a Substantive, sometimes as an Adjective; *millia* only as a Substantive: as, *More than a thousand men fell.—He has a thousand flocks.—Four thousand men occupied the Capitol.*

B. Ordinals are used in the reckoning of times: as, *Plato died writing in his eighty-first year.*

Obs. 1. Quisque, (every one) is employed for the distributive application of Ordinals: as, *Every fifth year a census is taken of the whole of Sicily.*

Obs. 2. Alter is used sometimes as *secundus* (second) sometimes as *unus e duobus* (one of two): as, *The second year after the eleventh had then received me.—Whatever one denies, the other denies also.*

C. Distributives make it appear that what is done is done to each of several, or by each, or at each time: as, *Twenty-five denarii were given to each of the soldiers.—They punish them with stripes, sixty (soldiers) each (centurion).—Bears bring forth at most five at a birth.*²

§ 172. (a.) The Roman *As*, or *Libra* (pound), in the earliest times was of copper, whence the Genitive *æris* (of copper) is sometimes put elliptically, *assibus* (pounds) being omitted: as, *His property was rated at fifty thousand pounds of copper (or asses).*³

(b.) The Roman coin, which in the earliest times was worth two *asses* (pounds) and a half, hence called *Sestertius* (*semis-tertius*),

Sesterce (half the third), had the notation HS, a corruption of II S (2½): as, *Tiberius gave to the people three hundred sesterces for each man.*—*A price was fixed of three sesterces for every bushel.*

(c.) A *Sestertium* was worth a thousand *sertertii* (sesterces) and is itself sometimes designated by the mark HS: as, *He gave two hundred thousand sesterces to each.*—*The candidates paid down five hundred thousand sesterces a-piece.*

(Obs.) The Numeral Adverbs, *decies* (ten times) and those of a higher number, when they define the number of sesterces, require *centena millia*, (hundred thousand) to be understood: as, *Twenty times HS, that is 2,000,000 sesterces.*—*Forty-three times HS, that is, 4,300,000 sesterces.*⁴

[¹ *Unus* is used emphatically with the Indefinite Pronoun *quis*, and its compounds: also with *nemo, nullus, nihil, solus*: as, *Hoc non quivis unus ex populo poterat agnoscere.*—CIC. *Nemo unus erat vir, quo magis innisa res Romana staret.*—LIV.

² *Uni, trini* with the Distributives *bini, quaterni, quini, &c.*, are used with Substantives of Singular Sense in Plural form: as, *Una castra jam facta ex binis videbantur.*—CÆS. *Bini* also signifies a pair: as, *Pamphilus binos habebat scyphos sigillatos.*—CIC. The poets sometimes use Distributives for Cardinals, and the converse: as, *Per duodena regit mundum sol aureus astra.*—VIRG. *Duo quisque Alpina coruscant gæsa manu.*—VIRG.

The General Rules for writing Compound Numbers, Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive, are as follows:—

(1.) In Compound Numbers less than 20, either the smaller number without *et* precedes the larger, or the larger with *et* precedes the smaller: as, *Nos Tyndaritani in septemdecim populis Siciliæ numeramur.*—CIC. *Octavo decimo ætatis anno Cn. Pompeius, nono decimo Cæsar Octavianus civilia bella sustinuerunt.*—TAC. *Gallinis ova terna dena subjcito ætate.*—PLIN. *Roscius fundos decem et tres reliquit.*—CIC. *Licet dicere decimus et septimus pro septimus decimus.*—PRISC.

(2.) In Compound Numbers greater than 20, either the smaller number with *et* precedes the larger, or the larger without *et* precedes the smaller: as, *Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos.*—CIC. *Macedo Alexander tertio et tricesimo anno mortem obiit.*—CIC. *Plinius scripsit sub Nerone naturæ historiarum libros triginta septem.*—PLIN. *Dentes triceni bini viris attribuuntur.*—PLIN.

(3.) In Compound Numbers above 100, the larger with or without *et* generally precedes the smaller: as, *Leontinus Gorgias centum et septem complevit annos.*—CIC. *Annum magnum esse voluerunt omnibus planetis in eundem recurrentibus locum, quod fit post duodecim millia nongentos quinquaginta quatuor annos.*—CIC. *Sexcentimum et quadragesimum annum urbs Roma agebat, quum primum Cimbrorum audita sunt arma.*—TAC. *Olympiade centesimâ quartâ decimâ Lysippus fuit.*—PLIN. *Aristidis arbitrio quadringena et sexagena talenta quotannis Delum sunt collata.*—NEP.

(4.) The Numbers above 100,000 are expressed by the Numeral Adverbs joined to *centum millia* or *centena millia*, as stated in the following

passage: *Non erat apud antiquos numerus ultra centum millia; staque et hodie multiplicantur hæc, ut decies centena millia aut sæpius dicantur.*—PLIN.

Unus is often used in Compound Numbers for the Ordinal *primus*, as in example to B. The numbers compounded with 8 and 9 are commonly expressed by a subtraction of *duo* and *unus* from the next multiple of 10: as, *duodeviginti* (*duodevicesimus*), 18; *undeviginti* (*undevicesimus*), 19; *duodetriginta* (*duodetricesimus*) 28; *undetriginta* (*undetricesimus*), 29, &c., &c.: *duodecentum* (*duodecentessimus*) 98; *undecentum* (*undecentessimus*) 99. *Millia* is generally followed by a Genitive, as in example to § 171. (b.); but, if smaller numbers intervene between *millia* and the Substantive, the latter will often stand in the same case as the Numeral: as, *Tria millia et septingenti pedites ierant.*—LIV.

³ The *As*, or *Libra*, was originally of the weight of a pound of 12 ounces (*uncia*), hence called *as libralis*, and *as grave*. It was divided into parts which were named according to the number of ounces they contained, or according to their quotity, as follows:—

Uncia	=	1oz. or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the <i>As</i> .	Septunx	=	7oz. or $\frac{7}{12}$ of the <i>As</i> .
Sextans	=	2 or $\frac{1}{6}$	Bes	=	8 or $\frac{2}{3}$
Quadrans	=	3 or $\frac{1}{4}$	Dodrans	=	9 or $\frac{3}{4}$
Triens	=	4 or $\frac{1}{3}$	Dextans	=	10 or $\frac{5}{6}$
Quincunx	=	5 or $\frac{5}{12}$	Denx	=	11 or $\frac{11}{12}$
Semissis	=	6 or $\frac{1}{2}$			

The etymology of *bes* is doubtful (some suppose *bis triens*): *dodrans* is for *de-quadrans* (*As* — $\frac{1}{4}$): *denx* (*As* — *uncia*.) The *Uncia* was also subdivided: viz.

Semuncia	=	$\frac{1}{2}$ of Uncia = $\frac{1}{24}$ of <i>As</i> .	Sextula	=	$\frac{1}{6}$ of Uncia = $\frac{7}{12}$ of <i>As</i> .
Duella	=	$\frac{1}{3}$ — = $\frac{1}{36}$	Scrupula	=	$\frac{1}{24}$ — = $\frac{1}{288}$
Siciliens	=	$\frac{1}{4}$ — = $\frac{1}{48}$	Siliqua	=	$\frac{1}{144}$ — = $\frac{1}{1728}$

Sescuncia or *Sescunx* = $1\frac{1}{2}$ *uncia* = $\frac{1}{2}$ *quadrans* = $\frac{1}{4}$ *As*. Of the divisions of the *As*, the *uncia*, *sextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, *quincunx*, *semis*, were represented by copper coins.

As was the Roman unit, and was used for any whole which was to be divided into equal parts; and these parts were called *uncia*. Hence it was applied to measure length, capacity, &c., as well as weight: and “inch,” or the 12th part of a foot, as well as “ounce,” the 12th part of a lb., is derived from *uncia*. It was also used to calculate interest. Thus (interest being usually paid monthly at the rate of so much per 100 *Asses*):

Uncia usura = $\frac{1}{12}$ per cent per month = 1 per cent per annum.

Sextantes = $\frac{1}{6}$ — — = 2

Quadrantes = $\frac{1}{4}$ — — = 3

&c.

&c.

&c.

Asses usura = 1 per cent per month = 12 per cent per annum.

Asses usura were also called *centesima*; and *binæ centesima* = 24 per cent; *quaternæ centesima* = 48 per cent. So Horace says: *Quinas hic*

capiti mercedes exsecat (i. e. *quinas centesimas*). (This man slices off 60 per cent from the capital.) The meaning of *unciarium fenus*, which was the yearly interest legalised by the Twelve Tables, has been much disputed. See "Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities," where it is understood to mean 1 *uncia* per *as* (or 100 *unciae* per 100 *asses* = $8\frac{1}{2}$ per cent) per annum.

<i>Hæres ex asse</i>	means heir to the whole estate.
<i>Hæres ex deunce</i>	— heir to $\frac{11}{12}$ of the estate.
<i>Hæres ex semisse</i>	— heir to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the estate.
&c.	&c.

4 The *Sestertius* (*Nummus*), or sesterce, was a silver coin equal to $2\frac{1}{2}$ *asses*, and $\frac{1}{4}$ of the *denarius*. Some derive its symbol HS from IIS ($2\frac{1}{2}$), others from LLS (*Libra Libra semis*), which comes to the same thing.

The *Sestertium* (=1000 *sestertii*) was not a coin, but a sum, and is only used in the Plural Number.

Some suppose that the Substantive joined with the Numeral Adverbs *decies*, *vicies*, &c., is a Neuter Noun *Sestertium*, only used in the Singular Number, and signifying 100,000 sesterces. This does not seem to be clearly made out; but, at all events, the practical rule for the student's guidance is as follows:—

(1.) *Sestertius*, or *Sestertii* (PLUR.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many *nummi sestertii* (coins called sesterces) as in the examples cited § 172 (b.)

(2.) *Sestertia*, in the Plural, joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many 1000 *nummi sestertii*: as in the examples cited. (c.)

(3.) The Numeral Adverbs, whether joined with *sestertii*, *sestertium*, *nummum*, or HS, denote so many 100,000 *nummi sestertii*, as in the examples cited to *Obs*. When an amount is described by more than one of these Adverbs in *ies*, they must be added together if the larger Numeral stands first, but multiplied when the smaller is first; care, however, being taken not to reckon the *centena millia*, which is understood, more than once in the whole amount. Thus, *millies et quingenties* = 150,000,000 sesterces; but *quaterdecies milles* = 1,400,000,000 sesterces. (*Dict. Ant.*) The same writer says: "When the numbers are written in cipher, it is often difficult to know whether *sestertii* or *sestertia* are meant. A distinction is sometimes made by a line placed over the Numeral when *sestertia* are intended. Wurm gives the following rule:—When the Numbers are divided into three classes by points, the right-hand division indicates units, the second thousands, the left-hand hundreds of thousands. Thus, III. XII. DC = 300,000+12,000+600=312,600 sesterces. But these distinctions are by no means strictly observed in the manuscripts."]

ON THE USE OF PRONOUNS.

§ 173. A. Personal and Possessive.

(a.) The Plural Pronouns, *nos*, *noster*, are often put for the Singular, *ego*, *meus*: as, *You should know me, I am a learned man.—I will return to my literary studies.*¹

(b.) *Sui, suis*, are Reflexives, and are especially referred to the principal Subject of the sentence, when it is of the third Person : as, *The people gave over to the senate the power of governing them.—Themistocles fixed his residence at Magnesia.—The mind feels that it is moved by its own, not an external, power.—The Colophonians say that Homer is their own countryman.*

Obs. 1. The Reflexives may also be referred to the Object, if they are themselves annexed to the Subject, or if the Subject is of the first or second Person, if (in short) there is no room for ambiguity, in which case the Reflexive is generally put after the Object : as, *Ostentation of himself is the motive of Scipio.—His own nature makes Cæsar more merciful.—I restore to the bees their own produce.—Extinguish Fidenæ with its own flames.—Citizens have many things common among one another.*²

(Obs.) But the Reflexive is put before the Cases of the Pronoun *quisque*, every one : as, *His own character moulds the fortune of every man.—Farther or nearer, his death awaits every one.*

Obs. 2. The Reflexives are also referred abstractly to an indefinite Person : as, *Blind self-love closely follows.—It is unseemly to speak (well) of one's self.—It is difficult to know one's own faults.*

Obs. 3. Where there is no place for a Reflexive, the Demonstrative is used, especially *is* : as, *A message was brought to Cincinnatus while ploughing, that he was made dictator.—The Egyptians embalm the dead, and keep them at home.—Chilius requests you, and I by his request.*

Obs. 4. The Oblique Cases of the Pronoun *ipse* are used instead of the Cases of the Reflexive, if there would be any ambiguity in the latter : as, *To that embassy Ariovistus replied, that, if he had needed anything from Cæsar, he would himself have come to him ; that, if he (Cæsar) wanted anything of him, he should come to him.*

§ 174. B. (a.) The Demonstrative Pronouns are thus in general to be distinguished : *is* is the person or thing of whom or which mention has been made ; *hic* is nearer to me ; *iste* is nearer to the other ; *ille* is the person who, or thing which, is remote from both.³

Obs. 1. *Iste* is often said with a certain contemptuous meaning : as, *What do those wretched persons want ?—I would rather err with Plato, than hold the right opinion with those men.*

Obs. 2. When *hic* and *ille* refer to two Antecedents, *hic* refers to that which is either last in the sentence, or first in the mind of the speaker ; *ille* to that which is either first in the sentence, or last in the mind of the speaker : as, *The same ought to be the object of the teacher and the learner, viz., that the former desire to help, the latter to make progress.—Certain peace is better than hoped-for victory ; this is in your own hand, the other in the hand of the Gods.*³

§ 175 (b.) *Ipse* is a Pronoun of all Persons, and increases the force of Substantives as well as of the other Pronouns to which it is

usually annexed : as, *The Father himself with right-hand wields the thunderbolts.*—*We slowly learn to know ourselves.*—*Dishonesty compels injury to be done to itself.*—*I myself console me.* (That is, *No one else consoles me, but I only* ; where the emphasis is in the Subject.) *I console myself.* (That is, *I console no one else, but myself only* ; where the emphasis is in the Object).

Obs. 1. *Ipse* is sometimes put for *ultrò* (voluntarily) or *sponte suâ* (of one's own accord) : as, *The she-goats come of their own accord to the milkpail.*

Obs. 2. *Ipse* sometimes denotes the most eminent person : as, *The Pythagoreans used to answer ; He himself said so.* (meaning *Pythagoras.*)

Obs. 3. *Ipse* is employed for exactly defining time : as, *I was precisely ten days at Athens.*—*At this particular time I cannot be without you.*

C. The Interrogative Pronouns are, *quis*, *quisnam*, used Substantively ; *qui*, *quinam*, Adjectively. (Of the Relative we shall treat hereafter.)¹

§ 176. D. The Indefinite Pronouns, *Quis* and *qui*, (any one) generally follow Particles, such as *ne*, *si*, *sive*, *nisi*, *qui*, *quò*, *quàm*, *quum*, *unde*, *ubi*, *ut*, *an*, *num*. *Aliquis* and *aliqui* are used either without Particles or with Particles, in a less indefinite sense than *quis* and *qui* ; so that one is signified whom we believe to exist, but as yet do not know : as, *They began to fortify towns and lay down laws, that no one should be a thief, or robber, and no one an adulterer.*—*Some persons should always be looked for, whom we may love.*—*If there remains some feeling after death.*

Obs. 1. *Aliquis* is sometimes put for *eximius* (eminent, important) : as, *He believes himself somebody.*

Obs. 2. *Quidam* (a certain one) is more definite than *aliquis* ; so that one is signified whom we know, but do not name : as, *A certain person runs up to me, who was only known to me by name.*

(*Obs.*) Hence it is put sometimes to express contempt : as, *Certain poor women dwell here.*

¹ The Personal Pronouns are used with the Prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ab*, to signify "house," "abode:" as, *Septimo Idus veni ad me in Sinuessanum.*—*Cic.* *Scaurum ruri apud se esse audio.*—*Cic.* *Quisnam a nobis egreditur foras ?*—*TER.*

² *Sui* and *suus* continue to be used in a sentence, through successive propositions, as long as no other Subject is introduced : as, *Ipse se quisque diligit, non ut aliquam a se ipso mercedem exigit caritatis suæ, sed quòd per se sibi quisque carus est.*—*Cic.* But, if a second Subject be introduced, *sui*, *suus* refer strictly to that Subject, and *is*, *ejus* must be used of the first : as, *Alcibiades quum esset projectus inhumatus, amica corpus ejus texit suo pallio.*—*NEP.* But they often continue, if no ambiguity is produced, to be used of the original Subject, especially if the

second Proposition expresses a thought or purpose of the Subject of the first: as, *Dionysius instituit, ut filix sibi barbam adurerent.*—CIC.

It often happens that the Demonstrative or Reflexive may be used with equal propriety in a Subordinate Sentence; the former, if the feeling or opinion of the writer is expressed, the latter, if that of the Subject: and in the first case the Subordinate Sentence will have the Indicative, in the latter the Subjunctive Mood. Thus, *Ambiorix in Aduatucos, qui erant ejus regni finitimi, proficiscitur* (CÆs.), where the Relative Clause expresses the writer's judgment, might have been, *Ambiorix in Aduatucos, qui essent sui regni finitimi, proficiscitur*; referring it to the mind of Ambiorix.

As these Reflexive Pronouns are often referred to the Object, so, when the leading Verb is in the Passive Voice, they are applied, not to the Subject, but to that which would be its Subject if the Verb were changed into the Active voice: as, *A Cæsare invitatur ut sim sibi legatus* (i.e. *Cæsar me invitat*, &c.)—CIC.

See Crombie's *Gymnasium*, II. 43. &c., where the student will find much useful matter.

³ *Is* is the weakest, or least emphatic, Demonstrative, and is used (1.) in reference to a Noun before mentioned; as, *Polemarchus est Agrigentinus, vir bonus atque honestus. Is domum ad istum in jus eductus est.*—CIC. *Maximum ornamentum amicitix tollit qui ex ea tollit verecundiam.*—CIC. (2.) In correlation to a Relative, which it usually precedes, but sometimes, for the sake of emphasis, follows: as, *Is, qui hoc fecit, repetundarum accusatus est.*—CIC. *Bestiæ, in quo loco nate sunt, ex eo se non commovent.*—CIC. But it is often omitted, as, *Qui e nuce nucleum esse vult, frangit nucem.*—PLAUT. *Quæ cupiditates a naturâ proficiscuntur, facile expletur sine injuriâ.*—CIC. (3.) In the sense of "such:" as, *Matris est ea stultitia, ut eam nemo hominem, ea vis, ut nemo feminam, ea crudelitas, ut nemo matrem appellare possit.*—CIC.

In such sentences as, "The features of the mind are fairer than those of the body," where the Demonstrative (those) is used in English, the Latin idiom omits it: as, *Animi lineamenta pulciora sunt quàm corporis.*—CIC. The use of an emphatic pronoun (*hic* or *ille*) is no real exception to this rule: as, *Nullam virtus aliam mercedem laborum periculorumque desiderat, præter hanc laudis et gloriæ.*—CIC. See § 130, Obs. 2. N. 3. So, "Those dwelling at Rome" is in Latin, not, *Ti Rome habitantes*, but either, *Romæ habitantes*, or, *Ti qui Romæ habitant*.

Idem (is-dem) "the same," is often aptly rendered by the English, "also:" as, *Quicquid honestum, idem est utile.*—CIC. *Non omnes, qui Atticè, idem bene; sed omnes, qui bene, iidem etiam Atticè loquuntur.*—CIC.

Ille is also used (1.) to express fame and dignity, as, *Quem nostram ille moriens apud Mantineam Epaminondas non cum quâdam miseratione delectat?*—CIC. *Veneramini illum Jovem, custodem hujus urbis.*—CIC. (2.) Hence to call attention to something, supposed to be generally known, but about to be specially mentioned: as, *Illud te rogo, summi ne parcas.*—CIC. *Illud festinanter dictum, omnes sapientes esse bonos.*—CIC.

Et is, isque, atque is, et hic, et is quidem, et hic quidem, et idem, idemque, atque idem, nec is, are used emphatically, to lay stress on some particular property or quality of a noun before mentioned: as, *Homo habet memo-*

riam, et eam infinitam rerum innumerabilium.—CIC. *Sermo nobis, isque multus, de te fuit.*—CIC. *A te bis literas, et eas quidem perbreves, accepi.*—CIC. *Tamesis uno omnium loco pedibus, atque hoc ægrè, transiri potest.*—CÆS. *Plato doctissimus fuit atque idem gravissimus philosophorum omnium.*—CIC. *Erant in Torquato plurimæ literæ, nec eæ vulgares.*—CIC.

The adverb *quidem* is elegantly joined to Personal and Demonstrative Pronouns, especially to *ille*, when a concession is made, but immediately qualified by an adversative sentence (*sed*). As, *Ignosco equidem tibi, sed tu quoque velim mihi ignoscas.*—CIC. *Quod me hortaris ad memoriam factorum meorum, facis amicè tu quidem, sed mihi videris aliud tu honestum judicare atque ego existimem.*—CIC. *Tuus dolor humanus is quidem, sed tamen magnoperè moderandus.*—CIC. *Ludo et joco uti illo quidem licet, sed tum, cum seriis rebus satisfeceris.*—CIC.

⁴ *Quis* was anciently of both genders. *Quis* (*quæ, quid*) and *quisnam* (*quænam, quidnam*) inquire the substantial character of a person or thing: *qui*, (*quæ, quod*) and *quinam*, (*quænam, quodnam*) its accidents. *Ecquis* (*ecqua, ecquid*) and *ecquis*, (*ecquæ, ecquod*) also *numquis* and *numqui* (does any one?) are similarly related. *Qualis* asks the nature; *quantus*, the size; *quot*, *quotus*, the number. *Quotusquisque* (one out of how many) = "how few." *Uter*, means which of two?

Interrogatives inquire either directly or obliquely.

Sometimes a sentence contains a double Interrogation: as, *Considera, Piso, quis quem fraudasse dicatur.*—CIC.

⁵ The Indefinite *Quis* (*qua, quid*, Plur. *qui, quæ, qua*) is used substantively: *qui* (*quæ quod*; Plur. *qui, quæ, quæ*) adjectively. So, *aliquis* and *aliqui*. *Si quis* and *si qui* are put for the Relative with a slight modification of uncertainty: as, *Errant si qui in bello omnes secundos rerum proventus expectant.*—CÆS. As *ipse* is used to define time, *aliquis* is used to make it indefinite: as, *Aliquos viginti dies* (about 20 days).—PLAUT.

Nescio quis, nescio qui, ("I know not who = some one or other,") are used as Indefinite Pronouns.

Quispiam (subst.) and *nonnullus* (adj.) are used in positive sentences: *quisquam* (subst.) and *ullus* (adj.) in negative and dubitative only: as, *Hæreditas est pecunia, quæ morte alicujus ad quempiam pervenit jure.*—CIC. *Zeuxis tabulas pinxit, quarum nonnulla pars usque ad nostram memoriam mansit.*—CIC. *Noli quidquam sequi, quod assequi non queas.*—CIC. *Heu cadit in quemquam tantum scelus?*—VIRG. *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit, et quidem sine labore ullo.*—CIC. *Aliquis* (*aliquis quis*) means indefinitely, "some one or other," implying "I know not who," (*nescio quis*): as, *Certum quædam aliquid mavolo.*—PLAUT. *Quidam*, "some certain one," as opposed to *aliquis*, implies that the subject is definitely known, though indefinitely described: thus we should say, *Quodam tempore natus sum, aliquo moriar*. It is joined with epithets, like the English word "certain": as, *Erat spinosa quædam et exilis oratio.*—CIC. *Quidam* is occasionally used for "some," as opposed to "the whole" or "others;" as, *Nullis piscibus supra quaternas pinnae sunt; quibusdam binæ, aliquibus nulla.*—PLIN. Hence it is used as a limitation, and qualifies an expression not meant to be strictly taken: as, *In ideis Plato quiddam divinum esse dicebat.*—CIC.

Uter may be used as an Indefinite Pronoun. *Quisquis* (subst.) *quicunque* (adj.) *qualiscunque, quantuscunque, quocunque, quotuscunque,*

utercunque, are Universals, used both as Relatives and Indefinites. *Quivis, quilibet, utervis, uterlibet, alteruter*, are Universal Indefinites. *Quisque, unusquisque, uterque* are Distributive. *Nemo, nullus, neuter* and *nihil*, Negative. *Omnes, ambo*, Collective. *Alius, alter*, Partitive.

Observe that the Pronouns, which express one of two, end in *er* : *alter, uter, neuter*.

Of the Pronominal Particles, *quò, quà, quì, quàm, quando, quoties, ubi, unde, cur, quantum*, and some others, may be used Interrogatively.

Quò, quà, quì, quàm, quando, quum, quoties, ubi, unde, cur, quantum, qualiter, and others may be used Relatively.

Quò, quà, quì, quando, ubi, unde, may be used Indefinitely, with the same Conjunctions as *quis, qui* (Indef.). *Sicubi, sicunde*, are written for *si ubi, si unde* : *necubi, necunde*, for *ne ubi, ne unde*. *Aliquò, aliquà, aliquì, aliquando, alicubi, aliquando, aliquoties*, are used Indefinitely, according to the laws of *aliquis, aliqui*.

Quocunque, utcunque, ubicunque, quotiescunque, &c., are Universal Relative Particles, following the laws of *quisquis* and *quicumque*. *Quovis, quolibet, quamlibet, ubivis, &c.*, are Universal Indefinite Particles, following the constructions of *quivis* and *quilibet*.

Unquam, usquam, are used in the same kind of sentences as *quisquam* and *ullus* ; *uspiam* in the same as *quispiam* ; *nunquam, nusquam, nequam, nuspiam*, in the same as *nemo* and *nullus* ; *nonnunquam* in the same as *nonnullus*.

[EXCURSION IV. ON CORRELATIVES.

Pronouns and also Pronominal Adjectives and Particles, which have a mutual relation to each other, are called Correlatives. This Correlation comprises an Interrogative, a Demonstrative, a Relative, an Indefinite, and an Universal. Of Universals some are used either Relatively or Indefinitely, some Indefinitely only.

Correlative sentences are formed by Demonstratives and Relatives, the former being sometimes omitted. For examples of *tantus --- quantus, talis --- qualis*, see § 107. N. 2. For *is --- qui* see § 174, N. 3. (2.) The following are examples of other Correlatives. *Quot homines, tot sententiæ.*—TER. *Non toties accipio tuas literas, quoties a Quinto mihi fratre afferuntur.*—CIC. *Ubi bene, ibi patria.*—INC. *Ibit eò quò vis qui zonam perdidit.*—HOR. *Unde necesse est, inde initium sumatur.*—CIC. *Canis tam placida est quàm est aqua.*—PLAUT. *Ut magistratibus leges, ita populo præsumt magistratus.*—CIC.

Plus, amplius, magis, minus, potius, non plus, non magis, non minus are often used before *quàm* in the comparison of inequality, as *tam* and *tantum* in that of equality : as *Prodest plus imperator quàm orator.*—CIC. *Ego sum ædilis, hoc est, paulò ampliùs quàm privatus.*—CIC. *Quodvis potiùs periculum mihi adeundum, quàm a speratâ dicendi gloriâ discedendum putavi.*—CIC. *Non magis mihi deest inimicus, quàm Ferri defuit.*—CIC. *Plus* is used in quantitative comparison, *magis* in intensive, *minus* both in quantitative and intensive, *amplius* in extensive : *potius* in the comparison of preference.

Table of the principal Correlatives.

Interrogative.	Demonstrative.	Relative.	Indefinite.	Universal.
1 Quis? qui? quisnam? quidnam? ecquis? numquis?	hic, is, ille, iste, idem (nemo, nullus, alius, quisque, omnes.)	qui.	quis, qui, aliquis, aliqui, quisquam, quispiam, quidam, (ullus, alius).	quisquis, quicumque, quilibet.
2 Uter?	uterque (alter, neuter, ambo)	uter.	uter, alteruter.	uterque, utervis, uterlibet.
3 Quantus?	tantus.	quantus.	aliquantus.	quantuscunque, quantuscumque.
4 Qualis?	talis.	qualis.	-	qualiscunque.
5 Quot?	tot (quisque, pauci, multi, omnes, nulli.)	quot.	aliquot.	quotquot, quotcunque.
6 Quotus? quotusquisque?	tôtus.	quotus.	aliquotus.	quotuscunque.
7 Quoties?	toties.	quoties.	aliquoties.	quotiescunque.
8 Quàm?	tam.	quàm.	aliquàm.	quàmecunque, quàmvis, quàmlibet.
9 Ubi?	hic, ibi, illic, istic, ibidem (nusquam, alibi).	ubi.	ubi, alibi (uspiam usquam.)	ubique, ubicunque, ubivis.
10 Quò?	huc, eò, istuc, illuc, eòdem, quò.	quò.	quò, aliquò.	quoquo, quocunque, quovis, quolibet.
11 Quà?	hàc, eà, istac, illac, eàdem, quà.	quà.	quà, aliquà.	quàquà, quàcunque, quavis, quàlibet.
12 Unde?	hinc, inde, illinc, istinc, unde.	unde.	unde, alicunde.	undeunde, undecunque.
13 Quando?	nunc, tunc, tum (nunquam, semper, alias.)	quum, ubi.	quando, aliquando, (unquam.)	quandoque, quandocunque.
14 Quomodo? qui? ut?	ita, sic, itidem (nequaquam, quemadmodum, aliter.)	quomodo, ut, quemadmodum.	aliquomodo.	quomodocunque, utcumque, utut.
15 Quare? cur? quapropter?	eò, ideò, ideò, propterea.	quia, quod, quare.	-	-
16 Quousque?	eò, eousque, usqueadeo.	cur. [nec. quoque, dum, donec.]	-	-

To these might be added others, as *quatenus* and its Correlatives, *quorsum* and its Correlatives, &c.

ON CONJUNCTIONS COPULATIVE AND DISJUNCTIVE.

§ 178. Conjunctions Copulative and Disjunctive connect like Cases, Moods, and Tenses: as, *He admires the gates, and the bustle, and the pavement of the streets.*—*Virtue can be neither snatched nor stolen away.*—*Friendship is suitable to either prosperity or adversity.*—*Death will come, whether you linger or make haste.*

Unless a different principle of construction intervene: as, *Pompey resolved to winter at Dyrrachium, Apollonia, and all the maritime towns.*

Obs. 1. Copulative Conjunctions are omitted by the form called asyndeton: as, *Out of lusts spring hatreds, dissensions, seditions, wars.*

Obs. 2. For comparison serve *ac, atque*, sometimes *et, que, ut*, after Adjectives or Adverbs of likeness or unlikeness: *Par* (equal) *dispar* (unequal) *alius* (other) *similis* (like) *diversus* (different) and *idem* (the same) *proinde* (according, in the manner) *perinde* (just, exactly, equally) *pro eo* (same as *proinde*), *contra* (contrariwise) *contrarius* (contrary) *æque* (equally) to which add *aliter* (otherwise) *pariter* (on a par, equally) *juxta* (near, even, like) *secus* (otherwise) and *simul* (at the same time)¹ as, *It is dissimulation, when other things than you really think are spoken.*—*Nothing sharpens regret for the absent so much as neighbourhood.*—*I mourned for the death of your daughter as I ought.*—*Every thing turned out nearly the reverse of what was predicted.*—*I laboured for the safety of my fellow-citizens as much as for my own.*—*As soon as an animal is born, it delights in pleasure.*²

[¹ *Idem* is sometimes found with *cum* and ablative: sometimes with a dative: *juxta* with *cum* and ablative; *alius* with ablative. As, *Eodem mecum patre genitus est.*—TAC. *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti.*—HOR. *Quo in loco res nostræ sint, juxta mecum omnes intelligitis.*—SALL. *Neve putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum.*—HOR.]

² Partition is expressed very commonly by the sequences, *cum* and *tum*; *tum* and *tum*; *quâ* and *quâ*; *modò* and *modò*; *nunc* and *nunc*, &c.: also by *alter* and *alter*; *alius* (or any of its derivatives *aliter, alias, alibi*, &c.) followed by *alius* or any derivative: as, *Agasilaus cum a cæteris scriptoribus, tum a Xenophonte collaudatus est*, (as well by other writers, as especially by Xenophon).—NEP. *Omnium Fabiorum, quâ plebis, quâ patrum, ærimia virtus fuit.*—LIV. *Quod alteri deest, præstò est alteri.*—COLUM. *Aliter cum tyranno, aliter cum amico vivitur.*—CIC.]

Partition is also elegantly expressed by *alius, alter, uter*, put in the same part of the sentence with one of their own cases, or with an Adverb derived from them: as, *Aliud remedium alii prodest; aliud alibi facilius invenitur.* PLIN. *Sergius Virginisque alter in alterum causam conferunt.*—LIV. *Nihil aliud in judicium venit, nisi uter utri insidias fecerit.*—CIC.]

ON THE TENSES AND MOODS OF THE VERB.

§ 179. I. Every action is put in a time (tense), either present, or past, or future; so however, that it either has no other temporal relation, or has another temporal relation.

A. The Verbal Tenses which have no other temporal relation (Aorists, Indefinites, or Absolute), are:—

- a. The Present Aorist, *scribo*, I write.
- b. The Preterite Aorist, *scripsi*, I wrote.
- c. The Future Aorist, *scribam*, I shall write.

B. The Verbal Tenses which have another temporal relation (Relative Tenses) are:—

(a.) The Present :¹

- (1.) With a Present relation, *scribo*, I am writing.
- (2.) With a Past relation, *scripsi*, I have written.
- (3.) With a Future relation, *scripturus sum*, I am about to write.

(b.) The Preterite :

- (1.) With a Present relation, *scribebam*, I was writing.²
- (2.) With a Past relation, *scripseram*, I had written.
- (3.) With a Future relation, *scripturus fui*, I was about to write.

(c.) The Future :

- (1.) With a Present relation, *scribam*, I shall be writing.
- (2.) With a Past relation, *scripsero*, I shall have written.
- (3.) With a Future relation, *scripturus ero*, I shall be about to write.

Obs. 1. The principle of Passive Tenses is the same.

Obs. 2. The Historic Tense is principally the Preterite Aorist; but there is frequent use in history of the Preterite Relative Tenses (b.) The Present also (with a present relation) is sometimes used historically, that the action may be (as it were) painted to the eyes of readers: as, *The senate being dismissed, the decemvirs come before the assembly, and abdicate their office, to the great joy of all.*³

Obs. 3. In letters the Romans generally used the Past, where we use the Present: as, *While I am writing this, the matter is at a hazardous crisis.*⁴

II. Of the Moods :—

A. The Indicative enuntiates absolutely.⁵

B. The Imperative commands or exhorts.

Obs. 1. *Ne*, the prohibitive Particle, is joined to an Imperative or Subjunctive: as, *Let there be no delay in executing my orders.—Lay not the blame on me.*⁶

Obs. 2. The Simple Future is elegantly put for the Imperative : as, *You will not trouble yourself to render word for word.—If anything important should occur, you will take care to let me know.*

C. The use of the Conjunctive is threefold :—

(a.) Potential ; which has a meaning either conditional, or permissive, or dubitative : as, *I think this is especially advantageous in life, to avoid excess. So may you most easily obtain praise without ill will and make friends.—If the Trojans without your leave and against your will have sought Italy, they may atone for their sins, and you need not help them with your succour.—Should I speak out or be silent ?*

Obs. 1. There is a peculiar use of the Perfect Potential, to affirm, deny, or forbid with a certain urbanity and moderation : as, *The judgment of Brutus, allow me to say, I far prefer to yours.—Nothing can I in my right mind compare with a pleasant friend.*

Obs. 2. Elegant, in like manner, is the use of the Future Perfect for the Simple Future : as, *Ah ! if you persist, I shall be gone.*

(b.) Optative ; either without a Particle, or after the Particles *ne*, *utinam* (would that, I wish that) *O si, si, ut* for *utinam* : as, *May my fellow-citizens be in health, in safety, and happiness !—May I die, if I do not incur vast expenses !—May I cease to live, if I write otherwise than as I think !—Oh, if Jupiter would bring back my past years !—The gods and goddesses confound him !*

(c.) Subjunctive, properly so called, because it is subjoined to Verbs and Particles.

D. It has been said above (§ 165.), that the Infinitive is (as it were) the Substantive of the Verb, which may stand either Subjectively or Objectively. Now, observe, the Simple Infinitive—

(a.) Is joined Subjectively to those Verbs which are called Impersonals : as, *It is pleasant to go beneath the shades.—It falls not to the lot of every man to visit Corinth.—It pleases me to be always learning.*

(b.) Follows many Verbs Objectively, especially—

(1.) Verbs of Wishing : *volo* (I wish) *nolo* (I am unwilling) *malo* (I would rather) *aveo* (I long) *cupio* (I desire) &c.

(2.) Verbs of Power, Duty, and Custom : *possum, queo* (I can, am able) *nequeo* (I cannot, am unable) *debeo* (I ought) *soleo, consuesco* (I am wont, used, accustomed), &c.

(3.) Verbs of Beginning, Continuing, or Desisting from Action : *cœpi, incipio* (I begin) *meditor* (I meditate) *statuo* (I resolve) *disco* (I learn) *doceo* (I teach) *conor* (I endeavour) *nitor* (I strive) *pergo* (I proceed) *cesso* (I cease) *desino* (I desist) &c.

(4.) Many Passive Verbs, to which in the Active Voice an Accusative with an Infinitive is subjoined : *videor* (I seem) *credor* (I am believed) *dicor* (I am said) *feror* (I am reported) *perhibeor* (I am holden or reported) *narror, trador* (I am related) &c. :⁷ as, *All who*

wish to transact important matters are used to think long.—Socrates may justly be called the father of philosophy.—We cannot look the sun right in the face.—Every one ought to maintain his own family.—The Delians began to fatten hens.—Sallust resolved to write a history of the achievements of the Roman people.—The Scipios proceed to go to Saguntum.—The veins and arteries do not cease to beat.—Forbear to enquire what is likely to take place to-morrow.—I seem to be wandering through sacred groves.—Aristides is related to have been the most just of all men.

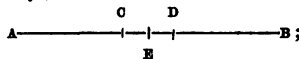
Obs. 1. After Adjectives the Infinitive is either poetical, or of the silver age, as they call it : as, *Well matched in singing, and ready to answer one another.*—*Easy as wax to be moulded to vice, rough to his advisers.*—*Agricola was skilled in obeying.*

Obs. 2. A circumlocution of the Future Infinitive, as well Active as Passive, is often made by means of *fore ut, futurum esse ut*, with the Subjunctive : as, *I hope it will be so, that we shall remove into Heaven.*—*He said that the baths would get warm.*—*Pompey had said that the army of Cæsar would be repulsed.*

Obs. 3. The Historic Infinitive has place in a grave narration : as *At that moment an awful sound pealed through the heavens.*

Obs. 4. In expressing the more violent affections sometimes the Infinitive Interrogative is used : as, *I be vanquished and desist from my undertaking?*³

[¹ Time present may be regarded as shorter or longer. Thus, let AB be a line infinite both ways,—



in which c and d are given points. Then cd, which is finite, will represent time present; ac, which is infinite, time past; and db, also infinite, time future. It is evident that at e, any point in cd, one portion, ce, of cd, or of time present, will really be past; another portion, ed, really future. Hence time present may comprehend a limited space, longer or shorter; it may be an infinitesimal moment, (as, *Momento turbinis exit Marcus Dama.*—PERS.); or, excluding the distinctions of past and future, it may comprehend ab, or eternity, as in the example, *Deus est, qui viget, qui sentit, qui meminit, qui regit et moderatur, et est æternus.*—CIC.

² The Preterite with a present relation, or Imperfect, expresses :

(1.) An action going on during some other action in time past : as, *Quum bello Italia arderet, C. Norbanus in summo otio fuit.*—CIC. *Jam ver appetebat, quum Hannibal ex hibernis morit.*—LIV.

(2.) A long-continued action in time past : as, *Æqui se in oppida receperunt, murisque se tenebant.*—LIV.

(3.) Habitual or frequent action in time past : as, *Dicebat melius quàm scripsit Hortensius.*—CIC. *Dicebam, medicare tuos desiste capillos.*—OV.

³ The Præsens Historicum is very commonly used in a temporal sentence with dum, even when the principal sentence is past or future : as, *Dum obsequor adolescentibus, me senem esse sum oblitus.*—CIC. *Intelligetis, si in verbis jus constituamus, omnem utilitatem nos, dum veruti et callidi volumus*

esse, amissuros.—CIC. The Present after *jampridem* or *jamdudum* has a past force, as *jamdudum video*.—HOR.

⁴ The Latin letter-writer expresses in the Past those actions which would be past at the time of the letter being received, as in the examples to the Rule; but in the Present those which will still remain present: as, *Sic habeto, mi Tiro, neminem esse, qui me amet, quin idem te amet.*—CIC.

⁵ Verbs and phrases expressing duty, necessity, propriety, &c., are often put in the Indicative of past time, to express that something should have been done, which in fact was not done: as, *Omnibus eum contumeliis onerasti, quem patris loco colere debebas.*—CIC. *Jaci fundamenta reipublicæ seriùs quàm decuit.*—CIC. *Hæc tecum coram malueram.*—CIC. *Quanto melius fuerat promissum patris non esse servatum.*—CIC. So, *Longum est mulorum persæqui utilitates et asinorum.*—CIC. The Indicative also generally follows the Universal Relatives, *quisquis, quicunque, utut, &c.*

⁶ A Periphrasis of the exhorting Imperative is made by *fac, fac ut, cura ut, velim*, with the Subjunctive, and by *memento* with Subjunctive or Infinitive: and a Periphrasis of the forbidding Imperative by *fac ne, cave, nolim*, with the Subjunctive; or by *noli, parce, mitte, omittit, assiste, &c.*, with the Infinitive: as, *Magnum fac animum habeas.*—CIC. *Æquam memento rebus in arduis servare mentem.*—HOR. *Cave facias.*—CIC. *Hoc nolim me jocari putes.*—CIC. *Nolite id velle, quod fieri non potest.*—CIC. *Mitte sectari rosa quo locorum sera moretur.*—HOR. *Vos timere abstitite.*—PRÆD.

The Imperative has two forms, of which the former has only the second Persons, as, *veni, venite*; the latter has both the second and third Persons, as, *venito, venitote*; *venito, veniunto*. The first form entreats as well as commands; the other is more emphatic, and generally commands, being especially used in legal formularies: as, *Quum faciam vitula pro frugibus, ipse venito.*—VIRG. *Mortuum in urbe ne sepelito.*—CIC. *Divis omnibus pontifices, singulis flamines sunt; virginesque Vestales in urbe custodiunto ignem foci publici sempiternum.*—CIC. The first form borrows the third Persons, and first Person Plural, from the Conjunctive Mood.

Non is sometimes used for *ne* with the Imperative, when a command supposed to be once given is now negated: as, *Non assuescat ergo puer, ne dum infans quidem est, sermoni, qui dediscendus sit.*—QUIST.

⁷ These are among the Passive Copulative Verbs (see § 111.); and it is to be carefully observed that Latin idiom assigns to most of them the Personal construction with Nominative of the Subject and an Infinitive, (which, strictly speaking, is neither subjective nor objective, but predicative); not the Impersonal construction, with Accusative and Infinitive. Thus a good Latin writer says: *Videtur Cicero dixisse* rather than *Videtur Ciceronem dixisse*. So: *Verus patriæ diceris esse pater.*—MART. *Terentii fabellæ propter elegantiam sermonis putabantur a C. Lelio scribi.*—CIC. This rule is occasionally violated in the words *nuntiatur, traditur, creditur, intelligitur, proditum est*, and a few others: as, *Nuntiatum est adesse Scipionem cum legionibus.*—CÆS. *Eam Venerem, quæ Astarte vocatur, Adonidi nupsisse proditum est.*—CIC.

⁸ As a poetical idiom, the Infinitive after an Adjective is exceedingly common, especially in lyric poetry: in prose, the student should carefully avoid it.

⁹ *Ut* with Subjunctive is sometimes put for the Interrogative Infinitive: as, *Quid loquor? te ut ulla res frangat? tu ut unquam te corrigas?*—CIC.

EXCURSION V. ON THE CONSECUTION OF TENSES.

The Present Tenses *a* and (*a*), with the Future *c* and (*c*), are called Primary; while the Past Tenses *b* and (*b*) are called Historical.

The general Rule for the consecution of Tenses is as follows:—

- A Subjunctive Tense in a subordinate sentence will be Primary, if the Tense of the principal sentence is Primary; it will be Historical, if the Tense of the principal sentence is Historical.

The connexion is made by Relative or Interrogative Pronouns, *qui, quis, qualis, &c.*; or by Particles, *ut, ne, quo, quin, cur, dum, an, &c.*

Obs. 1. The Latin Preterperfect has a double power: (1.) as *Præsens cum Relatione Præteritâ* (*scripsi, I have written*), answering to the Greek Perfect, it is a Primary Tense; but (2.) as *Præteritum Aoristum* (*scripsi, I wrote*), it is a Historical Tense. Its Subjunctive, *scripserim*, is generally subordinated to the Primary Tenses; but in Consecutive Sentences it is often subordinated to a Historical Tense, in reference to the present time of the writer or speaker, in order to show that the consequence actually came to pass: as, *Adeo vim facinoris sui perhorruerunt, ut Gracchum illum suum occidere cogitarent.*—CIC. *Pauci reperti sunt, qui vitam hostium telis objecerint.*—CIC.

Obs. 2. The Future has no Subjunctive form of its own; it therefore, in the Active, takes the forms of the *Conjugatio Periphrastica*; viz. *-turus sim*, in consecution of Primary Tenses; and *-turus essem*, in consecution of Historical Tenses: of which forms the first is called *Futurum Periphrasticum Præsentis*, the second *Futurum Periphrasticum Imperfecti*. The Future Subjunctive Passive is expressed by means of the Periphrases *futurum sit ut, futurum esset ut* (see § 179. *Obs. 6.*): as, *Non dubito quin futurum sit ut urbs ab hostibus capiatur: non dubitabam quin futurum esset ut urbs ab hostibus caperetur.*

- A. (*a.*) The Present Subjunctive follows a Primary Tense, when the subordinate action is in the same time with the principal action.
- (*b.*) The Preterperfect Subjunctive follows a Primary Tense, when the subordinate action has been completed before the principal action.
- (*c.*) The *Futurum Periphrasticum Præsentis* follows a Primary Tense, when the subordinate action is future to the principal action: as.

PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.		SUBORDINATE SENTENCE.
Præsens Aoristum, <i>Quæro</i>	}	Act. <i>quid agas.</i>
Præs. Relat. Præs. <i>Quæro</i>		Pass. <i>quid a te agatur.</i>
Præs. Relat. Præt. <i>Quæsi</i> (I have enquired)		Act. <i>quid egeris.</i>
Præs. Relat. Fut. <i>Quæsiturus sum</i>		Pass. <i>quid a te actum sit.</i>
Futurum Aoristum, <i>Quæram</i>		Act. <i>quid acturus sis.</i>
Fut. Relat. Præs. <i>Quæram</i>		Pass. [<i>quid actum a te futurum sit.</i>]
Fut. Relat. Præt. <i>Quæsivero</i>		
Fut. Relat. Fut. <i>Quæsiturus ero</i>		

- B. (a.) The Imperfect Subjunctive follows a Historical Tense, when the subordinate action is in the same time with the principal action.
- (b.) The Pluperfect Subjunctive follows a Historical Tense, when the subordinate action has been completed before the principal action.
- (c.) The Futurum Periphrasticum Imperfecti Subjunctivi follows a Historical Tense, when the subordinate action is future to the principal action: as,

PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.		SUBORDINATE SENTENCE.
Præst. Aoristum, <i>Quæsi</i> (I enquired.)	}	Act. <i>quid ageres.</i>
Præst. Relat. Præs. <i>Quærebam</i>		Pass. <i>quid a te ageretur.</i>
Præst. Relat. Præt. <i>Quæsi veram</i>		Act. <i>quid egisses.</i>
Præst. Relat. Fut. <i>Quæsiturus eram</i>		Pass. <i>quid a te actum esset.</i>
vel <i>fui</i>		Act. <i>quid acturus esses.</i>
		Pass. [<i>quid actum a te futurum esset.</i>]

Obs. 3. When a Compound Sentence of two clauses (the subordinate Tense being *Futurum Simplex*) is changed into a sentence of three clauses, of which the last is subordinate to the 2nd, and the 2nd to the principal, the *Futurum Simplex* is changed into the Present Subjunctive, if the principal Verb is Primary; or into the Imperfect Subjunctive, if the principal Verb is Historical. Thus: *Qui hoc dicet, errabit*, is changed into *Non dubito quin, qui hoc dicat, erraturus sit*; *Non dubitabam quin, qui hoc diceret, erraturus esset*. If the subordinate Tense of the double sentence is *Futurum Exactum*, it will, in the triple sentence, be Preterperfect Subjunctive, when the principal Verb is Primary; or Pluperfect Subjunctive, when the principal Verb is Historical. Thus: *Si ita fecero, me culpabis*, is changed into, *Non dubito quin, si ita fecerim, me culpaturus sis*; *Non dubitabam quin, si ita fecissem, me culpaturus esses*. But if a principal sentence, having the *Futurum Exactum*, is to be subordinated, we must use for that purpose, in the Active construction, *futurum sit ut* with Preterperfect Subjunctive, if the principal Verb is Primary; or *futurum esset ut* with Pluperfect Subjunctive, if the principal Verb is Historical; and, in the Passive construction, the Participle Perfect Passive with *futurus (a, um) sim* or *essem*. Thus, *Post paucos dies rem confecero*, becomes, *Non dubito quin futurum sit ut post paucos dies rem confecerim*; *Non dubitabam quin futurum esset ut post paucos dies rem confecissem*; *Non dubito quin post paucos dies confecta a me res futura sit*; *Non dubitabam quin post paucos dies confecta a me res futura esset*.

Obs. 4. When a clause subordinated to a Historical Tense contains a proposition generally true, without reference to time, such a clause may stand in the Present Subjunctive: as, *Olim ignorabatur quàm magnum vectigal sit parsimonia*. Yet the best writers almost always construct such clauses according to the General Rule: as, *Apelles pictores eos peccare dicebat, qui non sentirent quid esset satis*. —CIC. And thus also it is a favourite idiom, especially with Cicero, to construct the Preterperfect Indicative with historical

consecution, even where it appears to have the definite force of a *Præsens cum Relatione Præteritâ*, rather than the indefinite meaning of a *Præteritum Aoristum*: as, *Sæpè vidimus fractos pudore, qui ratione nullâ vincerentur.*—CIC.

Obs. 5. Consecutive Sentences with *ut* or *qui*, following a Historical Tense, are constructed with the Imperfect Subjunctive, if the consequence is referred to the time of the principal action; but with the Preterperfect Subjunctive, if the consequence is referred to the time of the writer or speaker, so as to express the fact more positively. (See Obs. 1.) The following example unites both constructions, and well illustrates their principle:—*Sicilia et classis Marcello evēnit. Quæ sors, velut iterum captis Syracusis, ita exanimavit Siculos, ut comploratio eorum flebilesque voces et extemplò oculos hominum converterent, et postmodò sermones præbuerint.*—LIV. The latter construction will therefore be necessary, when the consequence can only be referred to the time of the writer or speaker.

Obs. 6. The *Præsens Historicum* (§ 179. I. Obs. 2.) sometimes has the consecution of a Primary, oftener of a Historical Tense: as, *Cæsar cohortatur milites ne labori succumbant.*—CÆS. *Pompeius, ne duobus circumcluderetur exercitibus, ex eo loco discedit.*—CÆS.

Obs. 7. When an Infinitive (Present or Future), or Participle, Gerund, or Supine, intervenes between the principal and subordinate Verb, the law of consecution is still dependent on the principal Verb: as, *Credo me intelligere quid agas (egeris, acturus sis).*—CÆS. *mirari se aiebat, quod non rideret haruspex, haruspice quàm vidisset.*—CIC. *Incessit libido sciscitandi ad quæm regnum Romanum venturum esset.*—LIV. But, if an Infinitive Perfect intervenes, the consecution of the subordinate Tense is Primary or Historical according as the Infinitive is *Præsens Relatione Præteritâ* or *Aorist*: as, *Mirum est ita comparatam esse hominum naturam omnium, aliena ut melius videant et dijudicent quàm sua.*—TER. *Liberatur Milo non eo consilio profectus esse, ut insidiaretur in viâ Clodio.*—CIC. (But to this Infinitive we must also apply Obs. 4.; as, *Satis video docuisse, hominis natura quanto omnes anteiret animantes.*—CIC.) The same Rule applies to the *Infinitivus Futuri Periphrastici Perfecti*: as, *Quis est qui hoc non sentiat, quidvis prius futurum fuisse, quàm ut hi fratres diversas sententias fortunasque sequerentur?*—CIC.

Note 1.—As the Infinitive in *-re* or *-ri* does not imply present time, but the condition of an action in progress, while the Infinitive in *-isse* or *-um esse* implies the condition of a completed action, Zumpt would call the former, *Infinitivus rei infectæ*, the latter *Infinitivus rei perfectæ*. They may also be called (severally), *Infinitivus Præsentis et Imperfecti*, and *Infinitivus Perfecti et Plusquamperfecti*; but this does not express their meaning fully.

Note 2.—“*Memini* takes generally an Infinitive Present, although an action already completed is spoken of: as, *Memini Catonem mecum et cum Scipione disserere.*—CIC. This, however, is an *Infinitivus rei infectæ*, designed to transfer the reader to the time of the conversation. When the simple fact is stated, the Infinitive Perfect is used with *memini*: as, *Ego memini summos in civitate fuisse viros.*—CIC.” (Zumpt.)

Note 3.—The Infinitive Perfect is elegantly used by poets for the Present (as also the Perfect Indicative for the Present Indicative), either by anticipation, or to express frequency: as, *Hinc apicem rapax Fortuna cum stridore acuto sustulit*; *hic posuisse gaudet*.—HOR. The same idiom is not uncommon in prose: as, *Non satis est reprehendisse peccantem, si non doceas rectè viam*.—COLUM.

Note 4.—As the Infinitive has no Potential force of its own, it acquires one by means of the Future Participle. Thus, “*I know that he would come if he could*,” is “*Scio eum venturum fore, si posset* ;” and “*I know that he would have come if he could*,” is “*Scio eum venturum fuisse, si potuisset*.”

EXCURSION VI. ON COORDINATE SENTENCES.

- I. Copulative Sentences are introduced by the Conjunctions *et, que, ac, atque, neque, nec*; also by *namque, etiam, quoque, item, itidem*. *Et, and que* (enclitic or affixed to words), couple things of like nature: *ac* (not used before Vowels, *j*, or *h*), and *atque* couple things different in their nature. *Neque, nec*, couple Negations, and affect the Verb of the sentence, while *et non* affects only some other word or portion of the sentence. *Et* couples things before independent; *que* is Adjunctive, adding what belongs to a thing and properly goes with it: as, *Consules creantur Julius Cæsar et P. Servilius*.—CÆS. *Senatus populusque Romanus*.—LIV. *Leges et instituta ac mores civitatum perscripsimus*.—CIC. *Opinionibus vulgi rapimur in errorem nec vera cernimus*.—CIC. *Per se jus est expetendum et colendum: quod si jus, etiam iustitia: sic relique quoque virtutes per se colendæ sunt*.—CIC. *Utinam pro decore tantum hoc vobis et non pro salute esset certamen*.—LIV.

Copulative Conjunctions are often doubled for the sake of Emphasis: as, *Et monere et moneri proprium est veræ amicitiae*.—CIC. *Zeno officia et servata prætermissaque media putabat*.—CIC. *Tela in hostem sunt hastaque et gladius*.—LIV. *Nec sæpè nec diu eadem occasio erit*.—LIV. Affirmative and Negative propositions are coupled by *et...nec, nec...et, nec...que*: as, *Intelligitis Pompeio et animum præsto fuisse, nec consilium defuisse*.—CIC. *Vitia erunt donec homines; sed neque hæc continua, et meliorum interventu pensantur*.—TAC. *Spinosa herbæ neque dant flammæ lenique tepore cremantur*.—OV.

- II. The Disjunctive Particles are *aut, vel, ve, sive* or *seu, neve* or *neu*. *Aut* makes a more emphatic Disjunction than *vel*, and is therefore used to oppose one proposition to another. *Ve* unites single words, not propositions. When one *sive* alone is used, it implies that the difference exists in name only: as, *Ascanius Laviniam urbem matri seu novercæ reliquit*.—LIV. *Neve* or *neu* is constructed with a Subjunctive, like *ne*.

The Disjunctives are also doubled: as, *Aut nemo, aut, si quisquam, Cato sapiens fuit*.—CIC. *Serius a Romanis poetæ vel cogniti sunt vel recepti*.—CIC. *Corpora vtruntur, nec quod fuimusve sumusve cras erimus*.—*Homines nobiles seu rectè, seu perperam facere cæperunt, in utroque excellunt*.—CIC. *Carthaginiensibus conditiones pacis dictæ, bellum neve in Africâ neve extra Africam injussu populi Romani gerent*.—LIV.

- III. Partitive Sentences are formed by the Particles mentioned § 178, N. 2. *cum...tum, tum...tum, quâ...quâ, modò...modò, nunc...nunc, jam*

...*jam, simul...simul, partim...partim*; and by the words, *pars...pars, alter...alter, alius...alius, aliàs...aliàs*, &c. The double Copulative Sentences (see above I.) might equally well be ranked with Partitive Sentences.

IV. Continuative Sentences are formed by the Particle *primum* or *primò*, in the 1st place; *deinde*, in the 2nd place; *tum*, in the 3rd place; *postea*, in the 4th place; (or *primum, deinde, mox, tum*; which may be followed by *præterea, porro, insuper*), ending often with *denique*, finally, or *postremo*, in the last place.

V. The Adversative Conjunctions are, *sed, autem, verum, verò, at, atque, tamen, attamen, sed tamen, veruntamen, at verò, enimverò, cæterum*. One form of the Adversative construction is when the first sentence contains a negation, the second an assertion introduced by *sed* or *verum*: as, *Otii fructus est non contentio animi, sed relaxatio*.—CIC. In which form we often find *non modò, non solum*, followed by *sed, verum, sed etiam, verum etiam*, &c.; as, *Non solum verbis arte positus moventur omnes, verum etiam numeris ac vocibus*.—CIC. We find *non modo non, non solum non* followed by *sed, sed etiam*, or by *sed ne...quidem, sed neque*, &c.: as, *Hoc non modo non pro me, sed contra me est potius*.—CIC. *Ego non modò tibi non irascor, sed ne reprehendo quidem factum tuum*.—CIC. Another Adversative construction is when the first sentence is not wholly denied, but merely limited, by the second. In this all the Conjunctions are used with more or less strength. Thus, *Sed* denotes a direct opposition; *Autem*, distinction, contrast, or transition: *Verum, verò, veruntamen*, correct by stating the true case: *At, at verò, at enim*, are used to introduce objections which the writer or speaker then proceeds to remove: *Atqui* means "but yet," "but in fact:" *Enimvero* is used to affirm strongly, or to express great feeling: *Verum enimvero* is a very strong and grave Adversative: *Cæterum*, "for the rest," often means merely 'but.'

The Adversative Conjunction is often understood: as, *Ex propinquitate benevolentia tolli potest, ex amicitia non potest*.—CIC.

VI. The Causal Conjunctions forming Coordinate Sentences are, *nam, namque, enim, etenim*: to which may be added *quippe, nempe, scilicet, videlicet, nimirum*.

Nam, etenim, always begin a sentence in prose; *namque* almost always. *Enim* comes after one or more words, except sometimes in the comic poets. *Nam* and *namque* are somewhat stronger than *enim* and *etenim*.

VII. The Conclusive, or Inferential, Particles are, *ergo, igitur, itaque, ideo, idcirco, proinde, propterea, quare, quapropter, quomobrem, quocirca*.

On Coordinate Constructions the advanced Student may gain much useful information from the copious examples in Ramahorn's *Latin Grammar* (1830), § 188—192.]

ON SUBSTANTIVAL SENTENCES.

§ 181. (A.) Oblique Enuntiation.

G. R. I.—The Infinitive with the Accusative of its Subject is joined subjectively to the Verb *est* and other Impersonals: as, *It is a crime for a Roman citizen to be bound, an atrocity for him to be*

punished with stripes.—It is proper for every one to measure himself by the module of his own foot.—It is desirable for all good men, that the commonwealth should be preserved. It is certain that laws were invented for the preservation of citizen s.

Obs. 1. Ut with the Subjunctive is often put for this Infinitive: as, It is an old law, that friends should have the same wish.—It remains, that we vie with each other in acts of kindness.—It is necessary for me to bathe.—It is expedient for all, that every state should have its rights.²

(Obs.) Oportet (it is right) and necesse est (it is necessary) when they take the Subjunctive, omit the Conjunction: as, You ought to devote yourself to philosophy, in order that you may be free.—Virtue must necessarily stop up the roads to pleasure.

Obs. 2. For the same Infinitive is sometimes put quod with an Indicative, less often with a Subjunctive: as, This one consolation supports me, that no kind act of affection has been withheld from you by me.—We excel beasts in this one thing most especially, that we talk with each other.—Moreover he is wondrously charmed with surpassing talents.—It is a welcome thing that you have given to your country and people a citizen.³

G. R. II.—The Infinitive with the Accusative of its Subject is joined Objectively to many Verbs in which there is the force of thinking or declaring: as, We have heard that Pompeii has fallen in by an earthquake.—I consider him lost, who has lost his shame.—Xenophanes says that the moon is inhabited.—Solon pretended that he was mad.

Obs. 1. An Infinitive Future is usually joined to verbs of hoping and promising; as, I hoped that I should attain it.—He promised that he would repay the money.

Obs. 2. Verbs of fearing take the Subjunctive with the Conjunctions ne and ut for ne non: as, It is to be apprehended there may be a famine in the city.—O boy, I fear you will not be long-lived.⁴

§ 182. (B.) Oblique Interrogation.

G. R.—Pronouns and Particles, which obliquely interrogate, require the Subjunctive: as, Learn what it is to live.—Do you write back and say how many you wish to be.—Is there a place where the winters are milder?—Men know not how great a revenue thrift is.—I asked the men themselves, whether they were Christians.⁵

G. R.—Verbs of wishing, asking, exhorting, commanding, permitting, taking care, striving, effecting, and the like, govern a Subjunctive, either with the Conjunctions ut, ne, or without a Conjunction: as, Phaethon wished to be taken up into the chariot of his father.—This I beg of you, not to let your courage sink.—The year warns you not to hope for immortality.—Take care to preserve your health.—You may cause me to die miserably, you cannot prevent my dying.—Caesar

gives orders to Labienus to keep the Remi in their allegiance.—Allow me to prevail on you, my father.—Beware of telling a falsehood.⁶

(Obs.) Many of these admit an Infinitive: *Reason itself warns us to make friendships.—The Pythian Apollo commands us to know ourselves.⁷*

[¹ It is a peculiarity of the Greek and Latin languages that the Accusative Case is in each the Subject of an Infinitive Mood. The principle of this construction has been much discussed and is not easily settled. See Stallbaum's *Ruddiman*, II. p. 231. note 15.; Billroth's *Lateinische Schulgrammatik*, § 250.

The Accusative with Infinitive is found as a Subject with such Verbs and Phrases as *apparet, attinet, constat, conducit, convenit, decet, expedit, fugit, fallit, interest, licet, liquet, obest, pertinet, placet, præstat, prodest, præterit, refert, restat, sequitur, venit mihi in mentem, &c.*; *æquum est, apertum est, consentaneum est, certum est, credibile est, justum est, iniquum est, manifestum est, memoria proditum est, nuntiatum est, notum est, par est, rectum est, turpe est, utile est, usitatum est, verum est, verisimile est, &c.*; *fas est, facinus est, lex est, mos est, necesse est, nefas est, opus est, scelus est, tempus est, &c.*

As an Object, the Accusative with Infinitive follows:—

(a.) Verba Sentiendi: *as, audio, animadverto, censeo, cogito, cognosco, colligo, comperio, confido, considero, credo, deprehendo. duco, existimo, experior, facio* (I suppose), *intelligo, invenio, iudico, opinor, percipio, puto, reputo, reperio, scio, nescio, nescius sum, conscius sum, sentio, spero, statuo, suspicor, video, memini, obliviscor, reminiscor, doleo, gaudeo, glorior, indignor, lator, miror, queror, &c.*

(b.) Verba Declarandi; *as, affirmo, aio, dico, declaro, demonstro, efficio, (I prove), fateor, fingo, confiteor, indico, moneo, narro, nego, nuntio, ostendo, perhibeo, polliceor, probo, comprobo, promitto, refero, scribo, significo, simulo, dissimulo, spondeo, testor, testificor, trado, voveo, &c.*

In the foregoing lists we do not include those Verbs which take an Accusative of the nearer Object with an Infinitive of the Subject or remoter Object; such as *oportet, jubeo, veto, patior, sino, &c.*

When the Subject of the Infinitive is indefinite (*aliquem*) it is often understood. This can only happen when the Accusative and Infinitive Construction is used Subjectively: *as, Convenit in dando munificum esse.—Cic.*

When a Comparative Sentence is subordinate to the construction of the Accusative and Infinitive, and has the same Verb, this Verb is commonly omitted in the subordinate sentence, and its Subject put in the Accusative: *as, Te suspicor iisdem rebus, quibus me ipsum, interdum gravius commoveri.—Cic.* When, after a verb *sentiendi* or *declarandi*, the Subject of the Infinitive is the same person or thing as that of the principal verb; poets sometimes (imitating the Greek idiom) retain the Nominative Subject in the Subordinate Sentence: *as, Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis?—Hor. Retulit Ajax esse Jovis pronepos.—Ov.* So, (by a further Græcism) *Sensit medios delapsus in hostes.—Virg.*

² The Student must carefully discriminate the phrases in which *ut* with Subjunctive may be substituted for Accusative and Infinitive, from those in which the latter only can be used. *Ut* with Subjunctive cannot stand

for Accusative and Infinitive after expressions of *thinking, believing, affirming, denying*. Thus it cannot follow the Verbs *sentendi et declarandi*, nor can it be used with *constat, liquet, patet, apertum est, certum est, manifestum est, notum est, &c.*, unless when it means "*how*," and then it is not properly an Enuntiatio but an Interrogatio Obliqua. But, after phrases signifying *fitness, duty, usefulness, casualty, custom, consequence, &c.*, ut with Subjunctive may stand for Accusative with Infinitive: as after *est* (it is possible), *fit, fieri potest, superest, restat, sequitur, reliquum est, accidit, contingit, evenit, æquum est, propè est, lex est, mos est, &c.* These constructions form a common and elegant Periphrasis: as, *Soli hoc contingit sapienti ut nihil faciat invitus.*—CIC.

³ *Quod* with a finite verb is used for the Accus. and Infin. to express the ground of the principal proposition. See Examples, *Obs. 2.* So *quod* follows verbs and phrases of joy, sorrow, praise, blame, surprise, indignation, and the like, to express the ground of the emotion: as, *Dolet mihi quod stomacharis.*—CIC. *Quod spiratis, quod vocem mittitis, indignandum.*—CIC. It is also used to express a positive fact after *prætereo, mitto, non dico, &c.*: as, *Mitto, quod invidiam subisti.*—CIC. Still more frequently it stands in correlation to demonstrative pronouns and nouns; and follows *nisi* and *præterquàm*. But it is not used after verbs of *knowing, thinking, asserting*, and the like.

⁴ *Ut* after Verbs of fearing really means "*how*," thus, *Timeo ut sustineas* is literally, "I fear how you may support them"—"I fear you may not support them." When the Verb signifies "to be afraid of," it has the simple Infinitive, like a Verbum Voluntatis: as, *Venari timet.*—HOR.

⁵ *Nescio quis* and *nescio quomodo* are exceptions to this Rule, being constructed like *aliquis, aliquo modo*.

Ut (how) may follow Verbs *sentendi et declarandi* as an Interrogatio Obliqua: as, *Videmus ut luna solis lumen accipiat.*—CIC. *Num probari potest, ut sibi mederi animus non possit?*—CIC. *Cæsar docebat ut omni tempore totius Gallie principatum Ædui tenuissent.*—CIC.

⁶ Among these Verbs are:—(1.) Verba rogandi, postulandi, monendi, hortandi, imperandi, persuadendi: as, *adduco, induco, cogo, compello, impello, edico, decerno, incito, flagito, hortor, adhortor, cohortor, exhortor, jubeo, impero, mando, moneo, admoneo, commoneo, moveo, oro, peto, precor, posco, postulo, præscribo, præcipio, rogo, suadeo, persuadeo, &c.*—(2.) Verba curandi, enitendi, efficiendi: as, *assequor, consequor, adipiscor, caveo, cogito, committo, contendo, consulo, curo, facio, efficio, laboro, elaboro, nitor, enitor, statuo, constituo, video, id ago, operam do.*—(3.) Verba optandi: *cupio, opto, studeo, volo, nolo, malo, &c.*—(4.) Verba permittendi: as, *concedo, do, patior, sino, permitto.*

Verbs of *saying, writing, sending, voting, &c.*, when they imply a command, may have this construction: as, *Cæsar Dolabellæ dixit, ut ad me scriberet, ut in Italiam quàm primum venirem.*—CIC.

Ut is occasionally omitted after some Verbs of *wishing, asking, commanding, exhorting, allowing*, and *effecting*: as, *edico, decerno, impero, mando, hortor, oro, precor, rogo, facio, efficio, curo, volo, nolo, malo, do, sino, patior, &c.*

Caveo, I take precaution, is followed by *ut* and Subjunctive; *caveo*, I beware, by *ne* and Subjunctive, or Subjunctive without *ne*: as, *Caveamus ut omnia moderata sint.*—CIC. *Cavere debemus ne quid turpiter faciamus.*—CIC. *Cave quidquid turpiter facias.*—CIC. *Ne* with Subjunctive is used in a like sense after *video, prospicio, considero, curo*.

Facio, efficio, id ago, committo, adduco, induco, animum induco, in animum induco, followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive, form an elegant Periphrasis: as, *Invitus feci ut L. Flaminium e senatu ejicerem.*—CIC. *Non committam ut in scribendo negligens esse videar.*—CIC. *Omne animal id agit ut se conservet.*—CIC. *Potuit animum inducere ut patrem esse se oblivisceretur.*—CIC.

7 *Persuadeo* and *suadeo*, when they are used of persuading concerning any matter, govern a Dative of the person persuaded, with an Accusative and Infinitive (or Accusative alone, if a Pronoun) of the matter: as, *Mithridates persuasit Datami se infinitum adversus regem Persarum suscepisse bellum.*—NÆP. *Tu quod ipse tibi suaseris, idem mihi persuasum putato.*—CIC. But if they are used of persuading to any action, they take *ut* with Subjunctive: as, *Persuadet uti mercetur agellum.*—HOR.

The Verbs *volo, nolo, malo, cupio*, have the various constructions of Infinitive, Accusative with Infinitive, Accusative with Participle Perfect Passive, Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, and Subjunctive with ellipse of *ut*. Thus we may say, *Volo tibi consulere: volo nos tibi consulere: volo tibi consultum: volo ut tibi consulatur: velim tibi consulatur.*

The constructions which the Verbs named in this rule severally admit or prefer can only be learnt thoroughly by observation and practice. Thus *impero* takes the Subjunctive Active, but Infinitive Passive: *jubeo* is generally followed by Infinitive, but not always: *sino* and *patior* by Subjunctive or Infinitive: *veto* by Infinitive, or by *ne* and Subjunctive, &c. &c.]

ON ADVERBIAL SENTENCES.

§ 184. (A.) Final Sentences.

G. R.—*Ut, ne, ut ne*, in a final sense, require a Subjunctive: as, *Robbers rise before day, that they may murder men.*—*We are for this purpose slaves of the laws, that we may be free.*—*In order that the magnitude of the city may not be useless, Romulus opens an asylum.*—*Scipio went into the country that he might not appear to plead his cause.*—*Care must be taken that we do nothing rashly.*

§ 185. (B.) Consecutive Sentences.

G. R.—*Ut, ut non, ut nihil, ut nemo, ut nullus*, in a consecutive sense, require a Subjunctive; (a.) After the Demonstratives *ita, eo, tam, adeo, tot, tantus, talis, is, hic, huc*: as, *Who is so mad as to mourn of his own goodwill?*—*Titus was so easy that he refused nothing to any one.*—*So great was the terror, that no one dared to go out of the intrenchments.*—*The force of decorum is such, that it cannot be separated from morality.* (b.) The Demonstrative being understood: as, *Italy is planted with trees, so that the whole seems an orchard.* (c.) After a Comparative and *quam*: as, *Isocrates is a man of too great a genius to be compared with Lysias.*¹

Obs. *Tantum abest* has two sentences subordinate to it; the first a Substantival one, for the Subject of the Verb *abest*; the other an Adverbial, which follows the Demonstrative *tantum*; as, *I am so far from admiring my own compositions, that Demosthenes himself does not satisfy me.*²

§ 186. (C.) Causal Sentences.

G. R. VI. *Quum*, in a causal sense, generally governs a Sub-

junctive, but sometimes an Indicative: as, *Since these things are so, I go over to the opposite opinion.—I rejoice that you have formed an intimacy with Matius.*

G. R. II. *Quod, quando, quia, quandoquidem, quoniam* and *siquidem*, in a Causal sense,—(because, inasmuch as, since)—are generally joined to an Indicative: as, *They are present by reason that they follow their duty.—They are silent, because they fear danger.—Speak, since we are seated on the soft grass.—Since it is now night, depart.*³

§ 187. (D.) Temporal Sentences.

G. R. I. *Quum, quando, quoties, simul, ut, simul atque, ubi, post, quàm*, Conjunctions of Time, (when, as soon as, as often as, after, &c.) generally have an Indicative, sometimes a Subjunctive, especially when two past circumstances are connected: as, *It is your concern when the neighbouring wall is on fire.—When I came into his presence, I spoke not much.—It is wretched to dig, when thirst has hold of the throat.—Whenever I was at Athens, I was a frequent hearer of Zeno.—Agésilas died after he had come into harbour.*⁴

G. R. II. *Dum, donec* (while, as long as, until) *quoad* (as long as, until) *antequam, priusquam* (before), sometimes take an Indicative, sometimes a Subjunctive: as, *Men learn while they teach.—Wait till Kæso becomes Consul.—Cato, as long as he lived, increased in reputation for his virtues.—Wait till you can know what you should do.—Let us break out, before daylight overtakes us.—Foresight is that by which the mind sees something before it is done.*⁵

§ 188. E. Conditional Sentences.

G. R. I. *Si* (if), *nisi* (unless), sometimes are placed before the Indicative, sometimes before the Conjunctive Mood: as, *If you are in health, it is well.—Unless the vessel is pure, whatever you pour in becomes sour.—If there was any large vessel, they gladly brought it.—If you refuse when in health, you will run when dropical.—Take it, little dog: he refuses: if you were not to give it, he would wish for it.—If Democritus were on earth, he would laugh.—If I had known that, I would never have set my foot here.—If you were an Athenian, you would never have been renowned.*⁶

Obs. *Modò, dum, dummodò, modò ut*,—(so that, provided that, provided only that, &c.)—in a Conditional Sense, govern a Subjunctive: as, *Old men retain their genius, if they only retain their industry.—Caligula used to repeat the saying: Let them hate, provided they fear.—You shall know, if you can only be silent.*⁷

§ 191. (f.) Concessive Sentences.

G. R. I. The Concessive Conjunctions *etsi, tametsi, etiamsi*, (although) sometimes take an Indicative, sometimes a Conjunctive Mood: as, *Although we are liable to blame, we are acquitted of wickedness.—You stun my ears, although I understand.—Even though Cæsar were not the man he is, he would still appear deserving of honour.*⁸

G. R. II. Quamquam (although) *utut* (however) govern an Indicative, seldom a Subjunctive: as, *Although you are in haste, the delay is not long.—However he has deserved of me, he is still agreeable to me.—However that may have been taken, I will add this moreover.*

G. R. III. Quamvis, quantumvis, licet, ut, quum, ne, in a Concessive Sense, govern a Subjunctive: as, *What is base, though it be hidden, will not become honourable.—Though ambition be a fault, yet it is frequently the cause of virtues.—Though strength be wanting, yet the will is to be praised.—Phocion was poor, though he might have been exceedingly rich.—Though pain be not the greatest evil, it is surely an evil.*⁹

Obs. 1. In the historians and poets *quamvis* is sometimes found with an Indicative: as, *Though he is not powerful in genius, he is powerful in art.*

Obs. 2. The Conditional or Concessive Conjunction elegantly falls out: as, *Thou would'st have a part in so great a work, O Icarus, did grief permit.—Though you drive out nature with a fork, yet she will ever return.*

§ 192. (g.) Comparative Sentences.

G. R. The Comparative Particles, *quasi, tanquam, ceu, velut*, and the like, govern a Subjunctive: as, *Little children, when just born, lie as if they were without animation.—Then did the fathers spring out in consternation, as if the enemy were bursting into the temple.—Often I remember that I held her hand, on pretext as if I were examining her gems and seal.*¹⁰

[1 Final Sentences express the end or object of an action (in order that, lest): Consecutive Sentences express its consequence (so that). *Ut* is used in both: but negative particles and pronouns are different in each: those in Final Sentences are *ne, ut ne, ne quis, ut ne quis, ne quando*, &c. in Consecutive, *ut non, ut nemo, ut nullus, ut nunquam*, &c.

Kühner ranks Final and Consecutive Sentences in the Substantial Class; incorrectly, we believe, because a Final Sentence answers the adverbial questions, *Why? Wherefore? For what end?* and a Consecutive Sentence answers the adverbial questions, *How? In what degree? With what issue?*—There is, however, a close relationship between Final Sentences and Oblique Petitions, and also between Consecutive Sentences and Oblique Enuniations: so that some sentences might be placed without impropriety in one or the other class. Thus in, *Dabant operam consules ne quid respublica detrimenti caperet* (Liv.), the subordinate sentence may be regarded either Substantially as an Oblique Petition, (which is the preferable view), or Adverbially, as a Final Sentence (lest). So in *Mos est hominum ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere* (Cic.), the Subordinate Sentence may be regarded Substantially, as an Oblique Enuniation in apposition to *mos*, (which we prefer), or Adverbially, as Consecutive after *ita* or *talis* understood.

After a Primary Tense, a Final Sentence takes the Present Subjunctive, after a Historical Tense, the Imperfect Subjunctive. For the Consecution of Tenses in Consecutive Sentences, see Excursion V. Rules A. and B. and *Obs. 1* and *5*.

Among Consecutive phrases we may remark *in eo esse ut* (to be on the point of): as, *In eo sum ut proficiscar.*—CIC. *Dignus, indignus, idoneus*, may be followed by *ut*: as, *Indigni ut a vobis redimeremur visi sumus.*—LIV.

§ The Adverbial Sentence after *tantum abest* is sometimes changed into a Principal Sentence: as, *Tantum abfuit, ut inflammaret nostros animos; somnum isto loco vix tenebamus.*—CIC.

§ The Causal particle *quum* (since) differs from *quod* and *quia*: *quum* states the cause logically, *quod* and *quia* materially: hence they govern different moods in general. Hence too, when *quum*, after expressions of joy, grief, surprise, praise, congratulation, &c., assigns, like *quod*, the material cause or ground, it governs an Indicative Mood, as, *Te, quum isto animo es, satis laudare non possum.*—CIC.

Quum with an Indicative is followed by *tum* with an Indicative, when it is intended, of two definite facts, to represent the former as general and less important, the latter as special and very important: as, *Quum te semper amavi dilexique, tum mei amantissimum cognovi in omni varietate rerum mearum.*—CIC. And *quum* with a Subjunctive is followed by *tum* with an Indicative, when one assumed or conceded proposition, which is general and less important, is made the basis of another, which is special and very important: as, *In philosophia quum multæ res nequaquam satis adhuc explicate sint, tum perdifficilis et perobscura quæstio est de naturâ deorum.*—CIC. In such sentences *quum* is rather concessive than causal, and may generally be rendered "whereas."

Siquidem, quoniam, quando, quandoquidem, express a certain and admitted cause.

4 The Doctrine of the Moods in Temporal Sentences is less capable of accurate definition than in any other class. The Subjunctive is commonly used (besides in the *Oratio Obliqua*) under the following circumstances.

(1.) When a repeated action in past time is expressed by the Temporal Sentence, the Principal Verb being then in the Imperfect: see R. G. 1. 4th Example. So, *Quum cohortes ex acie procucurrissent, Numidæ effugiebant.*—CÆS. *Galba, ubi in bonos incidisset, sine reprehensione patiens erat.*—SUET. The same use of the Subjunctive occurs after Relatives: as, *Quemcunque lictor jussu consulisprehendisset, tribunus mitti jubebat.*—LIV. And after *si*: as, *Ubi his ordinibus exercitus instructus esset, hastati omnium primi pugnam inibant; si hastati profligare hostem non possent, pede presso eos retrocedentes in intervalla ordinum principes recipiebant. Tum principum pugna erat. Si apud principes quoque haud satis prosperè esset pugnatum, a primâ acie ad triarios sensim referebantur. So, Ut quisque maximè laboraret locus, aut ipse occurrebat, aut aliquos mittebat.*—LIV.

(2.) When the Principal Sentence contains a past action in the Preterperfect Tense or Historic Present, and the Temporal Sentence an action either contemporaneous with this, or antecedent to it; then the verb in the Temporal Sentence (after *quum* or *postquam*) usually stands, if contemporaneous, in the Imperfect Subjunctive; if antecedent, in the Pluperfect Subjunctive: as, *Antigonus, quum adversus Seleucum Lysimachumque dimicaret, in prælio occisus est.*—JUST. *Alexander quum interemisset Clitum, familiarem suum, vix a se manus abstinuit.*—CIC.

The chief exception to this rule occurs, when the Temporal Sentence refers to a single definite word in the principal Sentence: as, *Tum, quum respublica vim et severitatem desiderabat, vici naturam et vehementer fui.*—CIC.

8 *Dum, donec* (whilst, as long as) and *quoad* (as long as) generally govern the Indicative. It is an idiom of *dum*, that it is used in a Temporal Sentence with the Present Indicative, even when the principal action is in past time: as, *Dum obsequor adolescentibus, me senem esse sum oblitus*.—CIC. *Donec* in this sense is not used by Cicero.

Dum, donec, quoad, (until such time as) are found with a Subjunctive Present, Imperfect, and Pluperfect, but with an Indicative Preterperfect, and Future Perfect. See Examples, R.G. II. So, *Usque mihi temperavi, dum perducerem eo rem, ut dignum aliquid consulatu meo efficirem*.—CIC. *Redemptio mansit usque ad eum finem, dum iudices rejecti sunt*.—CIC.

Antequam, priusquam, pridie quam, &c., are used with the tenses of the Indicative and Subjunctive, according as the Temporal Sentence is more or less definite. When two past events are connected, the subordinate event (see N. 4, (2)) is often put in the Subjunctive: as, *Ducentis annis, antequam Romam caperent, in Italiam Galli transcenderunt*.—LIV.

6 (a.) In Conditional Sentences, the Subordinate Sentence (*si, nisi*) which contains the Condition, is called the Protasis; the Principal Sentence, containing the Consequence, is called Apodosis.

The most usual forms of Conditional Sentences are the following:—

- (1.) Because the Protasis may easily happen, the Apodosis may easily happen:

PROTASIS.		APODOSIS.
<i>Si peccas,</i>	} - - - - {	<i>doles.</i>
<i>Si peccabis,</i>		<i>dolebis.</i>
<i>Si peccaveris,</i>		<i>dolueris.</i>
		<i>dole.</i>

- (2.) Because the Protasis may possibly happen, the Apodosis may possibly happen:

Si pecces - - - - *doleas.*

- (3.) Because the Protasis may have happened, the Apodosis may have happened:

<i>Si peccavisti,</i>	} - - - - {	<i>doluisti.</i>
<i>Si peccaveras,</i>		<i>dolebas.</i>
<i>Si peccabas,</i>		

- (4.) Because the Protasis may have happened, the Apodosis may happen:

<i>Si peccavisti,</i>	- - - - {	<i>doles.</i>
		<i>dolebis.</i>
		<i>dole.</i>

- (5.) Because the Protasis does not seem likely to happen, the Apodosis does not seem likely to happen:

Si peccares - - - - *doleres.*

- (6.) Because the Protasis does not seem to have happened, the Apodosis does not seem to have happened:

Si peccavisses - - - - *doluisses.*

and of continued action in the Protasis,

Si peccares, - - - - *doluisses.*

- (7.) Because the Protasis does not seem to have happened, the Apodosis does not seem likely to happen:

Si peccavisses, - - - doleres.

- (b.) The following Table shews how to convert Conditional Sentences into the Oratio Obligua:—

CONDITIO DIRECTA.

Si peccas, doles.
Si peccabis, dolebis.
Si peccaveris, dolueris.
Si pecces, doleas.
Si peccavisti, } doluisti.
Si peccabas, } te,
Si peccaveras, }
Si peccavisti, doles,
Si peccares, doleres,
Si peccavisses, } doluisses.
Si peccares, }
Si peccavisses, doleres.

CONDITIO OBLIQUA.

si pecces, dolere.
si { pecces, } doliturum esse.
si { peccaveris, } doliturum esse.
si { peccaturus sis, }
si { peccaveris, } doluisse.
si { peccares, }
si peccavisses, } doluisse.
si peccaveris, dolere.
si peccares, doliturum esse or fore.
si { peccavisses, } doliturum fuisse.
si { peccares, }
si peccavisses, doliturum fore.

- (c.) The Indicative Mood put for the Conjunctive in an Apodosis, expresses a consequence with more force and vivacity: as, *Præclarè vicramus, nisi fugientem Lepidus recepisset Antonium.*—CIC. *Nec veni, nisi fata locum sedemque dedissent.*—VIRG. This is especially done in such words as, *oportebat, decebat, necesse erat, par erat, &c.*, and in the case of Gerundives. See § 179, II. A. Note. Other instances of departure from the usual forms of Conditional Sentences will occasionally be found: as, *Carmina ni sint, ex humero Pelopis non nituisset ebur.*—TIBUL.

The Apodosis is sometimes understood: as, *Numeros memini, si verba tenerem.* (i. e. *et canerem*).—VIRG. *Eadem ferè absentes, quæ si coram essemus, consequimur.* (i. e. *consequeremur*).—CIC.

- (d.) The difference between *nisi* and *si non*, is, that *nisi* (unless) denies a supposition (if it is not supposed that); *si non* (if not) supposes a denial (if it is supposed that - - - not). For *si non* is put also *si minus, sin minus, sin aliter*, and occasionally *sin* alone. *Nisi si* is used emphatically for *nisi*.

Other conditional forms are *si forte* (if perchance) *si modò* (if only) *si maxime* (if ever so much) *si quidem* (if indeed, inasmuch as) *sin, sin autem, si verò, sin vero* (but if, if however), *si quando* (if ever), *quod si* (now if), *nisi forte* (unless perchance), &c.

- (e.) *Modò, dum, dummodò*, take the negative *ne*: as, *Dum ille ne sis, quem ego esse nolo, sis, mea causâ, qui lubet.*—PLAUT. *Gloriam appetas, modò ne turpitudine sequatur.*—CIC.

7 *Etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, tamenetsi*, govern the Indicative or Conjunctive Mood upon nearly the same principles as *si*. *Quamvis licet, quantumvis licet* "however much," are used: as, *Quamvis licet insectemur Stoicos, metuo ne soli philosophi sint.*—CIC.

8 Add to these *quàm si, tanquam si, ut si, velut si, ac si, &c.*; before which often stand in the principal sentence *ita, sic, perinde, proinde, similiter, &c.*: as, *Deleta est Ausonium gens perinde ac si internecivo bello certasset.*—LIV.]

ON ADJECTIVAL SENTENCES.

§ 191. *G. R. I.*—The Relative, *qui quæ quod*, generally has an Indicative Mood: as, *Who was it that first invented dreadful swords?*

Obs. So also the Relatives *qualis, quantus, quot*, and the Universals *quisquis, quicunque, quocunque*, and the like.

G. R. II.—*Qui* in a causal sense (because) governs a Subjunctive: as, *I pity you who make (i.e. because you make) this man your enemy.*¹

G. R. III.—*Qui* in a concessive sense (although) generally governs a Subjunctive, sometimes an Indicative Mood: as, *I myself, who had slightly touched upon (i.e. although I had slightly touched upon) Greek literature, nevertheless stayed at Athens.*—*I am in sorrow and mourning who (i.e. though I) govern a province.*

G. R. IV.—*Qui*, in a final sense (in order that) governs a Subjunctive Mood: as, *I sent a letter by which (i.e. in order that thereby) I might both pacify and admonish him.*

§ 192. *G. R. V.*—*Qui*, in a consecutive sense, governs a Subjunctive Mood: (a.) after the Demonstratives *is, talis, tantus*, and the like: as, *I am not one who can (i.e. such an one that I can) be delighted by these things.*—*There is nothing so valuable that we should barter liberty for it.*—(b.) Omitting the Demonstrative: as, *You will hear from me what all may not approve:* (c.) after a Comparative and *quàm*: as, *They had committed greater faults than could be pardoned.*² (d.) after *dignus, indignus, idoneus*: as, *He is worthy of commanding.* (e.) wherever in fine it means nearly the same as *talis ut* (such that): for so it is constructed (1.) after *est, sunt, invenio, reperio, habeo*, and the like: as, *There is some difference between justice and modesty.*—*There was found one to lay his hand on the flames.*—*You have one to sit by you, prepare poultices.* (2.) After *aliquis, pauci, multi, nonnulli, unus, solus*, and the like: as, *There is something which is not proper, although it is lawful.*—*You are the only man, Caius Cæsar, in whose victory no one has fallen but with arms in his hand.* (3.) After *nemo, nihil, nullus*, and the like, also after Interrogatives which expect a negation: as, *There is nothing which so seems as to preserve consistency.*—*Who is there who does not hate saucy youth?*³

§ 193. *Obs.* The Relative Particles *quò, quâ, quomodo, ubi, cur, quare, unde*, and the like, govern an Indicative or Subjunctive Mood by nearly the same rules as the Relative, *qui quæ quod*: as, *Proceed whither you have begun to go.*—*The matter is worthy of your directing your energies to it.*—*There was no reason for haste being required.*—*While there are the means of learning, hand over youths to instruction.*

[¹ *Quippe qui, utpote qui, ut qui* are used causally with a Subjunctive: as, *Plato a Dionysio violatus erat, quippe quem venundari jussisset.*—NEP. *Sunt homines naturā curiosi, ut qui sermunculis etiam fabellisque ducantur.*—PLIN. Sometimes *quippe qui, utpote qui* take an Indicative Mood.

² A Subjunctive may follow a Comparative and *quā* without *qui* or *ut*: as *Galba parior fuit quā conveniret principi.*—SUT.

³ The student must carefully distinguish the instances where *qui*, being consecutive and indefinite, governs a Subjunctive, from those in which, being a definite Relative, it takes an Indicative. Thus *is qui* (such an one that) is followed by a Subjunctive; but *is qui* (the person who) by an Indicative. So *est qui, sunt qui, &c.*, are not always indefinite: as, *Sunt qui vocantur alces.*—CÆS. Generally it may be observed that, when *qui* is referred to the Predicate of the principal proposition, it requires a Subjunctive, when to the Subject, an Indicative. Thus in *Multa sunt quæ dici possunt* (ea, quæ dici possunt, sunt multa) and therefore takes an Indicative. *Est qui* and *sunt qui*, even when indefinite, are sometimes constructed with an Indicative in poetry, in imitation of the Greek idiom: as, *Sunt quos curriculo pulverem Olympicum Collegisse juvat.*—HOB.

It has been already observed § 187 (Note) that Relatives and Universals often govern a Subjunctive of a past tense, when a repeated action is spoken of. So *Nec quisquam Pyrrhum, quā tulisset impetum, sustinere valuit.*—LIV.

EXCURSION VII. ON THE RELATIVE.

a. The extensive and elegant use of the Relative in Latin has been already noticed.—Pref. Exc. to P. II. Note 2, 3. In the study of Latin Prose writers, especially of Cicero, there are no forms of construction which ought to be more carefully noted and imitated than those of the Relative.

The following are examples of its coordinate use: *Res loquitur ipsa: quæ (and this) semper valet plurimum.*—CIC. *Firmi et constantes amici sunt eligendi: cujus generis (but of this kind) magna est penuria.*—CIC. *Virtus est una altissimis defixa radicibus; quæ (for it) nunquam ullā vi labefactari potest, nunquam demoveri loco.*—CIC. *Perutiles Xenophontis libri sunt; quos (these therefore) legite studiosè.*—CIC. *Pauci veniunt ad senectutem: quod ni ita accideret (now were this not the case) melius viveretur.*—CIC.

b. So when the Relative is the Subject of an Infinitive: as, *Gratias habeo Simonidi illi Cæo, quem primum fecerunt artem memoriæ protulisse* (for they say that he was the first who invented.)—CIC.

c. When the Relative Sentence has another Sentence subordinate to it, it is usual for the Relative to be constructed not with its own, but with the Subordinate, Sentence: as, *Aberat omnis dolor, qui si adesset, non molliter ferret.*—CIC. Hence also a Relative is often introduced, which has, in fact, no sentence of its own, and which can only be translated in English by a periphrasis, or by an inversion of the Latin construction: as, *A te dictum est, esse permulta, quæ orator nisi a naturā haberet, non multum a magistro adjuvaretur.*—CIC. *Id solum bonum est, quo qui potitur necesse est beatus sit.*—CIC. *O magna vis philosophiæ, cui qui pareat, sine molestiâ possit vivere.*—CIC. *Plancius tribunus fuit tui, quales si omnes semper fuissent, nunquam desideratus vehemens esset tribunus.*—CIC.

d. A Relative is often connected with a Participial construction: as, *Non sunt ea boni dicenda nec habenda, quibus abundanter* (amidst the overflow of which) *licet esse miserrimum.*—CIC. *Cogitate quantis laboribus fundatum imperium, quantâ virtute stabilitam libertatem una nox pænâ deleat.*—CIC. And with an Oblique Interrogation: as, *Errare malo cum Platone, quem tu quanti facias scio, quàm cum istis vera sentire.*—CIC.

e. The Relative not only connects subordinate with principal sentences, but it is used, especially by Cicero, in the beginning of principal sentences, to shew their logical connection with something which has gone before. Such are the common phrases *quo facto*, *quâ re cognita*, *quæ quum ita sint*, *quâ de causâ*, &c. For this purpose especially *quod* is used (sometimes to be translated *now*, sometimes *wherefore*, sometimes *but*) even before conjunctions, *si*, *nisi*, *etsi*, *quoniam*, *quia*, *quum*, *ubi*, *utinam*, &c.: as, *Tyranni coluntur simulatione duntaxat ad tempus. Quod si forte ceciderint, tum intelligitur quàm fuerint inopes amicorum.*—CIC.

f. *Quod* is also elegantly used for *quantum*: as, *Tu, quod poteris, nos consiliis iuvabis.*—CIC. *Epicurus se unus, quod sciam, sapientem se profiteri est ausus.*—CIC.

g. It is also put in the beginning of a sentence in relation to something about to be stated, especially in letter-writing: as, *Quod scribis te velle scire qui sit reipublicæ status, summa dissensio est.* (As to what you write.)—CIC.

h. *Quod* is used for *propter quod* or *quare*: as, *Est quod te visam.*—PLAUT. *Credo ego vos mirari quid sit quod ego surrexerim.*—CIC.

i. *Quod* is occasionally used for *ex quo* (since): as, *Dies tertius est quod audivi recitantem Augurinum.*—PLIN. And *tantum quod* for *vix ubi*, *vix dum*: as, *Qui tantum quod ad hostes pervenerat, Datames signa inferri iubet.*—NEP. *Tantum quod ex Arpinati veneram, quum mihi literæ a te redditæ sunt.*—CIC.]

ON CERTAIN OTHER PARTICLES.

§ 194. A. 1. *Quo*, for *ut eo*, governs a Subjunctive: as, *The land is laid fallow that it may yield better produce.*¹

2. *Non quo*, for *non quod*, governs a Subjunctive: as, *I have not done it because I love any one more.*²

§ 195. B. *Quominus*, after a Verb in which any matter of impediment is contained, governs a Subjunctive of the action begun, but impeded: as, *Old age does not prevent us from pursuing literature.*—*Epaminondas did not refuse to undergo the penalty.*—*Afranius was the cause of a battle not being fought.*³

Obs. *Ne* follows the same Verbs with a Subjunctive of the action prohibited: as, *The sea was forbidden to drown the earth with its water.*—*Sulpicius had (as tribune) forbidden the bringing back of the exiles.*

§ 196. C. *Quin* governs a Subjunctive.

(a.) *Quin* for *qui non*, after Negatives and Interrogatives: as, *There is nothing but may be spoiled by being badly related.*—*Who cultivates a farm without having swine?*⁴

(b.) For *quod non, ut non*, after a Negation or Interrogation of doubting, abstaining, failing, and the like: as, *It ought not to be doubted that there were poets before Homer.—I was unwilling to fail in my duty of admonishing you.—There is no delay to the year's soon producing fruit in abundance.—I cannot refrain from sending to you every day.—There is nothing to save me from being utterly wretched.—Who can doubt that riches are placed in virtue?*¹

(c.) For *cur non*, after the Negation of a cause: as, *There is no reason why I should not depart to the day.*

§ 197. D. (a.) *Nedum* (not to say that, much less) is often joined to a Subjunctive: as, *Mortal deeds will perish, much less then can the glory and popularity of words remain long-lived.*

§ 198. (b.) *Ne...quidem* (not even), increases a Negative force, that part of the sentence on which the emphasis is laid being placed between *ne* and *quidem*: as, *Not even that is to be passed by.—I will not appeal even to Cato.*

¹ *Quo* in this final sense is generally connected with a Comparative Adjective or Adverb (see § 152), but not always: as, *Sed quo mare finiat iram, accedant, quæso, fac tua vota meis.*—Ov.

² Some grammarians have thought that *non quod* ought always to be read instead of *non quo*: but authority is stronger in favour of this phrase. *Non quo*, as well as *non quod, non quia, non quoniam*, takes a Subjunctive Mood, because the cause lies necessarily in feeling or opinion. See § 200.

³ *Quo minus = ut eo minus* (that so much the less = that - - not): and forms consecutive sentences. Among the verbs which it follows are *arceo, abstineo, defendo, detineo, impedio, intercludo, intercedo, inhibeo, moveo, moror, obsto, obsisto, prohibeo, resisto, repugno, retineo, recuso, teneo, veto, stare per* (aliquem), *fieri per* (aliquem), *impedimento esse*, &c.

Impedio, prohibeo, recuso, veto, may govern an Infinitive Mood: as, *Quid est, quod me impediat, ea, quæ mihi probabilia videantur, sequi?*—Cic.

⁴ In these Adjectival sentences *quin* usually stands for the Nominative of the Relative with *non*; sometimes for the Ablative: as, *Nullum intermisi diem quin aliquid ad te literarum darem.*—Cic. Rarely for the Accusative: as, *Nego ullam picturam fuisse quin conquiescit.*—Cic.

⁵ *Quin* for *quod non, ut non*, forms Consecutive Sentences, and follows such phrases as *non dubito, non dubium est, quis dubitat?* *controversia non est, non possum, facere non possum, fieri non potest, nihil abest, minimum abest, non recuso, nihil prætermitto, temperare mihi non possum, ægrè retineor, vix resisto*, with many others of like import, *Dubito* (I hesitate) generally takes an Infinitive. As, *Bonæ civis pro patriâ mori non dubitant.*—Cic.

Quin interrogative (why not) is followed by an Indicative Mood: *quin* (nay but) is joined with an Imperative or Indicative: as, *Quin continetis vocem indicem stultitiæ vestræ?*—Cic. *Quin tu pollicitationes aufer.*—Ter. *Quin hinc ipse evolare cupio.*—Cic.

⁶ *Nedum* is used after a negative statement to express that, if the foregoing proposition is denied, there is another which must be denied still more strongly (a fortiori).]

ON THE CONSTRUCTIONS OF OBLIQUE ORATION.

§ 199. *G. R. I.* A Sentence, which is subordinated to Oblique Oration, whether a Relative or a Conjunction come between, requires a Subjunctive Mood: as, *You say that, since there is a mortal nature, there must also be an immortal one.—I believe that no man, when he undertakes to vote, has sufficient discernment of the man whom he is electing.—Know that I, since I have come into the city, have been reconciled to my books.—I confess that I have come forth an orator, if I am one, from the training-ground of the Academy.—It may be discerned, how different from one another Ennius, Pacuvius and Accius are, although nearly equal praise is given to all in different kinds of writing.—They say that the wisest man is he to whose own mind what is needful suggests itself: that next in merit is the man, who defers to another's excellent discoveries.—Cæsar wrote to me that my having been quiet was very agreeable to him.*

§ 200. *G. R. II.* A Subordinate Sentence, which expresses somebody's opinion or thought, whether a Relative or a Conjunction come between, requires a Subjunctive Mood: as, *Themistocles used to walk by night, because (as he alleged) he could not sleep.—Panætius praises Africanus on the ground that he was self-denying.—They sent to Jupiter asking for another king, since (they said) the one which had been given was useless.—Our ancestors called the reclining of friends at banquets convivium, because (in their opinion) it implied an union of life.—Although glory (is said to) contain nothing for which it should be desired, yet it follows virtue like its shadow.*

§ 201. *G. R. III.* A Relative or a Conjunction, when it is subordinated to a Subjunctive, governs a Subjunctive: as, *Hortensius had so great a memory, that, what he had conned over in his mind, he repeated, without writing down, in the same words in which he had first conceived it.—For my own part I am scheming that Cæsar may allow me to be absent, when any motion against Cræus is made in the senate.—Country is so dear, that I was inviolable even to your legions, because they remembered that it had been preserved by me.*¹

[¹ The three Rules here given are only varieties of one and the same Rule: viz. that the dependent Clauses of Oblique Oration require the Subjunctive Mood, because they express *contingent* propositions: and the idea of the Conjunctive Mood is *contingency*.

The phrase *Oratio Obliqua* is, in its narrowest use, applied to Oblique Enuntiations, the principal clauses of which are generally in the Accusative and Infinitive, after Verbs *sentiendi vel declarandi*. To the Subordinate clauses of this *Oratio Obliqua* *G. R. I.* applies.

We sometimes find the Subordinate clauses becoming Coordinate by being carried on in the Accusative with Infinitive: (1) after a Relative; as, *Nam illorum urbem ut propugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam jam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium.*—NEP. (2) After various Conjunctions: as, *Ideo se manibus inclusos tenere Campanos, quia, si qui*

evasissent aliquà, velut feras bestias per agros vagari, et laniare et trucidare, quodcumque obviam detur.—LIV. So after *quippe, quemadmodum, ut (as), quum, &c.* *Ait* introduces Oratio Obliqua; *inquit* Oratio Directa: but *ut ait* may be used in prose with Oratio Directa; and *ait* in poetry.

G. R. II. refers to the *virtual* Oratio Obliqua, when the Relative or Conjunctional Sentence depends upon an assertion or opinion really contained, though not formally expressed, in the principal sentence; as in the examples to this Rule.

G. R. III. is a necessary corollary to G. R. I: and applies not only to the secondarily dependent clauses of Oratio Obliqua, but likewise to all the sentences which are dependent upon Subjunctival Oratio Obliqua; as upon Substantival sentences with *ut*, upon Oblique Petitions, and Oblique Interrogations: also to sentences dependent upon Potential Propositions: as, *Isto bono utare, dum adsit; quum absit, ne requiras.*—CIC.

Obs. 1. The Historians often continue an Oblique Enuntiation (Accusative with Infinitive) or an Oblique Petition (generally Imperfect Subjunctive omitting *ut*) or an Oblique Interrogation (generally Imperfect Subjunctive after an Interrogative Pronoun or Particle) through a series of clauses. Examples abound in Cæsar and Livy. The use of the Infinitive in Direct Interrogations has been noticed before: see § 179 D. Obs. 4.

Obs. 2. A clause apparently, by its position, belonging to the Oratio Obliqua, may nevertheless be independent of it: that is, it may contain, not a *contingent* proposition, but an *absolute* fact, introduced as such by the author: in which case the mood will be Indicative, not Subjunctive: as, *Cæsari nuntiatum est, Sulmonenses, quod oppidum a Corfinio septem millium intervallo abest, cupere ea facere, quæ vellet, sed a Q. Lucretio senatore et Attio Peligno prohiberi, qui id oppidum septem cohortium præsidio tenebant.*—CÆS.

A short Relative clause, immediately following a Demonstrative, is sometimes constructed independently of Oratio Obliqua, being regarded as a mere epithet: as, *Eloquendi vis efficit ut ea quæ ignoramus, discere, et ea quæ scimus, alios docere possimus.*—CIC.

The student will here and there find other instances of departure from the General Rules for the Moods: and there certainly are some, though not many, Latin Constructions in which either the Indicative or the Subjunctive Mood might be used without impropriety. Thus in the last cited example, *ignoremus* and *sciamus* might have been written with at least equal correctness.

Notc. On a review of the Rules for the Moods, it appears that

(1.) The Conjunctions governing a Subjunctive Mood are, *ut* (in order that) *ne* (lest) *nedum, quo* (in order that) *ut* (so that) *quominus, quin*, used consecutively, *quum* causal (since), *non quod, non quia, dum* (provided that), *modò* (if only), *dummodò* (provided that), *licet, quamvis, quantumvis, quamlibet, ut* (although), *tanquam, velut, quasi, ac si, ut si, &c., utinam, O si, &c.*

(2.) The Conjunctions governing an Indicative or Subjunctive, according to circumstances, are, *quum* (when) *ut* (when, since) *ubi* (when) *dum* (whilst, as long as, until) *donec, quoad, antequam, priusquam, postquam, simul ac, si, nisi, etsi, etiamsi, tametsi.*

(3.) The Conjunctions governing an Indicative, excepting in Oratio Obliqua (formal or virtual), are *quando, quod, quoniam, quia, quandoquidem, siquidem, quanquam*.

(3.) The Pronouns and Particles governing a Subjunctive in Oblique Interrogation have been enumerated § 182. The Government of Moods by the Relative is explained § 191—193.

EXCURSION VIII. ON INTERROGATIONS.

An Interrogation is either Direct or Oblique.

A Direct Interrogation requires an Indicative or Potential Mood: an Oblique, as we have before seen, a Subjunctive.

Of Interrogative Pronouns and Particles derived from them, we have spoken before: we have here to speak of the Particles *nē, an, num, utrum*.

An Interrogation may be either single or double, or manifold.

I. A Single Interrogation will be either without or with a Particle.

A. Single Interrogation without a Particle: as, *Infelix est Fabricius quòd rus suum fodit?*—SEN. *Non pudet ad morem discincti vivere Nattæ?*—HOR. *Cernis odoratis ut luceat ignibus æther?*—OV.

B. Single Interrogation with a Particle.

Nē, an, anne, ask doubtingly; *num* expects a negative answer; *nonne, annon*, an affirmative: as, *Ubi aut qualis est tua mens? potesne dicere?*—CIC. *An est ullum majus malum turpitudine?*—CIC. *Anne est intus Pamphilus?*—TER. *Num formidolosus, obsecro, es, mi homo? Egone formidolosus? nemo est hominum, qui vivat, minus.*—TER. *Canis nonne similis lupo?*—CIC. *Annon est omnis metus servitus?*—CIC. *Videamus primum Deine providentiâ mundus regatur.*—CIC. *Plebs inter se rogabant, num quem plebei consulis pœniteret.*—LIV.

II. In a Double Interrogation four varieties are to be noticed.

IN FIRST MEMBER.

IN SECOND MEMBER.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| (1.) <i>Utrum (utrumne)</i> | <i>an (anne.)</i> |
| (2.) <i>Num</i> | <i>an.</i> |
| (3.) <i>Nē</i> | <i>an.</i> |
| (4.) No Particle | <i>an (anne, ne): as,</i> |

(1.) *Hæc utrum abundantis an egentis signa sunt?*—CIC. *Dubitas utrum quando veneunt, an sintne venales?*—CIC. *Quod nescire malum est agitamus, utrumne Divitiis homines an sint virtute beati.*—HOR.

(2.) *Numquid duas habetis patrias, an est illa patria communis?*—CIC.

(3.) *Romanne venio, an hic maneo, an Arpinum fugio?*—CIC. *Queritur, virtus suamne propter dignitatem, an propter fructus aliquos expetatur.*—CIC.

(4.) *Ræfert oratorem qui audiant, senatus, an populus, an judices; frequentes, an pauci, an singuli.*—CIC. *Interrogatur, tria pauca sint anne multa?*—CIC. *Tarquinius Superbus Prisci Tarquintii filius neposne fuerit, parum liquet.*—LIV.

Obs. 1. *An...an, ne....ne*, are rare and not to be imitated: as, *Distat an maturitas uvarum in torcularibus fiat, an in ramis.*—PLIN. *Quid refert clamne palamne roget?*—TIBULL.

Obs. 2. If in the 2nd Member there is a Negation of the former, *necne* or *annon* is used, generally without, sometimes with, the Verb repeated: as, *Quæro potueritne Roscius petere necne.*—CIC. *Fiat necne fiat quæritur.*—CIC. *Dii utrum sint necne sint quæritur.*—CIC. *Num tabulas habet annon?*—CIC. *Quæritur, Corinthiis bellum indicamus annon?* CIC. *Ipsæ qui sit, utrum sit, an non sit, id quoque nescit.*—CATULL.

Obs. 3. In a question of many members, the 2nd, 3rd, &c., are generally connected by *an*: as, *Utrum malitiâ, an stultitiâ, an necessitudine, an occasione?*—CIC.

Obs. 4. *Quid* is much used in abrupt Interrogations: *quid? quid præterea? quid ita? quid enim? quid ergo? quid tum? quid nî? quid tandem? quid quod addiscunt aliquid?* So, *itane? itane tandem? itane vero? ain' tu?* which express surprise. *Quin* for *cur non* is used indignantly.

Obs. 5. *An*, *an verò*, sometimes introduce a question, when another follows Adversatively without an Interrogative or Copulative Particle: as, *An Scythes Anacharsis potuit pro nihilo pecuniam ducere, nostri philosophi facere non poterunt?*—CIC. *An vero Scipio Tiberium Gracchum privatus interfecit, Catilinam nos consules perferemus?*—CIC.

Obs. 6. *An* has a peculiar use after Verbs expressing uncertainty, as *nescio, haud scio, dubito*. When in English we say, "I know not whether he is coming," we imply a probability that "he will not come:" but in Latin, *nescio an veniat*=*fortasse venit*, or *existimo eum venire*.—So, *Nescio an modum excesserint* (LIV.); "I am inclined to think they have overstepped the limit." *Sapientissimus et haud scio an omnium præstantissimus.*—CIC. *Moriendum certè est, et id incertum, an eo ipso die?*—CIC. *Ingens eo die res, ac nescio an maxima illo bello, gesta est.*—LIV. The reason of this construction is probably to be found in the fact, that *an* is the Particle introducing the second member of double questions, and that in such questions the opinion of the speaker was often contained in the second member: as, *Unum illud nescio, gratulerne tibi an timeam.*—CIC. Hence *nescio an* may be considered an elliptical phrase, or a double question with an omission of the former member. In the best Latin writers therefore these phrases are almost always used as softened affirmatives, "perhaps," "I am inclined to think that;" but in the silver age they are found in a dubitative sense: as, *An profecturus sim nescio.*—SEN.

Hence, if it were wished to express the meanings, "probably not," "I am inclined to think not," &c., a Negative was introduced in the subordinate sentence: as, *Nescio an non veniat*, "I think he is not coming." *Quære rationem cur ita videatur: quam ut maximè inveneris, quod haud scio an non possis, non tu ostenderis,* &c.—CIC. *Contigit tibi, quod haud scio an nemini.*—CIC. It is questioned whether the same sense is obtained by using, instead of Negatives, those Pronouns and Adverbs which are only found in negative sentences, *quisquam, ullus, unquam*, &c. A few such passages are found: as, *Omnium ineptiarum haud scio an ulla sit major.*—CIC. *Amicitia, quâ haud scio an, exceptâ sapientiâ, quidquam melius homini sit a Diis immortalibus datum.*—CIC. And this idiom is supported by the analogy of the French words *rien, jamais*. But the

instances are few, and it is safer and better to use the Negatives for this purpose in Latin composition.

Haud scio an is used Adverbially by the comic poets, an Indicative following: as, *Qui infelix haud scio an illam miserè nunc amat.*—TER.

EXCURSION IX. ON ANSWERS.

A. Affirmative Answers in Latin are given in three ways.

- (1.) By repeating the emphatic word of the question in the required case or person: as, *Abiitne Clitopho? Abiit.*—*Solusne abiit? Solus.*—TER. *Deditisne vos populumque Collatinum in meam populiue Romani ditionem? Dedimus.*—LIV.
- (2.) By some expression equivalent to a repetition of the emphatic word: as, *Dic, Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? Factum.*—TER. Or increasing the emphasis: as, *Pater est? Ipse est.*—TER. *An voluptas in bonis habenda est? Atque in maximis quidem.*—CIC.
- (3.) By Affirmative Particles, either alone, or joined to the emphatic word. Such are, *ita, sanè, etiam, verùm, utique, verò, ita planè, ita prorsus, rectè, profectò.* As, *Numquid vis? Etiam.*—TER. *Visne potiora tantum interrogem? Sanè.*—CIC. *Fuisti sæpè in scholis philosophorum? Verò.*—CIC. *Clinia meus venit? Certè.*—TER. *Nonne lectio hujus libri te delectat? Me verò delectat.*—CIC. *Tunc negas? Nego herclè verò.*—CIC.

Obs. "Perhaps, perchance" are in Latin rendered by *fortasse* or *forsitan*: the latter word Cicero always joins to a Conjunctive Mood. *Fortè* (by chance) must be used after *si, nisi, ne, num.* *Næ* is used affirmatively with pronouns: *nimirum, videlicet, scilicet, nempe*, (obviously, to be sure) often express irony.

B. Negative Answers are also given in three ways:—

- (1.) By repeating the emphatic word with a Negative Particle: as, *Estne frater intus? Non est.*—TER. *Solusne venisti? Non solus.*—TER. *Non ego illi argentum redderem? Non redderes.*—TER.
- (2.) By Negative Particles alone, such as *non, non verò, non ita, minimè, minimè verò, nihil minus, nequaquam, &c.*, and by the Negative expression *absit*: as, *Venitne homo ad te? Non.*—PLAUT. *Non pudet vanitatis? Minimè.*—TER. *Non opus est? Non herclè verò.*—TER.
- (3.) By *imò* (nay rather) when the answer is not merely Negative, but at the same time corrective of the opinion implied in the question: as, *Ubi fuit Sulla, num Romæ? Imò longè absfuit.*—CIC. *Visne adesse me unà? Imò longè abi.*—TER. *Siccine hunc decipis? Imò enimvero hic me decipit.*—TER.

Not.—*Rectè, optimè*, are used not only affirmatively but also as polite Negatives: as, *Rogo numquid velit. Rectè, inquit.*—TER. So *benignè* is used as a polite mode of declining: as in French, *je vous remercie.*

Obs. 2. *Haud* is a stronger negative than *non*, viz a weaker. For *et nemo* must be used *neque quisquam*: for *et nihil, neque quidquam*: for *et nullus, neque ullus*: for *et nunquam, neque unquam*. Two negatives in Latin cancel each other, and form a strong affirmative, as *non nemo* (somebody)—*nemo non* (everybody)—*non nihil* (something)—*nihil non* (everything)—*non nunquam* (sometimes)—*nunquam non* (always), &c.

EXCURSION X. ON PREPOSITIONS.

A. The Prepositions which govern an Accusative are enumerated § 118.

I. *Ad* is used:—

- (1.) Of Place (with the meanings, to, towards, at): as, *Ad urbem venio.*—*Ad januam steti.*—*Usque ad Capitolium.*—*Ad manus mihi omnia sunt.*—*Ad Spei* (und. *templum*).—So, *ad iudices* (before the judges).
- (2.) Of Time (at, about, against, till): as, *Ad vesperam redibo.*—*Ad hoc tempus te expecto.*—*Ad festos dies adero.*—*Ad multam noctem* (till late at night), *ad multam diem* (till long after day), *ad tempus* (at the right time, or for a time).
- (3.) Of Number (to, to the number of, about): as, *Ex militibus ad octoginta ceciderunt.*—*Omnes ad unum* (to a man).
- (4.) Of Purpose, Agreement, Respect, Comparison, Addition, &c. (to, for, in regard to, compared with, besides, &c.): as, *Ad spectandum veni.*—*Ad ludos pecunia decreta est.*—*Ad nutum tuum me accommo.*—*Rustici ad fistulam saltant.*—*Vir insignis ad laudem.*—*Nihil est ad speciem pulchrius.*—*Obduru it animus ad dolorem.*—*Ad labores impiger est.*—*Ad sapientiam hujus viri nugator es.*—*Ad hoc* (furthermore).
- (5.) In various phrases which may be referred to one or other of the foregoing uses: as, *Ad postremum*, *ad ultimum*, *ad extremum* (finally), *ad summum* (in the highest degree, at most), *ad dictum* (at the word), *ad verbum* (verbally and accurately), *ad unguem* (nicely), *ad amussim* (exactly), *ad decem annos* (ten years hence).

II. *Apud* expresses near neighbourhood.

- (1.) In reference to Place (at, near): as, *Apud oppidum castra posuit.*—So, *apud me est* (he is at my house).
- (2.) In reference to Persons (before, among): as, *Apud populum orationem habuit.*—*Apud priscos Romanos hic mos erat.*—So, *apud Ciceronem* (in the writings of Cicero).
- (3.) In reference to Mind (with, in): as, *Hæc apud me valent.*—*Apud animum cogito.*—*Non es apud te* (you are not in your senses).

III. *Ante*, before, is applied to—

- (1.) Place: as, *Hannibal ante portas erat.*—So, *ante pedes*, *ante oculos*.
- (2.) Time: as, *Ante lucem Galli canunt.*—*Ante tres annos mortuus est.* See § 186, Notes and Excursion II.
- (3.) Preference: as, *Ante alios mihi carissimus es.*—*Ante omnia placent silvæ.*

IV. *Adversus*, *adversum*, are used:—

- (1.) Of Place (over against, opposite): as, *Urbs adversus Pydnam posita est.*—*Adversus me* (in my presence). So, *exadversus*.
- (2.) Of friendly or hostile Relation (towards, against): as, *Amor adversus parentes.*—*Adversus solem ne loquitur.*

V. *Cis, citra*, (on this side of, within), are used :—

- (1.) Of Place: as, *Cis Apenninum, citra Euphratem*.
- (2.) Of Time: as, *Cis paucos dies hostis aderit*.

Not.—Hence *citra* is used in certain phrases in the sense of *without* (i.e. *without reaching*.) short of: as, *Citra controversiam*.—*Citra ebrietatem bibi*.

VI. *Circum* (round, round about) is used of Place: as, *Terra circum axem vertitur*.—*Circum hæc loca commoror*.—*Turba erat circum regem*.

VII. *Circa* is used :—

- (1.) Of Place (round): as, *Urbes circa Capuam occupavit*.—*Multos circa se habebat*.—*Circa vias discurritur*.
- (2.) Of Time and Number (about): as, *Circa Calendas Februarias*.—*Circa quingentos capti sunt*.
- (3.) Of Respect (about, concerning): as, *Varia circa hæc opinio est*.

VIII. *Circoiter* (about) is used of Time and Number: as, *Circoiter meridiem advenimus*.—*Decem circiter millia passuum abest*.

IX. *Contra* is used :—

- (1.) Of Place (over against): as, *Carthago Italiam contra*.
- (2.) Of hostile Relation (against): as, *Contra naturam vivis*.—*Contra legem facis*.—*Hoc contra jus fasque est*.

X. *Erga* (towards) is used of Relation: as, *Tuam erga me benevolentiam agnosco*.—*Scio quomodo erga me affectus sis*.

XI. *Extra* is used :—

- (1.) Of Place (over against): as, *Extra urbem habito*.—So, *extra telii factum* (out of reach of darts).
- (2.) Of Relation (without, beyond, clear of): as, *Extra culpam sumus*.—*Extra periculum sumus*.—So, *extra jocum, extra ordinem, extra modum, &c.*
- (3.) Of Exception (except): as, *Nemo extra eum adest*.

XII. *Infra* (below) is used:

- (1.) Of Place: as, *Infra lunam nihil est non mortale*.
- (2.) Of Measure: as, *Magnitudine sunt paullo infra elephantas*.
- (3.) Of Worth: as, *Infra dignitatem meam hoc est*.

XIII. *Intra* (within) is used :—

- (1.) Of Place: as, *Intra urbem factum est*.
- (2.) Of Time: as, *Intra triginta dies redibo*.
- (3.) Of Extent: as, *Hortensii scripta intra famam sunt*.—So also *intra modum, intra legem epulari*.

XIV. *Inter* is used :—

- (1.) Of Place (between): as, *Mons est inter urbem et fluvium*.
- (2.) Of Time (during): as, *Inter prandendum (or inter cœnam) curis vaco*.—*Inter diem*.—*Inter tot annos*.—*Inter viam*.
- (3.) Of Relation (among): as, *Constat inter omnes*.—*Inter arma silent leges*.—*Inter cætera et illud dixit*. And of mutual relation: as, *Inter se amant*.

XV. *Juxta* is used :—

- (1.) Of Place (close to): as, *Hortus meus juxta viam est*.

- (2.) Of Order (next to, as much as, akin to): as, *Iusta deos in tuâ manu positum est.*—*Inermes iusta armatos trucidati sunt.*—*Celeritas iusta timiditatem est.*

XVI. *Ob* is generally used:—

- (1.) Of Cause (on account of): as, *Parnas ob stultitiam do.*—So, *pecuniam ob absolvendum accepit.*—But sometimes
(2.) Of Place (before): as, *Ob oculos mihi mors versata est.*

XVII. *Penes* (in the power of, resting with): as, *Penes imperatorem est summum imperium.*—*Deum penes est custodia mundi.*—*Servi penes accusatorem sunt.*

XVIII. *Per* (through) signifies Passage from one end to another, or in all directions, and is used:—

- (1.) Of Place: as, *Per Macedoniam iter fecimus.*—*Sanguis per venas in omne corpus diffunditur.*
(2.) Of Duration of Time (throughout, during): as, *Per tres annos abfui.*—*Per noctem cernuntur sidera.*
(3.) Of subordinate Agency (by, through): as, *Per procuratorem non per se ipsum agit.*
(4.) Of the Manner or Means (by): as, *Eos per vim ejecit.*—*Per simulationem amicitiae me perdidit.*—*Per literas certiores te faciam.*—So, *per vices, per silentium, per jocum, &c.*
(5.) Of the Motive or Cause: as, *Per avaritiam id fecit.*—*Amicitia per se expetenda est.*—*Per me licet hoc agas.*—*Per leges non licet civem verberare.*—*Per te stetit quominus ego discederem.*
(6.) In Prayers and Adjurations: as, *Per Deum te oro.*—*Per Deum ne propera.*

Not—*Per* in is sometimes elegantly disjoined from the word with which it is compounded: as, *Per mihi gratum est.* Or, from its case: as, *Per ego te deos oro.*

XIX. *Pons* (behind): as, *Pons castra pabulatum ibant.*

XX. *Post* is used:—

- (1.) Of Place (behind): as, *Hostis post montem se occultabat.*—*Manus post tergum religatae sunt.*
(2.) Of Time (after, since) as, *Post caenam.*—*Post urbem conditam.*—*Post Christum natum.*—*Post hominum memoriam.* Hence *postea* (afterwards), *postquam* (after that, since.)
(3.) Of Order and Dignity (behind): *Neque erit Lydia post Chloen.*

XXI. *Præter* is used with the meanings:—

- (1.) Along, beside, before: as, *Præter ripam.*—*Præter oculos ferebant omnia.*—*Via una præter hostes erat.*
(2.) Besides, except: as, *Præter se neminem amat.*—*Quod crimen dicis, præter amasse, meum?*
(3.) Beyond: as, *Præter omnem modum.*—*Præter cæteros clarus est.*
(4.) Contrary to: as, *Hoc præter opinionem accidit.*—So, *præter spem, præter æquum, &c.*

XXII. *Prope*, near, nigh to: as, *Prope viam ædificat.*—*Prope Calendas Sextiles.*—*Prope abesse ab aliquo*, to be near to.

The Comparative *propius*, and Superlative *proximè*, also govern an Accusative: as, *Propius urbem, proximè montem.*

XXIII. *Propter* is used:—

- (1.) Of Place (near, alongside of): as, *Vulcanus tenuit insulas propter Siciliam*.—*Propter aquam ambulavimus*.
- (2.) Of Cause or Object (on account of): as, *Sapiens non propter metum legibus paret*.—*Illa propter se expetenda sunt*.

XXIV. *Secundum*, from *sequor*, denotes following, and is used:—

- (1.) Of Place (behind): as, *I secundum me*.—*Secundum aurem vulnus accepit*:—(alongside of, along): as, *Secundum litus progressus sum*.
- (2.) Of Time (after): as, *Secundum Idus Januariarum veniam*.
- (3.) Of Rank (after): as, *Secundum te nemo mihi amictor*.
- (4.) Of Agreement (after, according to, in favour of): as, *Secundum naturam vive*.—*Secundum Stoicos omnia vitia paria sunt*.—*Pontifices secundum me decreverunt*.

XXV. *Supra* (above) is used:—

- (1.) Of Place: as, *Supra Caium sedeo*.—*Cælum supra terram est*.
- (2.) Of Time: as, *Supra quinquaginta annos natus est*.—*Supra hanc memoriam visit*.
- (3.) Of Number: as, *Cæsa sunt supra millia viginti*.
- (4.) Of Measure: as, *Supra humanam formam altior erat*.—*Supra modum*.—*Hoc supra meas vires est*.

XXVI. *Trans* (across, beyond) is applied to Seas, Rivers, Hills, &c.: as, *Naves trans mare currunt*.—*Trans Euphraten incoluit*.XXVII. *Ultra* (beyond) is used:—

- (1.) Of Place: as, *Ultra Æthiopiam profectus est*.
- (2.) Of Measure: as, *Ne sutor ultra crepidam (progrediatur)*.—*Ultra pueriles annos est*.

XXVIII. *Versus*, *versum* (towards,) always follow their Case: as, *Hannibal Romam versus contendit*. The best writers join it with *ad* or *in*: as, *Ad meridiem versus ibimus*.—*In Italiam versus se convertit*.

B. The Prepositions governing an Ablative Case have been enumerated § 154.

I. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, express a "proceeding or beginning from," and are used:—

- (1.) Of Place.—(a.) Motion from: as, *Sidera ab ortu ad occasum commeant*.—(b.) Distance from: as, *Mille passuum sex a Cæsaris castris subseedit*.—(c.) Position in regard to (on, on the side of): as, *A fronte*.—*A tergo*.—*A sinistro cornu*.—*A Cæsare stetit*.—*A Platone facio* (I am on the side of Plato).—*Hoc a me est* (this is in my favour).
- (2.) Of Time (from): as, *Ab antiquissimis temporibus hic mos invaluit*.—So, *ab initio*, *a puero*, *a pueritia*, *ab incunabulis*, *a primâ ætate*, &c.
- (3.) Of Rank (after): as, *Proximus a rege*.—*Tertius a Romulo regnavit* *Tullius Hostilius*.
- (4.) Of Separation from any thing (from): as, *A pænâ liberi sumus*.—*Defende te a periculo*.—*Non ab re* (irrelevant) *fuert ea narrare*.
- (5.) Of the Agent after Verbs Passive and others (by): as, *A cane non magno sæpè tenetur aper*.—*Oculi a sole dolent*.

(6.) Hence of Origin in general (from): as, *Pecuniam a me accepit.*—*A te mihi salutem dixit.*—*A superstitione animi vates adhibuit.*—*In discendo a facillimis ordiendum est.*

(7.) Of Respect (in, in regard of, in point of, on the side of): as, *Ab animo eger fui.*—*Firmus est ab equitatu.*—*A doctrinâ instructus est.*—*A patre nobilis erat.*

Not. 1.—To this use belong the phrases for the offices of slaves and freedmen at Rome, for the posts in a royal household, &c. Thus, *servus ab epistolis* meant a letter-carrier or estafette, s. or *libertus a manu*, an amanuensis; s. *a bibliotheca*, a librarian; s. *a pedibus*, a footman; s. *a potione*, a butler or cup-bearer, &c.: So, *Regi est a secretis consiliis* (he is a privy counsellor of the king), *Reginæ est a sacris* (he is queen's chaplain), &c.

Not. 2.—*A* is only used before consonants; *ob* before vowels and *h*, *j*, *r*, *s*, and sometimes *t*: *abs* only before *t* and *q*.

II. *Absque* (without), is chiefly found in the comic poets; as, *Absque te esset* (were it not for you); sometimes in Cicero; as, *Litteræ absque argumento.*

III. *Clam* (without the knowledge of): as, *Clam patre id facit.* Sometimes with Accusative: as, *Clam uxorem.*

IV. *Coram* (in the presence of): as, *Coram populo dixit.*

V. *Cum* (with) is used:—

(1.) Of Company: as, *Cum patre proficiscor.*—*Tacum loquar.*

(2.) Of Community: as, *Nihil mihi cum illo est.*—*Bellum gessit cum Helvetiis.*

(3.) Of accompanying Circumstances: as, *Homines cum gladiis adsunt.*—*Magno cum dolore loquor.*—*Illud cum causâ fecit.*—*Cum permicie reipublicæ hoc factum est.*

VI. *De* is used:—

(1.) Of Departure (down from, from): as, *De rostris descendit.*—*De manibus hostium effugit.*—*Manum, ut aiunt, de tabulâ.*

(3.) Of Derivation (from): as, *De summo loco est.*—*De scripto dixit.*—*De facie eum novi.*

(3.) Partitively (of): as, *Una de multis.*—*Accusator de plebe.*—*De tuo illud addis.*—*De meo potat.*

(4.) Of Time (from): as, *De primâ luce.*—*De die.*—*De multâ nocte.*—*Diem de die expecto.*

(5.) Of Respect (concerning, of): as, *Multa de eo scripta sunt.*—*Legatos misit de pace.*—*De nihilo irasceris.*—*Quid de me fiet?*

(6.) Of Cause (for, upon): as, *Multis et gravibus de causis.*—*Hoc de communi sententiâ factum est.*

(7.) Of Manner (according to, on): as, *De more.*—*De industriâ* (purposefully).—*De improviso* (unexpectedly).—*De novo.*—*De integro*, &c.

VII. *E*, *ex*, are used:—

(1.) Of Place (out of, from, on): as, *Ex urbe venio.*—*Ex Italiâ discessit.*—*E longinquo eum vidi.*—*Ex arbore pendat.*—*Ex propinquo.*—*Ex obliquo.*—*Ex adverso.*—*E regions.*—*Ex omni parte.*—*E conspectu.*

- (2.) Of Origin (from): as, *Ex eo audiui*.—*Ex me quæsit*.
 (3.) Of Partition (of): as, *Unus ex amicis meis*.
 (4.) Of Material (of): as, *Statua e marmore facta*.
 (5.) Of Time (from, since): as, *Ex illo die nunquam eum vidi*.
 (6.) Of Cause (from, for): as, *Ex quo manifestum est*.—*Ex lassitudine dormio*.—*E vino vacillat*.—*Ex vulneribus mortuus est*.
 (7.) Of Part affected (in): as, *Ex pedibus laborat*.
 (8.) Of Agreement (according to): as, *Ex legibus vivo*.—*Illud ex senatus consulto factum est*.—*Hoc mihi ex sententiâ evenit*.—So, *ex ordine*, *ex more*, *ex composito*, *e re meâ* (for my interest), *e republicâ* (for the good of the state).
 (9.) Of Manner, in many phrases: as, *Ex occulto* (secretly), *ex improviso*, *ex insperato*, *ex parte*.—*Hæres ex asse* (heir to the whole property by will); *hæres ex deunce* (heir to $\frac{11}{12}$); *hæres ex semisse* (heir to $\frac{1}{2}$); &c., &c.

VIII. *Præ* is used:—

- (1.) Of Place (before): as, *I præ, sequor*; but generally before a Pronoun, and after the Verbs *ago*, *fero*, *gero*; as, *Pastores præ se agant gregem*.—*Pugionem præ se fert*.—Also metaphorically: as, *Speciem boni viri præ se fert*.
 (2.) Of Comparison (compared with, before): as, *Præ nobis beatus es*.—*Præ se neminem putat*.—*Utilitatis species præ honestate rectè contemnetur*.
 (3.) Of Hindrance (owing to): as, *Præ lacrymis scribere non possum*.—*Præ multitudine sagittarum solem non videbitis*.

IX. *Pro* is used:—

- (1.) Of Place (before): as, *Pro foribus sedebat*.—*Stabat pro littore classis*.—*Pro rostris dicebat*.—*Pro concione laudatus est*.
 (2.) Of Advantage (on the side of, in behalf of, for): as, *Hoc non modo non pro me, sed etiam contra me est*.—*Pro Ligario dixit*.—*Dulce et decorum est pro patriâ mori*.
 (3.) Of Substitution (instead of, for): as, *Mihi pro parente fuit*.—*Vultus sæpè pro omnibus verbis est*.—*Pro prætore fuit*.
 (4.) Of Resemblance and Respect (in the light of): as, *Illam educavi pro meâ*.—*Pro cive se gerit*.—*Pro certo hoc habui*.—*Pro comperto illud afferunt*.
 (5.) Of Proportion and Relation (according to, as befits): as, *Pro tuâ temperantiâ vales*.—*Pro viribus contendam*.—*Pro re natâ me geram*.

X. *Sine* (without): as, *Vana est sine viribus ira*.—*Sine dubio*, *sine ullâ dubitatione*.

XI. *Tenus* (as far as) follows its Case, and governs also a Genitive in the Plural Number: as, *Capulo tenus abdidit ensem*.—*Nutricum tenus*. Observe *verbo tenus* (as far as words go); *quâdam tenus* (a certain way); *eatenus*, *hactenus*, *quatenus*, understanding *parte*.

C. The Prepositions governing an Accusative or Ablative Case have been enumerated, § 118 and § 154.

I. (a.) *In*, with Accusative, signifies motion unto, and is used:—

- (1.) Of Place (into, to, upon, against): as, *In carcerem conjectus est*.—*In aram confugit*.—*In equum conscendit*.—*Ruit in hostes*.

- (2.) Of Time (for, to): as, *In crastinum diem me invitavit.*—*Comitia constituta sunt in Calendas Januarias.* So, in *præsens*, in *posterum*, in *æternum*, &c.
 - (3.) Of Distribution (into, to, by): as, *Censores bini in singulas civitates descripti sunt.*—*Annus in duodecim menses divinus est.*—*Mutatur in dies et in horas.*
 - (4.) Of Relation (towards, against): as, *Liberalis in milites erat.*—*Merita ejus in rempublicam magna sunt.*—*Cicero in Verrem dixit.*
 - (5.) Of Manner (in, after): as, *In hunc modum locutus est.*—*In verba imperatoris juraverunt.*—So, in *universum* (generally), in *commune*, in *vicem*, &c.
 - (6.) Of Purpose (for): as, *Gladiatores in ludos locavit.*—*Sentes in poenam dediti sunt.*—*Omnia in majus celsavit.*—*Dabo tibi pecuniam in rem familiarem.*
- (b.) *In* with an Ablative signifies *rest*, with the meanings:—
- (1.) *In*: as, *In Italiâ est.*—*In urbe sum.*—*In ore omnium versaris.*—*In Miltiade erat summa humanitas.*—*In conspectu est exercitus.*—*In manibus est Virgilius.*—So, *In aprico est res*—*in incerto*—*in difficili.*—*In medio relictum est.*—*In luctu et equatore sum.*
 - (2.) *On*: as, *Agasilas in ordâ conedit.*—*Nix est in summo monte.*—*Pons in flumine factus est.*
 - (3.) *Among*: as, *In magnis viris numeratur.*—*Hæc in bonis sunt habenda.*
 - (4.) *Amidst*: as, *In tantâ perfidiâ veterum amicorum nihil supererat spei.*—*Etiâ in summâ donorum civium cupidâ timemus.*—So, *In vino deserti sumus.*
 - (5.) *On the Score of*: as, *In eâ re gratias Deo agebamus.*—*Pausanias in eo est reprehensus.*
 - (6.) *During*, in (of Time): as, *Ter in anno rus imus.*—*In præsentibus nihil opus est.*—*In annonæ caritate civitati subvenit.*—*In tempore veni.*

II. (a.) *Sub* with an Accusative, is used:—

- (1.) Of Place (under) literally and metaphorically, when motion is implied: as, *Armentum sub lecta referto.*—*Sub jugum Romani missi sunt.*—*Sub oculos mihi venit.*—*Sub judicium cades.*
 - (2.) Of Time (immediately after, about, against): as, *Sub eas litteras recitatus sunt tuæ.*—*Sub ortum lucis signa contulit.*—*Cœnam parat uxor sub adventum viri.*
- (b.) *Sub* with an Ablative is used:
- (1.) Of Place (under), rest being implied: as, *Talpæ sub terrâ habitant.*—*Judæa sub procuratore erat.*—*Sub hac conditione rediit.*
 - (2.) Rarely of Time: as, *Sub exitu anni.*

III. (a.) *Super* with Accusative is used:—

- (1.) Of Place (over, above, beyond): as, *Alis super vallum præcipitantur.*—*Super aquam currit.*—*Super navem turris exstructa est.*—*Super Sinium navigavit.*
- (2.) Of Number (besides): as, *Super bellum annona premit.*—*Super hæc.*—*Super omnia.*—*Super tres modios accepi.*
- (3.) Of Comparison (beyond): as, *Res super vota fluunt.*

(4.) Of Time (during): as, *Super cenam collocuti sumus.*

(b.) *Super* with Ablative is used:—

(1.) Of the Subject Matter (concerning): as, *Multa super Priamo rogans, super Hectore multa.*

(2.) Of Position (over): as, *Ensis super cervice pendet.*

(3.) Of Time (during, at): as, *Nocte super mediâ.*

IV. *Subter* (under, below): generally governs an Accusative, sometimes in poetry an Ablative: as, *Amnes sæpè subter terram vias occultas agunt.*—*Virtus omnia subter se habet.*

Not. 1.—The following Prepositions are also used as Adverbs: *antè, citra, circum, circa, circiter, contra, juxta, infra, intra, penè, post, propè, supra, ultra, coram, clam*: as, *Paullo ante dixi.*—*Longo post tempore venit.* *Juxta* is used with a Copulative Conjunction following, in the sense of 'alike,' 'equally': as, *Juxta obsessentes obsessosque inopia oppressit.*

Not. 2.—The inseparable Prepositions, or those only found in compound words are: *amb-* or *am-* (round, about), *com-* (with), *dis-* (asunder), *re-* (again, back), *se-* (apart): as, *ambigo, amplector*; *conscius, committo, coerceo*; *dissonus, dimitto*; *renovo, refluo.*]

EXCURSION XI. ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS IN SENTENCES, AND THE STRUCTURE OF PERIODS.

I. ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS IN SENTENCES.

1. The doctrine of the arrangement of words in Latin rests upon two leading principles: I. That the word most important to the sense, or most emphatic, should be placed in a prominent position. II. That all which is essential to the complete expression of an idea should be placed near together.

2. In ordinary discourse, where no emphasis is intended, the simplest construction is naturally chosen, and thus in every language a certain arrangement comes to be adopted, which is not departed from without some special reason. In Latin narrative discourse, Conjunctions come first, then the Subject, then the Oblique Cases, with all other unemphatic additions, and, last of all, the Verb: as, *Romaai templum in Capitolio Jovi, Junoni, et Minervæ condiderunt.*—LIV.

Obs. The Verb, however, is often not placed at the end of the proposition, when either this is too long for the expectation to be suspended, or when too many Verbs would come together at the end. *Verba sentiendi et declarandi*, especially, are seldom kept for the end of the sentence. Moreover, the Verb is often placed earlier in the sentence in easy and familiar writings, while in the historical and oratorical styles its place is at the end. A hexametrical close at the end of a proposition (— — — — —) must be avoided, especially in the combination *esse videtur*. Among the best cadences of a sentence are: a Trochee with a third Pæon, as, *esse videatur*; a Cretic with a Distrocheus, as, *turpiter destitavit*, or with a Dispondeus, as, *impios profligavit*; a Trochee and third Epitrite, as, *somnus ignavia*; two Cretics, as, *callidè disputant*; or a Cretic and Molossus, as, *fortiter contendunt*.

3. When the Object of the Verb is a clause of such a length, or so connected with the rest of the sentence, that it could not conveniently stand between the Nominative and Verb, the Verb is placed first. *Vetat enim dominans ille in nobis Deus, injussu nos hinc suo demigrare.*—CIC. So also, when the clause is in apposition to the Subject: as, *Pellantur ergo istæ ineptiæ pæne pueriles, ante tempus mori miserum esse.*—CIC.
- 4.—It is a general rule that what is governed precedes the word that governs it. Thus, the Genitive precedes the governing Noun: as, *Omnium animantium formam vincit hominis figura.*—CIC. The Accusative the governing Verb: as, *Bellum scripturus sum, quod populus Romanus cum Jugurthâ gessit.*—SALL. The Ablative the Comparative. &c.: as, *Nihil est agriculturâ melius, nihil homine libero dignius.*—CIC. Much, however, depends on this—whether the idea expressed by the governed, or that expressed by the governing word, is to be more strongly impressed on the mind. *Fratris tui mors acerbissima mihi fuit*, and *mors fratris tui* are both equally correct, according as the idea of the person or the death takes precedence in the mind.
5. What is common to several objects either precedes or follows them, but is not placed with one exclusively. *In scriptoribus legendis et imitandis, or in legendis imitandisque scriptoribus, not in legendis scriptoribus et imitandis; amicitiam nec usus nec ratione habent cognitam; philosophia Græcis et literis et doctoribus percipi potest.*—CIC.
6. The attributive Adjective is usually placed after the Substantive. *Summus, imus, medius, &c.*, used in the way mentioned § 169, for distinction's sake precede the Substantive. A monosyllabic Substantive should precede a longer Adjective: *Di immortales, rex potentissimus, res innumerabiles, me miserum!* otherwise the shorter word would be lost. Whatever limits or qualifies the idea expressed by the Adjective, is usually placed between the Substantive and Adjective: as, *Prælio magis ad eventum secundo quàm levi aut facili affectus.*—LIV. If two Adjectives refer to the same Substantive, the Pronoun is often inserted between them: as, *Libero tuo et admirabili ingenio delector.*—CIC.
7. The Demonstrative Pronouns usually precede their Substantive: *Ejus disputationis sententias memoriæ mandavi; quas hoc libro exposui meo arbitrato.*—CIC. The Relative, as connecting propositions, has its place at the beginning of its own proposition. When it connects a sentence with the preceding sentence, and is equivalent to a Demonstrative with a Conjunction, it should be the first word: *Non sunt ferendi qui grammaticen cavillantur; quæ nisi (for unless this) oratoris futuri fundamenta jecerit, quicquid superstruxeris corruet.*—QUINT.
- 8.—Prepositions are either placed immediately before their Case, whether the Substantive or its qualifying Adjective, or, at least, are only separated from it by a Genitive Case belonging to the word which they govern: *Sanguis a corde in totum corpus distribuitur.*—CIC. *Quid est tam inhumanum quàm eloquentiam ad bonorum perniciem convertere?*—CIC. Words which form an essential part of the meaning of the word governed, by qualifying or limiting it, may be introduced between the Preposition and the Case: as, *Inter bis quinos*

viros; ob non redditos transfugas; de bene beateque vivendo, a suum cuique tribuendo.—Ex illo cælesti Epicuri de regulâ et judicio volumine.—Cic.

Prepositions, especially monosyllabic, may be introduced between the Genitive and the Noun on which it depends, or between the Substantive and Adjective: *Regis ad exemplum; multis de causis; valle sub umbrosâ.*

9. Adverbs are usually placed immediately before the words to which they belong: *Dicebant nihil tam asperum, neque tam difficile esse, quod non cupidissimè facturi essent.* Words closely connected in sense with that which the Adverb qualifies are often placed between them: *Non tam in bellis et præliis quàm in promissis et fide firmi.* *Non*, when it belongs to a single word of the Proposition, always stands immediately before it; *Non te reprehendo, sed fortunam.* If, however, the Negative belongs to the Proposition generally, not to any specific word, *non* stands before the Verb, and before a Finite Verb, if an Infinitive depends upon it: as, *Cur tantopere te angas, intelligere sanè non possum.—Cic.* Instead of *dico non*, *nego* is generally used: as, *Negavit eum adesse*, "he said he was not there," not, "he denied." So *nolo* instead of *volo non*, and *veto* instead of *jubeo ne*.

Note 1.—*Non, nemo, nullus, neque*, joined to *quisquam, ullus, unquam*, and such general Negatives, always precede them, though not always immediately: as, *Non memini me unquam te vidisse*, not *unquam me vidisse te non memini; nemini quidquam negavit*, not *quidquam nemini negavit*.

Note 2.—*Antequam, priusquam, non modo, non solum, non tantum—sed etiam, non minus, non magis*, are often separated by one or more words on which an emphasis rests: *Ante revertit quàm expectaveram.—Cic. Illud quidem post accidit quàm discesseram.—Cic. Jus bonumque apud Scythas non legibus magis quàm naturâ valebat.—Cic.*

10. An Apposition to a proper name is commonly placed after the name, as conveying a subordinate idea only: as, *Q. Mucius Augur multa narrare de C. Lælio, socero suo, solebat.—Cic.* So *Agis rex, Cyprus insula, Hypanis fluvius, Orpheus poeta*, unless an emphasis falls upon the Appellative, as, *Pontifex Scævola*, to distinguish him from the Augur. So in the laudatory epithets, *vir clarissimus, vir honestissimus, vir fortis*.
11. Words of a similar kind, or expressing contrasted ideas, especially the Pronouns of a Proposition, are placed near each other: *Mea mihi conscientia pluris est quàm omnium sermo.—Cic. Cato mirari se videbat quod non rideret harusper, haruspicem quum vidisset.—Cic. Vides rebus injustis justos maxime dolere.—Cic. Quedam falsa veri speciem habent.—Cic. Ratio nostra consentit: repugnat oratio.—Cic.*
12. In some phrases, custom has established an order which cannot be varied: as *Jupiter optimus maximus. Res familiaris. Jus civile. Magister equitum. Senatus populusque Romanus. Re et consilio juvare; ferro ignique vastare. Nequid respublica detrimenti capiat.—The Ablatives opinione, spe, justo, solito, always precede the Comparative. Non nisi are most commonly separated by some intervening word in Cicero. Mihi crede, in the sense of assuredly, is much more*

common in prose than *crede mihi* (which, however, is found). *Inquit* (says he) is used only after some of the words quoted, or a clause; *ait*, either before or after; *dicit*, before, except by poets; *opinor*, *reor*, *credo*, &c., after one or more words.

18. Lastly, respecting the arrangement of words in a sentence, it is to be observed, that the word on which the emphasis falls, and which is distinguished accordingly by the voice, is placed in an unusual position. This rule is so general, that there is scarcely any of the preceding rules which does not sometimes give way to the desire of placing the emphatic word in a position which, being unusual, attracts attention.

The following are examples of emphatic position :—

- a. Subject. *Sensit in se iri Brutus.*—Cic. *Ortus nostri partem patria vindicat, partem amici.*—Cic. *Eorum, qui exactâ etate moriuntur, fortuna laudatur.*—Cic.
- b. Predicate. *Ne sit summum malum dolor; malum certè est.*—Cic.
- c. Attributive Adjective and Pronoun. *Usitatus res facile e memoriâ elabuntur; insignes et novæ manent diutius.*—Cic.—*Flaminius id suo more neglexit.*—Liv.
- d. Verb. *Non intelligunt homines, quàm magnum vectigal sit parsimonia.* Cic. *Decipere hoc quidem est, non judicare.*—Cic. *Quid deceat vos, non quantum liceat vobis, spectare debetis.*—Cic.
- e. Oblique Cases. *Mathematicorum iste mos est, non philosophorum.*—Cic. *Græco verbo utamur, si quando minus occurrat Latinum.*—Cic.
- f. Adverb *Ubi semel quis pejeraverit, ei credi postea non oportet.*

Note.—For more minute observations on this subject the student is referred to the Rev. T. K. Arnold's Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, Part II. § 1, &c.

II. CONNEXION OF SENTENCES, AND STRUCTURE OF A PERIOD.

1. In a good Latin style the several Sentences all form links of a chain, which only breaks off at last, because the topic is altogether dismissed. At least, no Sentence should stand detached without a special reason.

The Relative Pronouns and Particles are particularly useful for this connexion of Sentences, and for avoiding the monotonous repetition of *et*. Every Relative may be used for the Demonstrative with *et*; *qui* for *et is*, *qualis* for *et talis*, *quo* for *et eo*. They are therefore also found with those Conjunctions which allow of a connexion by means of *et*; as, *Quod quum audivissem, quod si fecissem, quod quamvis non ignorassem*, for *et quum hoc, et si hoc, et quamvis hoc*; and even after other Relatives: *quod qui facit, eum ego impium judico; contra quem qui exercitus duxerunt, iis Senatus singulares honores decrevit*; constructions which cannot be imitated in English.

This is also the reason why Sentences in Latin cannot be connected by *qui vero* or *qui tamen*, a construction to which learners are prone, in imitation of the English, "who, however:" thus, *Multa mihi promisit, quæ vero non præstitit*, should be *quæ non præstitit, or sed ea non præstitit*.

From this fondness for the connexion by means of Relatives, appears to have arisen the use of *quod* before many Conjunctions, merely as a Copulative word. It is most frequent before the conditional Particles *si*, *nisi*, and *etsi*, and is found also, though more rarely, before other Conjunctions: *quod quum*, *quod ubi*, *quod quia*, *quod quoniam*, *quod ne*, *quod utinam*, in all which the Conjunction alone would have been sufficient. Even before the Pronoun Relative, we find *quod* thus used:—*Quod qui ab illo abducit exercitum, et respectum pulcherrimum et præsidium firmissimum adimit reipublicæ*.—CIC. See Exc. VII.

Another peculiarity, which in Latin helps the connexion of Sentences, is the use of *neque* and *nec*. They stand for *et* with the Negation, in whatever form it occurs in the sentence, unless when it belongs exclusively to a single word in antithesis. To this kind of connexion the Latin is so partial, that, for the sake of it, *neque* or *nec* is joined to *enim* and *vero*, where in English we could not use *and*, and are, therefore, obliged to explain it by saying that *neque* is used for *non*. In *neque tamen* the copula is superfluous, although in Latin it seems to have been considered essential to the connexion of the sentences. *Non enim*, *non vero*, *non tamen*, are of much rarer occurrence than *neque enim*, &c., for this purpose, and therefore are not deserving of imitation. To these Negative expressions Latin writers often join a second Negative, in which case *neque enim non* is equivalent to *nam*; *nec vero non* to *atque etiam*; *nec tamen non* to *attamen*. *Neque vero non eadem ira Deorum hanc ejus satellitibus injecit amenitiam* (and, in truth, the same anger).—CIC. *Nec enim is, qui in te adhuc injusior fuit, non magna signa dedit animi mitigati* (for he gave signs).—CIC. *Neque tamen quum hæc scribebam, eram nescius*, &c. ("and yet I knew").—CIC. The use of *namque* for *nam* may be considered as an instance of this superfluity of the Copulative.

3. *Que*, *ve*, *quoque*, *autem*, *vero*, and the Adverbs *quidem* and *enim* cannot be placed at the very beginning of a sentence. If it is necessary to begin the sentence with something equivalent, we may use *atque* for *que*, *vel* for *ve*, *et* for *quoque*, *verum* or *sed* for *autem*, *equidem* (if the Verb be of the first person) for *quidem*; *etenim*, *nam*, or *namque* for *enim*. *Nam*, *itaque*, *sed*, begin clauses; *igitur*, *ergo*, *etiam*, *tamen*, may come first or after one or more words: *que*, *ve* are enclitics, added to the word to which they belong: *quoque*, *quidem*, usually follow the word on which they throw an emphasis: *enim*, *autem*, *vero*, follow the first, or sometimes, if the Predicate with *est* begins the sentence, the second word of a clause. In later writers, *namque* is found the second word in the sentence.
4. A Sentence which is enlarged by the interposition of several others, subordinate to the principal, is called a *Period*. The Period is simple or complex, according as it consists of one such enlarged Sentence, or of two, standing in the relation to each other of preecedent and consequent clauses (Protasis and Apodosis). Thus, "*Vitis naturâ caduca est, et claviculis quicquid est nacta complectitur*," is composed of two Sentences; but as they are connected by a simple copulative, and, consequently, neither of them is subordinate to the other, the whole is not called a Period. But, if we say "*Vitis, quæ naturâ caduca est, quicquid est nacta complectitur*," it becomes a simple

Period; if we insert "*et nisi fulta sit, ad terram fertur, claviculis quasi manibus quicquid est nacta complectitur*," it becomes a complex Period; "*vitis complectitur*," being the principal,—"*quæ naturâ caduca est*," "*nisi fulta sit*," "*ad terram fertur*," the subordinate sentences. It becomes still more complex when enlarged by another subordinate sentence, as it is actually found in Cicero. *Vitis, quæ naturâ caduca est, et, nisi fulta sit, ad terram fertur, eadem, ut se erigat, claviculis, quasi manibus, quicquid est nacta complectitur.* The construction of a complex yet unembarrassed Period is one of the greatest excellencies of style. It would be absurd, however, to attempt to turn every sentence into a Period, by the insertion of clauses: since many thoughts do not allow such enlargement, without unmeaning diffuseness. We should, therefore, introduce some sentences not periodic (called *cola* and *commata*); both for this reason, and to avoid monotony.

5. As in the construction of a simple Sentence, minor additions and circumstances are thrown into the middle, and the Verb closes the whole, so clauses which contain circumstances are in Latin thrown into the middle of the Period. Thus, "*Scipio exercitum in Africam trajecit, ut Hannibalem ex Italiâ deduceret*," is not periodic in its structure, but it becomes so, when we say, "*Scipio, ut Hannibalem ex Italiâ deduceret, exercitum in Africam trajecit.*" So this sentence is not periodic, the subordinate clause preceding, "*Quum igitur Romam venisset*," or, "*quum vero Romam venisset, statim imperatorem adiit*," but it easily becomes periodic in this manner: *Itaque, quum Romam venisset*," or "*Sed quum Romam venisset, statim imperatorem adiit.*"

If the Subject of two Sentences, united by a Conjunction, is the same, it is the almost invariable practice in Latin to form them into a Period. *Antigonus, quum adversus Seleucum Lysimachumque dimicaret, in prælio occisus est.*—NEP. *Verres, simul ac tetigit provinciam, statim Messanam literas dedit.*—CIC. *Stultitia, etsi adepta est quod concupivit, nunquam se tamen satis consecutam putat.*—CIC. So, when the Object is the same in both Propositions: as, *Quem, ut barbari incendium effugisse viderunt, telis eminus emissis interfecerunt.*—NEP. In such constructions, it cannot be said whether the Nominative or Oblique Case, which stands first, belongs to the principal or the subordinate sentence.

When, however, the Object of the principal is the Subject of the subordinate sentence, it is equally placed first, and the Nominative supplied in the subordinate sentence from the Oblique Case which has preceded. *L. Manlio, quum dictator fuisset, M. Pomponius, tribunus plebis, diem dixit.*—CIC. *Idem Cretensibus, quum ad eum usque in Pamphyliam legatos misissent, spem deditionis non ademit.*—CIC.

Note.—The frequent custom of placing the Subject or Object of the principal Sentence first, because it is also the Subject or Object of the subordinate sentence, has sometimes led the Latin writers into placing before the Conjunction a Case which belongs exclusively to the subordinate sentence. This is most frequent with the Pronoun Relative: as, *Qui quoniam quid diceret intelligi noluit, omittamus.*—CIC. *Agimus ii, qui quodcumque egerimus, ratæ civitates nostræ habituræ sint.*—CIC. *Noli ad-*

versum eos me velle ducere, cum quibus ne contra te arma ferrem, Italianam reliqui.—NEP.

6. Relative Sentences of every kind are very frequently employed for the structure of the Period. If emphasis is sought, the Relative Sentence is placed before the Demonstrative Pronoun or Adverb: as, *Quid? ii qui dixerunt totam de diis opinionem fictam esse ab hominibus sapientibus reipublicæ causa, ut quos ratio non posset, eos ad officium religio duceret, nonne omnem religionem funditus sustulerunt?*—CIC. *Quod si, quam audax est ad conandum, tam esset obscurus in agendo, fortasse aliqui in re nos aliquando fefellisset.*—CIC. So *qualis* often precedes *talis*; *quidquid*, *id*; and *quo*, *hoc* or *eo*. It is, however, by no means an universal practice.
7. Oratorical Rhythm, which gives to the flow of prose that fulness, roundness, and regularity of sound, which is consistent with the essential difference between the modulation of prose and verse, is chiefly to be obtained by the study of correspondence (*concinntas*), in the structure of sentences.

Those words which are opposed to each other, should, as much as possible, be of one kind, so that a Noun should answer to a Noun, a Verb to a Verb, &c. The different members of a Sentence should be of nearly the same, or at least not very dissimilar length, the latter, if anything, rather longer than the former. If possible, the sentence should be so constructed that more than one important word may come between the close of a parenthetical clause and the end of a sentence: as, *Magnitudo maleficii facit, ut, nisi manifestum parricidium proferatur, credibile non sit.*—CIC. Cicero is the best model of Oratorical Rhythm.

8. Historical narrative requires frequent change in statements of time: to express these, historians have recourse to two methods—the Participial construction, attributive and absolute, and the Conjunctions, *quum*, *ubi*, *postquam*. By these means Livy can unite without want of perspicuity, in one Period, what in English must be broken into three or more: as, *Numitor, inter primum tumultum, hostes invasisse urbem atque adortos regiam dictitans, quum pubem Albanam in arcem præsidio armisque obtinendam avocasset, postquam juvenes perpetrata cæde pergere ad se gratulantes vidit, extemplo advocato consilio, scelera in se fratris, originem nepotum, ut geniti, ut educati, ut cogniti essent, eadem deinceps tyranni, seque ejus auctorem ostendit.*—LIV. *His, sicut acta erant, nuntiatis, incensus Tarquinius non dolore solum tante ad irritum cadentis spei, sed etiam odio iraque, postquam dolo viam obseptam vidit, bellum apertè moliendum ratus, circumire supplex Etruriæ urbes.*—LIV.

Poetry and Prose alike require the virtues of *Purity*, *Perspicuity*, *Simplicity*, and *Harmony*.

Purity of style is violated by *Barbarisms* or *Solecisms*. *Barbarism* is the use of a word not properly Latin, as *confiscare* "to confiscate," or (what is still more to be guarded against as being a more easy error) the use of good Latin words in meanings which they do not bear: as, *intentio* for "an intention," instead of *consilium* or *propositum*. *Solecism* is a construction not allowed by the rules of Syntax: as, *parce me for parce mihi*.

Perspicuity of style requires that it should be clear and easily intelligible, free from confusion and from ambiguity.

Simplicity of style requires it to be free from affectation, and from all tawdry and tasteless ornament.

Harmony of style requires that harsh and unmusical sounds be carefully avoided; that long and short words be well intermixed, and that grave and important words close the sentences.

EXCURSION XII. ON FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

1. *Ellipsis* is the omission of some word or words necessary to the regular construction of a sentence. Various ellipses have been already noticed. See § 102. (Obs. 1.) §§ 104, 105. 180. 151. (Obs. 1.) § 152. (Obs.) § 155. (Obs. 1.) A few others may be here mentioned as common: *Quid multa?* (verba dicam).—*Pro virili (parte)*.—*Nihil ad rem (attinet)*.—*Ad Tamum cogitabam (ire)*.—*Dui meliora (dent)*.—*Habes quo confugias (locum)*.—*Erat cum cogitabam (tempus)*. See Ramshorn's Lat. Gram. § 208. Scheller, Lat. Gramm. p. ii. c. 7. *Inquit* is often understood.
2. *Synesis*. See § 108.
3. *Syllepsis* is the connection of one Adjective or Verb with several Substantives. For the rules of construction in Syllepsis see §§ 109, 110.
4. *Zeugma* is the connection of one Verb with two Nouns, to both of which it does not equally apply: so that for one of them, another Verb (to be gathered from the sense of the passage) must be mentally supplied. *Zeugma* is therefore a species of Ellipsis: as, *Ex spoliis et torquem et cophomen induit*.—CIC. *Querimonie conventusque habebantur*.—CIC.
The agreement of a Verb or Adjective with one only of several subjects is also called *Zeugma*. See § 110. (Obs.)
5. *Pleonasmus* (the opposite of Ellipsis) is the use of more words than are necessary to the regular expression of a thought: as, *Sic ore locuta est*.—VIRG. Where *ore* is redundant. Many elegancies of Latin construction are referable to this figure. See Ramshorn, Scheller, and Zumpt.
6. *Asyndeton* is the omission of Copulative Conjunctions, and belongs to Ellipsis: as, *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit*.—CIC. On the other hand, *Polysyndeton* is a redundancy of Conjunctions, and therefore belongs to *Pleonasmus*: as, *Una Eurusque Notusque ruunt creberque procellis Africus*.—VIRG.
7. *Hendiadys* is a species of Pleonasm, which expresses one complex idea by two Substantives, instead of a Substantive and Adjective: as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, (VIRG.) for *pateris aureis*.
8. *Hyperbaton* is the placing of one or more words out of their natural order in the sentence: as, *Tu illas abi et traduce*.—TER.

The four following figures belong to Hyperbaton:—

9. *Anacoluthon* is the passing from one construction to another before the former is completed: as, *Quæ qui in utramque partem excelso animo magnoque despiciunt, cumque aliqua his ampla et honesta res objecta est, totos ad se convertit, et rapit: tum quis non admiretur splendorem pulchritudinemque virtutis?*—CIC.

10. *Hysteron-proteron* is when, of two things, that which naturally comes first is mentioned last: as, *Moriamur et in media arma ruamus.*—VIRG.
11. *Anastrophe* places the Preposition after its case; *Tmesis* divides a compounded word: as, *Per mihi gratum feceris.*—CIC. *Quæ te cumque domat Venus.*—FLOR.
12. *Parenthesis* is the interposition of one sentence within another: as, *At tu (nam divam servat tutela poetas) præmoneo, vati parce, puella, sacro.*—TIBULL.
13. *Archaismus* is the use of an antiquated word or construction: as *olli* for *illi*; *duint* for *dent*, *siet* for *sit*, *dicier* for *dici*; *induperator* for *imperator*; *flammai* for *flammæ*; *frui rem* for *frui re*, &c.
14. *Hellenismus*, or *Græcismus*, is the use of a Greek idiom: as, *Ego te faciam ut miser sis.*—PLAUT. *Da mihi fallere.*—HOR. *Vir bonus et sapiens dignis ait esse paratus.*—HOR. *Sunt quos juvat.*—HOR.
15. *Enallage* is the use of one word for another, and is of many kinds:—
 - (1.) *Antimeria*, the use of one part of speech for another: as, *nostrum vivere* for *nostra vita*; *aliud cras* for *alius dies crastinus*.
 - (2.) *Antiptosis*, the use of one case for another: as, *Matutine pater, seu Jane libentius audis*, HOR., for *Janus*.
 - (3.) *Heterosis Numerorum*: as, *nos* for *ego*; *miles* for *milites*.—*Modorum*: as, *Tu hoc silebis* for *sile*.—*Temporum*: as, *Mox navigo Ephesum* for *navigabo*.
16. *Hypallage* is an interchange of cases: as, *Dare classibus Austros*, (VIRG.) for *dare classes Austris*. Also, the attraction of epithets to Substantives to which they do not properly belong: as, *Fontium gelidæ perennitates*, (CIC.) for *fontium gelidorum perennitates*.

The following figures belong to Rhetoric:—

17. *Metaphora* puts for one expression another which has some resemblance to it in a different kind, generally a concrete for an abstract: as, *vulnus* for *damnum*, *portus* for *refugium*, *stimulus* for *incitamentum*, *sentina reipublicæ* for *turpissimi cives*, *ardeo* for *amo*, *exsulto* for *gaudeo*, &c. A strong metaphor is often qualified by the introduction of *quasi*, *tanquam*, *quidem*, or *ut ita dicam*: as, *In undâ philosophid quasi tabernaculum vitæ suæ allocarunt.*—CIC. *Caria et Phrygia asciverunt aptum suis auribus opimum quoddam et quasi adipale dictionis genus.*—CIC. *Scopas, ut ita dicam, mihi videntur dissolvere.*—CIC.
18. *Metonymia* puts a related word instead of the proper word: (1.) Cause for effect; as *Mars* for *bellum*, *Bacchus* for *vinum*: (2.) Material for work: as, *aurum argentumque* for *vasa aurea et argentea*: (3.) Abstract for concrete: as, *juventus* for *juvenes*, *sapientia Læli* for *sapiens Lælius*, *cor Enni* for *cordatus Ennius*: (4.) Concrete for abstract; as, *Cedant arma togæ* for *Cedat bellum paci*: (5.) The country for its inhabitants; as, *Græcia* for *Græci*. So, *Janus* for *Jani vicus*, &c., &c.
19. *Synecdoche* puts the whole for the part, or the part for the whole; as, *Sal sextante est*, (LIV.) for *modius salis*; *caput* for *homo*; *tectum* for *domus*, &c.

20. *Allegoria* is a chain of metaphors: as, *Claudite jam rivos, pueri, sat prata biberunt.*—VIRG. Meaning, "Cease to sing, O shepherds, sufficient recreation has been taken."
21. *Hyperbole* magnifies beyond credibility: as, *Sudor fluit undique rivis.*—VIRG.
22. *Litotes* states less than is actually meant: as, *Non laudo for culpo; non sperno for amo, &c.*
23. *Climax* amplifies by regular gradations, like the steps of a ladder: as, *Quod libet iis, licet; quod licet, possunt; quod possunt, audent.*
24. *Polyptoton* brings together cases of the same Noun: as, *Jam clypeus clypeis, umbone repellitur umbo; ense minax ensis, pede pes et cuspidē cuspis.*—STAT.
25. *Paronomasia* is a play upon the sound of words: as, *Tibi purata erunt verba, hinc verbera.*—TER.
26. *Antithesis* contrasts opposites: as, *Urbis amatorem Fuscum salvere jubemus ruris amatores.*—HOR.
27. *Ozymoron* unites seeming contraries: as, *Temporis angusti mansit concordia discors.*—LUCAN.
28. *Periphrasis* describes a simple fact by various attending circumstances: as, instead of "now night is approaching," Virgil says, "*Et jam summa procul villarum culmina fumant, majoresque cadunt altis de montibus umbræ.*" See the beautiful periphrases of old age and death in Ecclesiastes, ch. xii.
29. *Simile* or *Parabole* illustrates a statement by an apt comparison: as, *Per urbes Hannibal Italas ceu flamma per tædas vel Euris per Siculas equitavit undas.*—HOR.
30. *Apostrophe* is a sudden appeal addressed to some person or thing: as, *Quid non mortalia pectora cogis auri sacra fames?*—VIRG.
31. *Prosopopæia* represents inanimate objects or abstractions as living and acting: as, *Te Pax et albo rara Fides colit velata panno.*—HOR. *Belli ferratos rupit Discordia postes.*—HOR.
32. *Aposiopesis* suppresses the conclusion of a commenced sentence: as, *Quos ego—sed motos præstat componere fluctus.*—VIRG.
33. *Ironia* says one thing and means another, but so as to let the real meaning be understood: as, *Egregiam verò laudem et spolia ampla refertis tuque puerque tuus.*—VIRG.

To the foregoing, many other figures of speech might be added. Although Poetry is more figurative than Prose, yet even in Prose there are few of these Figures which are not used for the sake of ornament, and some of them very abundantly.

COMPENDIUM OF LATIN PROSODY.

§ 201. (Prosodia) Prosody (disserit) treats (de quantitate) concerning the-quantity (syllabarum) of-syllables, (et) and (de legibus) concerning the-laws (metrorum) of-metres.¹

ON THE-QUANTITY OF-SYLLABLES.

DEFINITIONS.

1. (*Tempus*) Time (est) is (mensura) the-measure (eloquendæ syllabæ) of-uttering a-syllable: (quod) which (et) also (vocatur) is -called *Quantitas* (quantity.)

Obs. (*Vocalis observetur*) Let-the-vowel be-observed; (quantitas syllabarum) the-quantity of-syllables (stat) depends (in quantitate vocalium) on the-quantity of-the-vowels.

2. (*Habes*) you-have (notas) these-marks (longi Temporis) of-long Time [-], (brevisque) and of-short-Time [~].²

Obs. 1. (*Singulis longis*) One long-Time (brevibusque binis) and two short (est) have (par eademque potestas) one and the same power.³

Obs. 2. (*Illā vocalis*) That vowel, (quæ) which (sonat) sounds (interdum) sometimes (brevis) short, (et rursus) and again (eadem) likewise (longa) long, (audit) is called (*communis*) common.

Not. (*H*) The letter *h* (non habetur) is-not reckoned (consonans) a-consonant, (exercetque) and exercises (nullam vim) no power (in Prosodiā) in Prosody.⁴

[¹ Strictly speaking, Prosody only contains the laws of Quantity and Accent: but it is often extended, for convenience, as here, to the Rules of Rhythm and Metre.

² To lengthen a syllable is in Latin *producere* or *extendere*; to shorten it, *corripere* or *contrahere*.

³ That is, two short syllables are pronounced in the same time as one long syllable, and count the same in Rhythm.

⁴ *H*, therefore, does not interrupt Elision, as, *Und' homines nati*—(for *unde*): nor prevent the shortening of a vowel before another vowel by coming between them, as, *præhibe*: nor lengthen a vowel by position; as, *scāpha*; *Mars videt hanc*].

GENERAL RULES OF-QUANTITY.

§ 202. *G. R. I.* (Omnis diphthongus) Every diphthong (contractae syllaba) and contracted syllable (longa est) is long : (ut) as (*præ*) a-surety, (*heu*) alas, (*gaudens*) rejoicing : (*coago*) I-compel (fit *cōgo*) becomes *cōgo*, (*nihil*) nothing (*nīl*) becomes *nīl* ; (*bōbus*) to-oxen (pro *bovibus*) is-put-for *bovibus* ; (*mōmentum*) an-impulse (pro *movimentum*) for *movimentum*.¹

Obs. (At) But (tu corripies *præ*) you will-shorten *præ* (*præeuntem* vocali) going-before a-vowel.²

§ 203. *G. R. II.* (Primaria) Primitives (dant) give (proprium tempus) their-own quantity (Derivatis) to-their-derivatives : (sic) thus (*sālix*) a-willow (format) forms (*sāliceta*) willow-grounds, (*pōmum*) an-apple (*pōmaria*) orchards.

Obs. (Tamen) Yet (in multis) in many-instances (fit aliter) it-happens otherwise : (sic) thus (*ārena āret*) sand is-dry (sic) thus (*hōmo est hūmanus*) man is human ; (sic) thus (*parva lūcerna lūcet*) a-little candle shines.³

G. R. III. (Nec non) Moreover (Composita) compound-words (sequuntur) follow (tempus Simplicium) the-quantity of-their-Simples : (sic) thus (*repūto*) I-consider (exstat) comes (a *pūto*) from *pūto*, I-think, (sic) thus (*immēmor*) unmindful (a *mēmor*) from *mēmor*, mindful.

Obs. (Tamen) Yet (sunt excepta) there-are exceptions : (sic) thus (*jūro*) I-swear (format *pejēro*) forms *pejēro*, I-forswear.⁴

§ 204. *G. R. IV.* (Vocalis) A-vowel (prævia vocali) (going-before a-vowel (corripitur) is-shortened : (ceu) as, (*principium*) a-beginning ; (*prōhibe*) forbid.

Obs. 1. (Sed) But (hinc excipe) except from-this-rule (multa Græca) many Greek-words : *Chaonis, Æneas, Clio, Myrtous, Enyo*.⁵

Obs. 2. (Priscus Genitivus) The-old Genitive (Primæ) of-the-first-declension (habebit) will-have (a longam) long a : (*terrāi, aulāi*) as-*terrāi*, of-earth, *aulāi*, of-a-hall : (sic) thus (Quinta) the 5th Declension (format *diēi*) makes *diēi*, of-a-day : (tamen) but (scribe) write (*rēi* atque *rēi*) *rēi* and *rēi*, of-a-thing ; (*fidēi* atque *fidēi*) *fidēi* and *fidēi*, of-faith.⁶

Obs. 3. (Penultima) The last-syllable-but-one (Vocativo) of-the-Vocative-Case (vocis) of-a-word (in *aius* aut *eius*) ending in *aius* or *eius* (longa est) is long : (hac lege) by-this rule (sonantur) are-sounded (*Cāi*) O-Caius, (*Pompēi*) O-Pompeius.

Obs. 4. (I verbi *fiō*) The-*i* of-the-verb *fiō*, I-become, (longa est) is long, (nisi) except (cum comes est *er*) when *er* follows it : (*omnia nunc fiunt*) all-things will-happen now (*feri quæ posse negabam*) which I-said could (not) happen.

Obs. 5. (Genitivus in *ius*) A-Genitive-Case in *ius* (*i* dat communem) makes *i* common : (ut) as (*ille*) he (*illius illiusque facit*)

makes *illius* and *illius*: (sic) so (*totus*) whole, (et) and (*unus*) one, (*ipse*) self, (que) and (*iste*) that, (*nullus*) none, (et) and (*ullus*) any, (habent *ius iusque*) have *ius* and *ius* (in the Genitive): (*utrius*, *alterius*) the-Genitives *utrius*, *alterius* (breviant) shorten *i*, (product *alius*) the-Genitive *alius* lengthens-it.

Obs. 6. (Nunc *Diana*) Sometimes *Diana* (*feras agit*) chases beasts, (nunc) sometimes (*dia Diana*) divine *Diana*: (sic) thus (*dicimus*) we-say (*ôhe* vel *ôhe*) *ôhe* or *ôhe*, oh! (sed semper *êheu*) but always *êheu*, alas.

§ 205. *G. R. V.* (Vocalis) Any-vowel (erit) will-be (*longa situ*) long by-Position, (*quamcunque*) which (seu duo) either two-consonants, (seu duplex in eâdem voce) or a double Consonant in the-same word (sequetur) shall-follow: (*ut*) as (*dulcis conjux*) sweet wife, (*et imago*) and a likeness (*notâ major*) larger-than-the-real.⁸

Obs. (Excipe) except (*quadrijugus*) yoked-with-four-horses, (*bijugus*) yoked-with-two-horses, (*quæ corripunt i*) which shorten the-*i*.

Not. (Vocalis) A-vowel (*vi curta suâ*) short by-its-own power (*communis erit*) will-be common, (*si*) if (*consona muta*) a-mute consonant (*postponens liquidam sibi*) with a liquid after it (*sequetur*) shall-follow: (sic) thus (*rectè dices*) you-will rightly say (*lugubre melos*) a-mournful melody (vel *lugubre*) or *lugubre*: (*dûplex*) double (*sive dûplex*) or *dûplex*: (*Tēcmessam*) Tecmessâ (*sive Tēcmessam*) or *Tēcmessam*.

(*Obs. 1.*) (*N post g*) *Gn* (semper dat longam) always makes a-long-syllable, (*ut*) as (*agnus*) a-lamb (et) and (*ignis*) fire: (*nec minus*) and likewise (*m post g*) *gm*; (*quod*) which (*tegmen*) a-covering (et) and (*agmen*) a-troop (*monstrat*) shews.

(*Obs. 2.*) (*Si*) If (*altera syllaba*) another syllable (*diviserit*) shall-have-divided (*liquidam mutâ*) the-liquid from-the-mute, (*prior*) the-former-syllable (*longa semper*) is-always long; (*quod*) which (*subruit*) he-undermines, (*ablue*) wash-away, (*monstrant*) shew.⁹

§ 206. *G. R. VI.* (*Syllaba prima*) The-first syllable (*Præteriti geminati*) of-a-reduplicated Preterperfect (*brevis est*) is short: (*ut*) as (*pepuli*) I-have-driven-away (*didici*) I-have-learnt, (*pupugi*) I-have-pricked, (*cecidi*) I-have-fallen, (*atque*) and (*cecidi*), I-have-beaten.¹⁰

G. R. VII. (*Præterita dissyllaba*) Preterperfects of-two-syllables (*efficiunt*) make (*primam longam*) the-first-syllable long; (*ut*) as (*vidi*) I-have-seen, (*legi*) I-have-read, (*que*) and (*movi*) I-have-moved: (sed) but (*excipe septem*) except seven: (*bibi*) I-have-drunk, (*dedi*) I-have-given, (*atque*) and (*fidi*) I-have-cleft, (*steti*) I-have-stood, (*stiti*) I-have-stopped, (*tuli*) I-have-borne, (*scidi*) I-have-cut.¹¹

G. R. VIII. (*Supina dissyllaba*) Supines of-two-syllables (*ritè producunt*) properly lengthen (*primam*) their-first-syllable: (*ut*) as

(*visum*) to-see, (*lotum*) to-wash, (*que*) and (*motum*) to-move: (sed excipe septem) but except seven: (*citum*) to-rouse, (*datum*) to-give, (*itum*) to-go, (*litum*) to-smear, (*ratum*) to-think, (*rutum*) to-throw-down, (*satum*) to-sow, (*situm*) to-suffer.¹³

[¹ Ovid has the *æ* in *Mæotis* short.

² Statius has the *æ* in *præiret* long.

³ These exceptions are numerous: thus *dīcar* from *dīco*, *nōta* from *nōtus*.

⁴ *Pro* and *de* before Vowels in composition are short, as, *prōhibeo*, *dēhisco*. Also *pro* is short in *prōfiscor*, and in the Compounds of *cello*, *fanum*, *fari*, *fateri*, *festus*, *fugio*, *fundus*, *nepos*, *neptis*, *torvus*; as, *prōcella*, *prōfari*, *prōfanus*, *prōfessus*, *prōfestus*, *prōfugus*, *prōfundus*, *prōfundo*, *prōnepos*, *prōneptis*, *prōtervus*. In *propago* and *propino*, it is common. In other compounds long. *Ne* is long in composition, except in *nēfas* and its derivatives, *nēque*, and *nēqueo*.

St is shortened in *stiquidem*, *quasi*, *nisi*.

There are many other exceptions, as, *cognitus* from *nōtus*, *innūba* from *nūbo*. *Calefacio*, *stupefacio*, and the like, compounded of a Verb of the 2nd Conjugation (*ēre*) and *facio*, might be expected to lengthen the *e*, which in general, however, they shorten.

⁵ Many words from the Greek, as, *Æneas*, *Clio*, *Myrtous*, have the vowel long before another, because they are written in Greek with a diphthong or one of the long vowels.

Many vary their quantity, because they have two forms in Greek, as, *Eous*, *Malea*, *Nereis*, *Rhea*, &c., in which the *e* is common for this reason. See *Ramsay's Prosody*, p. 26. *Academia* had the *i* long in Greek, and such was its Latin quantity in the purest age: later writers shortened it.

⁶ Lucretius has *rēi* and *fīdēi*: subsequent poets shorten the *e* of these words.

⁷ Respecting the quantity of *Diana* (*Dea Jana*) and the other exceptions to Rule iv., see *Ramsay's Pr.* p. 21, &c. *Altus* is contracted from *alius*.

⁸ That is, a Vowel is long before two Consonants, whether they are both in the same word with it, or in different words; but before a double consonant (*j*, *x*, *z*), only when it is in the same word. "A short vowel at the end of a word, when followed by a word beginning with *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, *st*, is rarely, if ever, allowed to remain short in serious compositions, by the poets who flourished after the time of Lucretius, but they generally avoid with care such a collocation."—*Ramsay*.

A short vowel is sometimes, but very rarely, lengthened, when it ends one word, and two consonants or a double consonant begin the next; as, *Lappæquē tribulique interque nitentia culta*.—*VIRG.* *Drymoquē Xanthoque Ligeaque Phyllocæque*.—*VIRG.*

⁹ It is only in a few Greek words that a vowel remains short before a mute and *m* or *n*, as *cygnus* (sometimes written *cygnus*) *dāphne*.

A vowel is lengthened by two liquids as much as by two mutes, as, *Mēmnon*.

It is also absurd to suppose that a vowel *naturally long* can be *shortened* by coming before a mute and liquid: thus from *māter* we must have *mātris*.

¹⁰ The penultima of these Preterites is also short, except in *cecidī* and those which are long by position, as, *cucurri*.

¹¹ It is probable that all these were reduplicated originally: not only *tetuli* (still found in the Comic poets) and the others with short penultima, (of which *dedi* and *steti* retain the reduplication) but also the others: as,

<i>lego,</i>	<i>lēlēgi,</i>	<i>leegi,</i>	<i>lēgi.</i>
<i>video,</i>	<i>vevīdi,</i>	<i>veidi,</i>	<i>vidi.</i>

See Ramsay's *Pr.* p. 100.

¹² *Cio* forms *citum*: *cio citum*. The quantity of *statum*, from *sto*, is doubtful. We find *stātura*, *constātura*, *obstātura*, *præstātura*; and on the other hand *stātim*, *stātus*, *stātor*, *stātio*.]

ON THE-QUANTITY OF-FINAL SYLLABLES.

§ 207. *R. I.* (Produces) You-will-lengthen (pleraque monosyllaba) most words-of-one-syllable, (qualia) such-as (*me*) me, (*ver*) spring.

Obs. (In *l, b, d, t,*) Words-of-one-syllable ending-in *l, b, d, t,* (*corripiuntur*) are shortened, ¹ (ut) as (*vel*) even, (*sub*) under, (*id*) that, (*et*) and (*stat*) he-stands: (*es*) thou-art (cum compositis) with its-compounds, (ut) as (*ades*) thou-art-present; (*que*) and, (*ve*) or, (quum-que rogat, *ne*) and *ne* when it-is-interrogative: ² (*fac*) make, (*nec*) neither, (*an*) or, (*in*) in, (*fer*) bear, (*per*) through, (*ter*) thrice, (*vir*) a-man, (*cor*) a-heart, (*quis*) who? (*bis*) twice, (*is*) he, (*et cis*) and *cis* on-this-side-of.

§ 208. *R. II.* (In *A*) Words-ending-in *A* (*producuntur*) are-made-long: as (*contra*) against, (*que*) and (*frustra*) in-vain, (*que*) and (*para*) prepare.

Obs. (Sed excipe) But except (casus rectos) Nominative Cases (et quartos) and Accusatives: (quales) such as, (*musa*) the-muse (*carmina* canit) sings songs: (*silvæ*) the-words (resonant *Amaryllida*) resound *Amaryllis*: (atque) and (Vocativos plerosque) most Vocatives, (ut) as (*Oresta*) O-Orestes, (*Thyesta*) O-Thyestes: ³ (particulas) the particles (*ejā*) ho! (*itā*) so, (cumque his) and with these (*quia*) because: (quæ breviant *a*) which shorten *a*.⁴

§ 209. *R. III.* (Corripiuntur in *E*) Words-in *E* are-made-short (*sine rege time te manere*) without a-king fear to-remain.

Obs. (Casus) The Cases (Primæ Quintæque) of the first and fifth-declension (requirunt *e* longam) require *e* long: (ut) as (*Thisbe*) Thisbe, (*specie*) by-appearance: (quæ derivantur ab illis) and-words-which are-derived from them: (ut) as (*quare*) wherefore, (atque) and (*hodie*) to-day; (contractaque) and contracted-words (qualia) such-as (*Tempe*) Tempe: (Verba in *eo*) Verbs of-the second-conjugation (mandantia) in-the-Imperative-Mood (primi numeri) Singular Number: (ut) as (*aude*) dare-thou: [(sed) but (scribendi est æqua

potestas) we may equally write (*cavē sive cavē*) *cavē* or *cavē*, beware]:⁵ (Adverbia) Adverbs (ducta) derived (ex Adjectivis secundæ) from Adjectives of-the-second-declension, (ut) as (*miserē*) wretchedly :⁶ (*jungantur*) let-there-be-added (*ohē*) oh ! (que) and (*fermē*) generally (que) and (*ferē*) commonly.

§ 210. R. IV. (Producuntur in I) Words-in I are-made-long, (ceū) as (*dici*) to be said, (que) and (*orbi*) to-a-circle, (que) and (*doli*) deceits.

Obs. (Attamen) But (deme hinc) except from-this-rule (multos Dativos) many Datives (atque Vocativos) and Vocatives (Græcorum) of the Greeks : (ut) as (*Thyrsidi*) to-Thyrsis, (*Phyllidi*) to-Phyllis, (*Chlori*) O-Chloris : (deme) except (*nisi*) unless, (et) and (*quasi*) as-if, (*sicubi*) if-any-where, (*necubi*) lest-any-where, (queis brevis est i) which have i short. [(At) But (*mihi*) to-me, (*ubi*) where, (*tibi*) to-thee, (*ibi*) there, (*sibi*) to-himself, (communem faciunt i) make i common.]

§ 211. R. V. (Producuntur in O) Words-in O are-long ; (ceū) as (*virgo*) a-virgin, (que) and (*ultro*) spontaneously, (que) and (*juro*) I-help.

Obs. (At) But (*puto*) I-think, (*scio*) I-know, (*nescio*) I-know-not, (corripiunt finalem O) shorten final O. (Adde) add (*modō*) only (et composita) and its-compounds, (*duo*) two, (*octo*) eight, (*ego*) I, (queis) to which (junge) join (*citō*) quickly. (O proprium claudens nomen) O at-the-end of a-proper name (communis habetur) is-reckoned common, (ut) as (*Mattho*) Mattho : (sed) but (in Græcis) in Greek-names (longa est semper) it-is always long, (ut) as (*Argo*) the-ship-Argo. (Flaccus) Horace (habet) has (quædam communia) certain-words common, (Naso) Ovid (plurima) very-many : (corruptior ætas) a-more-corrupt generation (poetarum) of-poets (addidit) added (plura) more-instances.⁸

R. VI. (Producuntur in U) Words-in U are-long, (sic) thus (*tu*) thou, (que) and (*dictu*) to-be-said, (que) and (*diu*) long.⁹

R. VII. (Corripiuntur in Y) Words-in Y are short ; (sic) thus (poetæ dant) poets have (*chely*) O-lute (*Tiphy*) O-Tiphys.

§ 212. R. VIII. (In C producuntur) Words-in C are-long, (ut) as (*illic*) there : (excipe) except (*donec*) until.

R. IX. (Corripe in L, D, T,) shorten words-in L, D, T ; (sic) thus (*Hannibal*) Hannibal, (*illud*) that, (*amavit*) he-loved.

R. X. (Corripiuntur in N) Words-in N are short : (ceū) as (*culmen*) a summit. (At excipe) But except (Græca multa) many Greek-words (vocali prædita longâ) possessing a-long vowel, (ut) as, (*Hymen*) Hymen, (*Acron*) Acron.¹⁰

R. XI. (Corripiuntur in R) Words-in R are-short : (at excipe Græca) but except Greek-words (vocali prædita longâ) possessing a-long vowel, (ceū) as (*crater*) a bowl, (*æthēr*) the-sky.¹¹

§ 213. *R. XII.* (Producuntur in *As*) Words in *As* are long : (ut) as (*terras*) lands. (Excipe) Except (*Græca*) Greek-words (queis Genitivus *adis*) which have a Genitive in *-adis*, (ceu) as (*Pelias*) Pelian : (adjice) add (casus quartus) accusatives (crescentium) of-nouns-increasing, (ceu) as (*lampadas*) torches ;¹² (his adde) add to-these (*anas*) a-duck.

R. XIII. (Producuntur in *Es*) Words in *Es* are long ; (ut) as (*sedes*) a-seat, (et) and (*videres*) you-might-see. (Excipienda tamen) But we-must-except (quæ Græci corripunt) words-which the-Greeks shorten ; (ut) as (*Troades*) Trojan-women : (excipias etiam) except also (*penes*) in-the-power-of (excipiasque) and except (queis brevis est) nouns-which have short (penultima) the-last-syllable-but-one (crescentis Genitivi) of-an-increasing Genitive, (ut) as (*seges*) standing-corn : (at) but (*pariēs*) a-house-wall (semper producitur) is always lengthened, (atque) and (*pes*) a-foot (cum compositis) with-its-compounds : (que) and (*al'ies*) a-fir-tree, (que) and (*aries*) a-ram, (que) and (*Ceres*) Ceres.

§ 214. *R. XIV.* (Corripiuntur in *Is*) Words in *Is* are short ; (ceu) as (*diceris*) thou-art-said, (*utilis*) useful, (*ensis*) a sword.

Obs. (Obliqui casus plurales) The-oblique-cases plural (excipiuntur) are-excepted, (ut) as (*terris*) by-lands, (*vobis*) to-you : (etiam) also (persona secunda in primo numero) the-second-person singular (Præsentis) Present-tense (Quartæ) of-the-Fourth-conjugation, (ut) as (*audis*) thou-hearest : (composita a) the-compounds of (*vis*) thou-wilt, (*sis*) thou-mayst-be : (*malis*) thou-mayst-prefer, (que) and (*nohis*) thou-mayst-refuse, (que) and (*velis*) thou-mayst-wish. [(At-qui) but (persona secunda) the-second person-singular (Præteriti et Futuri) of-the-Preterperfect and Future (in Coniunctivo) in the-Conjunctive-mood (rectè communis habetur) is-properly held common ; (as) (*feceris*) thou-mayst-have-done, (*addideris*) thou-shalt-have-added, (*tuleris*) thou shalt have borne.¹²] (At produc nomina) But lengthen nouns (queis longa est) which have long (penultima) the-penultimate (crescentis Genitivi) of-an-increasing Genitive, (ut) as (*Samnis*) a-Samnite : (itidem) likewise (*Simois*) the-Simois, (que) and (*gratis*) freely (que) and (*foris*) abroad.

§ 215. *R. XV.* (Producuntur in *Os*) Words in *Os* are long, (ut) as (*ventos*) winds (atque) and (*sacerdos*) a-priest.

Obs. (Corripienda tamen) But we-must-shorten (quæ Græci corripunt) words-which the-Greeks shorten, (ut) as, (*Phasidos*) of-the-Phasis, (*Argos*) Argos, (*epos*) an-epic-poem : (sic) so (*compos*) possessing, (et) and (*impos*) powerless, (*os*) a bone, (*exos*) boneless.

R. XVI. (Corripiuntur in *Us*) Words in *Us* are short : (ceu) as (*tempus*) time, (*amamus*) we-love, (et) and (*intus*) within.

Obs. (Hinc excipe) Except from-this-rule (casus contractos) the-contracted cases (quartæ) of-the-fourth-declension, (ut) as (*artus*) limbs : (queisque longa est) and nouns-which have long (penultima)

the-penultimate (crescentis Genitivi) of an-increasing-Genitive: (ut) as (*tellus*) earth, (que) and (*incus*) an-anvil, (*juventus*) youth, (atque) and (*senectus*) old-age: (producta a Græcis) words-lengthened by the-Greeks, (ut) as (*Sapphūs*) of-Sappho, (atque) and (*Melampus*) Melampus, (que) and (*Iesus*) Jesus, (nomen) a-name (venerandum) to-be-adored (a piis cunctis) by all pious-persons.

R. XVII. (Corripiuntur in Ys) Words in Ys are short: as, (*Tiphys*) Tiphys, (*chlamys*) a mantle, (*Othrys*) mount-Othrys, (*Erinnys*) a-Fury.

Not. (Ea syllaba) That syllable (quam) which (regula nulla) no rule (facit) makes (longam brevemve) long or short, (ducit tempus) derives its-quantity (ab auctorum scriptis) from-the-writings of-authors.¹²

[¹ Except *sāl*, *sōl*, which are long.

² The enclitic affixes -*cē*, -*iē*, are also short, as, *hiccē*, *tutē*. Also *quā* the feminine of *quis* indefinite. *Hic* (this) is common: but *hic* (here) long.

³ Vocatives in *a* from Greek words in *as* are long: as *Æneā*, *Atlā*.

⁴ The names of letters also shorten final *a*, as *alphā*, *betā*.

It is perhaps correct to consider final *a* as short by the General Rule, and long only by exception: but the Rule here given is more convenient for recollection.

⁵ The *e* in *vale* is more safely considered long: its short quantity resting only on a single line in Ovid. (See *Ramsay's Pr.* p. 43.)

⁶ *Benē*, *malē*, *infernē*, *supernē*, shorten *e*. *Temerē* always has the last syllable elided. Adverbs in *e* from Adjectives of the 3rd Declension are of course short, as *facilē*.

⁷ *Sicutī* shortens *i*: so, *utinam*. *Alibi* is always long: so, *ibidem*. *Ubinam*, *ubivis*, shorten their penultima; *ubique* lengthens *i*: *ubicunque* has it common.

⁸ For a list of words in *o* shortened by Augustan and by later poets, see *Ramsay's Pr.* p. 55. *Ergo* and *ergone* may not shorten *o*.

⁹ The old words *indū* for *in*, *nenū* for *non*, are found with short *u* in Lucretius.

¹⁰ In Greek words in *n*, -*an* is long in Nominatives, as, *Peān*; and in Accusatives from long Nominatives, as *Æneān*:—*en* is always long, as *Anchisēn*;—*in* and *yn* are usually short, but long in a few words, as *delphīn*, *Phorcyn*:—*on* is short in Accusatives of the 2nd Declension, as *Delōn*, and in Neuters, as, *barbitōn*; but long in other Greek words, as, *Tritōn*, *Babylōn*.

¹¹ The Greek words in *r* lengthened are those in *er*, increasing in the Genitive. Therefore *patēr* and *matēr* do not come under the rule.

¹² We may here remark that the penultima of the 2nd pers. plur. of these tenses is also probably common; *fecerimus* or *fecerimus*. See *Ramsay's Pr.* pp. 77, 107.

¹³ Vowels are long or short either by Nature or by Position. And those which are long or short by Nature are so either by Rule or by Authority.

That is, for the quantity of a Vowel which is not long or short by any of the foregoing Rules the learner must bring authority from a Classical poet. Then the Vowel is said to be long or short by Authority.

The quantities of penultimate syllables are learnt in part from Etymology, but principally by reading Latin Poetry.

EXCURSION I. ON ACCENTS.

Some one syllable in every word is pronounced with a greater stress than the rest. This stress is called Accent. There are two proper Accents, the Acute (') and the Circumflex (^). Syllables which have neither of these are said to be grave Syllables (by many writers said to have the grave Accent.).

I. Monosyllables whose Vowel is short by nature, have the Acute Accent, as *vir*, *dûx*: those whose Vowel is long by nature, have the Circumflex: as, *môs*, *lêx*.

II. (a.) Dissyllables have the Acute on the Penultima, when either both syllables are short by nature, as *bônâ*, *virum*, *arte*, or the last long by nature or position, as *mûsæ*, *môres*, *âmant*.

(b.) Dissyllables have the Circumflex on the Penultima, when the Penultima is long by nature, and the last short by nature and not lengthened by position, as *mâtêr*, *mûsâ*.

III. (a.) Words of more than two syllables have the Acute Accent on the Antepenultima, when the Penultima is short, as, *hómîne*, *hómînes*, *mediôscribûs*, *amplîssimos*.

(b.) Words of more than two syllables have their Accent on the Penultima when long by nature: and that Accent the Acute when the last syllable is long, as *acûto*, *amârant*; but the Circumflex, when the last is short by nature, and not lengthened by position, as *acûtus*, *amâre*.

Obs. Quê, nê, vê, are Enclitics, and bring forward the accent of the word to which they are joined, if it fell before on the antepenultima, but not otherwise: as *hómînes*, *hominêsqûe*: but *prôna*, *prônaque*.

EXCURSION II. ON THE DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

Syllables, if possible, begin with a Consonant, and end with a Vowel. Hence—

1. A Consonant between two Vowels belongs to the latter syllable, as *pa-ter*, *a-ma-tur*.
2. When two or three Consonants come between two Vowels, they all belong to the latter syllable, if they can begin a Latin word: as, *ma-gnus*, *a-gri*, *e-sca*, *pe-stis*, *a-strâ*, *A-bdera*, *pu-blicus*, *Ara-chne*, *Pa-phlago*, *rhy-thmus*, *scri-psi*, *a-sthma*: if not, they are divided between the two syllables, as, *an-nus*, *cur-ro*, *tel-lus*, *an-te*, *pun-ctum*, *ar-ctus*, *jux-ta*.

Obs. 1. A compounded word is divided into the words which compose it, as, *ab-a-vus*: unless the first compound is a mutilated word, when it follows the general rule, as, *a-ni-mad-ver-to*.

Obs. 2. An euphonic letter between the Compounds belongs to the former syllable: as *prod-est*.]

ON THE LAWS OF METRES.

§ 216. 1. Call a-raising-of-the-voice in uttering syllables, *Arsis*; (*Ictus* accompanies this) and on-the-other-hand a-dropping-of-the-voice is (called) *Thesis*. A-*Foot* is a-certain succession of-syllables, and *Rhythm* a-certain succession of-Feet. In-the-works-of poets the-name-of-Rhythm is a-*Verse*: and a-certain order of-Verses call *Measure* or *Metre*: also a-certain part of-a-Verse is-called *Metre*.

§ 217. 2. A-long syllable following a-short is called *Iambus* (—): but if a-long-syllable goes-before a-short one, that (is) a-*Trochee* (—): a-*Pyrrhich* will consist of-two short-syllables (—): a-*Spondee* will consist of-two long-syllables (—): a-*Dactyl* is formed by-a-long and two short-syllables (—): and an *Anapest* by-one long after two short-syllables (—). Add to these a-*Tribrach* formed by-three short-syllables.(—)³

Not. 1. You-will-say that-a-Rhythm, which a-*Thesis* begins, is-*ascending*; a-specimen of-which-kind thy verse, O-Iambus, will-give. On-the-other-hand you-will-say that-one-which begins with *Arsis*, is-*descending*; thou-makest such, O-Dactyl, and thou, O-Trochee.³

Not. 2. One foot makes a-metre in dactylic verse, and two-feet in others.⁴

Not. 3. That Verse which wants one syllable for-completing its-metres, is-called *Catalectic*. That which wants two syllables for-completing its-metres, is-called *Brachycatalectic*. A-verse which (has) one syllable over, when-its-metres are complete, is called *Hypercatalectic*. That Verse, which has-nothing wanting or too-much, being-smooth and round, is-called *Acatalectic*.⁵

[¹ *Ictus* is the metrical or Foot-accent, as distinguished from the prosaic or Word-accent mentioned in Exc. I.

² The following is a more complete list of Feet:—

(a.) Of two Syllables—

— — Pyrrhichius: *pătēr.*

— — Iambus: *āmānt.*

— — Trochæus: *aūdū.*

— — Spondeus: *lātōs.*

(b.) Of three Syllables—

— — — Tribrachys: *rēgērē.*

— — — Dactylus: *cōrpōrā.*

— — — Anapæstus: *āntīmōs.*

— — — Amphibrachys: *lātīnūs.*

— — — Creticus: *dixērānt.*

— — — Bacchius: *rēgēbānt.*

— — — Antibacchius: *rērīssē.*

— — — Molossus: *dicēbās.*

(c.) Of four Syllables—

— — — — Proceleusmaticus: *hōmīnībūs.*

— — — — Pæon Primus: *cōndīdīmūs.*

— — — — Pæon Secundus: *āmābīmūs.*

— — — — Pæon Tertius: *nēmōrālīs.*

— — — — Pæon Quartus: *rēgīmīnī.*

— — — — Ionicus a Minore: *mētūēntēs.*

— — — — Ionicus a Majore: *tērreībīmūs.*

— — — —	Dilambus : <i>prōtērvītās.</i>
— — — —	Ditrochæus : <i>cōnditissē.</i>
— — — —	Choriambus : <i>ōppōstītis.</i>
— — — —	Antispastus : <i>rēgebāmār.</i>
— — — —	Epitritus Primus : <i>āmāvistī.</i>
— — — —	Epitritus Secundus : <i>audīebās.</i>
— — — —	Epitritus Tertius : <i>audīvērānt.</i>
— — — —	Epitritus Quartus : <i>rētissēmīs.</i>
— — — —	Dispondeus : <i>suspēzērūt.</i>

The Trochee is also called *Choreus*, the Cretic *Amphimacer*.

³ As Arsis properly falls on a long syllable, in Iambic Metre it will fall on the second syllables of the feet, in Dactylic and Trochaic on the first. When a long syllable having Arsis is resolved into two short ones, the Arsis falls on the first of these; hence, when a Tribach is put for an Iambus, the Arsis is on its second syllable; when for a Trochee, on its first.

⁴ Two feet (Dipodia) make a Metre in Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapæstic Verses, one foot in Dactylic and other Measures.

A Verse of one Metre is called <i>Monometer.</i>			
- -	two	- -	<i>Dimeter.</i>
- -	three	- -	<i>Trimeter.</i>
- -	four	- -	<i>Tetrameter.</i>
- -	five	- -	<i>Pentameter.</i>
- -	six	- -	<i>Hexameter.</i>
&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.

⁵ Two feet and a syllable in Dactylic, Iambic and Trochaic Verses are called *Penthemimeris*, a Penthemimer: as, *Arboribusque comæ.—Beatus ille.—Truditur dies.*

Three feet and a syllable are called *Hepthemimeris*, a Hephthemimer, as, *Quid faciat lætas segetes.—Locas sub ipsum funus.—Truditur dies die.* So, *Trihemimeris*, one foot and a syllable; *Ennehemimeris*, four feet and a syllable.]

ON SCANSION AND THE-FIGURES OF SCANSION.

§ 218. *Scansion*, which Figures adjust by-various art, distributes a-Verse according to-feet.

A. *Synalæpha* (Elision) cuts-off a-Vowel at the-end of-a-word, if there-shall-be a-vowel at the-beginning of-the-following word. “*I-love Phyllis before other-women : for she-wept that-I was-departing.*”

Obs. 1. Sometimes *Hiatus* violates the-law of-Synalæpha. “*Thrice they-endeavoured to-place Ossa on-Pelion.*”¹

Obs. 2. A-following vowel never cuts-off *heu*, *O*, and *ah*, (alas!)

B. *Ecthlipsis* cuts off a-vowel and *m* from the-end, if there-shall-be a-vowel at the-beginning of-the-following word. “*O the-cares of-men, O what-great emptiness there-is in things.*”²

§ 219. C. One-syllable wrought out of two is called *Synæresis*, as *deest* (it is wanting), *dein* (next), *aureos* (golden), *alvearia* (hives), *Thesei* (of Theseus) shew.²

Obs. In-the-works-of poets *I* and *U* sometimes take the privileges of-consonants: (as) *Eridanus king of rivers. The-wall totters from-the-battering-ram. Knees tremble. And Seres comb light fleeces.*

D. Resolved *Dialysis* divides one-syllable into two: which *Naiades* and yellow-haired *Suevi* shew to-you.

Obs. *U* is-put for *V*: you-will-see *silvas* (woods) and *solvit* (he-hath-loosed).

§ 220. E. *Cæsura* ends words before the-end of-feet: (as) "*Ye-Lights which lead in-heaven the-gliding year.*"³

Obs. A-vowel, which nature has-made short, sometimes is-made long in *Arsis*, *Cæsura* and *Ictus* helping: (as) "*Poring over the-breasts he-consults the-palpitating entrails.*"⁴

F. *Diæresis* separates both a-word and foot at-once: (as) "*Ye-Lights which lead in-heaven the-gliding year.*"⁵

Not. The-last syllable of-a-verse-is-held common.

[¹ Hiatus is a licence rarely used. It generally shortens a long Vowel in Thesis, but in *Arsis* retains its quantity: as,

(a.) *Credimus an qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt?*—VIRG.

(b.) *Et succus pecori et lac subducitur agnis.*—VIRG.

Hiatus sometimes supersedes *Ecthlipsis*: as,

Nam quod consilium, aut quæ fortuna dabatur?—VIRG.

Quam laudas plumâ cocto num adest honor idem?—HOR.

² In the most ancient Latin poetry the final *s* of a short syllable was elided: as, *Sol albu' recessit.*

³ A *Cæsura* after the 1st syllable of the 2nd foot is called *Trihemimeral*: after the 1st syllable of the 3rd foot *Penthemimeral*: after the 1st syllable of the 4th foot, *Hepthemimeral*: as,

(a.) *Heu pietas || heu prisca fides invictaque bello.*—VIRG.

(b.) *Arma virumque cano || Trojæ quis primus ab oris.*—VIRG.

(c.) *Dixerat et genua amplexus || genibusque volutans.*—VIRG.

These are called *Strong* or *Masculine Cæsuras*: while a *Cæsura* after a short syllable or *thesis* is called a *Weak* or *Feminine Cæsura*: as,

Hinc atque hinc glomerantur || Oreades: illa pharetram.—VIRG.

The most common *Cæsura* in *Daetylic*, *Iambic*, and *Trochaic Verses*, is the *Penthemimeral*: next to this the *Hepthemimeral*: then (though rare in comparison) the weak *Cæsura* in the 3rd Foot. No Verse is harmonious or fit to be imitated which has none of these *Cæsuras*.

Cæsura and *Diæresis* are not *Figures*, but essential properties of poetical rhythm.

⁴ That is to say, the *Ictus* or *Metrical Accent*, and the *Cæsura*, falling at the same time upon a syllable naturally short, have power to make it long. This licence is not to be freely assumed, as the instances of it in

Latin poetry, though numerous in themselves, are few in comparison with the number of extant verses. The instances of a final Vowel lengthened by this licence are much fewer than those of a syllable ending in a Consonant. They do, however, occur: as,

Fauniquè Satyrique et monticola Sylvani.—Ov.

5 Other Figures used in Prosody are

(a.) *Syncope*, which shortens a word by throwing out one or more letters from the middle of a word: as *periculum* for *periculum*, *surpuerat* for *surripuerat*, *dixti* for *dixisti*, *nosse* for *novisse*, &c.

(b.) *Apocope*, which throws away one or more letters at the end: as *duc* for *duce*, *inger* for *ingere*, *satin'* for *satime*, *acin'* for *scime*.

(c.) *Systole*, which shortens naturally long Vowels, as *dedērunt* for *dedērunt*.

(d.) *Diastole*, which lengthens naturally short syllables, as *Prīamides*.]

ON DACTYLIC VERSES.

1. ON THE-DACTYLIC HEXAMETER OR SENARIUS.

§ 221. The-Hexameter is-formed by-six feet: of-these the-fifth is a-dactyl: a-spondee is-put in-the-sixth place: and either-of-the-two is-found in-the-other places.¹

Obs. 1. Gravity of-topics stations a-spondee in-the-fifth place.²

Obs. 2. Cæsura is-wont to-divide a-Hexameter, where the-third or fourth foot is separated at an-Arsis.

(*Obs.* 1.) Sometimes the-only Cæsura of-a-verse is after a-Thesis: (as) "*Active, passionate, inexorable, fierce.*"

(*Obs.* 2.) You-will-condemn a-verse which is-without any Cæsura.³

Obs. 3. A-word of-two-syllables or of-three-syllables makes the-correct termination of-a-Hexameter, seldom a-word-of-more-than-two-syllables, seldom a-word-of-one-syllable, unless another go-before, closes the-verse.

Obs. 4. The-last syllable of-a-verse (is) seldom absorbed: when this happens, the-verse (is) then called *Hypermeter*; (as) "*In-all-things like Mercury, both in-voice and complexion, and yellow locks, and graceful limbs of-youth.*"⁴

[¹ The Dactylic Hexameter is also called *Senarius* from having six feet (*seni pedes*) and *Heroicus*, because the deeds of Heroes were celebrated in this measure by the oldest poets, Homer, Hesiod, &c., and afterwards by their Latin imitators Ennius, Virgil, &c.

2 When a Spondee occurs in the 5th place (which is a rare license, and seldom to be imitated) a Dactyl generally precedes it: as,

Cara deum soboles, magnum Jovis incrementum.—VIRG.

But not always: as,

Cum patribus populoque, Penatibus et magnis Dis.

3 See § 220. N. 3. Such lines as these are therefore bad and inadmissible:

Hastis campus longis circum splendet et horret.

Lumina dilabentem celo ducitis annum.

Efficientia cernite dissociabile marmor.

4 The following rules are also to be borne in mind by the young composer of Heroic Hexameters:—

- (1) A Spondaic word, followed by a stop, and belonging in sense to the preceding verse, seldom begins a Hexameter: as,

Spiramenta linunt, fucoque et floribus oras

Explent, | collectumque hæc ipsa ad munera gluten.—VIRG.

This may, however, be done for the sake of emphasis: as,

Extinctum Nymphæ crudeli funere Daphnin

Flebant: | vos coryli testes et flumina Nymphis.—VIRG.

- (2) A Diæresis after the second foot is very rare, and to be avoided: as,

Scilicet omnibus | est labor impendendus, et omnes.—VIRG.

Unless the 2nd foot ends with a monosyllable or a pyrrhich: as,

Experiar, tu | deinde iubeto certet Amyntas.—VIRG.

Ecce duas tibi, | Daphni, duas altaria Phæbo.—VIRG.

The only common exception to this rule is when *inter* or *intra* forms the 2nd foot, followed by a monosyllabic pronoun: as,

Talibus inter se dictis ad tecta subibant.—VIRG.

If an elided syllable follows the second foot, it is commonly followed by a monosyllabic particle: as,

Tum durare solum | et discludere Nerea ponto.—VIRG.

But not always, as—

Quin etiam patriâ | excussos infesta per undas.—VIRG.

- (3) Verses with only weak Cæsuras in the first four feet are rare, but when occasionally introduced they contribute to the melody of the versification: as,

Dicemus, Daphninque tuum tollemus ad astra,

Daphnin | ad astra | feremus, | amavit nos quoque Daphnis.—
VIRG.

- (4) The third foot may not consist of a single word. Such verses as the following are therefore bad:

Et liquidi simul ignes, his exordia primis.

Non aliter quam fervida qui freta remige findit.

The following exception occurs in Virgil:

Summa leves hinc nescio quâ dulcedine lætæ.

But *nescio quis* was considered as equivalent to a single word.

- (5) Verses without any Cæsura in the 3rd foot are comparatively scarce: as,

Eumenides, quibus anguineo redimita capillo.—CATULL.

- (6) A Verse, which has the strong Hephthemimeral Cæsura without the strong Penthemimeral, generally has also the strong Trihemimeral: as,

Non unquam || gravis ære domum || mihi dextra redibat—VIRG.

rarely the weak Trihemimeral without a Penthemimeral: as,

Degeneremque || Neoptoleumum || narrare memento.—VIRG.

rarely the weak Penthemimeral without a Trihemimeral: as,

Orphei Calliopea || Lino || formosus Apollo.—VIRG.

Armentarius Afer || agit || tectumque Laremque.—VIRG.

hardly ever the two weak Cæsuras together: as,

Una Eurusque || Notusque || ruunt, || creberque procellis.—VIRG.

- (7) A Diæresis with stop after the 3rd foot is rare, and to be very sparingly introduced: as,

Montibus audiri fragor: || et resonantia longè.—VIRG.

- (8) The strong Ennehemimeral Cæsura (after the first syllable of the 5th foot) is rare and harsh: as,

Nec saturare fimo pingui pudeat || sola, neve.—VIRG.

When the verse ends with a quadrisyllabic word, forming an *Ionic a Minore*, this Cæsura is unavoidable: as,

Per connubia nostra, per inceptos hymenæos.—VIRG.

- (9) Verses, in which the latter half makes a double rhyme to the former, should be avoided: as,

Trajicit: i, verbis virtutem illude superbis.—VIRG.

- (10) The sound and rhythm of Verses may often be suited to the sense: thus Virgil uses Spondees to express slowness and difficulty; Dactyls to mark rapidity and ease: as,

(a.) *Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt.*—VIRG.

Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossan

Scilicet, atque Ossæ frondosum involvere Olympum.—VIRG.

(b.) *Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum.*—VIRG.

Sed fugit interea, fugit irreparabile tempus.—VIRG.

Labitur et labetur in omne volubilis ævum.—HOR.

A final Monosyllable often expresses ponderousness: as,

Sternitur exanimisque tremens procumbit humi bos.—VIRG.

Crowded Elisions, especially Ecthlipses, give a harsh and rugged sound to a Verse, and are sometimes used where the idea conveyed is of that character: as in the well-known description of the Cyclops:

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.
—VIRG.

Both the Pauses, Cæsura and Diæresis, are often accommodated to the

sense with great effect, and beauty. Virgil's description of a Storm in the 1st Georgic affords a fine example:

Sæpè etiam immensum || cœlo venit | agmen aquarum,
 Et fœdam glomerant tempestatem | ignibus atris
 Collectæ ex alto nubes: || ruit arduus æther,
 Et pluviâ ingenti || sata læta boumque labores
 Diluit: | implentur fossæ, | et cava flumina crescunt
 Cum sonitu, || fervetque || fretis spirantibus æquor.
 Ipse Pater, || mediâ nimborum in nocte, || coruscâ
 Fulmina molitur dextrâ; || quo maxima motu
 Terra tremit: || fugere feræ; || et mortalia corda
 Per gentes humilis stravit pavor: | ille flagranti
 Aut Atho, | aut Rhodopen, || aut alta Ceraunia | telo
 Dejicit: | ingeminant || austri et densissimus imber,
 Nunc nemora ingenti vento || nunc littora plangunt.

On similar grounds most of Virgil's rarer rhythms are justified; and it is this variety and richness of versification which principally distinguishes his poems from the monotonous elegance of Ovid's *Metamorphoses*. Virgil is therefore the young composer's best model in heroic poetry, as Ovid in elegiac, Horace in lyric versification, and Cicero in prose.]

II. ON THE-DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

§ 222. The *Pentameter* has two parts:¹ each commences with two feet, which a long syllable follows. A-Spondee and Dactyl enter the-first-part as-you-choose: the-second part rejoices only in-dactylic feet.

Obs. 1. Cæsura separates the-first part of-a-Pentameter from-the-second: and Synalœpha is excluded from that place: (as) "*Although he-prevails not in-genius, he-prevails in-art.*"²

Obs. 2. Words-of-two-syllables make the-proper end of-a-Pentameter.³

(*Obs.*) *Est* may be thrown to the-end, if Synalœpha takes-place: (as) "*Thy letter was read with-unwilling eyes.*" Or if a word of-one-syllable goes-before, as in this: *If I-obtain those rewards by-my-zeal, it-is enough.*"

Obs. 3. Let-not a-word of-one-syllable be the-end of-the-first part, unless a-word of-one-syllable go-before, as in this: "*Yet there-is great hope in the-goodness of-God.*" Or sometimes a-word formed of-two short-syllables: (as) "*She secures to-Jupiter the-formidable sceptre without force.*"⁴

[¹ These parts are Dactylic Penthemimers.

² The Pentameters, of Catullus, who often uses Elisions at the close of the former Penthemimer, are by no means to be imitated.

³ A trisyllabic word at the end of the verse is ungraceful, and to be avoided, though sometimes found: as,

Abdita quæ senis fata canit pedibus.—TIBULL.

A quadrisyllabic or quinesyllabic termination is not so ungraceful as the trisyllabic, but it occurs seldom in Ovid, and is not proper for imitation: as,

Maxima de nihilo nascitur historia.—PROPERT.

Lis est cum formâ magna pudicitiae.—Ov.

⁴ The following additional rules for the Pentameter will be found useful by the young composer:—

- (1) The first Penthemimer seldom ends with an Iambic word; but when it does, the first foot is usually a Spondee: as,

Pascebatque suas ipse senator oves.—Ov.

but not always: as,

Si tibi cura mei, sit tibi cura tui.—Ov.

- (2) The first Penthemimer seldom begins with a spondaic word; seldom contains two spondees; and begins more frequently with a dactyl than with a spondee.

- (3) Elisions in the second Penthemimer are inelegant: before the final dissyllable an elision, such as in the following verse, is to be entirely avoided:

Quis scit an hæc sævas tigridas insula habet.—Ov.

- (4) The final dissyllabic word should be either a verb, a substantive, or a pronoun (personal or possessive). An adverb is seldom placed there; an adjective or participle very seldom, unless as a predicate or with a strong emphasis: as,

Hoc faciet positæ te mihi, terra, levem.—Ov.

- (5) The verse seldom ends with a short vowel: as,

Qualiter abjectâ de nive manat aqua.—Ov.

- (6) The Penthemimers may end with words that rhyme singly: as,

Huc ades, et nitidas casside solve comas.—Ov.

But the double or Leonine rhyme is to be avoided: as,

Quærebant flavos per nemus omne favos.—Ov.

- (7) The word preceding the final dissyllable should not be a monosyllable].

ON THE-HEROIC MEASURE AND ON THE-ELEGIAC MEASURE.

§ 223. The-*Heroic* Muse rejoices in-Hexameters alone: *Elegies* join-together Hexameters and Pentameters.

Obs. Elegiac-Distichs prefer containing a-complete sense: nor is-it-good-for-the-construction of-a-simple sentence to-be-divided into (separate) distichs.

[¹ Sentences are not often carried on from one distich to another at all: but when they are, there should be some kind of pause in the sense.

Attributives are not to be so separated from the words which they qualify : but verbs and other predicates are occasionally so divided from their subjects. As,

*Languor et immodici nullo sub vindice somni,
Aleaque, et multo tempora quassa mero,
Eripiunt omnes animo sine vulnere nervos :
Adfuit incautis insidiosus amor.—Ov.*

The following additional Rules for the Elegiac Distich may also be useful :—

- (1.) The Elegiac Hexameter is much more restricted in its rhythms than the Heroic. One of the Cæsuras, strong or weak, in the third foot, is almost always present : almost always, too, either the strong Penthemimeral or the strong Hephthemimeral Cæsura. Diæresis at the end of the second foot after a word of more than two times (as *mors* or *malè*) is bad. Ennehemimeral Cæsuras (except after a monosyllable) spondees in the fifth place, terminations by a word of more than three syllables, &c., must be avoided.
- (2.) A pause in the sense is found, oftener than not, at the close of the Hexameter. Ovid very seldom intermixes the sense from the beginning to the end of a distich : and when he does, he takes care to make the arrangement of words as neat and perspicuous as possible : as,
*Roma, nisi immensum vires promissset in orbem,
Stramineis esset nunc quoque densa casis.—Ov.*
- (3.) If the sense is carried on to the first word of the Pentameter, after which is a pause, that word is most usually a dactyl, often a trochee, seldom a spondee or molossus, more rarely yet a choriambus.
- (4.) Elisions should be sparingly and never harshly used. It has been observed that in the first 1000 lines of the *Fasti* there are cut off only 4 final syllables in *m*, 7 long, and 39 short vowels, making a total of 50, or an average of only one elision in 20 lines. And of these 33 are before the word *est*.

The following verses of Ovid may be taken as an exercise in Elegiac, Metre, the less usual rhythms being printed in Italics :—

*Dura aliquis præcepta vocet mea ; dura fatemur
Esse : sed, ut valeas, multa dolenda feres.
Sæpe bibi succos, quamvis invitus, amarus
Æger ; et oranti mensa negata mihi est.
Ut corpus redimas, ferrum patieris et ignes ;
Arida nec sitiens ora levabis aquâ ;
Ut valeas animo, quidquam tolerare negabis ?
At pretium pars hæc corpore majus habet.
Sed tamen est artis strictissima janua nostræ,
Et labor est unus tempora prima pati.
Adspicis ut prensos urant juga prima juvences ?
Ut nova velocem cingula lædat equum ?
Forsitan a Laribus patriis exire pigebit ;
Sed tamen exibis : deinde redire voles.*

Nec te Lar patrius, sed amor revocabit amicæ,
Præstendens culpæ splendida verba suæ.
 Cum semel exieris, centum solatia curæ
 Et rus, et comites, et via longa dabunt.
 Nec satis esse puta discedere: lentus abesto;
 Dum *perdat vires*, sitque *sine igne cinis*.
 Si nisi firmatâ properabis mente reverti,
Inferet arma tibi sæva rebellis Amor.
 Quid quod, ut abfueris, avidus sitiensque redibis,
 Et spatium damno cesserit omne tuo?
 Viderit, Hæmonia si quis mala pabula terræ,
 Et magicas artes posse juvare putat.
 Ista veneficii vetus est via: noster Apollo
 Innocuam sacro carmine monstrat opem.
 Me duce non tumulto prodire jubebitur umbra:
 Non anus infami carmine rumpet humum.
 Non seges ex aliis alios transibit in agros:
 Nec subito Phœbi pallidus orbis erit.
 Ut solet, æquoreas ibit Tiberinus in undas:
 Ut solet, in niveis Luna vehetur equis.
 Nulla recantatas deponent pectora curas;
 Nec fugiet vivo sulfure victus amor.
 Quid te Phasiacæ juverunt gramina terræ,
 Cum cuperes patriâ, Colchi, manere domo?
 Quid tibi profuerunt, Circe, Perseides herbæ,
 Cum sua Neritias abstulit aura rates?
 Omnia fecisti, ne callidus hospes abiret:
 Ille dedit certæ lintea plena fugæ.
 Omnia fecisti, ne te ferus ureret ignis:
 Longus at invito pectore sedit amor.
 Vertere quæ poteras homines in mille figuras,
 Non poteras animi vertere jura tui.
 Diceris his etiam, cum jam discedere vellet,
 Dulichium verbis detinuisse ducem:
 Non ego, quod primo (memini) sperare solebam,
 Jam precor, ut conjux tu meus esse velis.
 Et tamen, ut conjux essem tua, digna videbar;
 Quod Dea, quod magni filia Solis eram.
 Ne properes oro: spatium pro munere posco:
 Quid minus optari per mea vota potest?
 Et freta mota vides; et debes illa timere:
 Utilior velis postmodo ventus erit.
 Quæ tibi causa fugæ? non hic nova Troja resurgit:
 Non alius socios Rhesus ad arma vocat.
 Hic amor, hic pax est; in quâ male vulneror una:
 Totaque sub regno terra futura tuo est.
 Illa loquebatur: navem solvebat Ulysses:
 Irrita cum velis verba tulere Noti.
 Ardet, et adsuetas Circe decurrit ad artes:
 Nec tamen est illis attenuatus amor.
 Ergo age, quisquis opem nostrâ tibi poscis ab arte,
 Deme veneficiis carminibusque fidem.

EXAMPLES OF DACTYLIC HEXAMETERS.

(Which are also Memorial Verses on the difference of Words.)

The goldfinch is a singing bird, but the acanthus blooms in the fields. The maple is in the woods; the spirited horse gains an Olympic victory. The chief who carries arms on his shoulders is carried on the horse's flank. The wandering bee stores honey: Apis is an Egyptian god. The gad-fly harasses horses; an asylum is-wont to receive the wretched. He who engraves carves; he who keeps things hidden conceals. You will sing with your voice: ho! lead dogs, unless you are white on the temples. Twined nets are set: the brazen helmet shines. Surround your head with the helmet: boars are caught by nets. *Cedo* (I yield) makes *cessi* (Preterperfect), *cado* (I fall) *cecidi*, *cædo* (I beat) *cecidi*. A club strikes; a nail holds firm, and a key opens. A maid carries a distaff, moist matter penetrates a strainer. The farmer tills fields, but strains thick wines. You strike close with a sword; you fall by a spear thrown from a distance. That you may please a companion, put on, as a companion, affable manners. Comedians, seek the stage; messmates, seek supper. Consult teachers, so you consult for yourself. Often has his own desire injured the man desirous of war. Songs are recited, while temples are being dedicated to the Lord. He trusted not to untie, who severed the knot with a sword. This man trains dogs to take them out soon against boars. If you have not money, you are destitute, and eat not delicacies. The sea often deceives one who relies too much on the clear surface. Fruits grow on trees, corn in the fields. The sun chases the clouds, and irrecoverable time flies. The swallow is a chirping bird: the leech swims, the reed is green in spring. By what a man sins, by the same the same man is soon punished. It is a difficult labour under the weight of which I sink. A boy's forehead is smooth, but a girl's tongue light. Seek hares in woods, elegancies in words. He is not bid for by me at a penny, who bids not for me at a penny. I had rather break with my jaw good apples than bad. Merchandise is sold, and reward comes gained by toil. You will be dear to the Lord, if you have sent gold to the wretched. Strive, little boy, whoever shalt desire to shine. She who is red, besmeared with paint, is forgetful of decency. He fell by base treachery, whom a friend killed. I wait for Caius, who is clad in dark dress. A mouth commands, but a bone is eaten with the mouth. It is a wife's part to bring forth and obey, a husband's to procure. Obedient children make parents rejoice. If you do not wish to be hanged, you will not refuse to pay your debts. Play at ball: a javelin is hurled; *pila* is a pillar. *Plāga* is for a net and a country; *plāga* for a blow. People are the citizens of a city: popular is a tree. If you can avoid, drink not more than two cups. The prow is the front part (of a ship), the stern the hind part, and the keel the lowest. Thrashing machines bruise grain: burrs are wont to injure the fallow. A bail promises, but a vessel contains food. A bail kindly assures the person, but a surety money only. If you wish to cross the waters of the sea, use sails.

Trust, but first see; he who trusts, and has not well seen, is deceived: therefore see, lest you be inveigled by trust. Tailors delight in shears, barbers in curling-irons: but a smith takes his red-hot work with tongs. The same fortune makes partners, the same toil comrades, the same duty colleagues; but school, play, the table make dear companions. *Lira* is the furrow of a field: *lyra* (the lyre) touched utters notes. Let him not be secure, who is not safe from the enemy: you have banks by a river, shore by the sea. Men are old by time; ancients lived formerly: I feign what is not, and dissemble what is. A hoof tramples: a talon tears, holds, clutches; tenacious sedge grows in a pool, sea-weed in the sea. We properly intrench a camp, but hedge in a sheep-fold: a spear can be called rounded, a sphere round. Blot out what is written, but quench the flame of the lamp: the tongue tastes any food which has good flavour. The cuticle is on the flesh, the skin drawn from the body: man spreads a back: a beast has *tergus* (a'back). A baker has an oven, stoves are warmed by a furnace, this mark of the grammarian was not known to me. Have you anything new: seek another: I know nothing: that chatterer relates what matters very little. If perchance you sit anywhere, and the seat is convenient to you, sit in that seat: perhaps a new one is hardly safe.

A. ON SINGLE VERSES.

I. DACTYLIC RHYTHMS.

- $$\begin{array}{c} 1 \qquad 2 \\ \text{---} \cup \cup \mid \text{---} \text{---} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} 1 \qquad 2 \\ \text{---} \cup \cup \mid \text{---} \cup \cup \mid \text{---} \end{array}$$

1 2 3 4

Mobili|bus po|maria | rivis.—HOR.

Obs. In the case of a Proper Name Horace has a Spondee in the 3rd foot: as,

Menso|rem cohi|bent, Archyta.

II. TROCHAIC RHYTHMS.

d. Dimeter Catalectic; three Trochees and a Syllable.

1 2 3
— — | — — | — — | —

Non tra|bes Hy|mettiae.—HOR.

e. The Tetrameter Catalectic was used by the Greek Tragic and Comic Poets. The Latin Poem (of uncertain age and author) called *Pervigilium Veneris*, is a Monocolon in this Metre; of which the following is the scheme:

1 2 3 4 5 6 7
— — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — — | —

Cras a|met qui |nunquam a|mavit | quique a|mavit | cras a|met.

The Diæresis after the 4th foot is essential.

III. IAMBIC RHYTHMS.

f. (1.) Dimeter Acatalectic.

1 2 3 4
— — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — —

Forti | seque|mur pec|tore.—HOR.

Canidi|a tra|ctavit | dapes.—HOR.

g. (2.) Dimeter Hypercatalectic Alcæicus Enneasyllabus.

— — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — — | —

Perju|ra pug|naces | Achi|vos.—HOR.

The Iambus in the first place is very rare: as,

Refferre sermones Deorum.—HOR.

h. (3.) Trimeter Catalectic.

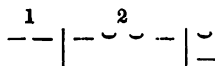
1 2 3 4 5
— — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — — | —

1 2 3 4
Mæ|reni|det in | domo | lacu|nar.—HOR.

Trahunt|que sic|cas ma|chinæ cari|nas.—HOR.

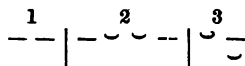
This verse always has a Penthemimeral Cæsura.

m. (2.) Dimeter Catalecticus Pherecratus Horatianus, containing a Choriambus between a Spondee and a Syllable: (= Spondee, Dactyl, and Spondee).



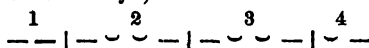
Vix du|rare cari|næ.—HOR.

n. (3.) Dimeter Acatalectic Glyconeus Horatianus, containing a Choriambus between a Spondee and an Iambus: (= Spondee and two Dactyls).



Mater | sæva Cupi|dinum.—HOR.

o. (4.) Trimeter Acatalectic Asclepiadeus Minor, containing two Choriambi between a Spondee and an Iambus: (= Spondee, Dactyl, long Syllable, and two Dactyls).



Mæce|nas, atavis | edite re|gibus.—HOR.

Horace has a Diæresis after the first Choriambus almost always. An elision rarely occurs there: as,

Auditam modere|re arboribus fidem.—HOR.

It is used as a M. Monocolon.

p. (5.) Tetrameter Acatalectic Asclepiadeus Major, containing three Choriambi between a Spondee and an Iambus.

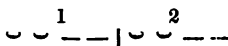


Nullam, | Vare, sacrâ | vite prius | severis ar|borem—HOR.

Horace has a Diæreses after the first and second Choriambic feet. It is used as a M. Monocolon.

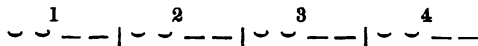
V. IONIC RHYTHMS.

q. (1.) Ionicus a minore Dimeter Acatalecticus.



Patruæ ver|bera linguæ.—HOR.

r. (2.) Ionicus a minore Tetrameter Acatalecticus.

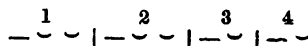


Miserarum est | neque amori | dare ludum, | neque dulci—HOR.

VI. MIXED RHYTHMS.

1. Logædic.

s. (1.) Alcaicus Decasyllabus, consisting of two Dactyls and two Trochees:



Nec vete|res agi|tantur | orni.—HOR.

If there is a Diæresis after the first Dactyl, there should be none after the second. Such a line as the following would be bad :

Omnia perfidus ille dixit.

A weak Cæsura in the second dactyl is generally to be avoided : Horace has few such verses as,

O Thaliarche || merum diotâ.

t. (2.) Phalæscius Hendecasyllabus, consisting of a Spondee, a Dactyl, and three Trochees, is used as M. Monocolon, but not by Horace.

1 2 3 4 5
— — | — — — | — — | — — | — —

Soles | occide|re et re|dire | possunt.—CATULL.

Instead of the Spondee we sometimes find an Iambus, seldom a Trochee : as.

Minister vetuli, puer, Falerni.—CATULL.

Arida modò pumice expositum.—CATULL.

A Spondee is sometimes put for the Dactyl, but very inharmoniously.

This Verse usually has either a Diæresis after the second foot, or a Cæsura after the first syllable of the third.

u. (3.) Archilochius Major, consisting of a Dactylic Tetrameter (always with a Dactyl in the 4th place) and three Trochees.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7
— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — | — — | — —

Solvitur | acris hy|ems gra|tâ vice| veris | et Fa|voni.—HOR.

A Diæresis after the 4th foot is essential.

2. Epichoriambic.

v. (1.) Pherecrateus Catullianus, containing a Choriambus between a Trochee and a Syllable.

1 2
— — | — — — | — —

Lute|umve papa|ver.—CATULL.

This differs from the Horatian Pherecratean only in having a Trochee instead of a Spondee in the first place. Catullus twice uses the Spondee.

w. (2.) Glyconeus Catullianus, containing a Choriambus between a Trochee and an Iambus.

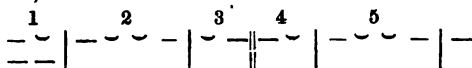
1 2 3
— — | — — — | — —

Tardat | ingenuus | pudor.—CATULL.

This verse differs from the Horatian Glyconeus only in having a Trochee instead of a Spondee in the first place. Catullus however often has the Spondee : as,

Fescennina locutio.

x. (8.) Priapeus Catullianus, which is an union of the Glyconeus and Pherecrateus, in one Verse.

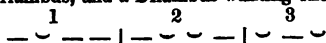


O Co|lonia quæ | cupis || ponte | ludere lon|go.—CATULL.

Quendam | municipem | meum || de tu|o volo pon|te.—CATULL.

The fourth foot is sometimes a Spondee. There is almost always a Diæresis after the third foot, the second syllable of which is once or twice lengthened by that Diæresis alone. Used as M. Monocolon.

y. (4.) Sapphicus Minor, consisting of a second Epitrite for a Ditrochæus, a Choriambus, and a Diiambus wanting one syllable.



Nota quæ se|des fuerat | columbis.—HOR.

Sappho, the inventor of this verse, often used the double Trochee in the first place: but Horace always lengthens the 4th syllable.

The young composer may scan this verse as consisting of a trochee, spondee, dactyl, and two trochees:

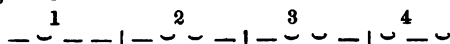
Nota | quæ se|des fue|rat co|lumbis.

The strong Cæsura after the 5th syllable is almost always found; occasionally the weak Cæsura after the 6th (short) syllable: as,

Non semel dicemus || io triumphe.—HOR.

One or the other is essential to the harmony of the verse.

z. (5.) Sapphicus Major Anacreontius; which only differs from the last in having two Choriambi instead of one in the middle of the verse:

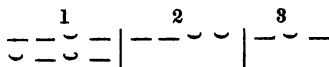


Sæpe trans fi|nem jaculo | nobilis ex|pedito.—HOR.

There is a Cæsura after the 5th and a Diæresis after the 8th syllable.

3. Epionic a Majore.

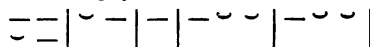
aa. Versus Alcaicus Hendecasyllabus, consisting of a 3rd Epitrite or Diiambus, an Ionic a Majore, and a Ditrochæus wanting one syllable.



Mors et fuga|cem persequi|tur virum.—HOR.

Vides ut al|tâ stet nive | candidum.—HOR.

The young composer may scan it as consisting of a Spondee (or Iambus) an Iambus, long syllable, and two dactyls.



Qui pri|mus al|mâ | risit a|dored.—HOR.

The Iambus is used but seldom. The Cæsura is after the 5th syllable. An elision sometimes occurs there: as,

Regum timendo||rum in proprios greges.—HOR.

4 Epionic a Minore.

bb. Galliambicus, a remarkable and difficult Verse, used by Catullus as Metrum Monocolon, in his beautiful poem entitled, *Attis*. It seems to be corrupted from an Ionic a Minore Trimeter Catalectic.

— — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — —

This pure rhythm is not found in the poem.

The following Epionic rhythm occurs in two verses:

— — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — —

Aliena | quæ petentes | velut exu|les loca.

But great variety is produced by the solution of some of the long syllables, and the occasional contraction of the short ones. The prevalent rhythm (being found in 62 out of 90 verses) is the following:

— — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — —

Super alta | vectus Attis | celeri ra|te maria.

The following also occur:

Stimulatus | ubi furenti | rabie va|gus animi. (8 times).

Devolvit | illa acutâ | sibi ponde|ra silice. (8 times.)

Ubi capita | Menades vi | jaciunt he|derigera. (3 times).

Lævumque | pecoris hostem | stimulans i|ta loquitur. (once).

Hilarate he|ræ citatis | errori|bus animum. (4 times).

Tibicen | ubi canit Phryx | curvo gra|ve calamo. (once).

Jam jam do|let quod egi, | jam jamque | pœnitet. (twice).

Itaque ut do|mum Cybelles | tetigere | lassula. (twice).

Dea magna, | Dea Cybelle, | Dea domina | Dindymi. (once).

Piger his la|bantes languo|re oculos so|por operit. (once).

This Metre was used in the songs of the Galli or Priests of Cybele, and is often scanned as an Iambic measure (Dim. Cat. + Dim. Brach.) with many resolved feet, which are designed to suit the quavering voices of the Galli tremuli. Hence it is called Galliambicus.

5. Asynartete.

cc. (1.) Iambelegus Archilochius, composed of an Iambic Dimeter and a Dactylic Penthemimer.

— — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — —

Tu vi|na Tor|quato | move || consule | pressa me|o.—HOR.

There is a Diæresis at the end of the Dimeter.

dd. (2.) Elegiambus Archilochius, in which a Dactylic Penthemimer goes before an Iambic Dimeter.

— — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — — | — — — —

Jussus ab|ire do|mum || fere|bar in|certo | pede.—HOR.

There is a Diæresis at the end of the Penthemimer.

ON STROPHIC METRES.

Metres consisting of more than one kind of verse are called Strophic. A Metre consisting of two kinds is called Dicolon: of three, Tricolon, &c. When two Verses alternate, the metre is called Distichon; when the recurrence takes place after four lines, Tetrastichon. The following Strophic Metres occur in the Augustan poets.

A. DICOLA DISTICHA.

(1.) Metrum Hipponacteum.

Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic + Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.

Non ebur neque aureum

Mecum venidet in domo lacunar.—HOR. II. 18.

Obs. The Trochaic Verse admits only Trochees, and the Iambic has no Dactyls or Anapests.

(2.) Metrum Iambicum Senarium Quaternarium.

Iambic Trim. Acat. + Iambic. Dim. Acat.

Beatus ille qui procul negotiis

Ut prisca gens mortalium.—HOR. EP. (1—10.)

(3.) Metrum Archilochium Primum.

Dactylic Hexam. + Dactylic Penthemimer Archilochius.

Diffugere nivos; redeunt jam grassina campis,

Arboribusque comæ.—HOR. IV. 7.

(4.) Metrum Archilochium Secundum.

Dactylic Hexam. + Iambelegus Archilochius.

Horrida tempestas cælum contraxit, et imbres

Nivesque deducunt Jovem: nunc mare nunc silvæ.

—HOR. EP. 13.

(5.) Metrum Archilochium Tertium.

Iambic Trim. Acat. + Elegiambus Archilochius.

Petti, nihil me, sicut antea, juvat

Scribere versiculos amore percussum gravi.—HOR. EP. II.

(6.) Metrum Archilochium Quartum.

Logædæus Archilochius Major + Iamb. Trim. Cat.

Solvitur acris hyems gratâ vice veris et Favoni,

Trahuntque siccas machinæ carinas.—HOR. OD. I. 4.

Obs. The Iambic line always has a Spondee in the 3rd place, and admits no trisyllabic feet.

(7.) Metrum Pythiambicum Primum.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Iamb. Dim. Acat.

Mollis inertia cur tantam diffuderit imis

Oblivionem sensibus.—HOR. EP. 14, 15.

(8.) Metrum Pythiambicum Secundum.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Hexapodia Iambica.

Altera jam teritur bellis civilibus ætas,

Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit.—HOR. EPOD. 16.

(9.) Metrum Alcanianum.

Dactyl. Hexam. Acat. + Dactyl. Tetram. Alcanianus.

*Laudabunt alii claram Rhodon, aut Mitylenen,
Aut Ephesum, bimarive Corinthi.*—HOR. OD. I. 1. 7. EPOD. 17.

(10.) Metrum Asclepiadeum Secundum.

Versus Glyconeus + Versus Asclepiadeus Minor.

*Sic te Diva potens Cypri,
Sic fratres Helenæ lucida sidera.*—HOR. OD. I. 3.

Horace has twelve Odes in this measure.

(11.) Metrum Sapphicum Majus.

Choriamb. Dim. Cat. Aristophanicus + Versus Sapphicus Major.

*Lydia dic per omnes
Te deos oro Sybarincur properes amando.*—HOR. OD. I. 8.

B. DIOCLA TETRASTICHA.

Strophe Sapphica Minor.

Terni Versus Sapphici Minores + Versus Adonius.

*Integer vitæ scelerisque purus
Non eget Mauri jaculis, neque arcu,
Nec venenatis gravidâ sagittis
Fusce, pharetrâ.*—HOR. OD. I. 22.

There are 26 Sapphic Odes in Horace.

The Adonian Verse is so intimately connected with the 3rd Sapphic line that Hiatus at the close of the latter is unusual, and words are some times divided between the two verses, as,

*Thracio bacchante magis sub inter-
lunia vento.*—HOR.

A Hypermeter is sometimes found among the Sapphic lines: as,

*Dissidens plebi numero beatorum
Eximit virtus.*—HOR.

(2.) Metrum Asclepiadeum Tertium.

Terni Versus Asclepiadei Minores + Glyconeus.

*Jam veris comites, quæ mare temperant.
Impellunt animæ lintea Thraciæ;
Jam nec prata rigent, nec fluvii strepunt
Hibernâ nive turgidi.*—HOR. OD. IV. 12.

Horace has nine odes in this measure.

(3.) Strophe Glyconea Catulliana.

Terni Glyconei Catulliani + Pherecrateus Catullianus.

*Sis quocunque placet tibi
Sancta nomine, Romulique
Antiquam, ut solita es, bonâ
Sospites ope gentem.*—CATULL. 34.

Obs. But Catullus in his Epithalamium (61) uses this Metre as Pentastichon.

*Namque Julia Manlio,
Qualis Idalium colens
Venit ad Phrygium Venus
Judicem, bona cum bonâ
Nubit alite virgo.*

Not. Orellius considers Hor. Od. III. 12. to be a Systema Monocolon Tristichon, consisting of 10 Ionics a Minore, arranged in three verses (4 - - 4 - - 2): as,

*Miserarum est neque amori dare ludum, neque dulci
Mala vino lavere, aut exanimari metuentes
Patruæ verbera lingua.*

C. TRICOLA TETRASTICHA.

(1.) Metrum Asclepiadeum Quartum.

Bini Versus Asclepiadei Minores + Pherecrateus + Glyconeus.

*Primâ nocte domum claude, neque in vias
Sub cantu querula despice tibiæ,
Et te sæpè vocanti
Duram, difficilis mane.*—HOR. ON. III. 7.

Horace has seven Odes in this Metre.

(2.) Metrum Alcaicum.

Bini Versus Epionici Alcaici Hendecasyllabi + Iambicus Alcaicus Enneasyllabus, + Logædicus Alcaicus Decasyllabus.

*Qui rore puro Castalia lavit
Crines solutos, qui Lyciæ tenet
Dumeta natalemque sylvam,
Delius et Patareus Apollo.*—HOR. OD. III. 4.

Horace has written thirty-seven Odes in this Metre.

The following Rules for the rhythm of the Alcaic stanza must be observed:—

a. First and second lines.

(1.) The Iambus is to be very sparingly used.

(2.) The Cæsura after the 5th syllable must be generally preserved. The instances of its absence are few: as,

Hostile aratrum exercitus insolens.—HOR.
Mentemque lymphâ tam Mareotico.—HOR.

(3.) A Monosyllable before the Cæsura is rare (unless with another preceding) but occasionally found: as,

Nil Claudiæ non perficient manus.—HOR.
Te fontium qui celat origines.—HOR.

(4.) A Monosyllable rarely occurs at the end of the line, as,

Ne forte credas interitura quæ.—HOR.

Excepting *et*, with a preceding elision, which is not unfrequent: as,
Judex honestum prætulit utili et.—HOR.

b. Third line.

(1.) The initial Iambus is to be very seldom used. Horace has only 10 instances, and of these only 2 in the 3rd and 4th Books of the Odes, which are his last and most finished compositions.

(2.) Horace never begins with a quadrisyllable, unless an elision follows, as,

Funalia et vectes et arcus.—HOR.

and that very seldom: never with two dissyllables. Such lines as the following are therefore bad, and to be avoided entirely:—

*Immobiles mansere Graii,
 Inter feras horret catervas.*

A monosyllable and cretic are also to be avoided, though once used by Horace:

Hunc Lesbio sacrare plectro.

(3.) This Verse should not end with a quadrisyllable. Horace has only three instances, all within the 1st and 2nd Books. Nor with two dissyllables, though of this rhythm there are eight examples in the first Book. Avoid, therefore, these Rhythms:

*Regumque matres barbarorum.
 Pronos relabi posse rivos.*

(4.) No monosyllable should end the line except *et* or *in* with an elision: as,

Cum flore Mæcenæ rosarum, et.—HOR.
Incede diffingas retusum in.—HOR.

Obs. Hypermeters twice occur in Horace: as,

*Sors exitura, et nos in æter|num
 Exilium impositura cymbæ.
 Cum pace delabentis Etru|scum
 In mare.*

The following rhythms may be imitated: especially the three first.

1. *Perjura pugnaces Achivos.*
2. *Dumeta natalemque silvam.*
3. *Silvæ laborantes geluque.*
4. *Portus Alexandria supplex.*
5. *Non erubescendis adurit.*
6. *Delinit usus nec Falerna.*

with many resolved rhythms equivalent to these: as,

*Ceu flamma per|tædas vel Euris.
 Spes omnis et fortuna nostri.
 Plutona tauris qui ter amplum, &c.*

c. Fourth line.

The only necessary cautions for the structure of this verse have been already given.

The following rhythms may be imitated :

Enceladus jaculator audax.
Impavidum ferient ruinæ.
Telegoni juga parricidæ.
Verlere funeribus triumphos.
Pocula prætereunte lymphæ.
Tempus Amazoniâ securi.

with many resolved rhythms equivalent to these : as,

Sæpè mero caluisse virtus.
Roma ferox dare jura Medis.
Quos et aquæ subeunt et auræ.
Per medias rapit ira cædes.
Nube polum Pater occupato. &c.

Obs. 1. A rhythm generally objectionable is sometimes justified by its accommodation to the sense of the passage : as,

Jupiter ipse ruens tumultu.
Stenichorique graves Camenæ.

Obs. 2. The lines of an Alcaic stanza are intimately connected with each other, and Hiatus very seldom occurs at the close of any of the three first verses : that is, one of those verses very seldom ends with a vowel, when the following verse begins with a vowel.

Obs. 3. The sense is often carried on from one stanza to another : indeed an ode would be weak and dull, in which every stanza formed a complete sentence.

EXCURSION IV. ON POETICAL IDIOM.

Although the general Rules of Grammar are applicable to poetry as well as to prose, yet poetry has many words, phrases, constructions, and collocations, peculiar to itself. A few of these peculiarities will here be mentioned. For a fuller view of the subject see *Jani Ars Poetica*.

I. ETYMOLOGY.

(1.) The archaic Gen. of 1st Decl. in *ai* is used by the Epic poets, Lucretius and Virgil, as, *aulai, aquai*.

(2.) Virgil and Horace always contract the Gen. of 2nd Decl. in *ii*, as, *otî, tugurî, ingentî, impertî*. The elegiac poets retain *ii* generally.

(3.) The contraction of the Gen. *arum, orum*, into *ûm* must be confined to Masculine Substantives, as, *agricolûm, sociûm*. Substantives Feminine or Neuter and Adjectives must not assume this licence.

(4.) Many Genitives in *ium* are contracted into *um*, as *apûm, cohortûm*. This may be done in the case of all Present Participles, as *amantûm*.

(5.) The Datives in *ui*, and the Gen. and Dat. in *ei*, are sometimes contracted into *u, e* ; as *victu* for *victui*, *fide* for *fidei*.

(6.) The Imperfect of 4th Conj. in *ibam* for *iebam*, and the Fut. in *ibo* for *iam* are archaisms occasionally used by Virgil, as, *vestiebat* for *vestiebat*.

This must not be done in Lyric Verse at all, and rarely in Elegiac.

(7.) The Infinitive in *ier*, for *i*, is an archaism need occasionally in epic poetry alone; not allowable in elegiac or lyric.

(8.) Many words are purely poetical, and never found in prose at all. They are too numerous to be here specified: but ought to be carefully noted by the student.

(9.) One Part of Speech is put for another: (a.) Substantive for Adjective or Participle: as, *victor equus*; *fabulae manes*; *populus latè rex*; sometimes with an Adjectival inflection, as *flumen Rhenum* for *flumen Rhenus*. (b.) Participle or Adjective for Substantive; as, *volitans*, an insect; *volantes*, birds; *natantes*, fishes; *præceps*, a precipice; *planum*, a level surface. So *opaca domorum*, *strata viarum*, &c. See § 102. Obs. 2. § 169. Notes. (c.) Neuter Adj. for Adverb, as *lugubre rubens*; *perfidum ridens*; *transversa tuentes*. &c. See § 169. (b.)

(10.) The Plural number is put for the Singular: as, *tua numina posco*; *sibila colla tumens*. And the Singular for the Plural: as, *Thynâ merce beatum*; *latè loca milite complet*.

(11.) Transitive Verbs are sometimes used Neutrally or [Passively: as *sisto* for *sto*; by an ellipse of the Accus. Pronoun *se*, *me*, &c. On the use of Intransitives for Transitives, see Notes to § 114. Even Passives sometimes assume a Transitive force, as *fontes avertitur* for *refugit*. On the reflexive use of Passive, and the Passive use of Deponent Verbs, see Notes to § 162. § 163.

(12.) The use of the simple for the compound verb is a very common poetical idiom: as, *pone moras* for *depone*; *tendere* for *contendere*; *tenere* for *retinere*, &c.

(13.) In regard to tenses, the Historic Present for the Preterite is often used: also the Preterite Aorist for the Present to express habit or frequency; the Perf. Infin. for the Pres. Infin. See Notes to § 179. For poetical idioms in Conditional Sentences, see Notes to § 186.

II. SYNTAX.

1. Agreement. The use of a Neuter Predicate with Masc. and Fem. Substantives, as, *turpe senex miles* (§ 102. Obs. 2.): and the use of Synesis (§ 108), are frequent in poetry.

2. Government.

(1.) A large number of Adjectives govern a Gen. in poetry only: as, *inane lymphae*, *nimius pugnae*, *gravis morum*, *æqualis ævi*, &c. See Notes to § 138, § 142, for this and other poetical constructions of the Genitive.

(2.) Verbs of contending, repelling, differing, uniting, have a Dative in poetry; but in prose, for the most part, a preposition with its case: as, *mihi contendere noli*; *solstitium pecori defendite*; *scurrae distabit amicus*; *verba sociare chordis*; &c.

A Dative after a verb of motion is peculiar to poetry, but rare; as, *it clamor cælo*. A Dative of the agent after a Passive verb is poetical, as, *neque cernitur ulli*. (§ 126.)

(3.) The Accusative of limitation after Adjectives and Verbs is almost peculiar to poetry, and very frequent, as, *cætera lætus*; *sibila colla tumens*. See § 117.

(4.) The Infin. Mood after Adjectives is frequent in poetry, and not used in good prose: as, *callidus condere, catus jaculari, audax omnia perpeti*; &c. After some Substantives: as, *causa perire, tempus abire*, &c. After Verbs of motion, as *populare penates venimus*; of entreaty, as *hoc petit esse suum*; of feeling, as *furit reperire, dedignata teneri*; of hastening, as *trepidat claudere*; &c. *Est* is used for *licet* with Infin. as *Æneas cernere erat: nec sit mihi credere tantum*. The use of the Participle after Verbs of sense for the, Acc. and Infin. is a poetic Græcism: as, *sensit medios delapsus in hostes*. And the use of a Nom. with the Infin. when the Infin. and governing Verb have the same Subject: as, *azor invicti Jovis esse nescis*. The Infin. Act. is also used poetically where a prose writer would use the Partic. in *duo*; as, *dat ferre talentum; quem sumis celebrare*, &c.

(5.) Many instances of Ellipsis and Pleonasm are found in poetry, too numerous to be here cited. On these figures and on Hypallage, see Jani *Ars Poetica*.

III. The Collocation of words in poetry is much more free than that of prose, but will be better learnt by reading and practice than by any attempt to reduce the subject to rules. Passages of Virgil, Ovid and Horace may be taken, and all the collocations noted, which could not have been used by Cicero. Thus, many prepositions are placed after their cases, as, *transtra per et remos*, some are separated by Tmesis from their compound, as *argento post omnia ponis*. Conjunctions fall out of place; especially *et* and *sed* appear after the first word of a Sentence, instead of before it; with many other instances.

Note. A treatise on Poetical Elegance and Ornament would be out of place in an Elementary Grammar. The student will do well to peruse carefully the chapter on this subject in Jani's *Ars Poetica*: especially with regard to the choice of epithets and the use of metaphors, two points in which an unpractised composer is very liable to err.

EXCURSION V. SIGLARIUM ROMANUM.

1. PRÆNOMINA.

A. Aulus.	L. Lucius.	Q. Quintus.
C. Caius.	M. Marcus.	SEX. Servius.
CN. Cneius.	M.' Manius.	SEX. Sextus,
D. Decimus.	P. Publius.	T. Titus.
K. Kæso.		TI. Tiberius.

2. TITLES.

ÆD. CUR. Ædilis Curulis.
 COS. CONSUL. COS. Consules or Consulibus.
 COS. DES. Consul Designatus.
 D. Divus.
 IMP. Imperator.
 P. C. Patres Conscripti.
 P. M. Pontifex Maximus.
 PROC. Proconsul.
 S. P. Q. R. Senatus Populusque Romanus.
 TR. PL. Tribunus Plebis.
 X. V. Decemvir.

XV. V. S. F. Quindecimvir sacris faciundis.

III. VIRI. A. A. A. F. F. Triumviri auro, argento, ære fiando feriundo.

III. V. R. C. Triumvir reipublicæ constituendæ.

3. MISCELLANEOUS.

A. U. C. Anno Urbis Condite.

D. D. Dono dedit. D. D. D. Dat, dicat, dedicat.

D. M. Diis Manibus.

D. O. M. Deo Optimo Maximo.

F. F. F. Felix, faustum, fortunatum. F. Filius.

S. C. Senatus Consultum.

S. D. Salutem dicit. S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit.

S. V. B. E. E. Q. V. Si vales, bene est, ego quoque valeo.

TR. POT. Tribuniâ potestate.

4. IN VOTING ON TRIALS AND ELECTIONS.

A. Absolvo. C. Condemno. N. L. Non liquet.

A. P. Antiquam (legem) probo. V. R. Utî rogas.

5. ON TOMBS.

H. S. E. Hic situs est. H. C. E. Hic conditus est.

F. C. Faciundum curavit. P. C. Poni curavit.

OB. Obiit. V. Vixit.

6. MODERN.

A. B. Artium Baccalaureus.

A. C. Anno Christi.

A. D. Anno Domini.

A. M. Artium Magister. Anno Mundi.

a. C. n. ante Christum natum. p. C. n. post Christum natum.

C. P. P. C. Collatis pecuniis poni curaverunt.

Cet. Cetera.

Cf. Confer or Conferatur.

Coll. Collato or Collatis.

Cod. Codex. Codd. Codices.

D. Doctor.

Del. Dele or Deleatur.

Ed. Editio. Edd. Editiones.

Etc. Etcetera.

h. e. hoc est. i. e. id est. i. q. idem quod.

I. C. Jesus Christus.

Ictus. Jurisconsultus.

L. B. Lectori benevolo.

l. c. loco citato. l. l. loco laudato.

leg. lege or legatur.

L. or LIB. Liber.

L. L. D. Legum Doctor.

M. D. Medicinæ Doctor.

N. B. Nota bene.

N. T. Novum Testamentum. V. T. Vetus Testamentum.

Obs. Observe or observetur.

P. S. Postscriptum.

S. T. P. Sanctæ Theologiæ Professor.

sc. scilicet. vid. vide or videatur. viz. videlicet.

V. Cel. Vir celeberrimus. V. Cl. Vir Clarissimus.

EXCURSION VI.

ROMAN AUTHORS OF THE GOLDEN AND SILVER AGES.

A. GOLDEN AGE.

- M. Accius Plantus (B.C. 227 .. 184). Comedies.
 P. Terentius Afer (B.C. 192 .. 152). Comedies.
 T. Lucretius Carus (B.C. 95 .. 52). Didactic Poetry.
 C. Valerius Catullus (B.C. 86 .. ?). Lyric and Elegiac Poetry.
 M. Tullius Cicero (B.C. 106 .. 43). Orations: Letters: Philosophy: Rhetoric.
 M. Terentius Varro (B.C. 116 .. 27). Language.
 Cornelius Nepos (B.C. ? .. 30). Biography.
 C. Julius Cæsar (B.C. 100 .. 44). History.
 C. Sallustius Crispus (B.C. 85 .. 35). History.
 M. Vitruvius Pollio (?). Architecture.
 P. Virgilius Maro (B.C. 70 .. 19). Pastoral, Didactic, and Epic Poetry.
 Q. Horatius Flaccus (B.C. 65 .. 8). Lyric Poetry: Satires: Epistles.
 Albius Tibullus (B.C. ? .. 19). Elegiac Poetry.
 Sex. Aurelius Propertius (B.C. ? .. 15). Elegiac Poetry.
 P. Ovidius Naso (B.C. 43 .. A.D. 17). Elegiac and Epic Poetry.
 Titus Livius (B.C. 58 .. A.D. 19). History.

B. SILVER AGE.

- T. Phædrus (?). Fables in Iambic Verse.
 Velleius Paterculus (killed A.D. 31). History.
 L. Annaeus Seneca (killed A.D. 65). Philosophy. (Tragedies ?)
 A. Persius Flaccus (A.D. 34 .. 62). Satires.
 M. Annaeus Lucanus (A.D. 38 .. 65). Epic Poetry.
 C. Silius Italicus (A.D. 25 .. 100). Epic Poetry.
 Pomponius Mela (?). Geography.
 Valerius Maximus (?). Anecdotes.
 L. Julius Moderatus Columella (?). Husbandry.
 C. Valerius Flaccus (died A.D. 88). Epic Poetry.
 Q. Curtius Rufus (?). History.
 C. Plinius Secundus (A.D. 23 .. 79). Natural History.
 M. Fabius Quintilianus (died A.D. 88). Rhetoric.
 P. Papinius Statius (died A.D. 95). Epic and occasional Poetry.
 D. Junius Juvenalis (living under Hadrian). Satires.
 M. Valerius Martialis (living under Trajan). Epigrams.
 C. Cornelius Tacitus (Consul A.D. 97). History.
 C. Plinius Cæcilius Secundus (under Trajan). Letters.
 L. Annaeus Florus (under Trajan). History.
 C. Suetonius Tranquillus (under Hadrian). Biography.

Not. 1. Of the 3rd or brazen age the chief poets were Avianus, Calpurnius, Nemesianus, Ausonius, Prudentius, and Claudianus; historians, Justinus, Eutropius, and Ammianus Marcellinus: miscellaneous authors, Terentianus Maurus, A. Gellius, Apuleius, Petronius Arbiter, Macrobius: besides the Christian writers Tertullianus, Cyprianus, Arnobius, Lactantius.

Not. 2. Of the 4th or iron age the chief poets were Sidonius Apollinaris, and Boethius (whose prose writings are also worth notice): the principal historian is Orosius: in Christian literature Augustinus, Hieronymus, and Ambrosius are most eminent.

